# Countermeasures That Work:

## A Highway Safety Countermeasure Guide For State Highway Safety Offices

Tenth Edition, 2020

U.S. Department of Transportation
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration

NHTSA

## Disclaimer

This publication is distributed by the U.S. Department of Transportation, National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, in the interest of information exchange. The opinions, findings, and conclusions expressed in this publication are those of the authors and not necessarily those of the Department of Transportation or the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. The United States Government assumes no liability for its content or use thereof. If trade or manufacturers' names or products are mentioned, it is because they are considered essential to the object of the publication and should not be construed as an endorsement. The United States Government does not endorse products or manufacturers.

Suggested APA Format Citation:

Venkatraman, V., Richard, C. M., Magee, K., & Johnson, K. (2021, July). *Countermeasures that work: A highway safety countermeasures guide for State Highway Safety Offices,* 10th edition, 2020 (Report No. DOT HS 813 097). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

## Technical Report Documentation Page

| 1. Report No. | 2. Government Accession No. | 3. Recipient's Catalog No. |
|---|---|---|
| DOT HS 813 097 | | |

| 4. Title and Subtitle | 5. Report Date |
|---|---|
| Countermeasures That Work: A Highway Safety Countermeasure Guide for State Highway Safety Offices, 10th Edition, 2020 | July 2021 |
| | **6. Performing Organization Code** |
| **7. Authors**<br>Vindhya Venkatraman, Christian M. Richard, Kelly Magee, Battelle Memorial Institute; and Kristie Johnson, NHTSA | **8. Performing Organization Report No.** |
| **9. Performing Organization Name and Address**<br>Battelle Memorial Institute<br>1100 Dexter Avenue N<br>Suite #400<br>Seattle, WA 98109 | **10. Work Unit No. (TRAIS)** |
| | **11. Contract or Grant No.** |
| **12. Sponsoring Agency Name and Address**<br><br>National Highway Traffic Safety Administration<br>Office of Behavioral Safety Research<br>1200 New Jersey Avenue SE<br>Washington, DC 20590 | **13. Type of Report and Period Covered**<br>Final Report |
| | **14. Sponsoring Agency Code** |

**15. Supplementary Notes**
Kristie Johnson, Ph.D., served as the Contracting Officer's Representative on this project.


**16. Abstract**
The guide is a basic reference to assist State Highway Safety Offices (SHSOs) in selecting effective, evidence-based countermeasures for traffic safety problem areas. These areas include:

- Alcohol- and Drug-Impaired Driving;
- Seat Belts and Child Restraints;
- Speeding and Speed Management;
- Distracted Driving;
- Motorcycle Safety;
- Young Drivers;
- Older Drivers;
- Pedestrian Safety;
- Bicycle Safety; and
- Drowsy Driving.

The guide:

- describes major strategies and countermeasures that are relevant to SHSOs;
- summarizes strategy/countermeasure use, effectiveness, costs, and implementation time; and
- provides references to the most important research summaries and individual studies.


| 17. Key Words | 18. Distribution Statement |
|---|---|
| alcohol-impaired driving, drug-impaired driving, seat belts, child restraints, speeding, distracted driving, drowsy driving, motorcycle safety, young drivers, older drivers, pedestrians, bicycles, unsafe driving | Document is available to the public from the National Technical Information Service, www.ntis.gov. |

| 19 Security Classif. (of this report) | 20. Security Classif. (of this page) | 21 No. of Pages | 22. Price |
|---|---|---|---|
| Unclassified | Unclassified | 641 | |

# Table of Contents

Note: Asterisks next to topics indicate one- and two-star countermeasures. These countermeasures are summarized in the main document, with full write-ups provided in the appendices.


Preface to the 10th Edition, 2020 ..... x
User Suggestions and Future Editions ..... x
Introduction ..... 1
Purpose of the Guide ..... 1
How to Use the Guide ..... 1

1. Alcohol- and Drug-Impaired Driving ..... 1-1
Overview ..... 1-1
Strategies to Reduce Impaired Driving ..... 1-6
Resources ..... 1-8
Deterrence ..... 1-14
1. Deterrence: Laws ..... 1-16
1.1 Administrative License Revocation or Suspension ..... 1-16
1.2 Open Container ..... 1-19
1.3 High-BAC Sanctions ..... 1-20
1.4 BAC Test Refusal Penalties ..... 1-22
1.5 Alcohol-Impaired-Driving Law Review ..... 1-24
2. Deterrence: Enforcement ..... 1-25
2.1 Publicized Sobriety Checkpoints ..... 1-25
2.2 High-Visibility Saturation Patrols ..... 1-29
2.3 Breath Test Devices ..... 1-31
2.4 Passive Alcohol Sensors ..... 1-33
2.5 Integrated Enforcement ..... 1-35
3. Deterrence: Prosecution and Adjudication ..... 1-37
3.1 DWI Courts ..... 1-37
3.2 Limits on Diversion and Plea Agreements ..... 1-41
3.3 Court Monitoring ..... 1-43
3.4 Sanctions ..... 1-44
4. Deterrence: DWI Offender Treatment, Monitoring, and Control ..... 1-45
4.1 Alcohol Problem Assessment and Treatment ..... 1-45
4.2 Alcohol Ignition Interlocks ..... 1-47
4.3 Vehicle and License Plate Sanctions ..... 1-51
4.4 DWI Offender Monitoring ..... 1-53
4.5 Lower BAC Limits for Repeat Offenders ..... 1-55
5. Prevention, Intervention, Communications, and Outreach ..... 1-57
5.1 Alcohol Screening and Brief Intervention ..... 1-58
5.2 Mass Media Campaigns ..... 1-60
5.3 Responsible Beverage Service ..... 1-62
5.4 Alternative Transportation ..... 1-63

5.5 Designated Drivers ..... 1-65
6. Underage Drinking and Driving ..... 1-66
6.1 Minimum Legal Drinking Age 21 Laws ..... 1-67
6.2 Zero-Tolerance Law Enforcement ..... 1-69
6.3 Alcohol Vendor Compliance Checks ..... 1-71
6.4 Other Minimum Legal Drinking Age 21 Law Enforcement ..... 1-73
6.5 Youth Programs ..... 1-76
7. Drug-Impaired Driving ..... 1-77
7.1 Enforcement of Drug-Impaired Driving ..... 1-80
7.2 Drug-Impaired-Driving Laws ..... 1-82
7.3 Education Regarding Medications ..... 1-83
Alcohol- and Drug-Impaired-Driving References ..... 1-84

2. Seat Belts and Child Restraints ..... 2-1
Overview ..... 2-1
Strategies to Improve the Safety of Passenger Vehicle Occupants ..... 2-4
Resources ..... 2-6
Countermeasures Targeting Adults ..... 2-12
1. Seat Belt Use Laws ..... 2-12
1.1 State Primary Enforcement Seat Belt Use Laws ..... 2-12
1.2 Local Primary Enforcement Seat Belt Use Laws and Ordinances ..... 2-15
1.3 Increased Seat Belt Use Law Penalties: Fines and Driver's License Points ..... 2-16
2. Seat Belt Law Enforcement ..... 2-18
2.1 Short-Term, High-Visibility Seat Belt Law Enforcement ..... 2-18
2.2 Integrated Nighttime Seat Belt Enforcement ..... 2-21
2.3 Sustained Enforcement ..... 2-24
3. Communications and Outreach ..... 2-25
3.1 Supporting Enforcement ..... 2-25
3.2 Strategies for Low-Belt-Use Groups ..... 2-26
Countermeasures Targeting Children and Youth ..... 2-31
4. Child/Youth Occupant Restraint Laws ..... 2-31
4.1 Strengthening Child/Youth Occupant Restraint Laws ..... 2-31
5. Child Restraint/Booster Seat Law Enforcement ..... 2-34
5.1 Short-Term High-Visibility Child Restraint/Booster Law Enforcement ..... 2-34
6. Communications and Outreach ..... 2-36
6.1 Strategies for Older Children ..... 2-36
6.2 Strategies for Child Restraint and Booster Seat Use ..... 2-38
7. Other Strategies ..... 2-40
7.1 School-Based Programs ..... 2-40
7.2 Inspection Stations ..... 2-41
Seat Belts and Child Restraints References ..... 2-44

3. Speeding and Speed Management ..... 3-1
Overview ..... 3-1
Strategies to Reduce Speeding and Aggressive Driving ..... 3-5
Resources ..... 3-10

1. Laws ..... 3-15
1.1 Speed Limits ..... 3-15
1.2 Aggressive Driving and Other Laws ..... 3-20
2. Enforcement ..... 3-21
2.1 Automated Enforcement ..... 3-21
2.2 High-Visibility Enforcement ..... 3-28
2.3 Other Enforcement Methods ..... 3-29
3. Penalties and Adjudication ..... 3-30
3.1 Penalty Types and Levels ..... 3-30
3.2 Diversion and Plea Agreement Restrictions; Traffic Violator School ..... 3-31
4. Communications and Outreach ..... 3-32
4.1 Communications and Outreach Supporting Enforcement ..... 3-32
Speed and Speed Management References ..... 3-34

4. Distracted Driving ..... 4-1
Overview ..... 4-1
Strategies to Reduce Distracted Driving ..... 4-5
Resources ..... 4-7
1. Laws and Enforcement ..... 4-11
1.1 Graduated Driver Licensing Requirements for Beginning Drivers ..... 4-11
1.2 Cell Phone and Text Messaging Laws ..... 4-13
1.3 High-Visibility Cell Phone and Text Messaging Enforcement ..... 4-14
1.4 General Driver Distraction Laws ..... 4-16
2. Communications and Outreach ..... 4-17
2.1 Communications and Outreach on Distracted Driving ..... 4-17
3. Other Countermeasures ..... 4-18
3.1 Employer Programs ..... 4-18
Distracted Driving References ..... 4-19

5. Motorcycle Safety ..... 5-1
Overview ..... 5-1
Strategies to Improve Motorcycle Safety ..... 5-3
Resources ..... 5-4
1. Motorcycle Helmets ..... 5-9
1.1 Universal Motorcycle Helmet Use Laws ..... 5-9
1.2 Motorcycle Helmet Use Promotion Programs ..... 5-13
1.3 Motorcycle Helmet Law Enforcement: Noncompliant Helmets ..... 5-14
2. Alcohol Impairment ..... 5-15
2.1 Alcohol-Impaired Motorcyclists: Detection, Enforcement, and Sanctions ..... 5-15
2.2 Alcohol-Impaired Motorcyclists: Communications and Outreach ..... 5-18
3. Motorcycle Rider Licensing and Training ..... 5-19
3.1 Motorcycle Rider Licensing ..... 5-19
3.2 Motorcycle Rider Training ..... 5-20
4. Communications and Outreach ..... 5-21
4.1 Communications and Outreach: Conspicuity and Protective Clothing ..... 5-21
4.2 Communications and Outreach: Motorist Awareness of Motorcyclists ..... 5-22

Motorcycle Safety References ..... 5-23

6. Young Drivers ..... 6-1
Overview ..... 6-1
Strategies to Reduce Crashes Involving Young Drivers ..... 6-3
Resources ..... 6-5
1. Graduated Driver Licensing ..... 6-10
1.1 Graduated Driver Licensing ..... 6-10
1.2 GDL Learner's Permit Length, Supervised Hours ..... 6-12
1.3 GDL Intermediate License Nighttime Restrictions ..... 6-14
1.4 GDL Intermediate License Passenger Restrictions ..... 6-16
1.5 GDL Cell Phone Restrictions ..... 6-18
1.6 GDL Belt Use Requirements ..... 6-19
1.7 GDL Intermediate License Violation Penalties ..... 6-20
2. Driver Education ..... 6-21
2.1 Pre-Licensure Driver Education ..... 6-21
2.2 Post-Licensure or Second-Tier Driver Education ..... 6-22
3. Parents ..... 6-23
3.1 Parental Roles in Teaching and Managing Young Drivers ..... 6-23
3.2 Electronic Technology for Parental Monitoring ..... 6-24
4. Traffic Law Enforcement ..... 6-26
4.1 Enforcement of GDL and Zero-Tolerance Laws ..... 6-26
Young Driver References ..... 6-29

7. Older Drivers ..... 7-1
Overview ..... 7-1
Strategies to Reduce Crashes and Injuries Involving Older Drivers ..... 7-4
Resources ..... 7-6
1. Communications and Outreach ..... 7-11
1.1 Formal Courses for Older Drivers ..... 7-11
1.2 General Communications and Education ..... 7-12
2. Licensing ..... 7-13
2.1 License Screening and Testing ..... 7-13
2.2 Referring Older Drivers to Licensing Agencies ..... 7-15
2.3 License Restrictions ..... 7-19
2.4 Medical Advisory Boards ..... 7-21
2.5 License Renewal Policies: In-Person Renewal, Vision Test ..... 7-22
3. Traffic Law Enforcement ..... 7-23
3.1 Law Enforcement Roles ..... 7-23
Older Driver References ..... 7-24

8. Pedestrian Safety ..... 8-1
Overview ..... 8-1
Strategies to Increase Pedestrian Safety ..... 8-11
Resources ..... 8-12
1. Preschool-Age Children ..... 8-17

1.1 Children's Safety Clubs ..... 8-17
1.2 Child Supervision ..... 8-18
2. School-Age Children ..... 8-19
2.1 Elementary-Age Child Pedestrian Training ..... 8-19
2.2 Safe Routes to School ..... 8-23
2.3 Walking School Buses ..... 8-27
2.4 Child School Bus Training ..... 8-29
3. Impaired Pedestrians ..... 8-30
3.1 Impaired Pedestrians: Communications and Outreach ..... 8-30
3.2 "Sweeper" Patrols of Impaired Pedestrians ..... 8-31
4. All Pedestrians ..... 8-32
4.1 Pedestrian Safety Zones ..... 8-32
4.2 Reduce and Enforce Speed Limits ..... 8-34
4.3 Conspicuity Enhancement ..... 8-37
4.4 Enforcement Strategies ..... 8-39
4.5 Driver Training ..... 8-42
4.6 Pedestrian Gap Acceptance Training ..... 8-43
4.7 University Educational Campaign ..... 8-44
Pedestrian Safety References ..... 8-45

9. Bicycle Safety ..... 9-1
Overview ..... 9-1
Strategies to Increase Bicyclist Safety ..... 9-7
Resources ..... 9-9
1. Children ..... 9-15
1.1 Bicycle Helmet Laws for Children ..... 9-15
1.2 Safe Routes to School ..... 9-18
1.3 Bicycle Safety Education for Children ..... 9-21
1.4 Cycling Skills Clinics, Bike Fairs, Bike Rodeos ..... 9-22
2. Adults ..... 9-23
2.1 Bicycle Helmet Laws for Adults ..... 9-23
2.2 Bicycle Safety Education for Adult Cyclists ..... 9-26
3. All Bicyclists ..... 9-27
3.1 Active Lighting and Rider Conspicuity ..... 9-27
3.2 Promote Bicycle Helmet Use With Education ..... 9-30
3.3 Enforcement Strategies ..... 9-31
3.4 Motorist Passing Bicyclist Laws ..... 9-32
4. Drivers and Bicyclists ..... 9-33
4.1 Driver Training ..... 9-33
4.2 *Share the Road* Awareness Programs ..... 9-34
Bicycle Safety References ..... 9-35

10. Drowsy Driving ..... 10-1
Overview ..... 10-1
Strategies to Reduce Drowsy Driving ..... 10-3
Resources ..... 10-5

1. Laws and Enforcement ..... 10-9
1.1 Graduated Driver Licensing Requirements for Beginning Drivers ..... 10-9
1.2 General Driver Drowsiness Laws ..... 10-11
2. Communications and Outreach ..... 10-12
2.1 Communications and Outreach on Drowsy Driving ..... 10-12
3. Other Countermeasures ..... 10-13
3.1 Employer Programs ..... 10-13
3.2 Education Regarding Medical Conditions and Medications ..... 10-14
Drowsy Driving References ..... 10-15

A1. Alcohol- and Drug-Impaired Driving ..... A1-1
1. Deterrence: Laws ..... A1-3
1.5 Alcohol-Impaired-Driving Law Review ..... A1-3
3. Deterrence: Prosecution and Adjudication ..... A1-5
3.4 Sanctions ..... A1-5
5. Prevention, Intervention, Communications and Outreach ..... A1-8
5.3 Responsible Beverage Service ..... A1-8
5.5 Designated Drivers ..... A1-11
6. Underage Drinking and Drinking and Driving ..... A1-13
6.5 Youth Programs ..... A1-13
7. Drug-Impaired Driving ..... A1-16
7.2 Drug-Impaired-Driving Laws ..... A1-16
7.3 Education Regarding Medications ..... A1-19
Alcohol- and Drug-Impaired-Driving References ..... A1-22

A2. Seat Belt and Child Restraints ..... A2-1

A3. Speeding and Speed Management ..... A3-1
1. Laws ..... A3-3
1.2 Aggressive Driving and Other Laws ..... A3-3
2. Enforcement ..... A3-5
2.2 High-Visibility Enforcement ..... A3-5
2.3 Other Enforcement Methods ..... A3-9
3. Penalties and Adjudication ..... A3-12
3.1 Penalty Types and Levels ..... A3-12
3.2 Diversion and Plea Agreement Restrictions; Traffic Violator School ..... A3-16
Speed and Speed Management References ..... A3-18

A4. Distracted Driving ..... A4-1
1. Laws and Enforcement ..... A4-3
1.2 Cell Phone and Text Messaging Laws ..... A4-3
1.4 General Driver Distraction Laws ..... A4-8
2. Communications and Outreach ..... A4-10
2.1 Communications and Outreach on Distracted Driving ..... A4-10
3. Other Countermeasures ..... A4-13
3.1 Employer Programs ..... A4-13

Distracted Driving References ..... A4-14

A5. Motorcycle Safety ..... A5-1
1. Motorcycle Helmets ..... A5-3
1.2 Motorcycle Helmet Use Promotion Programs ..... A5-3
1.3 Motorcycle Helmet Law Enforcement: Noncompliant Helmets ..... A5-4
2. Alcohol Impairment ..... A5-6
2.2 Alcohol-Impaired Motorcyclists: Communications and Outreach ..... A5-6
3. Motorcycle Rider Licensing and Training ..... A5-8
3.1 Motorcycle Rider Licensing ..... A5-8
3.2 Motorcycle Rider Training ..... A5-11
4. Communications and Outreach ..... A5-13
4.1 Communications and Outreach: Conspicuity and Protective Clothing ..... A5-13
4.2 Communications and Outreach: Motorist Awareness of Motorcyclists ..... A5-15
Motorcycle Safety References ..... A5-17

A6. Young Drivers ..... A6-1
1. Graduated Driver Licensing ..... A6-3
1.5 GDL Cell Phone Restrictions ..... A6-3
1.6 GDL Belt Use Requirements ..... A6-5
1.7 GDL Intermediate License Violation Penalties ..... A6-6
2. Driver Education ..... A6-7
2.1 Pre-Licensure Driver Education ..... A6-7
2.2 Post-Licensure or Second-Tier Driver Education ..... A6-11
3. Parents ..... A6-12
3.1 Parental Role in Teaching and Managing Young Drivers ..... A6-12
Young Driver References ..... A6-16

A7. Older Drivers ..... A7-1
1. Communications and Outreach ..... A7-3
1.1 Formal Courses for Older Drivers ..... A7-3
1.2 General Communications and Education ..... A7-6
2. Licensing ..... A7-9
2.4 Medical Advisory Boards ..... A7-9
2.5 License Renewal Policies: In-Person Renewal, Vision Test ..... A7-11
Older Driver References ..... A7-14

A8. Pedestrian Safety ..... A8-1
1. Preschool-Age Children ..... A8-3
1.1 Children's Safety Clubs ..... A8-3
1.2 Child Supervision ..... A8-5
2. School-Age Children ..... A8-7
2.3 Child School Bus Training A8-7
3. Impaired Pedestrians ..... A8-9
3.1 Communications and Outreach Addressing Impaired Pedestrians ..... A8-9
3.2 "Sweeper" Patrols of Impaired Pedestrians ..... A8-10

4. All Pedestrians ..... A8-12
4.5 Driver Training ..... A8-12
4.6 Pedestrian Gap Acceptance Training ..... A8-14
4.7 University Educational Campaign ..... A8-16
Pedestrian Safety References ..... A8-18

A9. Bicycle Safety ..... A9-1
1. Children ..... A9-3
1.3 Bicycle Safety Education for Children ..... A9-3
1.4 Cycling Skills Clinics, Bike Fairs, Bike Rodeos ..... A9-7
2. Adults ..... A9-9
2.2 Bicycle Safety Education for Adult Cyclists ..... A9-9
3. All Bicyclists ..... A9-11
3.2 Promote Bicycle Helmet Use With Education ..... A9-11
3.3 Enforcement Strategies ..... A9-14
3.4 Motorist Passing Bicyclist Laws ..... A9-18
4. Drivers and Bicyclists ..... A9-20
4.1 Driver Training ..... A9-20
4.2 *Share the Road* Awareness Programs ..... A9-22
Bicycle Safety References ..... A9-24

A10. Drowsy Drivers ..... A10-1
1. Laws and Enforcement ..... A10-3
1.2 General Driver Drowsiness Laws ..... A10-3
2. Communications and Outreach ..... A10-5
2.1 Communications and Outreach on Drowsy Driving A10-5
3. Other Countermeasures ..... A10-8
3.1 Employer Programs ..... A10-8
3.2 Education Regarding Medical Conditions and Medications ..... A10-10
Drowsy Driving References ..... A10-12

# Preface to the 10th Edition, 2020

This edition of *Countermeasures That Work* was prepared by Battelle Memorial Institute. Researchers who contributed to this edition include Vindhya Venkatraman, Christian M. Richard, and Kelly Magee. The original *Countermeasures That Work* was prepared in 2005 by James H. Hedlund, Ph.D., of Highway Safety North, with the assistance of Barbara Harsha, executive director of the Governors Highway Safety Association. The chapters on pedestrian and bicycle safety were added in the Second Edition by William A. Leaf of Preusser Research Group.

All chapters have been revised and updated for this edition. Information and research studies through May 31, 2018, have been reviewed and included as appropriate. Data have been updated to include information from the 2018 FARS (Fatality Analysis Reporting System) Annual Report File (ARF).

A significant change in the 10th Edition is that the chapter on distracted and drowsy driving was separated into two chapters (Chapter 4: Distracted Driving and Chapter 10: Drowsy Driving) to align with the differences in the underlying driver behaviors and the growing body of literature under each topic. Three new countermeasures were added: "Employer Programs" in the Distracted Driving chapter, "Electronic Technology for Parental Monitoring" in the Young Drivers chapter, and "Walking School Buses" in the Pedestrian Safety chapter.

A significant change added in the 9th edition and continued in the 10th edition is that detailed descriptions of one- and two-star countermeasures were moved to appendices. The main part of the guide retains brief summaries for the one- and two-star countermeasures to facilitate navigation of the topics and to maintain continuity with previous chapters.

## User Suggestions and Future Editions

NHTSA updates this guide biennially and may expand it with additional problem areas and countermeasures as appropriate. Users are invited to provide their suggestions and recommendations for the guide.

- How can it be improved in form and content?
- Specific comments on information in the guide.
- Additional problem areas to include.
- Additional countermeasures to include for the current problem areas.
- Additional key references to include.

Please send your suggestions and recommendations to:

Countermeasures That Work
NHTSA
Office of Behavioral Safety Research, NPD-300
1200 New Jersey Avenue SE
Washington, DC 20590

or by email to kristie.johnson@dot.gov.

# Introduction

## Purpose of the Guide

This guide is a basic reference to assist State Highway Safety Offices in selecting effective, science-based traffic safety countermeasures for major highway safety problems. The guide

- describes major strategies and countermeasures relevant to SHSOs;
- summarizes their use, effectiveness, costs, and implementation time; and
- provides references to the most important research summaries and individual studies.

The guide is not intended to be a comprehensive list of countermeasures available for State use or a list of expectations for SHSO implementation. For a description of an optimal State countermeasure program, SHSOs should refer to the *Highway Safety Program Guidelines*, which delineate the principal components of each of the major program areas.

States should identify problem areas through systematic data collection and analysis and are encouraged to continue to apply innovation in developing appropriate countermeasures. The evaluations summarized in this guide allow SHSOs to benefit from the experience and knowledge gained by others and to select countermeasure strategies that have either proven to be effective or that have shown promise. States choosing to use innovative programs can contribute to the collective knowledge pool by carefully evaluating the effectiveness of their efforts and publishing the findings for the benefit of others.

## How to Use the Guide

**What's included:** The guide contains a chapter for each of 10 problem areas. Each chapter begins with a brief overview of the problem area's size and characteristics, the main countermeasure strategies, a glossary of key terms, and a few general references. Next, a table lists specific countermeasures and summarizes their effectiveness, costs, use, and implementation time. Each countermeasure is then discussed in about a page.

The guide is an overview and starting point for readers to become familiar with the behavioral strategies and countermeasures in each program area. It includes countermeasures that have the most evidence of effectiveness as well as those used most regularly by SHSOs. Updates to the guide are based only on published research. Unpublished programs and efforts are not included in this edition.

Some countermeasure areas are covered in more depth than others due to availability of published research. For example, impaired driving has a long and rich research history while topics such as driver distraction and driver drowsiness have received less attention. This difference in the availability of published research findings is due to the relative scale of problem areas, availability of reliable data on frequency and characteristics of some safety problems, and the challenge of conducting scientifically valid studies in some behavioral areas.

References are provided for each countermeasure. When possible, summaries of available research are cited with web links where available, so users can find most of the evaluation information in one place. If no summaries are available, one or two key studies are cited. There has been no attempt to list all research, current studies, or program information available on any countermeasure. Readers interested in a problem area or specific countermeasure are urged to consult the references. Although all web links in this guide were accurate at the time of publication, please note that web links change periodically. For broken links to NHTSA documents, we recommend searching NHTSA's behavioral safety research reports (https://ntlsearch.bts.gov/repository/ntlc/nhtsa/index.shtm). For broken links to other reports or documents, refer to the website for the agency that produced the report.

**What's not included:** Since the guide is intended as a tool for SHSO use, it does not include countermeasures for which SHSOs have little or no authority or responsibility. For example, the guide does not include vehicle- or roadway-based solutions. Also, it does not include countermeasures that already are in place in every State, such as blood alcohol concentration laws. The guide does not include substantive details of specific countermeasures for emergency medical services or 911 services; these services are supported by traffic safety partners including State Offices of EMS. Finally, the guide does not include administrative or management topics such as traffic safety data systems and analyses, program planning and assessments, State and community task forces, or comprehensive community traffic safety programs.

**What the effectiveness data mean:** The effectiveness of countermeasures can vary immensely from State to State or community to community. *What* is done is often less important than *how* it is done. The best countermeasure may have little effect if it is not implemented vigorously, publicized extensively, and funded satisfactorily. Evaluation studies generally examine and report on high-quality implementation because there is little interest in evaluating poor implementation. Also, the fact that a countermeasure is being evaluated usually gets the attention of those implementing it, so that it is likely to be done well. *The countermeasure effectiveness data presented in this guide probably show the maximum effect that can be realized with high-quality implementation*. Many countermeasures have not been evaluated well or at all, as noted in the effectiveness data. Effectiveness ratings are based primarily on demonstrated reductions in crashes; however, changes in behavior and knowledge are taken into account in the ratings when crash information is not available.

**NCHRP Guides:** The National Cooperative Highway Research Program is developing a series of guides for State Departments of Transportation to use in implementing the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials Strategic Highway Safety Plan. This guide draws heavily on the published NCHRP guides and on several draft guides. It differs from the NCHRP guides because it is written for SHSOs, contains only behavioral countermeasures, and is considerably more concise. Readers are urged to consult the NCHRP guides relevant to their interests. They are available at www.trb.org/Publications/PubsNCHRPProjectReportsAll.aspx.

NCHRP has also developed a framework for estimating the costs and benefits associated with behavioral countermeasures. Each countermeasure included in *Countermeasures That Work* was reviewed and the potential savings of the countermeasures were projected. The subsequent report

was designed to help States select countermeasures that will result in the greatest reduction in crashes, injuries, and fatalities, available at www.cmfclearinghouse.org/collateral/NCHRP_Report_622.pdf.

**Cochrane Reviews:** Several chapters cite Cochrane Reviews. The Cochrane Collaboration is a nonprofit organization that produces and disseminates systematic reviews of the effects of healthcare interventions. The database of reviews is published quarterly as part of the Cochrane Library. More information about Cochrane Reviews can be found at www.cochrane.org/.

**Disclaimers:** As with any attempt to summarize a large amount of sometimes-conflicting information, this guide is highly subjective. All statements, judgments, omissions, and errors are solely the responsibility of the authors and do not necessarily represent the views of NHTSA. Users who disagree with any statement or who wish to add information or key references are invited to send their comments and suggestions for future editions (see bottom of page x for details).

New traffic safety programs and research appear almost weekly and sometimes daily. Websites change frequently. This means that this guide was out-of-date even before it was published. Readers interested in a specific problem area or countermeasure are urged to contact NHTSA for up-to-date information.

**Abbreviations, Acronyms, and Initialisms Used**

- AAA: was the American Automobile Association but now uses only the initials
- AAAFTS: AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety
- AAMVA: American Association of Motor Vehicle Administrators
- AARP: was the American Association of Retired Persons but now uses only the initials
- AASHTO: American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
- ADTSEA: American Driver and Traffic Safety Education Association
- ALR: administrative license revocation
- ALS: administrative license suspension
- AMA: American Medical Association
- ASA: American Society on Aging
- BAC: blood alcohol concentration, measured in grams per deciliter (g/dL)
- BrAC: breath alcohol concentration, measured in grams per 210 liters of breath (g/210L)
- CDC: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
- CIOT: NHTSA's *Click It or Ticket* high-visibility seat belt enforcement campaign
- CPS: child passenger safety
- CPSC: Consumer Product Safety Commission
- CTIA: Cellular Telecommunications and Internet Association
- DOT: Department of Transportation (Federal or State)
- DUID: driving under the influence of drugs
- DWI: driving while impaired or intoxicated, and also often includes DUI, driving under the influence
- DWS: driving while [driver's license is] suspended

- FHWA: Federal Highway Administration
- FMCSA: Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration
- FMVSS: Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards
- GDL: graduated driver licensing
- GHSA: Governors Highway Safety Association
- HVE: high-visibility enforcement
- HOS: hours of service
- IIHS: Insurance Institute for Highway Safety
- IACP: International Association of Chiefs of Police
- ITS: Intelligent Transportation Systems
- LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children
- LEA: law enforcement agency
- LEO: law enforcement officer
- MAB: medical advisory board
- MADD: Mothers Against Drunk Driving
- MSF: Motorcycle Safety Foundation
- NCHRP: National Cooperative Highway Research Program
- NCSDR: National Center for Sleep Disorders Research
- NCUTLO: National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances [disbanded]
- NHTSA: National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
- NIAAA: National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (a branch of NIH)
- NIH: National Institutes of Health
- NMSL: National Maximum Speed Limit
- NCRUSS: The National Child Restraint Use Special Study. A NHTSA observational study of the use of car seats and booster seats for child passengers.
- NSC: National Safety Council
- NSF: National Sleep Foundation
- NTSB: National Transportation Safety Board
- PAS: passive alcohol sensor, a device to detect alcohol in the air near a driver's face, used to estimate whether the driver has been drinking
- PBT: preliminary breath test device, a small handheld alcohol sensor used to estimate or measure a driver's BrAC
- SFST: Standardized Field Sobriety Tests
- SHSO: State Highway Safety Office
- SMSA: National Association of State Motorcycle Safety Administrators
- STEP: Selective Traffic Enforcement Program
- THC: delta-9 tetrahydrocannabinol, the psychoactive constituent in cannabis. The THC metabolite, hydroxy-THC, is also psychoactive.
- TIRF: Traffic Injury Research Foundation
- TRB: Transportation Research Board
- UVC: Uniform Vehicle Code

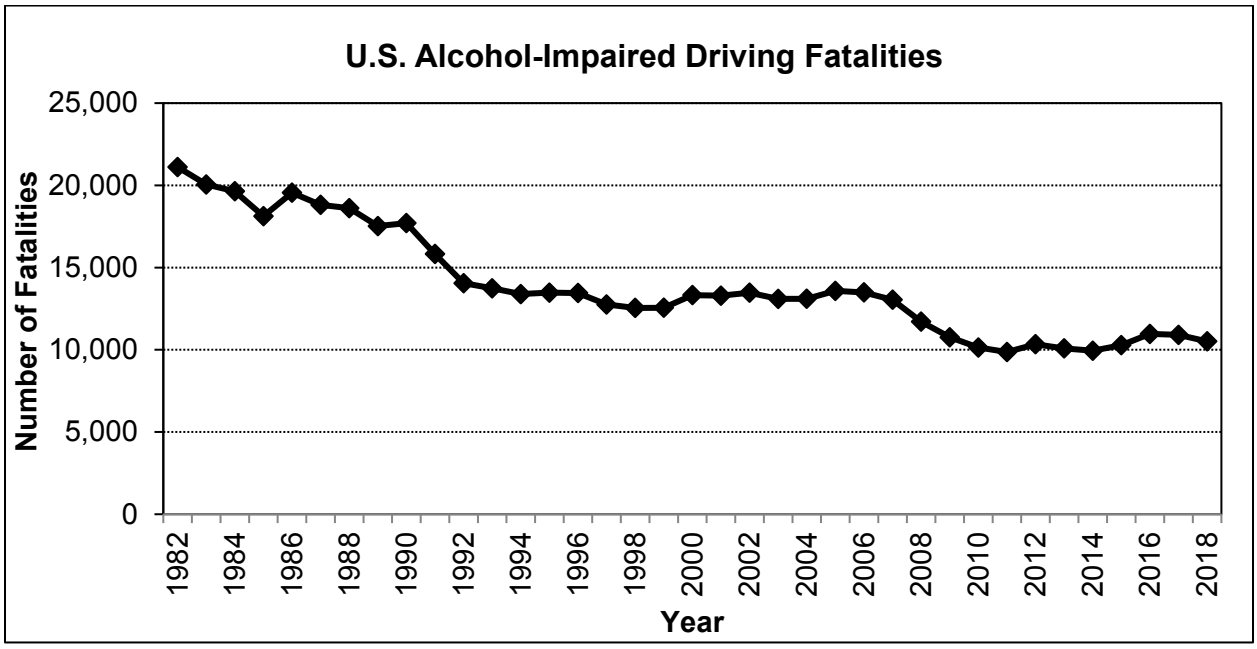
# 1. Alcohol- and Drug-Impaired Driving

## Overview

In 2018 there were 10,511 people killed in crashes involving alcohol-impaired drivers (defined as drivers or motorcycle riders with blood alcohol concentrations of ≥.08 g/dL). This is a decrease of 3.6% from the 10,908 fatalities in 2017 (NCSA, 2019). Fatalities in crashes involving alcohol-impaired drivers continue to represent almost one-third (29%) of the total motor vehicle fatalities in the United States. See also NHTSA's most recent *State Alcohol-Impaired-Driving Estimates Traffic Safety Facts* (NCSA, 2020a) for additional national and State data.

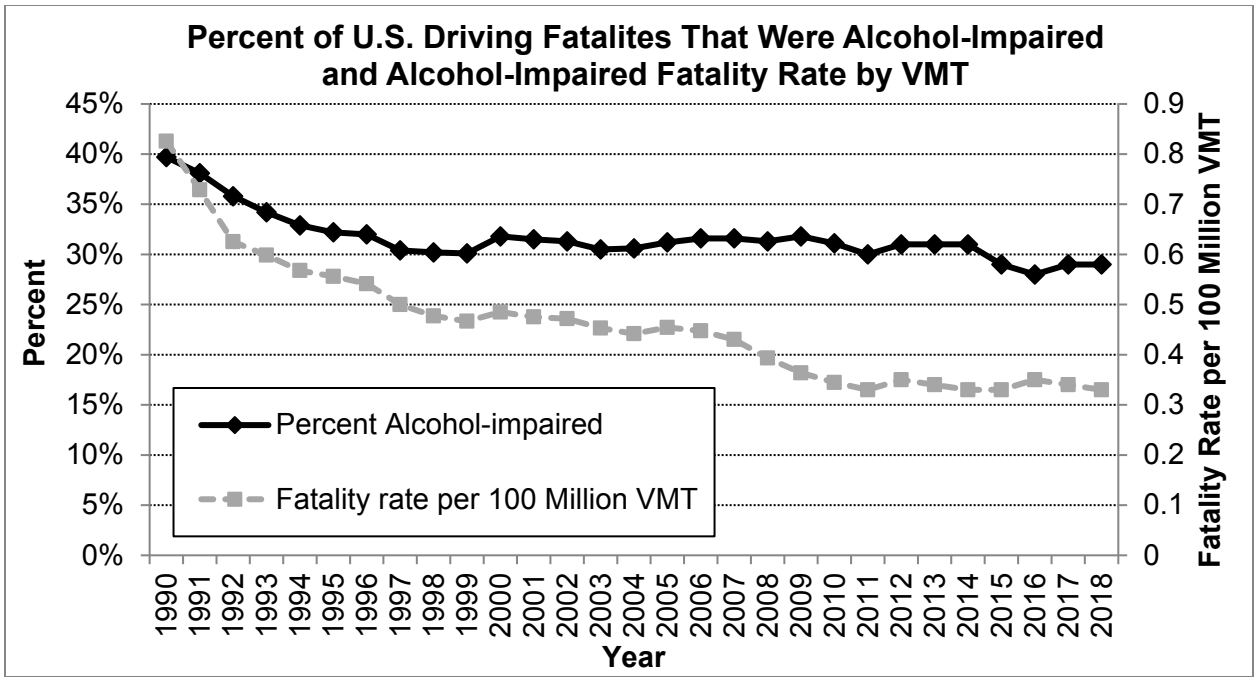
**Trends.** Alcohol-impaired driving steadily decreased from the early 1980s to the mid-1990s. A study showed that much of this decrease could be attributed to alcohol-related legislation (e.g., .08 BAC, administrative license revocation, and minimum drinking age laws) and to demographic trends (e.g., population aging and the increased proportion of female drivers; Dang, 2008). However, substantial public attention during this period to the issue of alcohol-impaired driving included the growth of grassroots organizations such as Mothers Against Drunk Driving and Remove Intoxicated Drivers, increased Federal programs and funding, State task forces, and increased enforcement and intensive publicity, which combined to help address this critical traffic safety problem.

Alcohol-impaired-driving fatalities changed very little from 1992 to 2007 as the chart shows, but began declining from 2008 to 2011, likely due in part to the economic recession during that period. Alcohol-impaired-driving fatalities decreased 2% from 2009 to 2018 (NCSA, 2019).




Source: NHTSA - FARS (1982-2018), NCSA (2019)

The next chart shows the *rate* of alcohol-impaired-driving fatalities, based on vehicle miles traveled, also declined noticeably over the last two decades. However, the percentage of U.S. fatalities that involved alcohol-impaired driving decreased only slightly during this time (NCSA, 2019).



Source: NHTSA - FARS (1990-2018), NCSA (2019)

Older teens have shown a sizeable decrease in alcohol-related traffic fatalities. From 2009 to 2018 the percentage of fatally injured drivers 16 to 18 years old with positive BACs (.01 g/dL or higher) decreased by 27% (NCSA, 2020b). Self-reported drinking and driving among high school students has also declined. In 1991 some 22% of high school students reported drinking and driving in the past 30 days, compared to just 10% of high school students in 2011 (CDC, 2012). Since 2011 the percentage of high school students who self-reported drinking and driving has further decreased to 5.5% in 2017 (CDC, 2018). Note that most States implemented graduated driver licensing systems during this time period. GDL systems have substantially reduced the crash risk of young, beginning drivers. (For more information on young drivers and GDL, see Chapter 6.)

**Drinking-and-driving characteristics.** Half (52%) of U.S. adults can be considered "regular" drinkers; that is, they have consumed at least 12 drinks during the past year, according to the CDC (2014). Drivers with BACs of .08 g/dL or higher make an estimated 112 million trips annually (CDC, 2011). Studies show drivers with BACs over .08 are arrested once for every 80 trips they make (Ferguson, 2012). The 2013-2014 National Roadside Survey found 8.3% of drivers on weekend nights have positive BACs, while 1.5% have BACs of .08 g/dL or higher (Berning et al., 2015). This is a significant reduction from 2007, when 12.4% of drivers had positive BACs and 2.2% had BACs of .08 g/dL or higher. The percentage of drivers drinking on weekend nights has fallen dramatically since the first National Roadside Survey in 1973, which found that 35.9% of drivers had positive BACs and 7.5% of drivers had BACs of .08 g/dL or higher (Berning et al., 2015).

NHTSA surveyed approximately 7,000 people in 2008 about attitudes and behaviors related to drinking and driving (Moulton et al., 2010). Twenty percent reported they had driven within 2 hours of drinking alcohol in the past year. Males, college graduates, and full-time employees were more likely than their respective counterparts to report driving after drinking. Similarly, an AAA Foundation survey of 2,613 U.S. residents conducted in 2017 found that 94% believe it is unacceptable to drink and drive. Nonetheless, 14% reported they had driven when they may have been close to or above the illegal limit in the previous year (AAAFTS, 2018a).

Alcohol-impaired drivers include both occasional drinkers who may drive after drinking too much, as well as persistent offenders who regularly drive while impaired. Impaired drivers are "high risk" if they have high BACs, prior convictions, or alcohol abuse problems. For example, among drivers involved in fatal crashes during 2018 with positive BACs (.01 g/dL or higher), 55% had BACs at or above .15 g/dL (NCSA, 2019), almost twice the legal limit. Additionally, one-quarter of all drivers arrested for impaired driving and 30% of drivers convicted of impaired driving have prior DWI convictions (Warren-Kigenyi & Coleman, 2014). In 2018 some 8% of drivers with BACs of .08 g/dL or above involved in fatal motor vehicle crashes had been convicted of DWI in the previous 5 years, compared to 2% of sober drivers (NCSA, 2019).

Several external factors that affect alcohol-impaired-driving fatalities include geography, urbanization, road structure and conditions, and economic activity, as well as State laws and programs. For these reasons the current level of alcohol-impaired driving and the progress in reducing alcohol-impaired driving vary greatly from State to State. For example, the proportion of traffic fatalities that involve drivers with BACs of .08 g/dL or higher in 2018 ranged from 19% in the lowest States (Kentucky and West Virginia) to 43% in the highest (Montana) (NCSA, 2019).

**Drug-impaired-driving characteristics.** Historically, there has been less research on drug-impaired driving compared to alcohol-impaired driving. Factors contributing to the increased interest include decriminalization and legalization of marijuana in many States. In January 2018 NHTSA launched the Drug-Impaired Driving Initiative with the aim of engaging stakeholders in addressing the problems of drug-impaired driving (NHTSA, 2018a). Stakeholders including law enforcement, prosecutors, judicial professionals, National, State, and community agencies and organizations, and policy experts engaged in dialogue to identify countermeasures to reduce drug-impaired driving. NHTSA's Drug-Impaired Driving Kickoff Summit in March 2018 collected the best ideas and approaches to address drug-impairment by focusing on community-specific issues (NHTSA, 2018b). IIHS hosted a *How do we move the needle?: Combating alcohol- and drug-impaired driving* conference in 2018 (IIHS, 2018).

Driving after marijuana use might be more prevalent among high school students than drunk driving. The 2017 High School Youth Risk Behaviors Survey reported that 13% of all respondents admitted to driving one or more times after using marijuana during the 30 days before the survey, in contrast with only 5.5% who reported driving after drinking (CDC, 2018).

A 2017 survey found that 91% of the respondents consider driving after using illegal drugs to be a personal safety threat (AAA, 2018a). However, three roadside surveys found some drivers have

detectable levels of one or more drugs in their systems. The NHTSA 2013-2014 National Roadside Survey collected voluntary and anonymous oral fluid samples from 7,881 drivers and blood samples from 4,686 drivers across the United States (Berning et al., 2015). Among weekend nighttime drivers who provided samples:

- 15.2% tested positive for the presence of illegal drugs;
- 7.3% tested positive for the presence of prescription or over-the-counter medications; and
- 12.6% tested positive for THC and/or its active metabolites, a 48% increase from the 2007 NRS. (Testing positive for THC does not necessarily imply impairment, since THC can be detected in the blood weeks after psychoactive effects have ended.)

A follow-up analysis of the same data found that prescription or over-the-counter (OTC) medication use was prevalent in about 10.7% of daytime drivers and 7.4% of nighttime drivers (Kelley-Baker et al., 2017). An additional 2.3% of daytime drivers and 2.0% of nighttime drivers tested positive for both OTC medication and other illegal substances.

Another NHTSA study examined the prevalence of drivers testing positive for THC and other drugs in Washington State in an anonymous roadside survey collecting voluntary breath, oral fluid, and blood samples from 2,400 drivers (Ramirez et al., 2016). Washington State's Initiative 502 legalized recreational marijuana use in November 2012; a per se limit for driving under the influence of marijuana became effective December 6, 2012. The survey, conducted before and after legalization, involved three data collection waves that occurred 1 month prior, 5 months after, and 11 months after implementation of legal sales. Positive THC measurements were recorded in 14.6%, 19.4%, and 21.4% of drivers in Waves 1, 2, and 3. This increasing trend was not statistically significant across waves. However, there was a statistically significant increase in daytime prevalence of THC-positive drivers between Wave 1 (7.8%) and Wave 2 (18.4%), and also between Wave 1 and Wave 3 (18.9%). This contrasts with findings for nighttime driving, where the percentage of THC-positive nighttime drivers increased with each successive wave, however, increases were not statistically significant.

Banta-Green et al. (2016) studied the prevalence of marijuana use as reported by blood testing among drivers arrested in DUI collisions or violations in Washington State. From 2005 to 2014 the proportion of DUI cases involving THC increased, as did increases in the level of THC detected. However, when positive alcohol cases were excluded, there were no significant increases in THC related to the introduction of Initiative 502 in 2012. The THC blood level for the population under study was estimated to decline 5 ng/mL on average during the first 120 minutes from contact with the police; however, the median time for blood draw in THC-positive drivers was 139 minutes. Logistical delays in blood testing may lead to underestimation of the prevalence of drugged driving and difficulty in its enforcement, particularly in relation to the per se limit (5 ng/mL). Drivers arrested for involvement in collisions or because of suspected DUI violation were most commonly under the influence of alcohol and above the illegal BAC limit of .08 g/dL (53% and 30%, respectively). Furthermore, 7% of those in collisions and 20% of those suspected of violations had THC levels that met or exceeded the per se limit. Logan et al. (2016) evaluated if quantitative thresholds (per se limits) could establish driver impairment from marijuana use. DRE evaluations and toxicology tests established baseline impairment status. Logan's group found no evidence of an objective quantitative threshold that establishes marijuana impairment status for per se laws.

Another study in Washington State by Tefft et al. (2016) reported that 10% of all drivers involved in fatal crashes between 2010 and 2014 had detectable THC in their blood. Among these THC-positive drivers, 34% had neither alcohol nor other commonly tested drugs, 39% had detectable alcohol in addition to THC, 16.5% had other drugs with THC, and 10.5% had alcohol, other drugs, and THC in their blood at or shortly after the time of crash. Despite these numbers, it is difficult to determine the real crash risk associated with THC use given that drug presence and not impairment was tested.

A study conducted in Virginia Beach, Virginia, estimated the relative crash risk of alcohol- and drug-positive driving (Compton & Berning, 2015). BrACs were obtained from 10,221 drivers, oral fluid samples from 9,285 drivers, and BAC samples from 1,764 drivers. A statistically significant increase in unadjusted crash risk was found for drivers who tested positive for use of illegal drugs (1.21 times), and THC specifically (1.25 times). However, after adjusting for factors known to be associated with crash risk (age, gender, ethnicity, and BAC level) there was no longer statistical evidence of increased crash risk associated with any drugs, including illegal drugs and THC. This finding indicates these other variables (age, gender, ethnicity, and alcohol use) account for much of the increased risk associated with the use of illegal drugs and with THC. In contrast, this study found large, statistically significant associations between driver alcohol level and crash risk both before and after adjustment for demographic factors.

Almost one-third of respondents in a national survey of drivers 18 and older contacted from 2013 to 2015 reported they were unaware of how driving within an hour of marijuana use affects crash risk (Arnold & Tefft, 2016). Another 9.8% believed that crash risk was either unaffected or decreased when driving under the influence of marijuana; these drivers also reported they were more likely to drive within an hour of marijuana use. Notably, less than half (48.5%) of the drivers in States with per se DUI marijuana laws were aware of the laws.

Keep in mind a positive drug test does not necessarily indicate "impairment." The level of drugs detected may have been too low to be impairing. Many drugs can be detected in oral or blood tests long after their effects have diminished. For example, marijuana can be detected for 30 days or longer among heavy users (CLR, 2020).

Although some countries such as Sweden and Finland have carefully tracked the prevalence of driving under the influence of drugs (Ojaniemi et al., 2009), little is known about trends in drug-impaired driving in the United States. One study from Washington State found a significant increase in methamphetamine use among fatally injured drivers from 1992 to 2002 (Schwilke et al., 2006). In part, this likely reflects larger trends across the nation in the drug's popularity.

Data regarding drug use and crashes are limited, and there are important shortcomings in FARS data used to track drug-related driving fatalities. Specifically, a NHTSA Research Note described the key methodological and data limitations of FARS drug test information and reporting (Berning & Smither, 2014; see also Compton et al., 2009). These limitations include:

- Only a minority of drivers are tested for drugs (e.g., only 42% of drivers involved in fatal crashes were tested in 2014; NHTSA - FARS data file);
- Testing rates are higher for drivers who died in crashes (65% in 2014) compared to surviving drivers (22% in 2014);

- In addition to those tested for drugs and not tested for drugs, there are a small subset (6% in 2015), but significant number of drivers for which it is unknown if they were tested for drugs;
- Testing positive for a drug indicates the presence of the drug in the driver's system, but it does not necessarily indicate that the driver was impaired at the time of the crash;
- There is no consistent set of policies or procedures for drug testing across States, which leads to variation in the drivers and drugs tested, in addition to the types of tests, cut-off levels, and equipment used;[1]
- Decreases in the cost of drug testing may have led to increases in the number of people tested, as well as the range of drug types tested; and
- The more drivers tested, the more drugs will be detected.

Although drugs are often detected among drivers involved in crashes, this does not necessarily imply that drug impairment played a causal role in the crash. Not all testing is comprehensive in that some drugs may not be detected either because the tests are insufficiently sensitive or the right tests are not conducted despite other evidence of a drug being present. Currently, the evidence is mixed on whether cannabis and benzodiazepines increase crash risk, and fewer studies have examined the risks associated with stimulants, opioids, and other drugs (Stewart, 2006; Elvik, 2013).

## Strategies to Reduce Impaired Driving

Four basic strategies are used to reduce impaired-driving crashes and driving under the influence.

- Deterrence: enact, publicize, enforce, and adjudicate laws prohibiting impaired driving so people choose not to drive impaired;
- Prevention: reduce drinking and drug use and keep impaired drivers from driving;
- Communications and outreach: inform the public of the dangers of impaired driving and establish positive social norms that make driving while impaired unacceptable; and
- Alcohol and drug treatment: reduce alcohol and drug dependency or addiction among drivers.

Impaired-driving deterrence countermeasures are divided into four sections in this chapter: (1) laws, (2) enforcement, (3) prosecution and adjudication, and (4) offender treatment, monitoring, and control. Prevention, intervention, communications, and outreach countermeasures are combined in a single section. Finally, the Underage Drinking and Drinking section includes deterrence, prevention, and communications measures specific to this age group.

This chapter also briefly considers countermeasures to address drugs other than alcohol. Drugs pose quite different and difficult issues at every step, from estimating their prevalence and effect

[1] Some law enforcement officers are trained to become "DREs," drug recognition experts. DREs use a tool called the Drug Influence Evaluation Matrix which divides drugs into seven categories: central nervous system depressants (including alcohol), central nervous system stimulants, hallucinogens, dissociative anesthetics, narcotic analgesics, inhalants, and cannabis (marijuana). DRE training notes the extremely wide variability in how these drugs impair people, signs and symptoms associated with impairment, difficulty in recognizing the signs and symptoms associated with the use of a single drug, and use of several drugs at the same time ("polydrug" use), among many other topics. Impairing drugs may be taken illegally, legally prescribed, and may be sold over-the-counter.

on driving, to developing effective laws and strategies for enforcement, prevention, and treatment. However, many countermeasures to address alcohol-impaired driving may also deter drug-impaired driving.

Many other traffic safety countermeasures help reduce alcohol- and drug-impaired driving-related crashes and casualties, but are not discussed in this chapter. Some vehicular strategies may help detect or prevent impaired driving. For example, NHTSA has studied the feasibility of using vehicle-based sensors to detect alcohol-impaired drivers (Lee et al., 2010). The Driver Alcohol Detection System for Safety (DADSS; see www.dadss.org/) program is a collaborative research partnership between the automotive industry and NHTSA to assess and develop alcohol-detection technologies to prevent vehicles from being driven when driver BACs exceed the illegal limit of .08 g/dL. There are also many environmental countermeasures such as improved vehicle structures and centerline rumble strips and barriers that may reduce the likelihood of crashes and/or injuries sustained by impaired drivers and passengers. However, vehicular and environmental countermeasures are not included in this chapter because State Highway Safety Offices have little or no authority or responsibility for them. These typically come under the jurisdiction of local, State, or Federal highway departments.

## Resources

The agencies and organizations below have more information on impaired driving and links to numerous other resources.

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration:
  - Drunk Driving – www.nhtsa.gov/risky-driving/drunk-driving
  - Drugged Driving – www.nhtsa.gov/risky-driving/drug-impaired-driving
  - Risky Driving – www.nhtsa.gov/risky-driving
  - Behavioral Safety Research Reports – https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: www.cdc.gov/MotorVehicleSafety/Impaired_Driving/impaired-drv_factsheet.html
- Office of National Drug Control Policy: www.whitehouse.gov/ondcp/
- American Automobile Association: https://duijusticelink.aaa.com/for-the-public
- Governors Highway Safety Association: www.ghsa.org/issues/alcohol-impaired-driving
- International Association of Chiefs of Police: www.theiacp.org/
- Insurance Institute for Highway Safety: www.iihs.org/topics/alcohol-and-drugs
- Mothers Against Drunk Driving: www.madd.org
- National Conference of State Legislatures: www.ncsl.org/research/transportation/drunken-impaired-driving
- National Safety Council: www.nsc.org/safety_road/DriverSafety/Pages/ImpairedDriving.aspx
- National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism: www.niaaa.nih.gov
- National Institute on Drug Abuse: www.drugabuse.gov
- Traffic Injury Research Foundation: www.tirf.ca

For overviews of alcohol-impaired-driving prevalence, risks, legislation, research, and recommended strategies, see the following.

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration:
  - *Alcohol and Highway Safety 2006: A Review of the State of Knowledge* (Voas & Lacey, 2011)
  - *Compendium of Traffic Safety Research Projects 1985-2013* (Agimi et al., 2014)
  - *Digest of Impaired Driving and Selected Beverage Control Laws* (NHTSA, 2017)
- National Cooperative Highway Research Program: *A Guide for Reducing Alcohol-Related Collisions* (Stutts et al., 2005)
- National Conference of State Legislatures (NCSL): Alcohol Impaired and Drunken Driving webpage: www.ncsl.org/research/transportation/drunken-impaired-driving.aspx
- Transportation Research Board's Alcohol, Other Drugs, and Transportation Committee's e-Circular (TRB, 2013)
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: www.thecommunityguide.org

For information on the prevalence, State laws, known risks, and current strategies against drug-impaired driving, see the following.

- *Impact of the Legalization and Decriminalization of Marijuana on the DWI System* (NHTSA, GHSA, & Volpe National Transportation Center, 2017) from NHTSA, GHSA, and Volpe

- *Marijuana-Impaired Driving: A Report to Congress* (Compton, 2017) from NHTSA
- *2016 Digest of State Laws: Driving Under the Influence of Drugs, 1st Edition* (Boddie & O'Brien, 2018) from GHSA and NHTSA

**Key terms**

- BAC: blood alcohol concentration in the body, expressed in grams of alcohol per deciliter (g/dL) of blood, usually measured with a breath or blood test
- BrAC: breath alcohol concentration (breath tests use a different measuring scale from blood tests, but are often "converted" to BAC terminology, such as ".08" or ".08 g/dL"
- DUID: driving under the influence of drugs
- DRE: drug recognition expert, a law enforcement officer trained in identifying drivers who are drug-impaired
- DWI: the offense of driving while impaired by alcohol or drugs. In different States the offense may be called driving while intoxicated, driving under the influence (DUI), or other similar terms
- Ignition interlock: a breathalyzer installed into a vehicle that prevents the vehicle from being started if the driver's BrAC is above a specified limit
- Illegal per se law: A law that makes it an offense to operate a motor vehicle with a BAC at or above a specified level, and/or under the influence of drugs
- MADD: Mothers Against Drunk Driving
- PAS: passive alcohol sensor, a device to detect alcohol presence in the air near a driver's face, used to estimate whether the driver has been drinking
- PBT: preliminary breath test device, a small handheld alcohol sensor used to estimate or measure a driver's BrAC
- SFST: Standardized Field Sobriety Test, a battery of three tests (one-leg stand, walk-and-turn, and horizontal gaze nystagmus) used by law enforcement at the roadside to estimate whether a driver is at or above the illegal limit of .08 g/dL BAC
- THC: delta-9 tetrahydrocannabinol, the psychoactive constituent in cannabis. The THC metabolite, hydroxy-THC, is also psychoactive.

# Alcohol- and Drug-Impaired-Driving Countermeasures

The first six sections address alcohol-impaired driving and the last section deals specifically with drug-impaired driving. Countermeasures to reduce alcohol- and drug-impaired driving are listed in the table below, providing a rough estimate of each countermeasure's effectiveness, use, cost, and time required for implementation. Effectiveness is shown using a five-star rating system.

- Countermeasures that receive ★★★★ or ★★★★★ have been determined to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ★★★ are considered promising, and likely to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States, communities, and other organizations are encouraged to use ★★★ and especially ★★★★ or ★★★★★ countermeasures. They should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, as conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to evaluate the countermeasure.

Further details about the symbols and terms used are included after the table. Effectiveness, cost, and time to implement can vary substantially from State to State and community to community. Costs for many countermeasures are difficult to measure, so the summary terms are very approximate.

Each countermeasure to reduce alcohol- and drug-impaired driving is discussed individually. Full descriptions are included for ★★★, ★★★★, and ★★★★★ countermeasures. Brief descriptions are included for ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Further details about the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures are included in Appendix A1.

### 1. Deterrence: Laws

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 Administrative License Revocation or Suspension (ALR/ALS) | ★★★★★ | $$$ | High | Medium |
| 1.2 Open Container | ★★★ | $ | High | Short |
| 1.3 High-BAC Sanctions | ★★★ | $ | Medium | Short |
| 1.4 BAC Test Refusal Penalties | ★★★ | $ | Unknown | Short |
| 1.5 Alcohol-Impaired Driving Law Review | ☆☆ | $$ | Unknown | Medium |

## 2. Deterrence: Enforcement

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 Publicized Sobriety Checkpoints | ★★★★★ | $$$ | Medium | Short |
| 2.2 High-Visibility Saturation Patrols | ★★★★ | $$ | High | Short |
| 2.3 Preliminary Breath Test Devices† | ★★★★ | $$ | High | Short |
| 2.4 Passive Alcohol Sensors†† | ★★★★ | $$ | Unknown | Short |
| 2.5 Integrated Enforcement | ★★★ | $ | Unknown | Short |

† Proven for increasing arrests
†† Proven for detecting impaired drivers

## 3. Deterrence: Prosecution and Adjudication

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 DWI Courts† | ★★★★ | $$$ | Low | Medium |
| 3.2 Limits on Diversion & Plea Agreements†† | ★★★★ | $ | Medium | Short |
| 3.3 Court Monitoring†† | ★★★ | $ | Low | Short |
| 3.4 Sanctions | ☆☆ | Varies | Varies | Varies |

† Proven for reducing recidivism
†† Proven for increasing conviction

## 4. Deterrence: DWI Offender Treatment, Monitoring, and Control

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4.1 Alcohol Problem Assessment and Treatment | ★★★★★ | Varies | High | Varies |
| 4.2 Alcohol Ignition Interlocks† | ★★★★★ | $$ | Medium | Medium |
| 4.3 Vehicle and License Plate Sanctions† | ★★★★ | Varies | Medium | Medium |
| 4.4 DWI Offender Monitoring† | ★★★★ | $$$ | Unknown | Varies |
| 4.5 Lower BAC Limit for Repeat Offenders | ★★★★ | $ | Low | Short |

† Proven for reducing recidivism

## 5. Prevention, Intervention, Communications and Outreach

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5.1 Alcohol Screening and Brief intervention | ★★★★★ | $$ | Medium | Short |
| 5.2 Mass-Media Campaigns | ★★★ | $$$ | High | Medium |
| 5.3 Responsible Beverage Service | ☆☆ | $$ | Medium | Medium |
| 5.4 Alternative Transportation | ★★★ | $$ | Unknown | Short |
| 5.5 Designated Drivers | ☆☆ | $ | Medium | Short |

## 6. Underage Drinking and Drinking and Driving

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6.1 Minimum Drinking Age 21 Laws | ★★★★★ | $$$ | High | Low |
| 6.2 Zero-Tolerance Law Enforcement | ★★★ | $ | Unknown | Short |
| 6.3 Alcohol Vendor Compliance Checks† | ★★★ | $$ | Unknown | Short |
| 6.4 Other Minimum Legal Drinking Age 21 Law Enforcement | ★★★ | $$ | Varies | Varies |
| 6.5 Youth Programs | ☆☆ | Varies | High | Medium |

† Proven for reducing sales to underage people

## 7. Drug-Impaired Driving

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7.1 Enforcement of Drug-Impaired Driving | ★★★ | $$ | Unknown | Short |
| 7.2 Drug-Impaired-Driving Laws | ☆ | Unknown | Medium† | Short |
| 7.3 Education Regarding Medication | ☆ | Unknown | Unknown | Long |

† Use for drug per se laws

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ★★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective by several high-quality evaluations with consistent results |
| ★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective in certain situations |
| ★★★ | Likely to be effective based on balance of evidence from high-quality evaluations or other sources |
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## Deterrence

Deterrence means enacting laws that prohibit impaired driving, publicizing and enforcing those laws, and punishing offenders. Deterrence works by changing behavior through fear of apprehension and punishment. If drivers believe their impaired driving is likely to be detected and they are likely to be arrested, convicted, and punished, many will not drive impaired by alcohol. This strategy, called *general deterrence*, influences the general driving public. Examples include well-publicized and highly visible enforcement such as sobriety checkpoints. In contrast, *specific deterrence* refers to efforts to influence drivers who have been arrested for impaired driving so they will not continue to drive impaired. Examples include ignition interlocks and vehicle sanctions for DWI offenders. Although most of this discussion relates to alcohol-impaired driving, much could be applied to drug-impaired driving as well.

Deterrence works when consequences are swift, sure, and severe (with swift and sure being more important in affecting behavior than severe). All States have basic laws in place to define impaired driving, set illegal per se limits at .08 g/dL BAC (Utah went to .05 g/dL BAC on December 30, 2018), and provide standard penalties.

Deterrence, however, is far from straightforward, and complexities can limit the success of deterrence measures. For instance:

- Detecting alcohol-impaired drivers is difficult. Law enforcement agencies have limited resources and except at checkpoints officers must observe traffic violations or other aberrant behavior before they can stop motorists.
- Conviction also may be difficult. DWI laws are complicated; the evidence needed to define and demonstrate impairment is complex; and judges or juries may not impose specified penalties if they believe the penalties are too severe.
- The DWI control system is complex. There are many opportunities for breakdowns in the system that allow impaired drivers to go unaddressed.

**DWI control system operations and management.** The DWI control system consists of a set of laws together with the enforcement, prosecution, adjudication, and offender monitoring policies and programs to support the laws. In this complicated system, the operations of each component affect all the other components. Each new policy, law, or program affects operations throughout the system, often in ways that are not anticipated.

This guide documents 19 specific impaired-driving countermeasures in the deterrence section, in four groups: laws; enforcement; prosecution and adjudication; and offender treatment, monitoring, and supervision. But the overall DWI control system, including its management and leadership, is more important than any individual countermeasure.

Studies have highlighted the key characteristics of efficient and effective DWI control systems (Hedlund & McCartt, 2002; Robertson & Simpson, 2003):

- training and education for law enforcement, prosecutors, judges, and probation officers;
- record systems that are accurate, up-to-date, easily accessible, and able to track each DWI offender from arrest through completion of all sentence requirements;
- adequate resources for staff, facilities, training, equipment, and new technology; and

- coordination and cooperation in and across all components.

Some countermeasures discussed in this chapter, such as BAC Test Refusal Penalties (Section 1.4), Alcohol-Impaired-Driving Law Review (Section 1.5), and DWI courts (Section 3.1), are directed at improving DWI system operations. In some instances, the most important action that SHSOs can take to reduce alcohol-impaired driving is to review and improve DWI control system operations, perhaps using State DWI task forces and/or State impaired-driving program assessments.

Ulmer et al. (1999) investigated why some States reduced alcohol-related traffic fatalities more than others. They concluded that there is no "silver bullet," no single critical law, enforcement practice, or communications strategy. Once a State has effective laws, high-visibility enforcement, and substantial communications and outreach to support them, the critical factors are strong leadership, commitment to reducing impaired driving, and adequate funding. Although two decades have passed, the basic findings of the Ulmer group are still applicable. SHSOs should keep this in mind as they consider the specific countermeasures in this chapter.

## 1. Deterrence: Laws

### 1.1 Administrative License Revocation or Suspension

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $$$ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

Administrative license revocation or suspension (ALR or ALS) laws allow law enforcement and driver licensing authorities to suspend driver licenses if drivers fail or refuse to take BAC tests. Administrative license revocation laws are similar, except the offender must re-apply for a license once the suspension period ends. Usually the arresting officer takes the license when a BAC test is failed or refused. The driver typically receives a temporary license allowing the driver time to make other transportation arrangements and to request and receive an administrative hearing or review. In most jurisdictions, offenders may obtain occupational or hardship licenses during part or all the revocation or suspension periods (NHTSA, 2008a). NHTSA recommends that ALR laws include a minimum license suspension of 90 days (NHTSA, 2006a). The National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances (NCUTLO, 2000) has a model of an ALR law.

ALR and ALS laws provide for swift and certain penalties for DWI, rather than the lengthy and uncertain outcomes of criminal courts. They also protect the driving public by removing some DWI offenders from the road (but see the discussion of driving with a suspended license, under "other issues," below). More information about ALR laws can be found in the NCHRP guide on reducing impaired-driving (Goodwin et al., 2005, Strategy C1) and NHTSA's *Traffic Safety Facts* on ALR (NHTSA, 2008a).

**Use:** As of July 2019 there were 44 States and the District of Columbia that had some form of ALR or ALS law for first offenses (GHSA, 2019). Thirty-eight States had minimum license suspensions of at least 90 days, as recommended by NHTSA (GHSA, 2019).

**Effectiveness:** Many States have had ALR and ALS laws in place for decades, and much of the research examining their effectiveness is now dated. For example, a summary of 12 evaluations through 1991 found ALR and ALS laws reduced crashes of different types by an average of 13% (Wagenaar et al., 2000). A more recent study examining the long-term effects of license suspension policies across the United States concluded that ALR reduces alcohol-related fatal crash involvement by 5%, saving an estimated 800 lives each year (Wagenaar & Maldonado-Molina, 2007). See DeYoung (2013a) for a review of the research on the effectiveness of ALR/ALS laws.

Drivers are less likely to commit offenses when they believe sanctions will be certain and swift (Wright, 2010; Nagin & Pogarsky, 2006). A study in Ontario, Canada, found a 17% decrease in fatalities and injuries after enactment of a law that required immediate roadside license suspensions for driving with BACs in the range of .05 to .08 g/dL, which was in addition to existing sanctions for BACs above .08 g/dL (Byrne et al., 2016). Furthermore, a companion study of the same law found that an immediate 7-day impoundment of driver vehicles resulted in a 33% decrease in drivers who were caught violating court-mandated 90-day suspensions. The 7-day impoundment also reduced recidivism in the following 3-month period by 29%.

Fell & Scherer (2017) found that States with ALR laws, irrespective of the duration, had a 13.1% decrease in the drinking driver ratios (ratio of drivers with BAC ≥ .01 g/dL to drivers with BAC = .00 g/dL) involved in fatal crashes. The effectiveness of ALR was found to be influenced by the length of the ALR suspension period. Increases in States' ALR laws for suspension duration were associated with decreases in drinking driver ratios among drivers without prior DWI records involved in fatal crashes. Thus, ALR seems to have a general deterrent effect on impaired driving. States with ALR suspension periods longer than 90 days had significantly lower drinking driver ratios than States with shorter suspension periods. In contrast, the presence of an ALR led to a smaller decrease of 1.8% in the intoxicated driver ratio (ratio of drivers with BAC ≥ .08 to drivers with BAC >.00 but < .08) involved in fatal crashes. Thus, ALR may be less effective on habitual or binge drinking drivers. Another notable finding of this study was that ALR may not be effective as a specific deterrent. A comparison of alcohol-positive and alcohol-negative drivers with DWI convictions in the prior 3 years involved in fatal crashes was used as a measure of the specific deterrent effect of ALR suspension length. The authors concluded there was no significant difference in the drinking driver ratio. This finding indicates that other measures such as alcohol ignition interlocks might be needed for specific deterrence among individual drivers, particularly those who habitually drive drunk.

**Costs:** ALR/ALS laws require funds to design, implement, and operate systems to record and process administrative license actions. In addition, a system of administrative hearing officers must be established and maintained. Some States have recovered ALR or ALS system costs through offender fees (Century Council, 2008; NHTSA, 2008a).

**Time to implement:** Six to 12 months are required to design and implement the system and to recruit and train administrative hearing officers.

**Other issues:**

- **Two-track system:** Under ALR/ALS laws, drivers face both administrative and criminal actions for DWI. The two systems operate independently. Drivers whose licenses have been suspended or revoked administratively still may face criminal actions that also may include license suspension or revocation. This two-track system has been challenged in some States.
- **Driving with a suspended license:** Some DWI offenders sometimes continue to drive with suspended or revoked licenses (Lenton et al., 2010; McCartt et al., 2002). For strategies to reduce driving with a suspended or revoked license, see Neuman et al. (2003), and Chapter 1, Sections 4.2, 4.3 and 5.4.

- **Delaying license reinstatement:** Many DWI offenders do not reinstate their licenses when they are eligible to do so. About half (49%) of DWI offenders delay license reinstatement for at least a year, while 30% delay reinstatement for 5 years or more (Voas, Tippetts, & McKnight, 2010). Offenders who delay reinstatement are more likely to recidivate than those who have their licenses restored. This suggests it may be important to encourage DWI offenders to reinstate their licenses once eligible, but with appropriate controls such as ignition interlocks (see Section 4.2) and close monitoring (see Section 4.4).
- **Hearings:** An effective ALR system will restrict administrative hearings to the relevant facts: that the arresting officer had probable cause to stop the vehicle and require a BrAC test and that the driver refused or failed the test. Such a system will reduce the number of hearings requested, reduce the time required for each hearing, and minimize the number of licenses that are reinstated. When an administrative hearing is not restricted in this way, it can serve as an opportunity for the defense attorney to question the arresting officer about aspects of the DWI case. This may reduce the chance of a criminal DWI conviction (Hedlund & McCartt, 2002). Officers often spend substantial time appearing in person at ALR hearings, and a case may be dismissed if an officer fails to appear. Some States use telephonic hearings to solve these problems (Wiliszowski et al., 2003).

## 1.2 Open Container

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Open-container laws prohibit possession of any open alcoholic beverage container and the consumption of alcoholic beverages by motor vehicle drivers or passengers. These laws typically exempt passengers in buses, taxis, and the living quarters of mobile homes.

In 1998 Congress required States to enact open-container laws or have a portion of their Federal-aid highway construction funds redirected to alcohol-impaired driving or hazard elimination (NHTSA, 2008b). To comply, State open-container laws must:

- Prohibit possession of alcoholic beverage containers and consumption of alcohol in motor vehicles;
- Cover the entire passenger area;
- Apply to all types of alcoholic beverages;
- Apply to all vehicle occupants;
- Apply to all vehicles on public highways; and
- Provide for primary enforcement of the law.

Certain exceptions are permitted. For additional information, see www.federalregister.gov/-documents/2016/09/30/2016-23788/regulatory-update-of-transfer-and-sanction-programs.

**Use:** As of July 2019 there were 39 States and the District of Columbia with open-container laws that complied with the Federal requirements (FHWA, 2020).

**Effectiveness:** A study of 4 States that enacted laws in 1999 found the proportion of alcohol-involved fatal crashes appeared to decline in 3 of the 4 States during the first 6 months after the laws were implemented, but the declines were not statistically significant (Stuster et al., 2002). In general, the proportion of alcohol-involved fatal crashes was higher in States with no open-container laws than in States with laws. Open container laws are associated with fewer alcohol-related fatalities (Ying et al., 2013; Whetten-Goldstein et al., 2000). Survey data in both law and no-law States show strong public support for open-container laws (NHTSA, 2008b).

Active enforcement of open container laws is important for open container laws to be effective. In one study self-reported impaired driving was 17.5% lower in States that actively enforced open container laws compared with States that did not (Lenk et al., 2016).

**Costs:** Open container laws require funds to train LEOs and to implement enforcement.

**Time to implement:** Open-container laws can be implemented as soon as appropriate legislation is enacted.

### 1.3 High-BAC Sanctions

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Almost all States increase the penalties for the standard impaired-driving (DWI) offense for repeat offenders. Some States also have increased the penalties for drivers with high BACs, typically .15 to .20 g/dL. In 2018 67% of alcohol-impaired-driving fatalities were in crashes that involved at least one driver with a BAC of .15 g/dL or higher (NCSA, 2019).

High-BAC sanctions are based on the observation that many high-BAC drivers are habitual impaired-driving offenders, even though they may not have records of previous arrests and convictions. Moreover, drivers with high BACs put themselves and other road users at risk; more than half (55%) of drivers with BACs of .01 g/dL or higher involved in fatal crashes in 2018 had BACs of .15 g/dL or greater (NCSA, 2019). Enhanced sanctions for high-BAC drivers vary by State, and may include mandatory assessment and treatment for alcohol abuse problems, close monitoring or home confinement, installation of ignition interlocks, and vehicle or license plate sanctions (see Chapter 1, Sections 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 and 4.4). NHTSA recommends sanctions for first-time offenders with high BACs be comparable to those for repeat offenders (NHTSA, 2008c).

**Use:** As of July 2019 there were 47 States and the District of Columbia that had increased penalties for drivers with high BACs (GHSA, 2019). While there is no uniform definition of "high BAC," these States define drivers with BACs of .10 to .20 g/dL or even greater to be high-BAC offenders.

**Effectiveness:** In the only evaluation of high-BAC sanctions to date, McCartt and Northrup (2003, 2004) found that Minnesota's law appears to have increased the severity of case dispositions for high-BAC offenders, although the severity apparently declined somewhat over time. They also found some evidence of an initial decrease in recidivism among high-BAC first offenders, which again dissipated with time. The BAC test refusal rate declined for first offenders and was unchanged for repeat offenders after the high-BAC law was implemented. The authors pointed out that, at the time, Minnesota's law had a high threshold of .20 g/dL BAC, relatively strong administrative and criminal sanctions, and strong penalties for BAC test refusal. Since the study was conducted, Minnesota changed its threshold for high BAC to .16 g/dL, twice the illegal limit.

**Costs:** High-BAC sanctions will produce increased costs if the high-BAC penalties are more costly per offender than the lower-BAC penalties. Over a longer period, if high-BAC sanctions reduce recidivism and deter alcohol-impaired driving, then costs will decrease.

**Time to implement:** High-BAC sanctions can be implemented as soon as appropriate legislation is enacted.

**Other issues:**

- **Test refusal:** High-BAC sanctions may encourage some drivers to refuse the BAC test unless the penalties for test refusal are at least as severe as the high-BAC penalties. See Chapter 1, Section 1.4.
- **Child endangerment laws:** Similar to high-BAC laws, child endangerment laws recognize there are certain instances where impaired drivers pose extreme risk to others. In 2018 there were 231 children 14 or younger (22% of all child fatalities) who were killed in alcohol-impaired-driving crashes (NCSA, 2019). Of those, 128 were occupants of vehicles with drivers who had BACs of .08 g/dL or higher. Child endangerment laws create a separate offense or enhance DWI penalties for impaired drivers who carry children. Presently, 46 States and the District of Columbia have separate or higher penalties for impaired drivers who have children in their vehicles (MADD, 2018).

### 1.4 BAC Test Refusal Penalties

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

All States have implied consent laws stipulating that people implicitly consent to be tested if they are suspected of impaired driving (Shinkle et al., 2019; NHTSA, 2017). However, some drivers refuse to provide breath or blood samples for BAC tests. Nationwide, an average of 24% of drivers arrested for DWI refuse BAC testing, although this figure ranges from 1% to 82% depending on the State (Jones & Nichols, 2012; Namuswe et al., 2014). A driver's BAC is a critical piece of evidence in an alcohol-impaired-driving case. The absence of a BAC test can make it more difficult to convict the impaired driver.

All States have established separate penalties for BAC test refusal, typically involving administrative license revocation or suspension. If the penalties for refusal are less severe than the penalties for failing the test, many drivers will refuse. Therefore, the model DWI code sets a more severe penalty for test refusal than for test failure (NCUTLO, 2000).

Reduced test refusal rates will help the overall DWI control system by providing better BAC evidence. Having driver BACs may increase DWI and high-BAC DWI convictions, increase the likelihood prior DWI offenses will be properly identified, and give courts better evidence for offender alcohol assessment. For a thorough discussion of issues related to BAC test refusal, see NHTSA's *Refusal of Intoxication Testing: A Report to Congress* (Berning et al., 2008). See also Voas et al. (2009) for a history of implied consent laws in the United States and a review of the research on breath test refusal.

**Use:** The penalties in each State for failing or refusing a BAC test cannot be categorized in a straightforward manner due to the complexity of State alcohol-impaired-driving laws and the differences in how these laws are prosecuted and adjudicated. All States except Wyoming impose administrative sanctions for test refusal (NHTSA, 2017). See NHTSA's *Digest of Impaired Driving and Selected Beverage Control Laws, 30th Edition, Current as of December 31, 2015*, for more detail on each State's laws (NHTSA, 2017).

The U.S. Supreme Court decision *Birchfield v. North Dakota* upheld the ability of States to criminalize refusal for breath testing, but not for warrantless blood tests. The implications of the *Birchfield* decision are described in more detail in Lemons and Birst (2016). The U.S. Supreme Court decision *Mitchell v. Wisconsin* (2019) ruled that police may order a blood draw from an unconscious person suspected of impaired driving without a warrant.

**Effectiveness:** Zwicker et al. (2005) found that test refusal rates appear to be lower in States where the consequences of test refusal are greater than the consequences of test failure. No study has examined whether stronger test refusal penalties are associated with reduced alcohol-impaired crashes.

**Costs:** The cost for BAC test refusal penalties depends on the number of offenders detected and the fines and other penalties applied to them.

**Time to implement:** Increased BAC test refusal penalties can be implemented as soon as appropriate legislation is enacted.

**Other issues:**

- **Criminalizing test refusal:** As of June 2018 BAC test refusal was a criminal offense in at least 12 States (NCSL, 2018). Criminalizing test refusal may reduce refusal rates and increase the likelihood of convictions for DWI (Jones & Nichols, 2012). It also ensures the drivers will be identified as repeat offenders upon subsequent arrests.
- **Warrants:** To reduce breath test refusals and increase the number of drivers successfully prosecuted for DWI, some States issue warrants for drivers who refuse breath tests. Issued by a judge or magistrate, the warrant requires the driver to provide a blood sample, by force if necessary. One study reviewed how warrants are used in Arizona, Michigan, Oregon, and Utah (Hedlund & Beirness, 2007), which found that warrants may successfully reduce breath test refusals and result in more pleas, fewer trials, and more convictions. Although warrants require additional time for law enforcement, officers report the chemical evidence obtained from the warrant are of great value and worth the effort to obtain (Haire et al., 2011). Note that following the *Birchfield v. North Dakota* Supreme Court decision, warrants are required for blood tests unless there are exigent circumstances (see Lemons & Birst, 2016) as was decided in the *Mitchell v. Wisconsin* (2019) Supreme Court decision.

### 1.5 Alcohol-Impaired-Driving Law Review

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

Alcohol-impaired-driving laws in many States are extremely complex. DWI laws have evolved over the past 30 years to incorporate new definitions of the offense of driving while impaired (illegal per se laws), new technology and methods for determining impairment (e.g., BAC tests, SFSTs), and new sentencing and monitoring alternatives (e.g., electronic monitoring, alcohol ignition interlocks). Many States have modified their laws to incorporate these new ideas without reviewing their effect on the overall DWI control systems. The result is often an inconsistent patchwork of laws that may be difficult to understand, enforce, prosecute, and adjudicate, with many inconsistencies and unintended consequences. In many States, thorough reviews and revisions would produce systems of laws that would be far simpler and more understandable, efficient, and effective.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A1, Section 1.5.

## 2. Deterrence: Enforcement

### 2.1 Publicized Sobriety Checkpoints

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Law enforcement officers stop vehicles at predetermined sobriety checkpoints to check for driver impairment. They may stop every vehicle or stop vehicles at some regular interval, such as every third or tenth vehicle. The purpose of checkpoints is to deter driving after drinking by increasing the perceived risk of arrest. To do this, checkpoints should be highly visible, publicized extensively, and conducted regularly, as part of an ongoing sobriety checkpoint program. Fell et al. (2004) provide an overview of checkpoint operations, use, effectiveness, and issues. See Fell et al. (2013) for a detailed description of six HVE programs in the United States, including enforcement strategies, visibility elements, use of media, funding, and many other issues.

**Use:** As of November 2018 sobriety checkpoints are authorized in 37 States and the District of Columbia, but they vary in terms of how regularly they are conducted (GHSA, 2018b). Only 16 States conduct checkpoints somewhere in their State on a weekly basis.

Two national surveys shed light on the frequency of use of sobriety checkpoints by State and local LEAs. Erickson et al. (2015) found that of the 48 State patrol and 1,082 local LEAs that permitted checkpoints in 2010 and 2011, some 73% of State patrol agencies and 55% of local agencies conducted them. The main reasons cited as why checkpoints were not used more frequently were lack of law enforcement personnel and lack of funding (Fell et al., 2003). A possible solution for this is to combine resources with other agencies. Specifically, the results of a survey by Eichelberger and McCartt (2016) found that 40% of agencies that conducted checkpoints reported pooling resources with other LEAs.

Erickson et al. (2015) suggest lack of legislation to allow checkpoints and low levels of public support (Fell et al., 2003) can also be barriers to implementation. The Erickson study found that State agencies in the South (with drier weather), local agencies with full-time officers for alcohol enforcement, and local agencies with alcohol divisions were more likely to conduct saturation patrols (i.e., impaired driving-specific patrols by a large number of officers in a target area within a given duration; see Section 2.2).

**Effectiveness:** The CDC's systematic review of 15 high-quality studies found that checkpoints reduce alcohol-related fatal crashes by 9% (Bergen et al., 2014). Similarly, a meta-analysis by Erke et al. (2009) found that checkpoints reduce alcohol-related crashes by 17%, and all crashes by 10 to 15%. Publicized sobriety checkpoint programs have proven effective in reducing alcohol-related crashes among high-risk populations including males and drivers 21 to 34 years old (Bergen et al., 2014).

NHTSA has supported efforts to reduce alcohol-impaired driving using publicized sobriety checkpoint programs. Evaluations of sobriety checkpoints and extensive paid media in statewide campaigns in Connecticut and West Virginia found decreases in alcohol-related fatalities, as well as fewer drivers with positive BACs at roadside surveys (Zwicker, Chaudhary, Maloney, &

Squeglia, 2007; Zwicker, Chaudhary, Solomon, Siegler, & Meadows, 2007). In addition, a study of demonstration programs in 7 States found reductions in alcohol-related fatalities from 11% to 20% in States using numerous checkpoints, other high-visibility operations and intensive publicity, including paid advertising (Fell, Langston, et al., 2008). States with lower levels of enforcement and publicity did not demonstrate decreases in fatalities relative to neighboring States. See also NHTSA's Strategic Evaluation States initiative (NHTSA, 2007; Syner et al., 2008), the *Checkpoint Strikeforce* program (Lacey et al., 2008), and the national Labor Day holiday campaign: *Drunk Driving. Over the Limit. Under Arrest* (Solomon et al., 2008).

Safety campaigns involving education and enforcement can be improved by explaining where and when they are effective. Schneider et al. (2017) demonstrated that resources invested at ideal locations for checkpoints can be justified based on areas with higher crash injury severity and by comparing the value of patrolling with the probability of potential pullovers over a period of time. This type of analysis helps stakeholders predict resource needs as well as where and when to implement campaigns based on spatial, temporal, and geographic patterns specific to given counties. NHTSA's fact sheets, media releases, op-eds, and other information aid in planning and preparation of campaigns tailored to holidays and special events. See www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/drunk-driving/drive-sober-or-get-pulled-over/4th-july-drive-sober for examples of the *4th of July Drive Sober* campaign.

**Costs:** The main costs are for law enforcement time and for publicity. A typical checkpoint using 15 or more officers can cost $5,000 to $7,000 (Robertson & Holmes, 2011). However, law enforcement costs can be reduced by operating checkpoints with smaller teams of 3 to 5 officers (NHTSA, 2006b; Stuster & Blowers, 1995).

Law enforcement agencies in two rural West Virginia counties were able to sustain year-long programming of weekly low-staff checkpoints. The proportion of nighttime drivers with BACs of .05 g/dL or higher was 70% lower in these counties compared to comparison counties without additional checkpoints (Lacey et al., 2006). These smaller checkpoints can be conducted for as little as $500 to $1,500 (Maistros et al., 2014). NHTSA has a guidebook available to assist LEAs in planning, operating, and evaluating low-staff sobriety checkpoints (NHTSA, 2006b).

Checkpoint publicity can be costly if paid media are used. For the *Checkpoint Strikeforce* program, paid media budgets ranged from $25,000 in West Virginia to $433,000 in Maryland (Fell et al., 2013). Publicity for checkpoints should also include earned and social media.

**Time to implement:** Sobriety checkpoints can be implemented very quickly if officers are trained in detecting impaired drivers, SFST, and checkpoint operational procedures. NHTSA provides resources and further details on HVE at www.nhtsa.gov/enforcement-justice-services/high-visibility-enforcement-hve-toolkit.

**Other issues:**

- **Legality:** As of November 2018 checkpoints were not conducted in 13 States (GHSA, 2018b). In 12 of these States (Alaska, Idaho, Iowa, Michigan, Minnesota, Montana, Oregon, Rhode Island, Texas, Washington, Wisconsin, and Wyoming), checkpoints are prohibited by State laws, State constitutions, or interpretations of the State law. In

Missouri checkpoints are authorized by law but the State budget prohibits funding them (GHSA, 2018b). States where checkpoints are not permitted may use other enforcement strategies such as saturation patrols (see Chapter 1, Section 2.2).

- **Visibility:** Checkpoints must be highly visible and publicized extensively to be effective. Communication and enforcement plans should be coordinated. Messages should clearly and unambiguously support enforcement. Paid media may be necessary to complement news stories and other earned media, especially in a continuing checkpoint program. See Fell et al. (2013) for additional recommendations concerning checkpoint visibility.
- **Arrests:** The primary purpose of publicized sobriety checkpoint programs is to deter impaired driving, not to increase arrests. However, impaired drivers detected at checkpoints should be arrested and arrests should be publicized. That said, arrests at checkpoints should not be used as measures of effectiveness; the number of contacts would be more appropriate. Secondary values of checkpoints are they are checking for valid driver licenses, seat belt use, outstanding warrants, stolen vehicles, and other traffic and criminal infractions.
- **Combining checkpoints with other activities:** To boost visibility, some jurisdictions combine checkpoints with activities such as saturation patrols or enforcement of open container laws (Sanem et al., 2015). For example, some LEAs conduct both checkpoints and saturation patrols during the same weekend. Others alternate checkpoints and saturation patrols on different weekends as part of a larger publicized impaired-driving enforcement effort. According to the results of a survey conducted with State patrol agencies and local LEAs, the prevalence of self-reported alcohol-impaired driving was lower in States where sobriety checkpoints, saturation patrols, and enforcement of open container laws were conducted. These results demonstrate the potential value of LEAs implementing enforcement-related strategies to more effectively reduce alcohol-impaired driving. NHTSA strongly supports that officers conducting such be trained in the SFST battery. Officers trained in Drug recognition (DREs) can supplement sobriety checkpoints to detect drivers who are impaired with substances other than alcohol.

  Another easy-to-implement, cost-effective strategy to leverage the benefits of traditional checkpoint campaigns are flexible or "phantom" checkpoints. Typically, signs, displays, and law enforcement vehicles are set up at a mock checkpoint location although neither enforcement nor arrests are planned. This high-visibility strategy deters impaired driving with lower costs than full checkpoint implementation. Flexible checkpoints are suitable for small agencies with few staff, especially on rural roadways with high frequencies of alcohol-related crashes. Lacey et al. (2017) evaluated use and effectiveness of these checkpoints as complements to driver awareness of enforcement in one jurisdiction. Feedback from staff was positive and staff and supervisors believed that flexible checkpoints were practical and easy to implement. However, empirical evaluations of effectiveness were inconclusive because of the small scale of the evaluation. Another study based on survey responses and from field inspections in two counties in Illinois concluded flexible checkpoints were not a statistically effective strategy. One proposed explanation was the lack of media publicity for flexible checkpoints compared to planned activities.
- **Standardized Field Sobriety Tests:** LEAs have used SFSTs for more than 40 years to

identify impaired drivers.[2] The SFST is a three-test battery - the horizontal gaze nystagmus test, the walk-and-turn test, and the one-leg-stand test. Research shows the combined components of the SFST are 91% accurate in identifying drivers with BACs above the illegal limit of .08 g/dL (Stuster & Burns, 1998). It is recommended that any officers working HVE should be SFST-trained. Some localities require that officers have SFST refresher training before participating in such activities. State Highway Safety Offices may request through their NHTSA Regional Offices SFST assessments (and SFST with DRE-module add-on assessment) that look at a State's application of basic law enforcement tools for detecting impaired drivers.

[2] NHTSA began researching how to test suspects in 1975. The first SFSTs were put into the effect in 1981. The "founding document" for SFSTs was NHTSA's report, *Development and Field Test of Psychophysical Tests for DWI Arrest,* by Van K. Tharp, Marcelline Burns, and Herbert Moskowitz (1981, March), Report No. DOT HS 805 864, https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1325

### 2.2 High-Visibility Saturation Patrols

| Effectiveness: ★★★★ | Cost: $$ | Use: High | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

A saturation patrol (also called a blanket patrol or dedicated DWI patrol) consists of a large number of LEOs patrolling a specific area looking for impaired drivers. These patrols usually take place at times and locations where impaired-driving crashes commonly occur. Like publicized sobriety checkpoint programs, the primary purpose of publicized saturation patrol programs is to deter driving after drinking by increasing the perceived risk of arrest. Saturation patrols should be publicized extensively and conducted regularly as part of an ongoing saturation patrol program. State-level enforcement campaigns from 7 States were found effective in reducing 11% to 20% of total alcohol related fatalities when enforcement and paid media were used (National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine, 2018). NHTSA provides resources on HVE at www.nhtsa.gov/enforcement-justice-services/high-visibility-enforcement-hve-toolkit. NHTSA strongly recommends that officers conducting saturation patrols be trained in the SFST battery.

**Use:** A survey conducted by the Century Council (2008) reported that 44 States used saturation patrols, among the most common alcohol-related enforcement across State as well as local agencies. A national survey reported that 63% of local agencies and 96% of State agencies conducted such patrols (Erickson et al., 2015).

**Effectiveness:** A demonstration program in Michigan, where sobriety checkpoints are prohibited by State law, revealed that saturation patrols can be effective in reducing alcohol-related fatal crashes when accompanied by extensive publicity (Fell et al., 2008).

**Costs:** The main costs are for law enforcement time and for publicity. Saturation patrol operations are quite flexible in both the number of officers required and the time that each officer participates in the patrol. As with sobriety checkpoints, publicity can be costly if paid media is used.

**Time to implement:** Saturation patrols can be implemented within 3 months if officers are trained in detecting impaired drivers and in SFST. See the NHTSA HVE toolkit for implementation information (www.nhtsa.gov/enforcement-justice-services/high-visibility-enforcement-hve-toolkit).

**Other issues:**

- **Legality:** Saturation patrols are legal in all jurisdictions.
- **Publicity:** As with sobriety checkpoints, saturation patrols should be highly visible and publicized extensively to be effective in deterring impaired driving. Communication and enforcement plans should be coordinated. Messages should clearly and unambiguously support enforcement. Paid media may be necessary to complement social media, news stories, and other earned media, especially in a continuing saturation patrol program (Goodwin et al., 2005, Strategy B1).
- **Arrests:** While the primary purpose of saturation patrols is to deter drinking after driving by increasing the perceived risk of arrest**,** saturation patrols also can be very effective in

arresting impaired drivers. For example, LEOs in Minnesota conducted 290 saturation patrols in 2006, stopping 33,923 vehicles and arresting 2,796 impaired drivers (Century Council, 2008). A 10% increase in the DUI arrest rate (from enforcement including saturation patrols and checkpoints) lowers alcohol-related crash rates by 1% (Fell et al., 2014). Similar to publicized sobriety checkpoint programs, publicized saturation patrol programs are also effective in detecting other driving and criminal offenses.

### 2.3 Breath Test Devices

| Effectiveness: ★★★★† | Cost: $$ | Use: High | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

†Proven for increasing arrests

A breath test device is a stationary or portable alcohol sensor used to measure a person's breath alcohol concentration (BrAC). Law enforcement officers use breath test devices in the field to help establish probable cause for a DWI arrest. A driver blows into a mouthpiece and the breath test device displays a numerical BrAC often converted to BAC terminology such as .12 g/dL.[3]

Several breath test device models are available commercially. There are two categories of breath test devices. Evidential breath test devices are State-approved and conform to established specifications and can be used as evidence in court. Preliminary breath test devices, also known as screeners, are handheld devices used at the roadside by officers to establish probable cause prior to arrest. NHTSA provides a "Conforming Products List" of alcohol testing (EBT) and screening (PBT) instruments, as well as calibration units for these devices. While some States may maintain separate lists of approved devices they have tested and approved for purchase, devices included on NHTSA's Conforming Products Lists are eligible for purchase using Federal funds.

- www.nhtsa.gov/drunk-driving/alcohol-measurement-devices
- NHTSA Conforming Products List of Evidential Breath Alcohol Measurement Devices, Docket No. NHTSA–2017–0053, Federal Register, Vol. 82, No. 211, Thursday, November 2, 2017), available at www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/2017-23869.pdf
- NHTSA Conforming Products List of Screening Devices to Measure Alcohol in Bodily Fluids, Docket No. NHTSA–2012–0062, Federal Register, Vol. 77, No. 115, Thursday, June 14, 2012, available at www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/cpl_asds_june_2012.pdf
- NHTSA Conforming Products List of Calibrating Units for Breath Alcohol Testers, Docket No. NHTSA–2012–0063, Federal Register, Vol. 77, No. 204, Monday, October 22, 2012, available at www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/cpl_cus_oct_2012.pdf

**Use:** PBTs are often used to establish probable cause for arrest, but they are rarely used as evidence in court. One exception is California, which allows PBT results as evidence of presence of alcohol (Nesci, 2015). California officers can use PBT evidence to enforce zero-tolerance laws for drivers under 21; an officer at the roadside can issue a citation and seize the driver's license (Ferguson et al., 2000). EBTs are commonly used to provide evidence of alcohol impairment that is presented in court.

**Effectiveness:** Law enforcement officers generally agree that breath test devices are useful. Sixty-nine percent of the 2,731 LEOs surveyed by Simpson and Robertson (2001) supported

[3] A BAC measures the weight of alcohol (usually in grams) per volume of blood (usually deciliters, centiliters, or milliliters, commonly expressed in NHTSA reports as grams per deciliter, g/dL). A BrAC measures the weight of alcohol in a volume of breath, usually grams per 210 liters (g/210L). Some breathalyzers report readings as BrACs, g/210L, and some convert the BrAC to BAC terminology, g/dL.

greater breath test devices availability and use. Breath test devices are especially valuable for two classes of drivers who may appear to perform normally on many tasks: drivers with high tolerance to alcohol (Simpson & Robertson, 2001) and drivers under 21 who may be in violation of zero-tolerance laws (Ferguson et al., 2000). A breath test device also can be useful at crash scenes where a driver is injured and unable to perform an SFST. There is some evidence that breath test devices use increases DWI arrests and reduces alcohol-involved fatal crashes (Century Council, 2008).

**Costs:** Breath test devices cost from $200 to $2,000 a piece, with PBTs typically costing less than EBTs. Many LEAs have limited numbers of breath test devices and many patrol officers do not have regular access to them. Officers surveyed by Simpson and Robertson (2001) estimated that three-fourths of all DWI arrests occur on routine patrols, so DWI detection would be substantially improved if every patrol officer had a breath test device.

**Time to implement:** Breath test devices can be used as soon as they are purchased and officers are trained in their use and maintenance, especially regular calibration checks. Most LEAs have the facilities to conduct these checks.

**Other issues:**

- **The "one test" rule:** Some State statutes allow only one chemical BAC test to be taken from a driver arrested for DWI. These States do not use PBTs because an evidential BAC test cannot be requested if an officer previously has taken a PBT test in the field.
- **Other drugs:** The PBT and EBT devices commonly used are designed strictly for identifying alcohol and cannot detect the presence of drugs other than alcohol.
- **Personal breath-testing devices:** It is important to note that these devices are not used by law enforcement and they do not meet NHTSA's Model Standards. Personal breath-testing devices can be paired to smartphones to record breath samples and deliver cautionary messages and notifications of BACs to drivers including safety measures to hail a ride share or alert social contacts. Smartphone cameras can be used to verify driver identity and to provide time-stamped and georeferenced breath sample record. One limitation of these personal breath-testing devices is the requirement of active use and engagement provides only point-in-time BAC estimates. A point-in-time BAC estimate could create a hazardous situation where someone's BAC is rising, but the device indicates that the person is below the illegal per se limit leading them to drive.

### 2.4 Passive Alcohol Sensors

| Effectiveness: ★★★★† | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

†Proven for detecting impaired drivers

A passive alcohol sensor (PAS) detects alcohol presence in the air. The sensor usually is integrated into a flashlight or clipboard. An officer holds the flashlight or clipboard near the driver's mouth, where it measures alcohol presence in the air where the driver is breathing. The PAS displays a BrAC range, such as a red light for any BAC at or above .08 g/dL. It can be used without the driver's knowledge and without any probable cause because the PAS is considered "an extension of the officer's nose" and records information that is "in plain view" (Preusser, 2000).

Based on the survey conducted by Eichelberger and McCartt (2016), the majority of police agencies do not have PAS equipment. In one survey only 15% of the municipal, county, and State agencies (out of 235 total) used PAS, and with varying frequency.

Several PAS models are available commercially. They are generally reliable and effective at detecting alcohol in the surrounding ambient air. In one study, breath samples and PAS measures were obtained from over 12,000 drivers. Results showed that a PAS score was a strong predictor of a driver's BAC status, leading to the conclusion that "the PAS can be an effective tool for officers when deciding whether to initiate a DWI investigation" (Voas et al., 2006). NHTSA does not maintain a list of PAS models.

**Use:** PAS units are typically used at the vehicle window after a traffic stop or at a checkpoint. A PAS report of alcohol presence may give the officer probable cause to request further examination with SFSTs or a PBT device. Except for the Eichelberger and McCartt report (2016), no other data are available on how many PAS units may be in use.

**Effectiveness:** The PAS is especially effective at detecting impaired drivers at checkpoints, where officers must screen drivers quickly with little or no opportunity to observe the drivers on the road. Evaluations show that officers using PAS at checkpoints can detect 50% more drivers at BACs of .10 g/dL or higher than officers not using PAS (Century Council, 2008; Farmer et al., 1999; Fell et al., 2004; Voas, 2008). The PAS appears to be especially effective in assisting officers who rarely make arrests for DWI to make more arrests. (Fell, Compton, & Voas, 2008).

**Costs:** PAS units cost from $300 to $700 apiece.

**Time to implement:** PAS units can be used as soon as they are purchased and officers are trained in their use and maintenance. Training can usually be accomplished quickly.

**Other issues:**

- **Acceptance by law enforcement:** Officers tend to dislike using the PAS. Common reasons given by officers are they require officers to be closer to drivers than they wish to be, they require some portion of officers' attention at a time when they may have other things to be concerned about (including personal safety), or they may keep officers from

having a hand free (Preusser, 2000; Eichelberger & McCartt, 2016). Other officers believe they can detect the odor of alcohol accurately without assistance from PAS devices (Preusser, 2000).

- **Other drugs:** As with a PBT, a PAS cannot detect the presence of drugs other than alcohol.

## 2.5 Integrated Enforcement

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Impaired drivers are detected and arrested through regular traffic enforcement and crash investigations as well as through special impaired-driving checkpoints and saturation patrols. Special enforcement directed primarily at other offenses such as speeding or seat belt nonuse, offer an additional opportunity to detect impaired drivers, especially at night, as impaired drivers often speed or fail to wear seat belts. However, when conducting enforcement for other offenses, such as speeding and seat belt nonuse, it is important to maintain the enforcement focus on those offenses.

**Use:** There are no data on how frequently integrated enforcement methods are used.

**Effectiveness:** The *More Cops, More Stops* program was conducted in six phases from 2011 to 2013 in Oklahoma and Tennessee cities. The program aimed at HVE of impaired driving, seat belt, and speeding laws (Nichols et al., 2016). A small but statistically significant decline was observed in the percentage of impaired drivers with BACs > .00 g/DL and BACs ≥ .08 g/dL in Nashville during the enforcement period; declines were greater when checkpoints were used. However, there was not enough evidence to suggest that *More Cops, More Stops* enhanced outcomes over other ongoing campaigns such as *Drive Sober or Get Pulled Over*. Instead, the complex focus of the HVE campaign and the demands on LEAs to enforce three traffic safety issues together may have led to no more than modest benefits. Other studies have also produced mixed results. Jones et al. (1995) conducted a three-site evaluation of integrated impaired driving, speed, and seat belt use enforcement. Sites that combined high publicity with increased enforcement reduced crashes likely to involve alcohol (such as single-vehicle nighttime crashes) by 10% to 35%. They concluded that the results were encouraging, but not definitive. The *Massachusetts Saving Lives* comprehensive programs in six communities used integrated enforcement methods. The programs reduced fatal crashes involving alcohol by 42% (Hingson et al., 1996). About half the speeding drivers detected through these enforcement activities had been drinking and about half the impaired drivers were speeding. See also Voas and Lacey (2011), Goodwin et al. (2005, Strategy B2), and Stuster (2000).

**Costs:** As with other enforcement strategies, the primary costs are for law enforcement time and for publicity.

**Time to implement:** Impaired driving can be integrated into other enforcement within 3 months if officers are trained in detecting impaired drivers and in SFST.

**Other issues:**

- **Publicity:** Integrated enforcement should be publicized extensively to be effective in deterring impaired driving and other traffic offenses. Paid media may be necessary to complement news stories and other earned media, especially in an ongoing program (Goodwin et al., 2005, Strategy B2).
- **Priorities:** Integrated enforcement sends a message to the public and to LEOs alike that traffic safety is not a single-issue activity.

- **Citizen reporting programs:** Some jurisdictions have dedicated programs where drivers can call to report suspected impaired drivers. These can generate support for law enforcement efforts and increase the perception in the community that impaired drivers will be caught. A study of a grassroots DWI witness reward program in Stockton, California, found a significant decrease in alcohol-related injury/fatality crashes following the program, relative to six comparison communities (Van Vleck & Brinkley, 2009). Mothers Against Drunk Driving Canada launched a program in 2007 called *Campaign 911* to encourage the general public to report impaired drivers. Calls to 911 increased sharply after the program was implemented, as did the number of vehicles stopped and the number of criminal charges issued (Solomon & Chamberlain, 2013). The effect of the program on crashes was not examined. NHTSA offers a manual for LEAs and local organizations interested in establishing citizen DWI reporting programs in their communities (Kelley-Baker et al., 2008).

## 3. Deterrence: Prosecution and Adjudication

### 3.1 DWI Courts

| Effectiveness: ★★★★ † | Cost: $$$ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† Proven for reducing recidivism

Based on the drug court model, DWI courts are specialized courts dedicated to changing the behavior of DWI offenders through intensive supervision and treatment. A dedicated DWI court provides a systematic and coordinated approach to prosecuting, sentencing, monitoring, and treating DWI offenders. Prosecutors and judges in DWI courts specialize in DWI cases. The underlying goal is to change offender behavior by identifying and treating alcohol abuse problems and by holding offenders accountable for their actions. DWI courts usually target the enrollment, treatment, and supervision of drivers with prior DWI offenses or those with BACs of .15 g/dL or higher (National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine, 2018; NHTSA, 2016b). DWI courts have greater success in changing driver behavior compared to traditional court processes and sanctions, and can be particularly useful countermeasures for repeat offenders.

Intensive supervision is a key component of DWI courts. Probation officers monitor offenders closely and report probation infractions to the judge immediately for prompt action. These include failure to appear at court, testing positive on an alcohol or drug test, and not participating in court-ordered treatment sessions (NHTSA, 2016b). Restrictions and monitoring are gradually relaxed as offenders demonstrate responsible behavior. The frequency of meetings is higher at the beginning of the DWI programs, usually one or more a week, and then it varies as participants progress to the next phases. Participants are also required to submit alcohol and drug tests several times once the program begins. Most programs also reward participants with things like verbal or small token acknowledgements or reductions in sanctions as they complete phases of the program, meet treatment requirements, maintain sobriety, and comply with appointments.

DWI courts follow the model established by over 3,000 drug courts around the Nation (U.S. DOJ, 2020; NDCI, 2020; Huddleston et al., 2008; NADCP, 2009; Goodwin et al., 2005, Strategy D3). See Brunson and Knighten (2005), Practice #1, for a comprehensive overview of DWI courts. The National Center for DWI Courts (2011) summarized 10 guiding principles for States implementing DWI courts. The guide also outlines recommendations for assessing and establishing plans for treatment, evaluation, stakeholder collaboration, and sustainability of the program.

A DWI court reduces recidivism because judge, prosecutor, probation staff, and treatment staff work together as a team to assure that alcohol treatment and other sentencing requirements are satisfied for offenders on an individual basis. Treatment programs typically involve relapse prevention, counseling, support groups, drug education, and mental health programs for participants with co-occurring disorders. Most programs (75%) rely on treatment providers operating separately from court (NHTSA, 2016b).

A key feature of a DWI court is that the team meets regularly, giving all parties opportunity to discuss the status of a case. Judges can then immediately revise restrictions, if appropriate. DWI courts can be more efficient and effective than regular courts because judges and prosecutors closely supervise the offenders and are familiar with the complex DWI laws, evidentiary issues, sentencing options, and the offenders. A NHTSA report (2003a) describes the operation of a DWI court in Albuquerque, New Mexico.

**Use:** As of June 2018 the National Drug Court Resource Center reported 278 designated DWI courts in 34 States (NDCRC, 2018). In addition, there were 420 hybrid DWI/drug courts in 30 States, which are drug courts that also take DWI offenders. States with the most designated DWI courts include Michigan (33), Texas (23), Georgia (21), Missouri (21), Wisconsin (17), Pennsylvania (16), and Colorado (15).

In collaboration with the National Center for DWI Courts, NHTSA conducted an online survey with DWI courts and DWI/drug courts to obtain specific information about how the courts were being operated (NHTSA, 2016b). A total of 105 DWI and DWI/drug courts responded to the survey in its entirety. Of those, 44% reported they serve primarily rural areas, 33% serve primarily urban areas, and 22% serve primarily suburban areas. Respondents reported a range in the number of DWI participants currently active in their programs from less than 10 to more than 200.

**Effectiveness:** Based on the National Academies of Sciences and Medicine (2018), long-duration DWI court programs appear to be more effective due to the high intensity and frequency of contact involved, although effectiveness has also been demonstrated in short-term analyses. A systematic review found that DWI courts appear to be effective at reducing recidivism, although the available studies had too many shortcomings to draw definitive conclusions (Marlowe et al., 2009). A meta-analysis of 28 studies suggests DWI courts reduce recidivism among DWI offenders by approximately 50% compared to traditional court programs (Mitchell et al., 2012). However, the authors note that more rigorous experimental evaluations of DWI courts are still needed.

Some program evaluations show that DWI courts can be successful. Low DWI recidivism rates have been found for graduates of DWI courts in Athens, Georgia, Maricopa County, Arizona, Los Angeles County, California, and elsewhere (Marlowe et al., 2009). One study in Michigan found that DWI court participants were 19 times *less* likely to be rearrested for DWI within 2 years than a comparison group of offenders in traditional probation (Michigan Supreme Court & NPC Research, 2008). Another study of three DWI courts in Georgia found that offenders who graduated from the court program had a 9% recidivism rate within the next 4 years, compared to a 24% recidivism rate for a comparison group of offenders processed in traditional courts (Fell, Tippetts, & Langston, 2011). A study of DWI and hybrid DWI/drug courts in North Carolina found that participants who graduated from the court program were less likely to be rearrested or convicted on DWI charges than others who did not participate in the court program. Hybrid courts were less effective than DWI courts when participant re-arrests were compared. The study reported that while either court program was generally effective, approximately only 1% of those convicted of DWI offenses were being referred to these courts (Sloan et al., 2016).

Evaluations have shown that close monitoring and individualized sanctions for DWI offenders reduce recidivism (Kubas et al., 2017; see also Chapter 1, Section 4.4); similarly, greater interaction and involvement between courts and participants was found to lead to better outcomes for the participants (Sloan et al., 2013). When these are incorporated in comprehensive DWI court programs, their effects are likely even greater.

**Costs:** DWI court costs are difficult to estimate and compare with regular courts. Costs may be greater because more probation officers will be needed to reduce caseloads and to provide close monitoring, and because judges must allocate time to meet regularly with probationers and to deal with any probation violations. However, total time offenders spend in jail is reduced, thus saving the justice system time and money (Michigan Supreme Court & NPC Research, 2008). Moreover, DWI courts may reduce long-term system costs substantially if they decrease DWI recidivism as expected. These savings can spread across systems, such as health care facilities (in the form of reduced numbers of crashes and reduced alcohol abuse).

According to the meta-analysis conducted by Mitchell et al. (2012), the cost of DWI courts is lower than standard probation (see also National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine, 2018, for a summary). A cost-benefit analysis conducted by the Department of Justice in 2014 estimated a generalized Criminal Justice System cost component based on interviews with 20 drug courts (Downey & Roman, 2014). The cost estimate amounted to $4,869 for drug court participants, which was lower than the estimated cost of $5,863 for the "status quo" approach. An analysis of Maryland's Anne Arundel County criminal justice system showed the per-person cost over the 2-year program for DUI court graduates was $3,143. This was an average savings of $5,873 compared to people with DUI offenses who choose not to enroll in the DUI court program (NPC Research, 2009). These evaluations show that while DWI courts provide more intensive and expensive services than standard probation, they still cost less to administer due to the shortened time required for supervising participants and reduced incarceration (Harron & Kavanaugh, 2015). The majority of DWI court programs are funded mostly through State grants (69%) and fees imposed on the client for the payment of ignition interlocks, treatments, and fines. Federal, municipal, and nonprofit grant funding sources are less predominant. Overall, less than half of the DWI courts have sustainability plans for long-term DWI court programs (NHTSA, 2016b).

**Time to implement:** DWI courts can be implemented 4 to 6 months after the participating organizations agree on the program structure if enough trained prosecutors, judges, probation officers, and treatment providers are available. Otherwise, planning and implementation may require a year or more.

**Other Information:**

- **Traffic Safety Resource Prosecutors:** DWI cases can be highly complex and difficult to prosecute, yet they are often assigned to the least experienced prosecutors. In one survey, about half of prosecutors and judges said the training and education they received prior to assuming their positions were inadequate for preparing them to prosecute and preside over DWI cases (Robertson & Simpson, 2002). Traffic Safety Resource Prosecutors (TSRPs) are professionals with prosecutorial experience who specialize in the prosecution of traffic crimes, and DWI cases in particular. They provide training,

education, and technical support to prosecutors and LEAs in their States. Resources for prosecuting drug-impaired drivers are available at the National Traffic Law Center (visit ndaa.org/programs/ntlc/). The National District Attorneys Association provides TSRP training webinars and resources (visit https://ndaa.org/training/prosecuting-dui-cases/). NHTSA has also developed a manual to assist new TSRPs (Robertson et al., 2016), available at www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.gov/files/documents/12323_tsrpmanual_092216_v3-tag.pdf.

- **Judicial Outreach Liaisons (JOLs)**: These are current or former judges experienced in adjudicating DWI cases. Many JOLs have presided over DWI or drug courts. They share information and provide education to judges and other court personnel about DWI cases. NHTSA has developed guidelines for creating State JOLs (Axel et al., 2019).

### 3.2 Limits on Diversion and Plea Agreements

| Effectiveness: ★★★★† | Cost: $ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

† Proven for increasing convictions

Diversion programs defer sentencing while a DWI offender participates in some form of alcohol education or treatment. In many States, charges are dropped or the offender's DWI record is erased if the education or treatment is completed satisfactorily.

A survey of prosecutors found that of defendants who plead guilty, 67% negotiated a plea agreement resulting in a reduced penalty (Robertson & Simpson, 2002). Negotiated plea agreements are a necessary part of efficient and effective DWI prosecution and adjudication. However, plea agreements in some States allow offenders to eliminate any record of DWI offenses and to have their penalties reduced or eliminated. Offenders pleading guilty to lesser offenses are of concern to prosecutors, judiciary, and advocacy groups because avoiding the original DWI charges result in no conviction records for the offenders (Walden & Walden, 2011). However, deferred adjudication provides other sentencing options but keeps convictions on record temporarily. Thus, in the case of a second offense, sanctions can still be increased as long as the deferred conviction is still in the record.

Effective DWI control systems can use a variety of adjudication and sanction methods and requirements. The key feature is that an alcohol-related offense must be retained on offender records (Hedlund & McCartt, 2002; Goodwin et al., 2005; NTSB, 2000; Robertson & Simpson, 2002). Otherwise, offenders who recidivate will receive less severe penalties than if the original charges had been retained on their records.

**Use:** As of 2006 there were 33 States that provided for diversion programs in State law or statewide practice. Local courts and judges in some additional States also offer diversion programs (NHTSA, 2006c). The Century Council (2008) documented diversion programs restrictions in several States. As of December 2014 there were 22 States that had laws limiting plea agreements in certain cases (NHTSA, 2016a).

**Effectiveness:** The evidence for the effectiveness of diversion programs has been mixed (Voas & Fisher, 2001). Although a few studies have shown diversion programs reduce recidivism, others have shown no benefits. However, there is substantial anecdotal evidence that by eliminating the offenses from the offender records, diversion programs allow repeat offenders to avoid being identified (Hedlund & McCartt, 2002). Eliminating or establishing limits on diversion programs should remove a major loophole in the DWI control system.

Another component of the plea agreement is the duration of pre-trial elapse time that offenders take to accept charges. Prolonged pre-trial procedures involving conviction avoidance and "not guilty" pleas can result in high court costs. (Ma et al., 2016). In an evaluation performed in Ontario, first-time alcohol-impaired offenders were compared according to whether they pled guilty before (early) or after 90 days. The comparisons between groups of offenders in the "early" and the "after-90 day" plea groups did not demonstrate differences in recidivism. However, the evaluation showed a reduction in the duration of pre-trial process, reductions in

court costs, and increases in installation rates of ignition interlocks under the Reduced Suspension With Ignition Interlock Conduct Review program.

Wagenaar et al. (2000) reviewed 52 studies of plea agreement restrictions applied in combination with other DWI control policies and found an average reduction of 11% across outcome measures such as rates of crashes/fatalities/injuries, alcohol-involved crashes, and roadside BACs. However, the effects of plea agreement restrictions by themselves cannot be determined in these studies. The only direct study of plea agreement restrictions was completed over 20 years ago (Surla & Koons, 1989; NTSB, 2000). It found that plea agreement restrictions reduced recidivism in all three study communities.

**Costs:** Costs for eliminating or limiting diversion programs can be determined by comparing the per-offender costs of the diversion program and the non-diversion sanctions. Similarly, costs for restricting plea agreements will depend on the relative costs of sanctions with and without the plea agreement restrictions. In addition, if plea agreements are restricted, some charges may be dismissed or some offenders may request full trials, resulting in significant costs.

**Time to implement:** Eliminating or limiting diversion programs and restricting plea agreements statewide may require changes to State's DWI laws. Once legislation is enacted, policies and practices can be changed within 3 months. Individual prosecutor offices and courts may change local policies and practices without statewide legislation.

### 3.3 Court Monitoring

| Effectiveness: ★★★† | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

† Proven for increasing convictions

In court monitoring programs, people observe, track, and report on DWI court or administrative hearings. Court monitoring provides data on how many cases are dismissed or pled down to lesser offenses, how many result in convictions, what sanctions are imposed, and how these results compare across different judges and different courts. Court monitoring programs usually are operated and funded by citizen organizations such as Mothers Against Drunk Driving.

**Use:** As of 2006 court monitoring programs were active in at least 13 States.[4] It is generally believed that court monitoring has decreased substantially since the mid-1980s, when Probst et al. (1987) identified over 300 programs in the United States.

**Effectiveness:** Shinar (1992) found that court-monitored cases in Maine produced higher conviction rates and stiffer sentences than unmonitored cases. Probst et al. (1987) found that judges, prosecutors, and other officials in 51 communities believed that court monitoring programs helped increase DWI arrests, decrease plea agreements, and increase guilty pleas.

**Costs:** The main requirement for a court monitoring program is a reliable supply of monitors. Monitors typically are unpaid volunteers from advocacy groups like MADD, or similar organizations. Modest funds are needed to establish and maintain court monitoring records and to publicize the results.

**Time to implement:** Court monitoring programs can be implemented very quickly if volunteer monitors are available. A few weeks will be required to set up the program and train monitors.

[4] Personal communication with Joey Syner, highway safety specialist, NHTSA.

### 3.4 Sanctions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Varies | Time: Varies |

This countermeasure involves the standard court sanctions for DWI offenses, which include driver's license suspension or revocation, fines, jail, community service, and victim impact panels. All States use some combination of these sanctions. Some States set mandatory minimum levels for some sanctions, which often increase for second and subsequent offences.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *Most of these measures are widely used. Their effectiveness has been examined in research studies. Despite some positive findings, the balance of evidence regarding the effectiveness of these countermeasures remains inconclusive.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement are available in Appendix A1, Section 3.4.

## 4. Deterrence: DWI Offender Treatment, Monitoring, and Control

### 4.1 Alcohol Problem Assessment and Treatment

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: Varies | Use: High | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

It is widely recognized that many DWI first offenders and most repeat offenders are dependent on alcohol or have alcohol abuse problems (White & Gasperin, 2007). They likely will continue to drink and drive unless their alcohol abuse problems are addressed. DWI arrests provide opportunity to identify offenders with alcohol abuse problems and to refer them to treatment as appropriate. However, treatment should not be provided in lieu of other sanctions or as part of plea bargain or diversion programs that eliminates records of DWI offenses (see Chapter 1, Section 3.2).

Alcohol problem assessment can take many forms, from a brief paper-and-pencil questionnaire to a detailed interview with a treatment professional. Alcohol treatment can be even more varied, ranging from classroom alcohol education programs to long-term inpatient facilities. For brief overviews of alcohol assessment and treatment programs and further references see Century Council (2008), Dill and Wells-Parker (2006), Voas and Lacey (2011), NCHRP (Goodwin et al., 2005, Strategy C4), and Robertson et al. (2008).

Part of the assessment process is determining the likelihood that an offender will continue to drive impaired. Under a cooperative agreement with NHTSA, the American Probation and Parole Association developed a screening tool – the Impaired Driving Assessment – to determine an offender's risk of recidivism and to help determine the most appropriate and effective community supervision program to reduce that risk (Lowe, 2014). Pilot testing of the IDA revealed that probation failure is commonly associated with extensive prior legal histories, mental health problems, and higher levels of alcohol/drug use.

**Use:** All States have laws for alcohol treatment for DWI offenders (NHTSA, 2017). However, the nature of the treatment – and to whom it applies – varies greatly. Some States mandate treatment, especially for repeat offenders, but usually treatment requirements are at the court's discretion.

**Effectiveness:** Even the best of the many assessment instruments currently in use are subject to error. Chang et al. (2002) found that none of the assessment instruments studied correctly identified more than 70% of offenders who were likely to recidivate. However, the assessment process itself can have therapeutic benefits. See Chapter 1, Section 5.1 on alcohol screening and brief interventions.

Wells-Parker et al. (1995) reviewed the studies evaluating treatment effectiveness. They found that, on average, treatment reduced DWI recidivism and alcohol-related crashes by 7 to 9%. Treatment appears to be most effective when combined with other sanctions and when offenders are monitored closely to assure that both treatment and sanction requirements are met (Century Council, 2008; Dill & Wells-Parker, 2006).

**Costs:** Treatment expenses vary widely depending on program type. However, several studies suggest alcohol abuse treatment can be cost effective (NIDA, 2020; UKATT Research Team, 2005). For example, a study from California found every dollar spent on treatment potentially saved taxpayers up to $7 (Gerstein et al., 1994). Offenders can bear some of the costs of both assessment and treatment, though provisions must be made for indigent offenders.

**Time to implement:** Implementation time also varies depending on program type. The simplest can be implemented in several months, while others may take years.

**Other issues:**

- **Treatment options:** There are many effective treatment options for alcohol abuse problems including cognitive-behavioral therapy, group counseling, pharmacological interventions (e.g., naltrexone, acamprosate), and brief interventions (see Chapter 1, Section 5.1). It is important that treatment be tailored to the individual. Also, combining therapies can result in better outcomes because DWI offenders usually have a range of diverse and complex problems (Dill & Wells-Parker, 2006).
- **DWI Courts:** Alcohol problem assessment and treatment are integral parts of DWI courts. In addition, DWI courts can sanction offenders who fail to complete assigned treatment programs. For more information, see Chapter 1, Section 3.1.
- **Other mental health issues:** Alcohol assessment and treatment provide opportunity to address other problems that may underlie or contribute to problems with alcohol. One study found that more than 60% of DWI repeat offenders have other psychiatric disorders in addition to alcohol-related problems, such as post-traumatic stress disorder, anxiety disorders, and bipolar disorder (Shaffer et al., 2007). This is substantially higher than the rate of about 30% for the general population.

### 4.2 Alcohol Ignition Interlocks

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★† | Cost: $$ | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† Proven for reducing recidivism while on the vehicle

An alcohol ignition interlock prevents a vehicle from starting unless the driver provides a breath sample with a BrAC lower than a pre-set level, usually .02. Interlocks typically are used as a condition of probation for DWI offenders, to prevent them from driving while impaired by alcohol after their driver's licenses have been reinstated.

Interlocks are highly effective in allowing vehicles to be started by sober drivers, but not by alcohol-impaired drivers. A post-start retest requires the driver to remain sober while driving. A data recorder logs driver BrAC at each test and can be used by probation officers to monitor offender drinking and driving behavior. Marques and Voas (2010) provide an overview of interlock use, effectiveness, operational considerations, and program management issues. Marques (2005), Beirness and Robertson (2005), and Robertson et al. (2006) summarize interlock programs in the United States and other countries and discuss typical problems and solutions. See also Brunson and Knighten (2005, Practice #5), Neuman et al. (2003, Strategy C2), and proceedings from the 11th Annual International Alcohol Interlock Symposium (Robertson et al., 2011).

NHTSA offers an ignition interlock toolkit to assist policymakers, highway safety professionals, and advocates (Mayer, 2014). In addition, NHTSA has published a report, *Case Studies of Ignition Interlock Programs*, featuring State ignition interlock programs (Fieldler et al., 2012) and an *Evaluation of State Ignition Interlock Programs: Interlock Use Analysis From 28 States 2006-2011* (Casanova-Powell et al., 2015). Finally, NHTSA has created model guidelines to assist States in developing and implementing highly-effective interlock programs based on successful practices in the United States and other countries (NHTSA, 2013b).

**Use:** All 50 States and the District of Columbia allow interlocks to be used for some DWI offenders (NHTSA, 2013a). In 30 States, the District of Columbia, and 4 California counties interlocks are mandatory for all convicted offenders, including first offenders (IIHS, 2017). Indiana, Montana, North Dakota, and South Dakota have no mandatory interlock requirements.

Despite widespread laws, a relatively small percentage of eligible offenders have an interlock installed. However, interlock use has increased substantially over the past 10 years, from 146,000 in 2008 to 348,476 in 2017 (based on information supplied by interlock manufacturers; Robertson et al., 2018). Given the roughly 1.4 million arrests in the United States each year for DWI, the ratio of installed interlocks to arrests is approximately 1 in 5. Use of interlocks is substantially higher when they are required as a prerequisite to license reinstatement. For example, among DWI offenders in Florida who were subject to the State's interlock requirement, 93% installed interlocks once they qualified for reinstatement (Voas, Tippetts, Fisher, & Grosz, 2010). Similarly, an examination of effects of the incremental expansion of interlock laws in Washington State to cover all DUI offences found corresponding improvements in installation rates and recidivism with the implementation of each legislative change (McCartt et al., 2018). Use of interlocks is also higher when interlocks are offered as alternatives to home confinement

via electronic monitoring (Roth et al., 2009). Through a combination of these measures, New Mexico installed interlocks in the vehicles of half of all convicted DWI offenders in 2007 – the highest level of penetration of any State (Marques et al., 2010). Finally, use of interlocks in a pilot program in California was higher in the four pilot counties that required interlocks for DWI offenders (42.4%) than in non-pilot counties (4.3%) (Chapman et al., 2015). The authors concluded that the main reason for this significant increase was due to the fact that interlock installation was mandatory in pilot counties, while interlock installation was optional in non-pilot counties.

**Effectiveness:** A review of 15 studies of interlock effectiveness found that offenders who had interlocks installed in their vehicles had arrest recidivism rates that were 75% lower than drivers who did not have interlocks installed (Elder et al., 2011; see also GAO, 2014). Findings were similar for first offenders and repeat offenders. After interlocks were removed, however, the effects largely disappeared, with interlock and comparison drivers having similar recidivism rates. Similarly, a study conducted in California found that the strong and reliable reduction in recidivism diminished over time for DWI offenders that had one or two prior DWI convictions (California DMV, 2018).

Studies that have examined the effects of interlocks on crashes, indicate that alcohol-related crashes decrease while interlocks are installed in vehicles (Elder et al., 2011; Kaufman & Wiebe, 2016; McGinty et al., 2017; Vanlaar, Hing & Robertson, 2017). One study that evaluated the effects of State interlock laws on alcohol-involved fatal crashes found that laws requiring interlocks for all offenders were associated with a 7% reduction in crashes with BACs > .08 g/dL and an 8% reduction in crashes with BACs ≥ .15 g/dL (McGinty et al., 2016; see also Kaufman & Wiebe, 2016). The benefits were greater in States with mandatory laws than those with partial laws.

One limitation of interlock research is that study participants often are not randomly assigned to interlock or no-interlock groups, so there may be important pre-existing differences between groups (GAO, 2014). However, research suggests that interlocks are a highly effective method for preventing alcohol-impaired driving – and possibly crashes – while they are installed.

While they are installed, interlocks stop impaired motorists from driving, but unless motorists change their attitudes and behaviors, they may simply continue driving impaired once the interlocks are removed (Voas et al., 2016). Florida passed legislation in 2008 to address this problem by mandating treatment for DUI offenders in interlock programs who commit 4 or more interlock violations. These offenders are required to attend 8 to 12 weeks of treatment from certified substance abuse counselors/programs, which includes individualized treatment plans involving individual or group therapy. One study examined the effectiveness of combining mandated treatment with interlocks on recidivism among interlock offenders with 3 or more interlock violations. Compared to a control group that had interlocks but only 1 or 2 interlock violations, those with 3 violations that received treatment showed a significant 32% reduction in recidivism after the interlocks were removed. This improvement was not significantly different for women than for men, or for Hispanics and Blacks than for Whites. However, the additional treatment was much less effective for drivers under 25.

**Costs:** A 2012 estimate collected from States lists interlock device rental costs from $12 to $90 per month. Device installation and removal fees range from $70 to $150. In addition, other costs such as device recalibration and monitoring fees can add $30 to $150 each month (Fieldler, Brittle, & Stafford, 2012). Offenders usually pay these costs; however, some States such as Illinois and New Mexico have indigent funds and unaffordability criteria to reduce the costs for low-income offenders.

**Time to implement:** Interlock programs may require enabling legislation. Once authorized, interlock programs require 4 to 6 months to implement a network of interlock providers.

**Other issues:**

- **Barriers to use:** Interlocks have demonstrated their effectiveness in controlling impaired driving while they are installed. In light of this success, their limited use may be due to several factors such as lengthy license suspension periods, offenders who delay license reinstatement, judges who lack confidence in the interlock technology or who fail to enforce "mandatory" interlock requirements, interlock costs, and localities that lack enough interlock providers. In an effort to increase the number of offenders who drive interlock-equipped vehicles, some States have made the alternatives to interlocks more undesirable. For example, pilot programs in Indiana and New Mexico found that roughly two-thirds of offenders chose to have interlocks installed when the alternative was house arrest with electronic alcohol monitoring (Marques et al., 2010; Voas et al., 2001). Other States allow offenders to shorten (or eliminate) the license suspension period if they are willing to operate an interlock-installed vehicle. For example, Colorado reduced the license suspension period from 1 year to 1 month for offenders who apply for interlocks (NCSL, 2014). Arkansas, Maine, Mississippi, and Nebraska passed similar laws. An evaluation of a similar law in Ontario found that a reduced suspension program increased installation rates from 45% to 70% among eligible first-time offenders (Ma et al., 2016). For a discussion of barriers to interlock use, see Beirness and Marques (2004), Beirness et al. (2008), Beirness and Robertson (2005), and Neuman et al. (2003, Strategy C2). For a discussion on how States have successfully overcome obstacles encountered with interlock programs, see Casanova-Powell et al. (2015).
- **Compliance with interlocks:** Some offenders have relatively high rates of breath test failures and other violations, typically near the beginning of their participation in interlock programs (Vanlaar et al., 2013; Vanlaar et al., 2010). Offenders become familiar with how the equipment operates, and in some cases, may seek ways to circumvent the interlocks. Presently, few jurisdictions use the compliance data collected by interlocks to identify offenders who may be at high risk for recidivism. The data could also be used to require an extension of the interlock period for those with poor compliance, or even to inform treatment options (Marques et al., 2010). To improve compliance with interlocks, it is important to closely monitor offenders during their participation in interlock programs. One study found that offenders who were closely monitored (e.g., their data were reviewed weekly and they received letters documenting their progress) had fewer initial breath test failures and other indicators of non-compliance than offenders who received standard monitoring through the State licensing office (Zador et al., 2011). Similarly, an in-depth study of three State interlock programs found non-compliance was highest in the State with less consistent monitoring practices (California) than in the two States (Florida

and Texas) with stronger monitoring practices (Vanlaar et al., 2013). Monitoring the number of miles driven on interlock vehicles can prevent offenders from circumventing the devices by driving other vehicles. Some States set vehicle usage criteria for the number of miles the offender will likely be driving per week while the interlock is installed. If the mileage on the interlock-equipped vehicle is unexpectedly low, further sanctions can be put in place (Mayer, 2014).

- **First-time offenders:** There are special issues concerning interlocks and first-time offenders. Historically, interlock programs were for repeat offenders and voluntary for first-time offenders (Robertson et al., 2010). In many jurisdictions, first-time offenders are not monitored by the court system. Consequently, it can be difficult to respond to violations and to ensure that first-time offenders participate, install the devices, and complete the interlock program. Despite challenges in closely monitoring first-time offenders, evidence suggests interlocks effectively reduce recidivism among this group while the interlock is installed (Marques et al., 2010; McCartt et al., 2012; McCartt et al., 2018). For more information about issues in implementing interlock programs with first-time offenders, see Robertson et al. (2010).
- **Rural areas:** For offenders living in rural areas, access to interlock service providers may be problematic (Cheesman et al., 2014). Interlock service providers may be limited or non-existent in rural jurisdictions, requiring offenders to drive long distances to get interlocks installed or serviced. To improve the availability of interlocks, States can require vendors to provide service to rural areas as prerequisites for obtaining contracts with the State (Mayer, 2014).
- **Public support:** There is strong support among the general public for ignition interlocks. In two national surveys, approximately 80% of respondents approved of requiring interlocks in the vehicles of convicted DWI offenders, including first offenders (AAAFTS, 2014; McCartt, Wells, & Teoh, 2010; see also Bishop et al., 2017; Downs et al., 2017). Moreover, about 65% of respondents favored having alcohol detection technology in *all* new vehicles. The general public also believes strongly that interlocks work. In a NHTSA survey, respondents were asked about the effectiveness of eight strategies to reduce or prevent impaired driving. Interlocks ranked highest in the percentage who rated the strategy "very effective" (63%) (Moulton et al., 2010).
- **General Deterrence**: The implementation of ignition interlock programs targeting DWI offenders does not seem to produce general deterrence effects among the broader driving population. In particular, an evaluation of general deterrence was conducted in California by comparing recidivism rates in four counties that participated in a pilot program involving mandatory interlock installation to recidivism rates in all other California counties (Chapman et al., 2015). The study found that mandatory interlock installation was ineffective at reducing county-wide DWI recidivism below those of the comparison counties. This lack of difference in conviction rates held for drivers with one, two, or three-or-more prior DWI convictions. Note that this study did not track local advertising of the program in the four pilot counties, so it is unknown if the absence of a general deterrence effect was affected by the level of outreach effort.

### 4.3 Vehicle and License Plate Sanctions

| Effectiveness: ★★★★† | Cost: Varies | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

† Proven for reducing recidivism

Many States have implemented sanctions affecting DWI offender license plates or vehicles. These sanctions are intended to prevent the offender from driving the vehicle while the sanctions are in effect, and also to deter impaired driving by the general public. Vehicle and plate sanctions include:

- Special license plates for drivers whose licenses have been revoked or suspended. The plates allow family members and other people to drive the offenders' vehicles but permit law enforcement to stop the vehicles to verify that the drivers are properly licensed.
- License plate impoundment. Officers seize and impound or destroy the license plates.
- Vehicle immobilization. Vehicles are immobilized on the offenders' property with "boots" or "clubs."
- Vehicle impoundment. Vehicles are stored in public impound lots.
- Vehicle forfeiture. Vehicles are confiscated and sold at auction.

NHTSA (2008d), DeYoung (2013b), and Voas et al. (2004) give an overview of vehicle and license plate sanctions and are the basic references for the information provided below. See also Brunson and Knighten (2005, Practice #4), and Neuman et al. (2003, Strategies B1, B2, and C1). All vehicle and license plate sanctions require at least several months to implement.

**Use, effectiveness, and costs:**

- Special license plates are permitted in Georgia, Iowa, Minnesota, Ohio, and Oregon (NCSL, 2016a). Ohio requires special plates for all first-time offenders with BACs of .17 g/dL and above and for all repeat offenders. Effectiveness and costs have not been evaluated in any State. In the 1990s, Oregon and Washington adopted versions of this strategy by allowing arresting officers to place "zebra stripe" stickers on the license plates at the time of arrest. Oregon's program effectively reduced DWI recidivism but Washington's did not. Use has been discontinued in both States (Neuman et al., 2003, Strategy B1; NHTSA, 2008d).
- License plate impoundment is used in at least 9 States (NHTSA, 2016a). In Minnesota license plate impoundment administered by arresting officers was shown to reduce both recidivism and driving with suspended licenses, especially among the youngest offenders (Leaf & Preusser, 2011; Rogers, 1995). Since plate impoundment does not involve the courts, it occurs quickly, consistently, and efficiently (Neuman et al., 2003, Strategy B2; NHTSA, 2008d; NTSB, 2000).
- Laws in 12 States allow vehicle immobilization (NHTSA, 2017). An evaluation in Ohio found that immobilization reduced recidivism (Voas et al., 1998). Costs are minimal compared to impoundment or forfeiture (Neuman et al., 2003, Strategy C1; NTSB, 2000).
- Thirteen States and the District of Columbia allow for vehicle impoundment and some use it extensively (GHSA, 2018a). Vehicle impoundment reduces recidivism while vehicles are in custody and to a lesser extent after vehicles have been released (Byrne, Ma, & Elzohairy, 2016). The strategy is costly, and owners may abandon low-value vehicles rather than pay substantial storage costs (Neuman et al., 2003, Strategy C1;

NTSB, 2000). Towing fees are often considerable, and storage fees can range from $18 to $95 per day (City of Columbus, 2019; San Jose Police Department, 2018). In California impoundment programs are administered largely by towing contractors and supported by fees paid when drivers reclaim their vehicles or by the sale of unclaimed vehicles. An evaluation of California's impoundment law found both first-time and repeat offenders whose vehicles were impounded had fewer subsequent arrests for driving with suspended licenses and fewer crashes (DeYoung, 1997).

- Twenty-nine States have provisions allowing vehicle forfeiture for impaired driving and/or driving with a suspended license (NHTSA, 2016a); however, there is little information on its use or effectiveness. Vehicle forfeiture programs must pay storage costs until the vehicles are sold or otherwise disposed (Neuman et al., 2003, Strategy C1; NTSB, 2000).

**Time to implement**: Vehicle and license plate sanctions can be implemented as soon as appropriate legislation is enacted.

**Other issues:**

- **To whom are vehicle sanctions applied:** Most vehicle sanctions have been applied to repeat offenders rather than first offenders, although some States also apply vehicle sanctions to high-BAC (.15 g/dL or higher) first offenders. If someone other than the offender owns the vehicle, a State should consider requiring the vehicle owner to sign an affidavit stating the owner will not allow the offender to drive the vehicle while the suspension is in effect (NHTSA, 2008d).
- **Administrative issues:** All license plate and vehicle sanctions require administrative structures to process the license plates or vehicles. Laws should permit officers to impound vehicles or license plates at the time of arrest so offenders do not have the opportunity to transfer vehicle ownership (NHTSA, 2008d).

### 4.4 DWI Offender Monitoring

| Effectiveness: ★★★★† | Cost: $$$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

† Proven for reducing recidivism

The most successful methods for controlling convicted DWI offenders and reducing recidivism have the common feature that they monitor offenders closely. Note that while these methods monitor sobriety, they do not actually prevent someone from drinking or driving the vehicle. Close monitoring can be accomplished at  levels and in  ways, including formal intensive supervision programs, home confinement with electronic monitoring, and dedicated detention facilities. South Dakota's 24/7 Sobriety Project is one example of an intensive supervision program. Participants are usually offenders who must not use alcohol or drugs as conditions of remaining in the community and avoiding incarceration. The program includes twice-daily alcohol breath testing, transdermal devices that monitor alcohol consumption, and random drug testing. If offenders test positive for alcohol or drugs, they are taken into custody and appear before a judge within 24 hours. The goal of the program is to ensure that sanctions are swift and certain. South Dakota's 24/7 Sobriety Project has been adopted in Idaho, Montana, North Dakota, Washington, and Wyoming.

For overviews of DWI offender monitoring and further references, see Century Council (2008) and Goodwin et al. (2005, Strategy D4). See also Wiliszowski et al. (2011) for more information about intensive supervision programs and descriptions of eight different programs, and Fisher et al. (2013) for additional details about South Dakota's 24/7 Sobriety Project. Information about transdermal alcohol monitoring, including six case studies, can be found in McKnight et al. (2012). DWI courts and alcohol ignition interlocks discussed in this chapter's Sections 3.1 and 4.2, also assist in monitoring offenders closely. Finally, guidelines for community supervision of DWI offenders are available from NHTSA (Dunlap et al., 2008).

**Use:** Little available data shows how extensively these programs are used. The most commonly used transdermal device is SCRAM (secure continuous remote alcohol monitoring). In 2011 approximately 50,000 people were monitored with SCRAM devices, roughly two-thirds of whom were DWI offenders (Fell & McKnight, 2013). In total, 49 States have used SCRAMs with at least some offenders, and 34 States have used SCRAMs with more than 1,000 offenders each (Fell & McKnight, 2013). The number of States using other types monitoring programs and devices is unknown.

**Effectiveness:** Intensive supervision, home confinement with electronic monitoring, and dedicated detention facilities all have been evaluated in individual settings and show substantial reductions in DWI recidivism. Studies examining the effectiveness of the 24/7 sobriety program in North and South Dakota have found reductions in recidivism for DWI convictions (Kilmer et al., 2013; Kubas et al., 2015; Loudenburg et al., 2010). South Dakota's implementation of the 24/7 sobriety program resulted in a 12% decrease in repeat DWI arrests, and a 4% decrease in collisions by participants (Kilmer et al., 2013). North Dakota implementation resulted in a reduced number of crashes, non-DUI-related citations, and impaired driving arrests, while longer sentencing periods (1 year versus 60 days) appeared to have a stronger deterrent effect (Kubas et al., 2016). Continued enrollment in the North Dakota program was associated with significant

decreases in recidivism after 60 days (29.7%), 1 year (34.2%), and 2 years (39.5%) (Kubas et al., 2017). In other studies recidivism was reduced by half in intensive supervision programs in Oregon (Lapham et al., 2006) and Connecticut (Barta et al., 2017), and by one-third in an electronic monitoring program in Los Angeles County (Brunson & Knighten, 2005; Jones et al., 1996). A dedicated detention facility in Baltimore County had a 4% recidivism rate 1 year after program completion, compared to a normal recidivism rate of 35% for offenders (Century Council, 2008).

A study in Nebraska and Wisconsin examined effectiveness of intensive supervision programs that used SCRAM to provide continuous monitoring of sobriety for drivers with alcohol-related offenses (Tison et al., 2015). Offenders assigned to SCRAM were matched to a control group of comparable offenders that were not assigned to SCRAM. Measured as re-arrests for an alcohol offense during the first 2 years following arrest, recidivism occurred at a slightly higher rate in the SCRAM group relative to the control group in both States (7.6% versus 6.2% in Wisconsin; 9.8% versus 7.7% in Nebraska, neither of which were statistically significant). However, a significant positive outcome was that there was virtually no recidivism while on SCRAM, and the SCRAM offenders who did recidivate remained compliant longer than offenders in the control group (360 versus 271 days in Wisconsin; 458 versus 333 days in Nebraska). The authors noted that the SCRAM population may represent a particularly high-risk group of offenders, thus higher long-term recidivism was expected.

**Costs:** All close monitoring programs are more expensive than the standard high-caseload and low-contact probation but less expensive than jail. Offenders in 24/7 programs typically pay $4 per day for breath testing, while electronic monitoring fees typically range from $5 to $10 per day (Fell & McKnight, 2013). SCRAM Systems' *24/7 Sobriety Program Implementation Guide* suggests a $2 fee per day for on-site breath testing and a $6 fee per day for remote electronic alcohol monitoring for participants (SCRAM Systems, 2018). One goal of 24/7 programs is to be self-sufficient (i.e., entirely funded by offenders). New Mexico estimated that intensive supervision costs $2,500 per offender per year compared to $27,500 per offender per year for jail (Century Council, 2008). Dedicated detention facility costs can approach jail costs: $37 per day in the Baltimore County dedicated detention facility compared to $45 per day for jail. Offenders can bear some program costs, especially for the less expensive alternatives.

**Time to implement:** All close monitoring programs require many months to plan and implement. Dedicated facilities require years to plan and build.

### 4.5 Lower BAC Limits for Repeat Offenders

| Effectiveness: ★★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

All States have illegal per se BAC limits of .08 g/dL with the exception of Utah, which enacted a .05 g/dL law that went into effect at the end of 2018. All States also have BAC limits of .02 g/dL or lower for drivers under 21. These laws reinforce minimum drinking age laws prohibiting people under 21 from purchasing or possessing alcohol in public in all States. As of November 2016, Nebraska, North Carolina, Vermont, and Virginia set BAC limits of .02 or .04 g/dL for people convicted of DWI to emphasize they should not drive after drinking even moderate amounts (NCSL, 2016b).

**Use:** Four States have lowered BAC limits for people convicted of DWI (NCSL, 2016b).

**Effectiveness:** In 1988 Maine established a .05 g/dL BAC limit for 1 year after a first DWI offense and for 10 years after a subsequent offense. Violators received administrative license suspensions. In 1995 this BAC limit was lowered to .00 g/dL. Hingson et al. (1998) evaluated the 1988 law and concluded that it reduced the proportion of fatal crashes that involved repeat offender drivers by 25%. Jones and Rodriguez-Iglesias (2004) evaluated the overall effects of both laws, using data from 1988 to 2001. They also concluded that the laws contributed to a reduction in the proportion of repeat offenders in fatal crashes, primarily due to a reduction in drivers at BACs of .10 g/dL and higher.

**Costs:** Implementation and operation costs are minimal. Jones and Rodriguez-Iglesias (2004) found that Maine's laws had little or no cost effect on the operations of the DWI control system.

**Time to implement:** Lower BAC limit laws can be implemented as soon as legislation is enacted.

**Other issues:**

- **Lower BAC limits for *all* drivers:** Laboratory studies show impairment in driving ability begins at levels below .08 g/dL BAC. Consequently, many countries and some U.S. jurisdictions impose penalties for all drivers who have BACs of .05 g/dL or higher, not just repeat offenders (Colorado has a driving while ability impaired law and West Virginia may revoke your license at a BAC above .05g/dL). Evaluations from other countries suggest lower BAC limits reduce alcohol-impaired crashes (NHTSA, 2003b). For example, a law introduced in British Columbia, Canada, in 2010 included an administrative 3-day license suspension and possible vehicle impoundment for drivers with BACs from .05 to .08 g/dL. The law was intended to maximize deterrence by increasing the certainty and swiftness of sanctions. In the year after the law took effect, there was a 40% decrease in alcohol-related fatal crashes (Macdonald et al., 2013). Moreover, roadside surveys revealed a 44% decrease in drivers with BACs of .05 g/dL or higher, and a 59% decrease in drivers with BACs over .08 g/dL (Beirness & Beasley, 2014). In sum, administrative penalties beginning at .05 g/dL BAC appear to increase deterrence among the general population without creating additional burdens on the court system. A majority (63%) of drivers in the United States support lowering the BAC limit

for all drivers from .08 to .05 g/dL (AAAFTS, 2014). The National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) has recommended a BAC of .05 g/dL for all drivers (NTSB, 2013).

## 5. Prevention, Intervention, Communications, and Outreach

### Prevention and intervention.

Prevention and intervention strategies seek to reduce drinking, or to prevent driving by people who have been drinking. Prevention and intervention work through laws, policies, and programs that:

- control hours, locations, and promotions of alcohol sales;
- implement responsible alcohol service practices;
- control alcohol purchase and use through increased alcohol taxes and restrictions on consumption in public locations such as parks and sports facilities; or
- provide alternatives to driving for people who have been drinking.

Prevention and intervention measures are especially important for those under 21 years old. These are discussed in the Youth section that follows, with further discussion of one-star and two-star countermeasures included in Appendix A1.

Many prevention and intervention measures fall under the authority of a State's alcohol control agency rather than the SHSO. However, the SHSO can be a critical partner in many prevention and intervention. Only countermeasures directly associated with drinking and driving are discussed in this section. For information regarding more general countermeasures directed at alcohol, see Alcohol Epidemiology Program (2000), Grube and Stewart (2004), National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine (2018), and Toomey and Wagenaar (1999).

### Communications and outreach.

Communications and outreach strategies seek to inform the public of the dangers of driving while impaired by alcohol or drugs and to promote positive social norms of not driving while impaired. As with prevention and intervention, education through communications and outreach strategies is especially important for youth under 21 years old. Education may occur through formal classroom settings, social media, news media, paid advertisements and PSAs, and a wide variety of other communication channels such as posters, billboards, web banners, and the like.

Communication and outreach strategies are critical parts of many deterrence and prevention strategies. This section discusses only stand-alone communication and outreach countermeasures.

### 5.1 Alcohol Screening and Brief Intervention

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $$ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Alcohol screening uses a few questions to estimate the level and severity of alcohol use and to determine whether a person may be at risk of alcohol misuse or dependence (SAMHSA, 2015). Brief interventions are short, one-time encounters with people who may be at risk of alcohol-related injuries or other health problems. Brief interventions focus on awareness of the problem and motivation toward behavior change. The combination of alcohol screening and brief intervention is most commonly used with injured patients in hospital emergency departments and trauma centers. Patients are screened for alcohol abuse problems and, if appropriate, are counseled on how alcohol can affect injury risk and overall health. Patients also may be referred to follow-up alcohol treatment programs. A brief intervention takes advantage of a "teachable moment" when a patient can be shown that alcohol use can have serious health consequences.

Dill et al. (2004) and Higgins-Biddle and Dilonardo (2013) summarize alcohol screening and brief intervention studies. NHTSA and the American Public Health Association (APHA) have also produced an alcohol and brief intervention guide for public health practitioners (Guard & Rosenblum, 2008). Finally, NHTSA offers a toolkit to help conduct screening and brief intervention on college campuses (Quinn-Zobeck, 2007).

**Use:** About half of all trauma centers screen patients for alcohol abuse problems and one-third use some form of brief intervention (Goodwin et al., 2005, Strategy A4; Schermer et al., 2003). Alcohol screening and brief interventions also are used in colleges, primary care medical facilities, and social service settings (Goodwin et al., 2005, Strategy A4). Brief interventions have also been used to reduce DWI among young adults and adolescents (Tanner-Smith & Lipsey, 2015).

**Effectiveness:** Many studies show that alcohol screening and brief interventions in medical facilities can reduce drinking and self-reported driving after drinking (D'Onofrio & Degutis, 2002; Moyer et al., 2002; Wilk et al., 1997). Dill et al. (2004) reviewed nine studies that evaluated alcohol screening and brief intervention effects on relevant outcomes, such as personal alcohol use and motor vehicle collision injuries. These studies generally found that alcohol screening and brief interventions reduced both drinking and alcohol-related traffic crashes and injuries. Considering the variety of brief intervention implementations based on the clinician's expertise and time constraints (they can be anywhere from 5 to 30 minutes, and use techniques such as motivational interviewing, brief negotiated interviewing, and/or cognitive behavioral therapy), brief interventions are more effective with some populations (National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine, 2018). For example, patients with alcohol use disorders may need to be referred to increasingly intensive treatment plans (National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine, 2018). In their 2015 meta-analysis Steinka-Fry et al. examined the effectiveness of brief interventions in reducing driving after drinking among young people 11 to 25 years old. Results based on 12 studies reported in 30 documents reported brief interventions were associated with modest but positive reductions in driving after drinking and the related consequences among young people. They also suggest that brief interventions may

constitute cost-effective preventative approaches for addressing drinking and driving, which is widespread in young age groups.

However, a study of adult emergency department patients who screened positive for risky alcohol use did not find any impact of brief interventions (Baird et al., 2017). A limitation to the intervention tool used in this study was that none of the patients were screened for alcohol use disorder or were referred to treatment, which is often an integral part of the brief intervention process (National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine, 2018). Participant outcomes were measured by self-reported drinking and driving behaviors (based on the 6 items from the Impaired Driving Scale) in follow-up interviews. One group of patients was administered a brief intervention program (3 telephone counseling intervention sessions based on the principles of motivational interviewing; n = 204) and the control group was given a placebo program on fire and burn home safety (n = 203). Neither participant groups' pre-treatment self-reported readiness to change, nor the mechanism of injury (motor vehicle crash versus other) affected self-reported outcomes (Baird et al., 2017).

**Costs:** Alcohol screening and brief interventions in medical facilities require people with special training to administer the intervention. However, several studies show intervention is cost effective and substantially reduces future health care costs such as hospital and emergency room visits (Guard & Rosenblum, 2008).

**Time to implement:** Procedures for alcohol screening and brief interventions are readily available from APHA (Guard & Rosenblum, 2008), the American College of Emergency Physicians (ACEP, 2006), and the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA, 2005), and can be implemented as soon as staff is identified and trained.

**Other issues:**

- **Alcohol exclusion laws:** An alcohol exclusion law (Uniform Accident and Sickness Policy Provision Law or UPPL) allows insurance companies to deny payment to hospitals for treating patients injured while impaired by alcohol or a non-prescription drug (NHTSA, 2008). These laws may cause hospitals to be reluctant to determine the BACs of injured drivers and may limit the use of alcohol screening (although screening does not measure the patient's BAC). As of April 2018 alcohol exclusion laws were in effect in 37 States (GHSA, 2018a), though the extent to which insurance companies deny payment is, at best, sporadic.

### 5.2 Mass Media Campaigns

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $$$ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

A mass media campaign consists of intensive communication and outreach regarding alcohol-impaired driving that use radio, television, print, social, and other mass media, both paid and/or earned. Mass media campaigns are a standard part of every State's efforts to reduce alcohol-impaired driving. Some campaigns publicize deterrence or prevention measures such as changes in a State's DWI laws, or checkpoints or other highly visible enforcement. Other campaigns promote specific behaviors such as the use of designated drivers, illustrate how impaired driving can injure and kill, or simply urge the public not to drink and drive. Campaigns vary enormously in quality, size, duration, funding, and many other ways. An effective campaign identifies a specific target audience and communication goal and develops messages and delivery methods that are appropriate to – and effective for – the audience and goal (Williams, 2007).

**Use:** Most States use some form of alcohol-impaired-driving mass media campaign every year. These are essential to many deterrence and prevention countermeasures that depend on public knowledge to be effective.

**Effectiveness:** Most mass media campaigns are not evaluated. Elder et al. (2004) studied the few available high-quality evaluations. The campaigns being evaluated were carefully planned, well-funded, well-executed, achieved high levels of audience exposure (usually by using paid advertising), had high-quality messages that were pre-tested for effectiveness, and were conducted in conjunction with other impaired-driving activities (usually enforcement). These mass media campaigns were associated with a 13% reduction in alcohol-related crashes. In general, mass media outreach works best as part of a multifaceted campaign that includes HVE (see Sections 2.1, 2.2 in this chapter). Levy et al. (2004) documented the costs and media strategy of a high-quality national media campaign and its effects on driver knowledge and awareness.

Broad campaigns may not be as effective as single-issue campaigns. The "More Cops More Stops" campaign covered impaired driving, seatbelt use, and speeding enforcement. It was deployed from November 2011 to August 2013 in Oklahoma and Tennessee both as standalone campaign, and in conjunction with specific enforcement campaigns such as *Click It or Ticket* and *Drive Sober or Get Pulled Over*. The campaign evaluation used driver awareness surveys in program and control regions in addition to roadside BrAC data. The evaluation found that although there was a small but significant decline in the percentage of drivers with positive BrACs in the two tested program areas, overall there was not enough evidence to suggest that the *More Cops More Stops* campaign added to the impact of ongoing campaigns. Instead, the complex focus of the campaign may have exacerbated "enforcement fatigue" (Nichols et al., 2016).

**Costs:** High-quality and effective mass media campaigns are expensive. Funds are needed for market research, design, pre-testing, and production. Paid advertising expenses depend on the media chosen and the media markets needed to reach the target audience.

**Time to implement:** A high-quality mass media campaign will require at least 6 months to research, plan, produce, and distribute.

**Other issues:**

- **Campaign quality:** Poor-quality or stand-alone campaigns that are not tied to program activities are unlikely to be effective. Similarly, although public service announcements (PSAs) are relatively inexpensive ways to deliver messages about impaired driving, they are likely to be aired infrequently, reach small audiences, miss the target audience, and have little or no effect. To be successful, mass media campaigns must be carefully pre-tested, communicate information not previously known, be long-term, and have substantial funding (Williams, 2007).
- **Comprehensive media strategy:** Mass media campaigns should be planned as part of an overall communications and outreach strategy that supports specific impaired-driving activities, such as enforcement.
- **Fear appeals:** Media campaigns commonly provoke fear or anxiety by showing the severe consequences of impaired driving -- injuries, deaths, grieving families. Evidence suggests this approach can potentially *increase* undesirable behaviors (Wundersitz et al., 2010). For this reason, appeals to fear should be used with caution, and other types of approaches should be considered first.
- **Social norms campaigns:** Social norms marketing campaigns are a more recent approach to reducing alcohol-related crashes. They are built on the premise that a person's behavior is influenced by perceptions of how most people behave. A Montana study demonstrated the potential effectiveness of this approach in surveys of young adults 21 to 34 years old that revealed only 20% had driven in the previous month after consuming two or more alcoholic drinks. However, more than 90% thought their peers had done so (Linkenbach & Perkins, 2005). Based on this finding, a paid media campaign was developed with the social norming message, "MOST Montana Young Adults (4 out of 5) Don't Drink and Drive." By the end of the campaign, there was a 13.7% difference in young adults who reported driving after drinking relative to a comparison community. During the campaign, reported drunk driving among young adults in target counties decreased from 22.9% to 20.9%, while the percentage in non-targeted counties increased from 16.9% to 28.6%.
- **Social media:** NHTSA and most States have begun using social networking sites to reach the general public with messages about alcohol-impaired driving. Although sites such as Facebook, Twitter, Instagram, Snapchat, and YouTube can effectively and inexpensively reach large numbers of people, there are no evaluations of alcohol-impaired-driving campaigns that use this approach. Similar to mass media campaigns and other types of communication described above, social media is unlikely to be as effective as a stand-alone strategy; however, it may be useful combined with other communications to support specific impaired-driving activities. A recent survey of the role and use of social media in traffic safety messaging recommended practices to incorporate social media in outreach efforts (Sack et al., 2019). These include reusing the same messages across traditional and social media platforms, using images and videos strategically, timing the messaging and content appropriately, and collaborating with other agencies to maximize visibility.

### 5.3 Responsible Beverage Service

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

This countermeasure covers alcohol sales policies and practices that prevent or discourage restaurant/bar patrons from drinking to excess or from driving while impaired by alcohol. It includes server training programs and management policies.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure is widely used. Its effectiveness has been examined in several research studies; however, server training programs are the only segment of responsible beverage service for adults that has been adequately documented and evaluated. Research suggests that server training programs can be effective if they involve intensive, high-quality, face-to-face server training accompanied by strong and active management support (Shults et al. 2001). When server training programs are not intensive and are not supported, they are unlikely to result in greater refusals of service to intoxicated patrons. Despite these positive research findings, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement are available in Appendix A1, Section 5.3.

### 5.4 Alternative Transportation

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Alternative transportation describes methods people can use to get to and from places where they drink without having to drive. They supplement normal public transportation provided by subways, buses, and other means.

Ride service options may include for-profit and nonprofit safe rides (Barrett et al., 2017; Vanlaar, Hing, Powell, & Robertson, 2017). For-profit safe rides include transportation network companies that are on-demand and may be accessed through a mobile application. Nonprofit safe rides are free or charge minimal fees and often operate in specific regions -- near university campuses -- or at specific times such as weekends and holidays when impaired crashes occur at higher rates.

Ride services transport drinkers home from, and sometimes to and between, drinking establishments using taxis, private cars, buses, tow trucks, and even police cars. Some services drive the drinker's car home along with the drinker. Ride service programs are relatively inexpensive and easy for communities to implement. Although it can be difficult to measure their effectiveness, they can play a role in a community's efforts to reduce drinking and driving. For an overview, see Barrett et al. (2017), Decina et al. (2009), and Neuman et al. (2003, Strategy E1).

**Use:** As of April 2019 the National Directory of Designated Driver Services website listed 1,042 participating transportation providers in 787 different Counties in 41 States.

In a Traffic Injury Research Foundation multi-year survey of randomly selected American drivers 21 and older, 44% to 47%[5] said they were familiar with safe ride home programs (Vanlaar, Hing, Powell, & Robertson, 2017). Of these, 5% to 8% reported they always used such programs, and 4% said they sometimes used them. On the other hand, 87% to 91% of respondents stated they had never used safe rides programs. In the second round of data collection, 19% of respondents stated that they had used a for-profit ride share service such as Lyft or Uber after drinking. Women were more likely to rely on designated drivers than ride share services or public transportation than men. Safe-ride-home programs were used more by younger drivers than older drivers and more in urban areas than rural. Ride service programs vary considerably by region; and some in operation in North America are outlined in Barrett et al. (2017). Additional information is available on the NHTSA Buzzed Driving campaign page at www.nhtsa.gov/campaign/buzzed-driving.

**Effectiveness:** Barrett et al.'s group (2017) concluded in a literature review of 40 studies that research suggests a positive association between for-profit (5 studies showing an effect, 1 study showing no effect) and nonprofit (2 studies showing effects, 1 showing mixed results) safe ride programs and the reduction of alcohol-impaired driving arrests, crashes, and fatalities. Other evaluations of nonprofit safe ride programs also found mixed results. One examined one year-

[5] Range based on responses over the years of the survey.

round program and one holiday program. Both functioned smoothly and delivered rides, but neither demonstrated any effect on crashes (Molof et al., 1995). Another evaluation examined a year-round program in Aspen, Colorado, concluding it reduced injury crashes in the surrounding county by 15% (Lacey, Jones, & Anderson, 2000). Finally, a program using older luxury vehicles in Wisconsin that provided rides to and from bars resulted in a 17% decline in alcohol-related crashes during the first year (Rothschild et al., 2006). The program became largely self-sustaining through fares and tavern contributions. These and other programs are summarized in Decina et al. (2009). After reviewing select programs, Decina et al. (2009) concluded that a model alternative transportation program that reduces alcohol- related crashes should be continually available, free to users, convenient, and easy to use.

**Costs:** The major costs are for the ride service program rides. Short-term programs can be operated largely with donated rides. Year-round programs need enough steady funding to accommodate demand (Neuman et al., 2003, Strategy E1).

**Time to implement:** Short-term ride service programs can be established and operated informally in a few weeks. Longer-term programs need to establish long-term strategies for funding and managing the program.

### 5.5 Designated Drivers

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |

Designated drivers are people who agree not to drink so they can drive home their friends who have been drinking. Formal designated driver programs in bars and restaurants provide incentives such as free soft drinks for people who agree to be designated drivers. Usually, designated driver arrangements are completely informal. Designated driver programs focus on specific actions taken at drinking establishments, which contrast with designated driver mass media campaigns that seek to generally raise awareness of this countermeasure and promote its informal use among the general driving population (see Section 5.2)

**Effectiveness Concerns**: *The countermeasure effectiveness has been examined in a few research studies. There have been some positive research findings in terms of driver awareness of the countermeasure. However, the balance of evidence regarding the effectiveness of this countermeasure in reducing crashes remains inconclusive.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement are available in Appendix A1, Section 5.5.

## 6. Underage Drinking and Driving

Teenagers drink and drive less often than adults but are more likely to crash when they do drink and drive (Williams, 2003). Teenagers' brains are still developing, and teenagers are inexperienced with both driving and drinking. In addition to inexperience, teenagers do not fully understand risks and consequences (Tymula et al., 2012). Consequently, they have a higher crash risks than adult drivers no matter the BAC (Mayhew et al., 1986; Zador et al., 2000). Alcohol-related crashes among teenagers are typically at night, on weekends, and with passengers (Bingham et al., 2009).

Many countermeasures in previous sections of this chapter apply both to adults and teenagers as well. However, some countermeasures to reduce drinking and alcohol-related crashes are directed specifically to those under 21.

Since 1988 minimum-drinking-age laws in all States prohibit youth under 21 from possessing alcohol. Most States also prohibit minors from buying and drinking alcohol. These laws influence all youth impaired-driving strategies. For people 21 and older, drinking is legal, but driving with BACs of .08 g/dL or higher is not. Utah is currently the only State that has an illegal BAC limit law of .05 g/dL effective since the end of 2018. The message for those under 21 is unambiguous: they should not be drinking at all, and they certainly should not be driving after drinking.

Zero-tolerance laws in all States reinforce this message by setting a maximum BAC limit of less than .02 g/dL or less for drivers under 21. This effectively prohibits driving after drinking *any* amount of alcohol. Presently, zero-tolerance laws are not actively publicized or enforced by many States. In addition, compliance checks of alcohol vendors can reduce the availability of alcohol to those under 21, though again this strategy is not used as widely as it could be. Many other policies and programs reinforce the no-drinking message directed primarily at adults (beer keg registration, social host liability) or take place in schools or youth organizations (Students Against Destructive Decisions chapters, alcohol-free prom and graduation parties). Youth receive limited education and information about alcohol and alcohol-impaired driving in schools and colleges, through licensing agencies, and through media directed to youth.

The minimum-drinking-age laws and the no-drinking message for youth mean that youth impaired-driving activities must work hand-in-hand with activities to control youth drinking. Except for zero-tolerance law enforcement and alcohol vendor compliance checks, many countermeasures discussed next require cooperation between traditional highway safety organizations, law enforcement, motor vehicle departments, and community, health, and educational organizations with social agendas broader than traffic safety.

### 6.1 Minimum Legal Drinking Age 21 Laws

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Low |
|---|---|---|---|

The primary strategies to reduce underage drinking as well as drinking and driving have been restricting access to alcohol via minimum purchase age laws. Since July 1988 the minimum legal drinking age (MLDA) has been 21 in all States. There is strong evidence that MLDA-21 laws reduce drinking, driving after drinking, and alcohol-related crashes and injuries among youth (Hingson et al., 2004; McCartt, Hellinga, & Kirley, 2010; Shults et al., 2001; Wagenaar & Toomey, 2002). In fact, MLDA-21 laws reduced youth drinking and driving more than youth drinking alone (using the measurements of self-reporting and testing of impaired drivers in fatal crashes). Drinking and driving has become less socially acceptable among youth, and more youth have separated their drinking from their driving (Azofeifa et al., 2019; Hedlund et al., 2001).

The implementation of MLDA-21 laws for alcohol vendors, adults, and youth differ substantially from State to State. See the Alcohol Policy Information System for State-by-State summaries of some of the key provisions: https://alcoholpolicy.niaaa.nih.gov/underage-drinking/state-profiles.

**Use:** The minimum age to buy alcohol is 21 in all 50 States and the District of Columbia.

**Effectiveness:** Several reviews point to the effectiveness of MLDA-21 laws. Shults et al. (2001) identified 33 studies examining effects of changing the legal drinking age. Overall, changes to the MLDA affected alcohol-related crashes by 10% to 16%, with crashes decreasing when the MLDA was raised, and increasing when it was lowered. Wagenaar and Toomey (2002) reviewed 79 high-quality studies examining the relationship between the MLDA and crashes. Of these, 58% found fewer crashes associated with higher MLDA, whereas none found fewer crashes associated with lower MLDA. These findings prompted McCartt, Hellinga, and Kirley (2010) to conclude: "The highway safety benefits of MLDA-21 have been proven, and the cause-and-effect relationship between MLDA and highway crashes is clear. Deaths go up when the drinking age is lowered, and they go down when it is raised" (p. 180). NHTSA estimates that MLDA-21 laws have saved 31,959 lives since 1975, and an estimated 538 lives in 2017 alone (NCSA, 2020b).

A Canadian study compared alcohol-impaired driving offenses among drivers slightly *older* than the MLDA and drivers slightly *younger* than the MLDA (Callaghan, Gatley, Sanches, Asbridge, & Stockwell, 2016; Callaghan Gatley, Sanches, Benny, & Asbridge, 2016). The MLDA is 18 in Alberta, Manitoba, and Quebec provinces, and 19 elsewhere in Canada. The study found that drivers aging out of the drinking-age restriction were associated with increases in alcohol-impaired driving offenses ranging from 28 to 43% among males and 19 to 40% among females. The authors conclude that these findings provide support for raising the MLDA in Canada and implementing widespread zero-tolerance BAC policies for young drivers (Callaghan, Gatley, Sanches, Asbridge, & Stockwell, 2016). Both measures, along with focused public health awareness interventions, promote the development of safe driving skills and driving experience in young drivers.

**Costs:** There are no direct costs of MLDA-21 laws. Costs may be needed for enforcement of MLDA-21 laws. (See Chapter 1, Sections 6.2 and 6.3).

**Time to implement:** MLDA-21 laws can be implemented as soon as appropriate legislation is enacted.

**Other issues:**

- **Repealing MLDA-21 laws:** From 2007 to 2010 six U.S. States introduced legislation allowing at least some people under 21 to purchase and consume certain types of alcoholic beverages (McCartt et al., 2010); to date none have passed. Perhaps the most notable and highly publicized effort to lower the MLDA was a statement signed by approximately 120 college and university presidents in 2008 suggesting MLDA be lowered to 18. This group questioned the validity of MLDA-21 research, and advocated for education in place of laws to reduce drinking among young people. Many organizations have opposed lowering the legal drinking age. There has been more research on the MLDA than perhaps any other alcohol-control policy (Wechsler & Nelson, 2010). Most traffic safety experts have concluded that MLDA-21 laws are effective, and they recommend strengthening enforcement of MLDA-21 laws and establishing policies to support them. For further discussion of this issue, see Wechsler and Nelson (2010) and McCartt, Hellinga, and Kirley (2010).

### 6.2 Zero-Tolerance Law Enforcement

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Zero-tolerance laws set a maximum BAC of less than .02 g/dL or less for drivers under 21. Violators have their driver licenses suspended or revoked. There is strong evidence that zero-tolerance laws reduce alcohol-related crashes and injuries (Voas & Lacey, 2011; Goodwin et al., 2005, Strategy B3; Shults et al., 2001). Fell et al. (2009) estimate that zero-tolerance laws save 159 lives each year.

However, zero-tolerance laws often are not actively enforced or publicized (Hedlund et al., 2001; Voas & Lacey, 2011). Studies have found that young drivers are not arrested in proportion to their involvement in alcohol-related crashes (Hingson et al., 2004). One exception is Washington State, where a study found arrests for alcohol violations among 16- to 20-year-old drivers increased by about 50% after the zero-tolerance law went into effect (McCartt et al., 2007). Enforcement may be greater in Washington because the law allows officers to request tests for alcohol based on suspicion of either a DWI or zero-tolerance offense. In other States where drivers can only be tested if DWI is suspected, zero-tolerance laws may be more difficult to enforce.

**Use:** Zero-tolerance laws have been in effect in all States since 1998. The degree to which they are enforced in States is unknown.

**Effectiveness:** An early (1992) study in Maryland found that alcohol-involved crashes for drivers under
21 dropped by 21% in six counties after the zero-tolerance law was implemented. After the law was publicized extensively, these crashes dropped by an additional 30% (Blomberg, 1992). No other studies have examined the effect of increasing enforcement and publicity for an existing zero-tolerance law. Lacey, Jones, and Wiliszowski (2000) documented how zero-tolerance laws are administered and enforced in 4 States. Highly publicized enforcement has proven effective in increasing compliance with many traffic safety laws and reducing crashes and injuries: see for example sobriety checkpoints (Chapter 1, Section 2.1) and seat belt use mobilizations (Chapter 2, Section 2.1). A review of impaired driving law impacts on alcohol-related fatalities from 1980 to 2009 found zero-tolerance laws to have the most impact with an estimate of 19 to 29 lives saved in 2012 (Ying et al., 2013). The study also found that areas with historically high impaired-driving fatalities may need *ex-post* regulations, such as the zero-tolerance and other penalizing laws, to reverse the trend. This contrasts to other locations that can show improvements with preventative regulations such as the MLDA and open container laws.

**Costs:** Zero-tolerance laws can be enforced during regular patrols or during special patrols directed at times and areas when young impaired drivers may be present. Enforcement will require moderate costs for appropriate training, publicity, and perhaps equipment (see Other issues).

**Time to implement:** Enforcement programs can be implemented within 3 or 4 months, as soon as appropriate training, publicity, and equipment are in place.

**Other issues:**

- **Zero-tolerance-law provisions:** Zero-tolerance laws are far easier to enforce if the offense is an administrative rather than criminal violation as an administrative license suspension can be implemented without a court conviction, and if LEOs can use PBTs (preliminary breath test devices) at the roadside to determine if the law has been violated and, if so, to seize the driver's license (Jones & Lacey, 2001). Some State laws require the same probable cause as for a standard DWI arrest, or even require a full DWI arrest, before a BAC test for a zero-tolerance-law violation can be administered. In these States, the zero-tolerance law is not enforced independently of the standard DWI law, and in fact young drivers may not be aware of the zero-tolerance law (Hingson et al., 2004).
- **PBT and PAS:** Preliminary breath test devices are important for effective and efficient enforcement in States that allow PBT use for zero-tolerance laws. A passive alcohol sensor (PAS) can help officers detect violators who have consumed alcohol. See Chapter 1, Sections 2.3 and 2.4.
- **Holding juveniles in custody:** A complication of enforcing zero-tolerance laws is deciding how and where to hold young offenders once they are taken into custody. NHTSA helped produce an implementation guide for developing a juvenile holdover program (NHTSA, 2001).

### 6.3 Alcohol Vendor Compliance Checks

| Effectiveness: ★★★† | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

† Proven for reducing sales to underage people

In all 50 States alcohol venders must verify the age of young customers to be sure they are at least 21. However, several studies suggest young people can obtain alcohol without much difficulty. Across studies, young buyers successfully purchased alcohol in 44% to 97% of attempts without showing identification (Goodwin et al., 2005, Strategy A3). To reduce the likelihood that alcohol vendors sell alcohol to underage people, LEOs can conduct frequent compliance checks. In a compliance check "sting," LEOs watch as underage people attempt to buy alcohol and cite the server or vendor for an MLDA-21 violation if a sale is made. Vendors can include on-premise retailers (bars and restaurants) or off-premise outlets (convenience stores or liquor stores). Currently, online sales of alcohol are not well regulated, and vendors' age verification practices may not be stringent. In a 2011 study in North Carolina, 45% of online alcohol orders placed by underage students were delivered; 23% of these orders did not require age verification (Williams & Ribisl, 2012). Twelve percent of orders were rejected due to age verification at order placement or during fulfilment, and an additional 16% were rejected due to age verification at delivery.

An effective compliance check program works primarily through deterrence. The goal is to increase perception among vendors they will be caught if they sell alcohol to underage people. To maximize deterrence, compliance checks should be:

- Conducted frequently and on an unscheduled basis. Vendors should know compliance checks are taking place, but should not know exactly when.
- Conducted at all vendors, not just a sample of vendors in the community. One study showed the benefits of compliance checks did not generalize to vendors who were not checked (Wagenaar et al., 2005).
- Well-publicized among vendors and the community at large. This will discourage young people from trying to obtain alcohol, and encourage vendors to put policies and procedures in place that prevent the sale of alcohol to underage customers.
- Sustained over time. The effects of compliance checks decay over a few months, so an ongoing program is needed to maintain deterrence (Wagenaar et al., 2005).

A useful resource on how to conduct compliance checks is the Alcohol Epidemiology Program's *Alcohol Compliance Checks: A Procedures Manual for Enforcing Alcohol Age-of-Sale Laws*, available at www.aep.umn.edu/wp-content/uploads/2012/04/comp_check_maunal_updated_2013.docx.

**Use:** Twenty-two States and the District of Columbia prohibit all alcohol purchase by underage youth. Another 24 States prohibit purchase other than for law enforcement purposes such as merchant compliance checks (APIS, 2018a). Although many jurisdictions conduct compliance checks of alcohol retailers at least occasionally, few jurisdictions do so frequently or regularly. One national survey conducted in 2010-2011 found that only 35% of all local LEAs reported conducting compliance checks, and only 55% of these agencies reported checking all establishments that sold alcohol (Erickson et al., 2014). Less than 1 in 4 of these agencies

conducted checks more than twice a year. Seventy-six percent of State agencies reported conducting compliance checks; 59% of these reported checks at all establishments. Twenty-one percent of State agencies conducted checks more than twice a year.

**Effectiveness:** Several studies document that well-publicized and vigorous compliance checks reduce alcohol sales to youth; for example, a review of eight high-quality studies found that compliance checks reduced sales to underage people by an average of 42% (Elder et al., 2007). The effect of compliance checks on motor vehicle crashes has not been studied. In San Diego County, annual DUI citation data (2000-2013) were analyzed and the results suggested that retail beverage service laws (which prevent alcohol sales and service to minors including compliance checks) and social host laws (which prohibit hosting underage drinking) contributed to lower underage DUI rates (-25% and -32.1%, respectively) (Scherer et al., 2018).

**Costs:** Compliance checks require time from law enforcement. These costs can be supported, in part, through alcohol license fees or fines collected from non-compliant vendors.

**Time to implement:** Compliance checks can be implemented within 3 months if officers are trained in proper procedures.

**Other issues:**

- **Penalties for violations:** To increase the likelihood that penalties will be quickly and consistently enforced, Goodwin et al. (2005, Strategy A3) recommend that all penalties for violations should be administrative in nature. Also, the penalties must be substantial enough to deter alcohol vendors from selling to underage people. Some States employ graduated penalties for vendors who fail compliance checks, where both fines and suspension periods increase with each violation (Goodwin et al., 2005, Strategy A3).

### 6.4 Other Minimum Legal Drinking Age 21 Law Enforcement

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: Varies | Use: Varies | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

MLDA-21 law enforcement is very limited in many communities (Hedlund et al., 2001). Enforcement can take several forms, as summarized by Stewart (1999):

- *Actions directed at alcohol vendors*: Compliance checks to verify vendors will not sell to youth (see Chapter 1, Section 6.3), "dram shop"[6] liability laws or responsible beverage service training laws.
- *Actions directed at youth*: "Use and lose" laws that confiscate the driver's license of an underage drinker, "Cops in Shops" directed at underage alcohol purchasers, law enforcement "party patrols" using party dispersal techniques, and penalties for using false identification.
- *Actions directed at adults*: Beer keg registration laws, enforcement of laws prohibiting purchasing alcohol for youth, "shoulder tap" operations (in which decoy minors ask adults to purchase alcohol for them and if the adults comply, they are cited or arrested), and programs to penalize parents who provide alcohol to youth at parties.

Fell et al. (2016) found that nine laws that support enforcement of the MLDA-21 law significantly decreased fatal crash ratios of drinking to nondrinking drivers under 21. The nine MLDA-21 support laws are

(1) possession of alcohol,
(2) purchase of alcohol,
(3) use alcohol and lose your license,
(4) zero-tolerance .02 BAC limit for underage,
(5) age of bartender ≥ 21,
(6) State responsible beverage service program,
(7) fake identification support provisions for retailers,
(8) dram shop liability, and
(9) social host civil liability.

The study estimated that combined the nine MLDA-21 support laws save approximately 1,355 lives each year. However, only 5 States have enacted all nine laws. While these enforcement strategies have been used frequently, few have been evaluated. Several strategies are briefly described below, along with supporting research evidence.

**"Use and lose" laws:** These laws allow confiscation of the driver's license or postpone licensure for a period of time for youth who violate a State MLDA-21 law. Ulmer et al. (2001) investigated "use and lose" law implementation and effects in Pennsylvania. License suspensions for violations of MLDA-21 appeared to reduce subsequent traffic violations and crashes. In a

[6] The word "dram" has the same root as the Greek coin, a drachma, and was once a Greek unit of weight. In the 17th and 18th centuries British taverns called "dram shops" sold alcohol by the dram, then a unit of weight and roughly equivalent to a small teaspoon of liquid. It is now equivalent to 1/8 of an ounce and was used as a pharmaceutical measure even in the United States well into the 20th century. The Temperance Movement early in the 20th century used the term "dram shop" in its terminology opposing alcohol and the places that sold it, and the term became incorporated in law. A dram shop law usually holds the seller of alcohol – such as bar or tavern owner – responsible for a subsequent injury to an intoxicated person who bought alcohol from that vendor.

national study Fell et al. (2009) found "use and lose" laws were associated with a 5% decrease in fatal crashes among underage drivers. The study estimated that 165 lives would be saved each year if all States had these laws. "Use and lose" laws can be implemented quickly and inexpensively once enacted. To be effective, they should be publicized extensively. As of January 2018, 28 States and the District of Columbia had mandatory "use and lose" laws and another 8 States had "use and lose" authority that may be applied in varying circumstances. In Arkansas and Hawaii, "use and lose" laws have some mandatory and some discretionary sections (APIS, 2018a).

**Keg registration laws:** These laws link beer keg purchasers to identification numbers on the kegs, which provide a method of identifying adults who supply beer to parties attended by youth. As of January 2018 thirty States and the District of Columbia had mandatory keg registration laws (APIS, 2018b). Utah only permits the sale of kegs to authorized beer retailers to dispense beer on draft for consumption on the beer retailer's premises. In a study on the effectiveness of these laws, keg registration was shown to be associated with reduced traffic fatality rates in 97 U.S. communities (Cohen et al., 2001). However, the authors could not conclude that keg registration *caused* the lower fatality rates. A study by Fell et al. (2015) found that keg registration laws were associated with decreases in per-capita beer consumption, but increases in the ratio of drinking to sober underage drivers involved in fatal crashes.

**Media campaigns:** Ohio has conducted statewide media campaigns, *Parents Who Host Lose the Most*, since 2000, and it is now also used in other States and communities. The campaign informs parents and youth about Ohio's underage drinking laws and attempts to discourage parents from providing alcohol to underage drinkers at parties. Telephone surveys in 2006 showed that about 55% of parents and youth had heard messages about underage drinking (Applied Research Center, 2008). About two-thirds of those who had heard a message said that it prompted a conversation between parents and their teenagers about drinking. In comparison with surveys conducted in 2001, there was a 42% decrease among youth who reported knowing of parents who host parties where alcohol is served to teens.

**Underage Drinking Tip line:** In 2006 Kansas launched a statewide underage drinking tip line, 866-MustB21 and Pennsylvania uses 1-888-UNDER21. The toll-free tip lines operate 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, for people to report underage drinking parties, plans to purchase alcohol for underage people, and willingness of retailers to sell alcohol to underage people. The effect of the tip lines has not been evaluated. Nebraska introduced a statewide underage drinking tip line in 2009, using the same phone number as Kansas. States including New York, Texas, and Iowa have since implemented underage drinking tip lines.

**Social Host Liability:** Under social host laws, an adult who hosts an underage drinking party (specific laws), or who allow underage drinking to occur on that person's property (general laws), can be held accountable if a young person is subsequently involved in a crash. This liability might discourage adults (parents, older siblings, and friends) from purchasing alcohol for underage people or hosting underage parties. Conducting source investigations where law enforcement teams identify providers of the alcohol, can be resource-intensive and time-consuming (Curtis & Ramirez, 2011). Moreover, the few research studies that have examined the effect of social host liability laws have obtained conflicting findings (Voas & Lacey, 2011). Nonetheless, comprehensive and well-publicized efforts to hold providers accountable appear to be promising. Social host laws, and their accompanying penalties, vary from State to State. A

description of each State's social host laws may be found in NHTSA's *Digest of Impaired Driving and Selected Beverage Control Laws* (NHTSA, 2017). Another good resource is available from the Alcohol Policy Information System (2018c). As of January 2018 ten States have hosting laws specific to underage parties, and 21 States have general hosting laws (APIS, 2018c).

**Comprehensive community programs:** Community programs focus on changing the local environment to prevent alcohol abuse through changes in ordinances and norms, incorporating discrete counseling and prevention programs, or combinations of such strategies (Fagan et al., 2011). Several comprehensive community initiatives have reduced youth drinking and alcohol-related problems (Fagan et al., 2011; Hingson et al., 2004; Shults et al., 2009). These initiatives typically bring together several community government departments, such as schools, health, and law enforcement, with alcohol sellers, parents, youth, and citizen organizations (Fagan et al., 2011). They may include school-based programs, law enforcement, media, and other intervention strategies. They require strong leadership and organization. They may take many months to plan and implement. In particular, successful community initiatives are centered around data-driven practices and evidence-based measures, making the careful monitoring of program processes necessary to ensure quality outcomes.

The costs depend on the activities included; however, fiscal savings can be generated through the prevention of costs related to alcohol-abuse-related individual health and community expenses (Fagan et al., 2011). One example is a campaign conducted in Huntington, West Virginia, that included checkpoints to look for violations of the MLDA-21 law, checks of alcohol outlets to reduce sales to minors, and publicity for program activities. Roadside surveys conducted before and during the program showed a 93% drop in 16- to 20-year-old drivers having BACs greater than .05 g/dL (IIHS, 2008). Another promising program is Oregon's *Reducing Youth Access to Alcohol*. The program involves community mobilization including "reward and reminder" visits (where vendors receive rewards if they decline to sell alcohol to a minor), regular compliance checks, enforcement of minor in possession laws, and media advocacy. The program has been effective in reducing the sale of alcohol to minors: successful purchase attempts by minors dropped from 24% before the program to 5% afterwards. Additionally, the individual communities with the strongest programs also experienced reductions in underage drinking (Flewelling et al., 2013). NHTSA has produced a guide on how communities can prevent underage drinking, available at: https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/alcohol/Community%-20Guides%20HTML/Guides_index.html.

### 6.5 Youth Programs

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

This countermeasure involves youth drinking-and-driving prevention programs that seek to motivate youth not to drink, not to drink and drive, and not to ride with drivers who have been drinking. Although some programs use scare tactics, many employ positive messages and methods by providing positive role models that discourage alcohol use, promoting positive norms that do not involve alcohol, and encouraging youth activities that do not involve or lead to alcohol use. A more recent type of approach focuses on "social norms" or "normative feedback" that provides students with accurate information about drinking. Recognizing that young people often respond better to messages from their peers, some programs have adopted a peer-to-peer approach.

**Effectiveness Concerns**: *This countermeasure has been examined in several research studies. Despite some positive research findings, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement are available in Appendix A1, Section 6.5.

## 7. Drug-Impaired Driving

The impairing effects of alcohol and the dangers of drinking and driving are well-documented. By contrast, there is considerably less research investigating the potentially impairing effects of drugs on drivers. Some of the challenges in studying, measuring, and creating countermeasures to address drug-impaired driving include the following (Arnold & Scopatz, 2016; Berning & Smither, 2014; Compton et al., 2009; Compton, 2017; Logan et al., 2016; Smith et al., 2018; Stewart, 2006):

- There is a wide range of drugs, both licit and illicit, that can impair driving. Moreover, the list of drugs in common usage is constantly changing.
- Although the relationship between BAC and driving impairment is clear and well-documented, the relationship between blood levels of drugs and driving impairment has not been established for drugs other than alcohol.
- Alcohol leaves the body in a predictable pattern, whereas other drugs are eliminated at many rates; hence, timing is critical when conducting drug tests. In addition, blood levels of certain drugs can accumulate with repeated administrations, and can be detected well after impairment has ceased.
- It is not unusual for drivers to take more than one impairing drug at the same time or to combine drugs with alcohol. Although individual drugs, taken at normal doses, may not impair driving, drug effects may be synergistic when taken together and substantially increase the risk of a crash.
- Alcohol can be measured reliably through breath tests, but other types of drugs can only be measured through more intrusive tests of bodily fluids such as blood, urine, or saliva.
- Improvements to the quality and type of data collected during drug-impaired driving incidents are still in the initial stages of development and adoption by States and agencies.
- Countermeasures for addressing potential driving impairments from prescription and over-the-counter drugs may need to be different than countermeasures for alcohol- and illicit drug-impaired driving.

Despite these challenges, a growing body of research suggests that many illicit, prescription, and over-the-counter drugs may impair a driver's ability to operate a vehicle (for reviews, see Couper & Logan, 2004; Jones et al., 2003; Kelly et al., 2004; and Strand et al., 2016). Much of this research has involved laboratory or experimental studies using driving simulators, although some epidemiological studies have examined the effect of drugs on crash prevalence and risk. See Compton et al. (2009) for a discussion of this research.

In most cases, the research investigating the effect of drugs on driving has had variable results, in large part depending on the methodology employed. The crash risk associated with specific types of drugs is summarized below.

- **Benzodiazepines:** Common benzodiazepines include Valium, Xanax, and Klonopin. Several studies suggest benzodiazepine users are at increased risk of being involved in a crash (Movig et al., 2004; Rapoport et al., 2009), although some studies have not found these results. The risk appears to depend on the type of benzodiazepine used, the dose, the time since last use, and whether the drug was combined with alcohol (Dassanayake et al., 2011; Leung, 2011).

- **Marijuana:** The findings for marijuana also have been mixed, although a meta-analysis of epidemiological data concluded marijuana doubles the risk of a property damage or fatal crash (Asbridge et al., 2012). However, another study found only a 50% increase in the risk of property damage crashes, and no increase in the risk of fatal or injury crashes (Elvik, 2013). A large-scale study in Virginia found no elevated crash risk for THC users after adjusting for demographic variables and alcohol use (Compton & Berning, 2015). Generally, the risk appears highest when marijuana has been used recently, and especially when marijuana is combined with alcohol (Beirness & Simpson, 2006; Sewell et al., 2009). Pre-/post-studies on traffic safety related to marijuana legalization were conducted in Colorado and Washington. Both States legalized recreational marijuana use by adults 21 and older in 2014. A report from the National Bureau of Economic Research found that there was no firm evidence that the presence of THC was related to changes in marijuana-involved fatal crash risk in a comparison study between the two States and other control States between 2000 and 2016 (Hansen et al., 2018). However, some trends pointed to the potential for detrimental effects on safety. Fatal crashes involving marijuana increased in both States and THC-positive drivers involved in crashes increased in Washington (20% to 30% between 2005-2014); however, impairment status is unknown for these drivers.
- **Stimulants:** There have been fewer studies examining the risks of stimulants such as amphetamines and cocaine on driving. The available studies suggest stimulants are strongly associated with fatal crashes (Elvik, 2013).
- **Narcotics:** Several studies have showed that narcotic drugs such as morphine, heroin, and opiates increase crash risk. One case-control study found a three times higher risk of a fatal crash when a driver is under the influence of a narcotic (Li et al., 2013). However, this study used FARS data that have limitations with respect to the interpretation, reporting, and testing of drug impairment in fatal crashes (Berning & Smither, 2014).
- **Antihistamines:** The relationship between antihistamines and motor vehicle crashes is ambiguous (Moskowitz & Wilkinson, 2004). A small connection has been found between first-generation antihistamines and crashes, but second-generation antihistamines appear to cause less sedation.
- **Antidepressants:** Second-generation antidepressant medications such as selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors do not seem to impair driving performance, but this is not necessarily the case with older types of antidepressants (Brunnauer & Laux, 2013).

Compton et al. (2009) describe four basic issues that must be addressed to better understand the extent of the problem of drug-impaired driving:

- What drugs impair driving ability?
- What drug dose levels are associated with impaired driving?
- How frequently are impairing drugs being used by drivers?
- What drugs are associated with higher crash rates?

In sum, there are still sizeable gaps in our understanding of the effects of drugs on driving. In their review of drug-impaired driving, Jones et al. (2003) concluded: "The role of drugs as a causal factor in traffic crashes involving drug-positive drivers is still not understood… Current research does not enable one to predict with confidence whether a driver testing positive for a drug, even at some measured level of concentration, was actually impaired by that drug at the

time of crash" (p. 96). Perhaps the one consistent finding across studies is the risk of driver impairment increases substantially when drugs are combined with alcohol.

Similar to alcohol-impaired driving, drug-impaired driving is primarily addressed through a combination of laws, enforcement, and education (AAAFTS, 2018b; AAAFTS, 2018c). Relatively few countermeasures have been developed to specifically address drug-impaired driving, and there has been little evaluation of drug-impaired-driving countermeasures. The AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety investigated the potential for alcohol-impaired driving countermeasures to be applied to drugged and drug-impaired driving. Subject matter experts from across the United States participated in five panel discussions that were then summarized in two brief reports. The reports summarize the strengths and limitations of a range of countermeasures, including behavioral and educational interventions (AAAFTS, 2018b) and enforcement- and legal and policy-interventions (AAAFTS, 2018c). The conclusions point to the need for more research to better understand the nature and degree of traffic safety risk posed by drugs, as well as the effectiveness of potential countermeasures to address this issue. See the guide on drug-impaired driving produced by the Center for Problem-Oriented Policing for more information about drug-impaired-driving countermeasures (Kuhns, 2012). Marijuana-specific summaries can be found in NHTSA's Report to Congress (Compton, 2017) and the AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety's report (Logan et al., 2016). Smith et al. (2018) review the state of knowledge on countermeasures against impaired driving due to prescription and over-the-counter drugs.

Arnold & Scopatz (2016) provide 12 recommendations to States to address barriers to collecting and maintaining drug-impaired driving data. Based on these recommendations, an assessment of data collection procedures from across all States was performed (Fell et al., 2018). As of 2018 at least two-thirds of LEOs in 37 States had completed SFST training. Forty-nine States permit blood collection for drug testing, 35 States permit breath testing, and 39 States permit urine collection for drug testing. Fifteen States permit collection of oral fluids for drug testing and an additional 10 States had pilot test programs in place for oral fluid testing. Two States—Maryland and Washington—legally distinguish between arrests due to DUI-alcohol and DUI-drugs. An additional 32 States and the District of Columbia also report DUI-alcohol and DUI-drugs arrests separately.

### 7.1 Enforcement of Drug-Impaired Driving

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Enforcement of drug-impaired driving laws can be difficult. Typically, drug-impaired driving is only investigated when a driver is obviously impaired but the driver's BAC is low. If drivers have BACs over the illegal limit, many officers and prosecutors do not probe for drugs, as in many States drug-impaired driving carries no additional penalties.

Although several devices are available that allow officers to screen suspects for illegal drug use at point-of-contact, none have been proven to be accurate and reliable (Compton et al., 2009). Many LEAs employ drug recognition experts to assist in investigating potential drug-impaired-driving cases. NHTSA recommends that DREs participate in HVE and checkpoints, and respond to serious and fatal crashes. DREs use a standardized procedure to observe a suspect's appearance, behavior, vital signs, and performance on psychophysical and physiological tests to determine whether and what type of drug or drug category may have been used (Talpins et al., 2018). If drug intoxication is suspected, a blood or urine sample is collected and submitted to a laboratory for confirmation. NHTSA has developed the Advanced Roadside Impaired Driving Enforcement training, which bridges the gap between the SFST and the DRE training programs. This program is available to those who are already certified to conduct the SFST and requires 16 hours of pre-classroom instruction and 56 hours of classroom instruction (International Association of Chiefs of Police, 2020b).

**Use:** As of August 2014 all 50 States and the District of Columbia had drug evaluation and classification (DEC) programs, which are designed to train officers to become DREs (GHSA, 2015). As of December 2019 these programs have prepared more than 1,700 instructors and trained more than 9,800 officers (IACP, 2020a). During 2019 there were over 36,000 drug enforcement evaluations conducted by DREs as part of enforcement. This suggests drug-impaired-driving arrests are not as common in comparison to arrests for alcohol-impaired driving. However, it should be noted that the number of drug-impaired-driving arrests cannot be known as many States only record "impaired-driving" arrests, and do not separate alcohol from drug arrests. Additionally, it is suspected, many arrests are a combination of drugs and alcohol.

In DRE enforcement evaluations in 2019, cannabis was the most frequently identified drug category, followed by CNS stimulants, narcotic analgesics (opioids), and CNS depressants (IACP, 2020). Porath-Waller and Beirness (2014) investigated the validity of using SFSTs in detecting drug impairment among suspected drug-impaired drivers. Results of their study indicate CNS stimulants, CNS depressants, narcotic analgesics, and cannabis are significantly associated with impairment using SFST. Specifically, users of all drug types were significantly more likely to sway while balancing and use their arms to maintain balance on the one-leg-stand. Users of CNS depressants, CNS stimulants, and narcotic analgesics were significantly less likely to keep their balance while listening to test instructions on the walk-and-turn test. Finally, users of CNS depressants were significantly more likely to experience lack of smooth pursuit and distinct nystagmus at maximum deviation on the horizontal gaze nystagmus test.

**Effectiveness:** Several studies have shown DRE judgments of drug impairment are corroborated by toxicological analysis in 85% or more of cases (NHTSA, 1996). However, one experimental laboratory study found DREs' ability to distinguish between impaired and non-impaired people was moderate to poor for several types of drugs including marijuana, codeine, and amphetamines (Shinar et al., 2000). This study showed DREs tended to rely on just one or two "pivotal" cues to identify specific drug impairment.

A study of the drug evaluation and classification program determined that a combination of cues could provide higher levels of true positives in DRE identification of cannabis consumption (Hartman et al., 2016). These cues included metrics from physiological tests (finger-to-nose test, one-leg stand, and the walk-and-turn) and visual indicators (eyelid tremors). The findings suggest that there are certain differentiating cues for use by DREs in discerning cannabis consumption, though the relation to driving impairment is still unclear.

To date there have been no studies examining the effectiveness of enforcement in reducing drug-impaired driving or crashes. Research has been focused on the impact of decriminalization and legalization of marijuana on several aspects of the DWI system, including prevalence and enforcement. See the joint report by NHTSA, GHSA, and the Volpe National Transportation Systems Center (2017) and Otto et al. (2016) for comparative discussions across States.

**Costs:** As with other enforcement strategies, the primary costs are for law enforcement time and training. The time to conduct a DRE evaluation can be 2 to 4 hours. Training includes 72 hours of classroom instruction and approximately 50 hours of field work.

**Time to implement:** Drug-impaired-driving enforcement can be integrated into other enforcement within 3 months; however, time will be needed to train DREs in detecting drug impairment. DRE training consists of 9 days of classroom instruction, and DRE candidates are also required to perform supervised field evaluations to become certified (Compton et al., 2009).

### 7.2 Drug-Impaired-Driving Laws

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Unknown | Use: Medium† | Time: Short |

†Use for drug per se laws

This countermeasure involves laws that prohibit the use of impairing drugs by drivers. This includes impairment-based statutes, which stipulate that prosecution must prove the driver was impaired (for example, by driving recklessly or erratically). It also includes per se laws in which it is illegal to operate a motor vehicle if there are specific detectable levels of a prohibited drug in a driver's system. In some States, a positive drug test is sufficient for conviction, which is equivalent to "zero tolerance."

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *To date there have been no evaluations of the effect of drug-impaired-driving laws on the prevalence of drug-impaired driving or crashes.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement are available in Appendix A1, Section 7.2.

### 7.3 Education Regarding Medications

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Unknown | Use: Unknown | Time: Long |
|---|---|---|---|

This countermeasure involves providing education to physicians, pharmacists, and patients about the potential risk of motor vehicle crashes associated with certain prescription medications. Instruction targeting pharmacists can include modules that cover potentially driver-impairing prescription drugs, laws relating to medication use and DWI, and the role of pharmacists in counseling patients regarding medications and driving risk. More generally, education can also include use of clear warning labels on drug packaging.

**Effectiveness Concerns**: *This countermeasure has only been examined in a few studies. Although some of the studies report increased awareness by pharmacists of the effects of medication, there is no evidence of increased awareness among drivers. Overall, there are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement are available in Appendix A1, Section 7.3.

**Alcohol- and Drug-Impaired-Driving References**

AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. (2014). *2013 Traffic Safety Culture Index*. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/01/2013TrafficSafety-CultureIndexReport.pdf

AAAFTS. (2018a). *2017 Traffic Safety Culture Index*. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/03/TSCI-2017-Report.pdf

AAAFTS. (2018b). *Leveraging and enhancing alcohol countermeasures to reduce drugged driving: Behavioral and educational interventions* (Research brief). https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/08/18-0439_AAAFTS-Drugged-Driving-Countermeasures-%E2%80%93-Education-Research-Br....pdf

AAAFTS. (2018c). *Leveraging and enhancing alcohol countermeasures to reduce drugged driving: Enforcement, legal and policy-based approaches* (Research brief). AAAFTS. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/08/FINAL-18-0440_AAAFTS-Drugged-Driving-Countermeasures-Legal-Research-Brief_090418.pdf

Agimi, Y., Warren-Kigenyi, N., Berning, A., & Wochinger, K. (2014, January). *Compendium of traffic safety research projects 1985-2013* (Report No. DOT HS 811 847). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811847.pdf

Alcohol Epidemiology Program. (2000). *Alcohol policies in the United States: Highlights from the 50 States*. University of Minnesota School of Public Health. https://impacteen.uic.edu/generalarea_PDFs/Alcohol%20Policies%20in%20the%20United%20States.PDF

Alcohol Policy Information System. (2018a). *Underage drinking: Use/lose: Driving privileges*. https://alcoholpolicy.niaaa.nih.gov/apis-policy-topics/uselose-driving-privileges/44/maps-and-charts#page-content

APIS. (2018b). *Retail sales keg registration laws.* https://alcoholpolicy.niaaa.nih.gov/apis-policy-topics/keg-registration/27

APIS. (2018c). *Underage drinking: Prohibitions against hosting underage drinking parties*. https://alcoholpolicy.niaaa.nih.gov/apis-policy-topics/prohibitions-against-hosting-underage-drinking-parties/41#page-content

Alvarez, J., de Gier, H., Mercier-Guyon, C., & Verstraete, A. (2007, June 26). *Categorization system for medicinal drugs affecting driving performance* [Report of the ICADTS Working Group]. International Council on Alcohol, Drugs and Traffic Safety. http://icadts.nl/reports/medicinaldrugs1.pdf

American College of Emergency Physicians. (2006). *Alcohol screening and brief intervention in the emergency department*. www.acep.org/globalassets/uploads/uploaded-files/acep/clinical-and-practice-management/resources/publichealth/alcohol-screening/alcohol_screening_kit_overview.pdf

Applied Research Center. (2008). *Executive summary of "Parents who Host, Lose the Most: Don't be a Party to Teenage Drinking" campaign survey.* Miami University Middletown.

Arnold, L. S. & Tefft, B. C. (2016). *Driving under the influence of alcohol and marijuana: Beliefs and behaviors, United States, 2013-2015*. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. http://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/12/TSCIDUIBeliefsAndBehaviors_1.pdf

Arnold, L. S., & Scopatz, R. A. (2016). *Advancing drugged driving data at the State level: Synthesis of barriers and expert panel recommendations.* AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://aaafoundation.org/advancing-drugged-driving-data-at-the-state-level-synthesis-of-barriers-and-expert-panel-recommendations/

Asbridge, M., Hayden, J. A., & Cartwright, J. L. (2012). Acute cannabis consumption and motor vehicle collision risk: Systematic review of observational studies and meta-analysis. *BMJ: British Medical Journal*, *344*(536). doi: 10.1136/bmj.e536.

Axel, N. E., Knisely, M. J., McMillen, P., Weiser, L. A., Kinnard, K., Love, T., & Cash, C. (2019, March). *Best practices for implementing a state judicial outreach liaison program.* (Report No. DOT HS 812 676). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/14161-bestpracticesforsjols_032519_v10-withblanks-tag.pdf

Azofeifa, A., Rexach-Guzmán, B. D., Hagemeyer, A. N., Rudd, R. A., & Sauber-Schatz, E.K. (2019). Driving under the influence of marijuana and illicit drugs among persons aged ≥16 Years — United States, 2018. *Morbity and Mortality Weekly Report, 68*, 1153–1157.

Baird, J., Yang, E., Strezsak, V., & Mello, M. J. (2017). Examining motor vehicle crash involvement and readiness to change on drinking and driving behaviors among injured emergency department patients. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 18*(5), 463-469.

Banta-Green, C., Rowhani-Rahbar, A., Ebel, B., Andris, L. & Qiu, Q. (2016). Cannabis use among drivers suspected of driving under the influence or involved in collisions: Analysis of Washington State Patrol data. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. http://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/12/CannabisUseAmongDriversInWashington.pdf

Barrett, H., Vanlaar, W. G. M., & Robertson, R. D. (2017). Safe rides as an alternative to alcohol-impaired driving and their effects: A literature review. Traffic Injury Research Foundation. tirf.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/08/Safe-rides-A-literature-review-6.pdf

Barta, W. D., Fisher, V., & Hynes, P. (2017). Decreased re-conviction rates of DUI offenders with intensive supervision and home confinement. *The American Journal of Drug and Alcohol Abuse*, *43*(6), 742-746.

Beirness, D. J., & Beasley, E. E. (2014). An evaluation of immediate roadside prohibitions for drinking drivers in British Columbia: Findings from roadside surveys. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *15*, 288-233.

Beirness, D. J., Clayton, A., & Vanlaar, W. (2008). *An investigation of the usefulness, the acceptability and impact on lifestyle of alcohol ignition interlocks in drink-driving offenders* (Report No. 88). United Kingdom Department of Transport. https://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/20120606095242/http://assets.dft.gov.uk/publications/research-and-statistical-reports/investigation.pdf

Beirness, D. J., & Marques, P. R. (2004). Alcohol ignition interlock programs. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *5*(3), 299-308.

Beirness, D. J., & Robertson, R. D. (2005). *Alcohol interlock programs: Enhancing acceptance, participation and compliance.* Traffic Injury Research Foundation. https://docplayer.net/1663323-Alcohol-interlock-programs-enhancing-acceptance-participation-and-compliance.html

Beirness, D. J., & Simpson, H. M. (2006). Role of cannabis and benzodiazepines in motor vehicle crashes. In *Drugs and traffic: A symposium* (Transportation Research Circular, Number E-C096, pp. 12-21). Transportation Research Board. http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/circulars/ec096.pdf

Bergen, G., Pitan, A., Qu, S., Shults, R. A., Chattopadhyay, S. K., Elder, R. W., Sleet, D. A., Coleman, H. L., Compton, R. P., Nichols, J. L., Clymer, J. M., Calvert, W. B., & the Community Preventive Services Task Force. (2014). Publicized sobriety checkpoint programs: A community guide systematic review. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *46*(5), 529-539.

Berning, A., Compton, R., Vegega, M., Beirness, D., Hedlund, J., Jones, R., & Nichols, J. (2008, September). *Refusal of intoxication testing: A Report to Congress* (Report No. DOT HS 811 098). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811098_1.pdf

Berning, A., Compton, R., & Wochinger, K. (2015, February). *Results of the 2013–2014 National Roadside Survey of alcohol and drug use by drivers* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 812 118). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/812118-roadside_survey_2014.pdf

Berning, A., & Smither, D. D. (2014, November). *Understanding the limitations of drug test information, reporting, and testing practices in fatal crashes* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 812 072). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/812072-UnderstandLimitsDrugTest-ResearchNote.pdf

Bingham, C. R., Shope, J. T., Parow, J. E., & Raghunathan, T. E. (2009). Crash types: Markers of increased risk of alcohol-involved crashes among teen drivers. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs*, *70*, 528-535.

Bishop, C. A., Liu, S., Stephens, A. N., & Fitzharris, M. (2017). Associations between alcohol consumption patterns and attitudes towards alcohol interlocks. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *108*, 83-90.

Blomberg, R. D. (1992, March). *Lower BAC limits for youth: Evaluation of the Maryland .02 law* (Report No. DOT HS 807 859). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1549

Boddie, A., & O'Brien, A. (2018, March). *2016 digest of State laws: Driving under the influence of drugs. First edition* (Report No. DOT HS 812 468). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/812468_2016-digest-of-state-laws-driving-under-the-influence-of-drugs.pdf

Brunnauer, A., & Laux, G. (2013). The effects of most commonly prescribed second generation antidepressants on driving ability: A systematic review. *Journal of Neural Transmission*, *120*, 225-232.

Brunson, W., & Knighten, P. (Eds.). (2005, March). *Strategies for addressing the DWI offender: 10 promising sentencing practices* (Report No. DOT HS 809 850). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/dwi_offender-10_promising_sentencing_practices.pdf

Byrne, P. A., Ma, T., & Elzohairy, Y. (2016). Vehicle impoundments improve drinking and driving license suspension outcomes: Large-scale evidence from Ontario. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *95*(A), 125-131.

Byrne, P. A., Ma, T., Mann, R. E., & Elzohairy, Y. (2016). Evaluation of the general deterrence capacity of recently implemented (2009–2010) low and zero BAC requirements for drivers in Ontario. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *88*, 56-67.

California DMV. (2018). 2016 Annual report of the California DUI management information system (Report No. CAL-DMV-RSS-18-256). https://merritt.cdlib.org/d/ark%3A%2F13030%2Fm5256gq6/1/producer%2FS5-256.pdf

Callaghan, R. C., Gatley, J. M., Sanches, M., Asbridge, M., & Stockwell, T. (2016). Impacts of drinking-age legislation on alcohol-impaired driving crimes among young people in Canada, 2009–13. *Addiction, 111*(6), 994-1003.

Callaghan, R. C., Gatley, J. M., Sanches, M., Benny, C., & Asbridge, M. (2016). Release from drinking-age restrictions is associated with increases in alcohol-related motor vehicle collisions among young drivers in Canada. *Preventive Medicine, 91*, 356-363.

Casanova-Powell, T., Hedlund, J., Leaf, W. and Tison, J. (2015, May). *Evaluation of State ignition interlock programs: Interlock use analyses from 28 States, 2006-2011* (Report No. DOT HS 812 145). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/812145-EvalStateIgnitionInterlockProg.pdf

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011). Vital signs: Alcohol-impaired driving among adults—United States, 2010. *MMWR Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, *60*, 1351–1356. www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm6039a4.htm?scid=mm6039a4%20w

CDC. (2012). Vital signs: Drinking and driving among high school students aged >= 16 years – United States, 1991-2011. *MMWR Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, *61*, 796–800. www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm6139a5.htm?s_cid=mm6139a5_w

CDC. (2014). *Summary health statistics for U.S. adults: National Health Interview Survey, 2012*. www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/series/sr_10/sr10_260.pdf

CDC. (2018). *High School Youth Risk Behavior Survey*. https://nccd.cdc.gov/Youthonline/App/Default.aspx

Century Council. (2008). *Hardcore drunk driving: A sourcebook of promising strategies, laws & programs.* The National Hardcore Drunk Driver Project.

Chang, I., Gregory, C., & Lapham, S. C. (2002). *Review of screening instruments and procedures for evaluating DWI (Driving while intoxicated/impaired) offenders*. https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/70a9/e92f9b4d838476b9e0de726480c383318f98.pdf?_ga=2.167591032.75762146.1570474381-1703944869.1510587726

Chapman, E. A., Oulad, Daoud, S. & Maten, S. V. (2015). *General deterrent evaluation of the ignition interlock pilot program in California* (Report No. CAL-DMV-RSS-14-247). California Department of Motor Vehicles. www.dmv.ca.gov/portal/uploads/2020/04/S5-247-1.pdf

Cheesman, F., Kleiman, M., Lee, C. G., & Holt, K. (2014, May). *Ignition interlock: An investigation into rural Arizona judges' perceptions* (Report No. DOT HS 812 025). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/812025-Ignition-Interlock-Investigation-Rural-AZ-Judges.pdf

City of Columbus. (2019). Claiming an impounded vehicle. www.columbus.gov/publicservice/parking/Claiming-an-Impounded-Vehicle/

CLR – Clinical Laboratory Reference, 2019-2020. (2020). Cutoff and toxicity levels for drugs-of-abuse testing. www.clr-online.com/CLR_2019-20_Toxicity.pdf

Cohen, D. A., Mason, K., & Scribner, R. A. (2001). The population consumption model, alcohol control practices, and alcohol-related traffic fatalities. *Preventive Medicine*, *34*, 187.

Compton, R. P. (2017, July). *Marijuana-impaired driving: A Report to Congress* (Report No. DOT HS 812 440). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/34995

Compton, R. P., & Berning, A. (2015, February). *Drug and alcohol crash risk.* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. DOT HS 812 117). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/812117-Drug_and_Alcohol_Crash_Risk.pdf

Compton, R., Vegega, M., & Smither, D. (2009, December). *Drug-impaired driving: Understanding the problem and ways to reduce it: A Report to Congress* (Report No. DOT HS 811 268). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1949

Couper, F. J., & Logan, B. K. (2004, April). *Drugs and human performance fact sheets* (Report No. DOT HS 809 725). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://permanent.access.gpo.gov/lps97828/drugs_web.pdf

Curtis, S. C., & Ramirez, R. L. (2011, November). *Source investigations: A tool to combat impaired driving* (Report No. DOT HS 811 519). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811519.pdf

Dang, J. N. (2008, May). *Statistical analysis of alcohol-related driving trends, 1982-2005* (Report No. DOT HS 810 942). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/810942

Dassanayake, T., Michie, P., Carter, G., & Jones, A. (2011). Effects of benzodiazepines, antidepressants, and opioids on driving. A systematic review and meta-analysis of epidemiological and experimental evidence. *Drug Safety*, *34*, 125-156.

Decina, L. E., Foss, R. D., Tucker, M. E., Goodwin, A., & Sohn, J. (2009, September). *Alternative transportation programs: A countermeasure for reducing impaired driving* (Report No. DOT HS 811 188). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/40455

DeYoung, D. J. (1997, November). *An evaluation of the specific deterrent effect of vehicle impoundment on suspended, revoked and unlicensed drivers in California* (Report No. DOT HS 808 727). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1620

DeYoung, D. J. (2013a). Traffic safety impact of judicial and administrative driver license suspension. In *Countermeasures to address impaired driving offenders: Toward an integrated model* (Transportation Research Circular, Number E-C174, pp. 41-53). Transportation Research Board. http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/circulars/ec174.pdf

DeYoung, D. J. (2013b). Controlling the risk of impaired drivers through use of vehicle-based sanctions: Impoundment, forfeiture, and license plate sanctions. In *Countermeasures to address impaired driving offenders: Toward an integrated model* (Transportation Research Circular, Number E-C174, pp. 20-31). Transportation Research Board. http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/circulars/ec174.pdf

Dill, P. L., & Wells-Parker, E. (2006). Court-mandated treatment for convicted drinking drivers. *Alcohol Research & Health, 29*, 41-8. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6470906/

Dill, P. L., Wells-Parker, E., & Soderstrom, C. A. (2004). The emergency care setting for screening and intervention for alcohol use problems among injured and high-risk drivers: A review. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 5*, 278-291.

D'Onofrio, G., & Degutis, L. C. (2002). Preventive care in the emergency department: Screening and brief intervention for alcohol problems in the emergency department: A systematic review. *Academic Emergency Medicine, 5*, 627-638.

Downey, P.M. & Roman, J.K. (2014). *Cost-benefit analysis: A guide for drug courts and other criminal justice programs.* National Institute of Justice Research in Brief. www.ncjrs.gov/pdffiles1/nij/246769.pdf

Downs, J., Shults, R., & West, B. (2017). Attitudes toward mandatory ignition interlocks for all offenders convicted of driving while intoxicated. *Journal of Safety Research*, *63*, 99-103.

Dunlap, K. L., Mullins, T. G., & Stein, M. (2008, March). *Guidelines for community supervision of DWI offenders* (Report No. DOT HS 810 940). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/810940.pdf

Eichelberger, A. H., & McCartt, A. T. (2016). Impaired driving enforcement practices among State and local law enforcement agencies in the United States. *Journal of Safety Research*, *58*, 41–47.

Elder, R. W., Lawrence, B., Janes, G., Brewer, R. D., Toomey, T. L., Hingson, R. W.,… Fielding, J. (2007). *Enhanced enforcement of laws prohibiting sale of alcohol to minors. Systematic review of effectiveness for reducing sales and underage drinking* (Transportation Research Circular: Traffic Safety and Alcohol Regulation. Number E-C123, 181-187). Transportation Research Board. http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/circulars/ec123.pdf

Elder, R. W., Shults, R. A., Sleet, D. A., Nichols, J. L., Thompson, R. S., Rajab, W., & the Task Force on Community Preventive Services. (2004). Effectiveness of mass media campaigns for reducing drinking and driving and alcohol-involved crashes. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 27*, 57-65.

Elder, R. W., Voas, R., Beirness, D., Shults, R. A., Sleet, D. A., Nichols, J. L., & Compton, R. (2011). Effectiveness of ignition interlocks for preventing alcohol-impaired driving and alcohol-related crashes: A community guide systematic review. *American Journal of Preventative Medicine, 40*(3), 362-376. www.thecommunityguide.org/sites/default/files/publications/mvoi-AJPM-evrev-aid-massmedia.pdf

Elvik, R. (2013). Risk of road accident associated with the use of drugs: A systematic review and meta-analysis of evidence from epidemiological studies. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *60*, 254-267.

Erickson, D. J., Farbakhsh, K., Toomey, T. L., Lenk, K. M., Jones-Webb, R., & Nelson, T. F. (2015). Enforcement of alcohol-impaired driving laws in the United States: A national survey of state and local agencies. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *16*(6), 533-539.

Erickson, D. J., Lenk, K. M., Sanem, J. R., Nelson, T. F., Jones-Webb, R., & Toomey, T. L. (2014). Current use of underage alcohol compliance checks by enforcement agencies in the United States. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *38*(6), 1712-1719.

Erke, A., Goldenbeld, C., & Vaa, T. (2009). The effects of drink-driving checkpoints on crashes – A meta-analysis. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *41*, 914-923.

Fagan, A. A., Hawkins, J. D., & Catalano, R. F. (2011). Engaging communities to prevent underage drinking. *Alcohol Research & Health*, *34*(2), 167.

Farmer, C. M., Wells, J. K., Ferguson, S. A., & Voas, R. B. (1999). Field evaluation of the PAS III Passive Alcohol Sensor. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *1*, 55-61.

Federal Highway Administration. (2020, July 20). *Notice N4510.844. Revised apportionment of Federal-aid highway program funds for fiscal year (FY) 2020*. www.fhwa.dot.gov/legsregs/directives/notices/n4510844/

Fell, J., Auld-Owens, A., & Snowden, C. (2013). Evaluation of impaired driving assessments and special management reviews in reducing impaired driving fatal crashes in the United States. *Annals of Automotive Medicine*, *57*, 33-44.

Fell, J. C., Compton, C., & Voas, R. B. (2008). A note on the use of passive alcohol sensors during routine traffic stops. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *9*, 534-538.

Fell, J. C., Ferguson, S. A., Williams, A. F., & Fields, M. (2003). Why are sobriety checkpoints not widely adopted as an enforcement strategy in the United States? *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 35*, 897-902.

Fell, J. C., Fisher, D. A., Voas, R. B., Blackman, K., & Tippetts, A. S. (2009). The impact of underage drinking laws on alcohol-related fatal crashes of young drivers. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *33*, 1208-1219.

Fell, J. C., Kubelka, J., & Treffers, R. (2018). Advancing drugged driving data at the State level: State-by-State assessment. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/05/NORC-FINAL-REPORT_State-Recommendations-to-Improve-Data-on-Drugged-Drivi....pdf

Fell, J. C., Lacey, J. H., & Voas, R. B. (2004). Sobriety checkpoints: Evidence of effectiveness is strong, but use is limited. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 5*, 220-227.

Fell, J. C., Langston, E. A., Lacey, J. H., & Tippetts, A. S. (2008, February). *Evaluation of seven publicized enforcement demonstration programs to reduce impaired driving: Georgia, Louisiana, Pennsylvania, Tennessee, Texas, Indiana, and Michigan* (Report No. DOT HS 810 941). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/810941.pdf

Fell, J. C., & McKnight, A. S. (2013). *Transdermal alcohol monitoring (TAM) in compliance with abstinence: Records from 250,000 offenders in the United States*. Proceedings of the 2013 Australasian Road Safety Research, Policing & Education Conference. Brisbane, Queensland. https://acrs.org.au/files/arsrpe/Paper%2019%20-%20Fell%20-%20Alcohol%20and%20Driving.pdf

Fell, J. C., McKnight, A. S., & Auld-Owens, A. (2013, February). *Increasing impaired-driving enforcement visibility: Six case studies* (Report No. DOT HS 811 716). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811716.pdf

Fell, J. C., & Scherer, M. (2017). Administrative license suspension: Does length of suspension matter? *Traffic Injury Prevention, 18*(6), 577-584.

Fell, J. C., Scherer, M., Thomas, S., & Voas, R. B. (2014). Effectiveness of social host and fake identification laws on reducing underage drinking driver fatal crashes. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *15*(sup1), S64-S73.

Fell, J. C., Scherer, M., Thomas, S., & Voas, R. B. (2016). Assessing the impact of twenty underage drinking laws. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs, 77*(2), 249-260.

Fell, J. C., Scherer, M., & Voas, R. (2015). The utility of including the strengths of underage drinking laws in determining their effect on outcomes. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *39*(8), 1528-1537.

Fell, J. C., Tippetts, A. S., & Langston, E. A. (2011, March). *An evaluation of the three Georgia DUI courts* (Report No. DOT HS 811 450). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811450.pdf

Ferguson, S. A. (2012). Alcohol-impaired driving in the United States: Contributors to the problem and effective countermeasures. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *13*, 427-441.

Ferguson, S. A., Fields, M., & Voas, R. B. (2000). Enforcement of zero-tolerance laws in the United States. In *Proceedings of the 15th International Conference on Alcohol, Drugs and Traffic Safety,* Stockholm, Sweden.

Fieldler, K., Brittle, C., & Stafford, S. (2012, April). *Case studies of ignition interlock programs* (Report No. DOT HS 811 594). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811594.pdf

Fisher, D. A., McKnight, A. S., & Fell, J. C. (2013, November). *Intensive DWI supervision in urban areas—Feasibility study* (Report No. DOT HS 811 861). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811861.pdf

Flewelling, R. L., Grube, J. W., Paschall, M. J., Biglan, A., Kraft, A., Black, C.… Ruscoe, J. (2013). Reducing youth access to alcohol: Findings from a community-based randomized trial. *American Journal of Community Psychology*, *51*, 264-277.

Gerstein, D., Johnson, R., Harwood, H., Fountain, D., Suiter, N., & Malloy, K. (1994). *Evaluating recovery services: The California Drug and Alcohol Treatment Assessment (CALDATA).* California Department of Alcohol and Drug Problems.

Governors Highway Safety Association. (2015). *Drug impaired driving laws*. www.ghsa.org/html/stateinfo/laws/dre_perse_laws.html

GHSA. (2018a). *Alcohol-impaired driving laws by State, updated April 2018.* www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2018-04/DrunkDrivingLaws_040418_0.pdf

GHSA. (2018b). *Alcohol impaired driving.* www.ghsa.org/state-laws/issues/alcohol%20impaired%20driving

GHSA. (2019). *Alcohol-impaired driving laws by State, updated July 2019.* www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2019-07/DrunkDrivingLaws_071019.pdf

Goodwin, A., Foss, R., Hedlund, J., Sohn, J., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L., & Hardy, K. K. (2005). *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, Volume 16*: *A guide for reducing alcohol-related collisions*. Transportation Research Board. http://trb.org/publications/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v16.pdf

Government Accountability Office (GAO). (2014, June). *Traffic safety: Alcohol ignition interlocks are effective while installed; Less is known about how to increase installation rates* (Report to the Chairman, Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation, U.S. Senate, Report No. GAO-14-559). www.gao.gov/assets/670/664281.pdf

Grube, J., & Stewart, K. (2004). Preventing impaired driving using alcohol policy. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *5*, 199-207.

Guard, A., & Rosenblum, L. (2008). *Alcohol screening and brief intervention: A guide for public health practitioners*. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.lifespan.org/sites/default/files/lifespan-files/documents/centers/injury-prevention-center/alcohol-screeening-and-brief-intervention-web.pdf

Haire, E. R., Leaf, W. A., Presser, D. F., & Solomon, M. G. (2011, April). *Use of warrants to reduce breath test refusals: Experiences from North Carolina* (Report No. DOT HS 811 461). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811461.pdf

Hansen, B., Miller, K. S., & Weber, C. (2018). *Early evidence on recreational marijuana legalization and traffic fatalities* (Working Paper No. w24417). National Bureau of Economic Research. www.nber.org/papers/w24417

Harron, A., & Kavanaugh, J. M. (2015). *The bottom line: Research update on DWI courts*. National Center for DWI Courts. www.dwicourts.org/wp-content/uploads/The%20Bottom%20Line_0.pdf

Hartman, R. L., Richman, J. E., Hayes, C. E., & Huestis, M. A. (2016). Drug recognition expert (DRE) examination characteristics of cannabis impairment. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *92*, 219-229.

Hedlund, J. H., & Beirness, D. J. (2007, October). *Use of warrants for breath test refusals: Case studies* (Report No. DOT HS 810 852). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/810852.pdf

Hedlund, J. H., & McCartt, A. T. (2002). *Drunk driving: Seeking additional solutions.* AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/786e/4ce6c1ed0683cfa55b5b71859c4ad4f3b955.pdf

Hedlund, J. H., Ulmer, R. G., & Preusser, D. F. (2001, September). *Determine why there are fewer young alcohol-impaired drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 809 348). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/FewerYoungDrivers/

Higgins-Biddle, J., & Dilonardo, J. (2013, September). *Alcohol and highway safety: Screening and brief intervention for alcohol problems as a community approach to improving traffic safety* (Report No. DOT HS 811 836). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811836.pdf

Hingson, R. W., Assailly, J., & Williams, A. F. (2004). Underage drinking: Frequency, consequences, and interventions. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 5*, 228-236.

Hingson, R., Heeren, T., & Winter, M. (1998). Effects of Maine's 0.05% legal blood alcohol level for drivers with DWI convictions. *Public Health Reports, 113*, 440-446.

Hingson, R., McGovern, T., Howland, J., Heeren, T., Winter, M., & Zakocs, R. (1996). Reducing alcohol-impaired driving in Massachusetts: The Savings Lives Program. *American Journal of Public Health*, *86*, 791-797.

Huddleston, C. W., III, Marlowe, D.B., & Casebolt, R. (2008). *Painting the current picture: A national report card on drug courts and other problem-solving court programs in the United States, Vol. II, No. 1*. National Drug Court Institute. www.ndci.org/sites/default/files/ndci/PCPII1_web%5B1%5D.pdf

International Association of Chiefs of Police. (2020a). *Drug evaluation and classification program: 2019 annual report*. www.theiacp.org/sites/default/files/2020-04/2019%20DECP%20Annual%20Report.pdf

IACP. (2020b). *How to become a drug recognition expert.* www.theiacp.org/how-to-become-a-drug-recognition-expert

Insurance Institute for Highway Safety. (2008). Campaign spurs big drop in night drinking, driving. *Status Report, 43*(6), 4-5.

IIHS. (2017, May). *Alcohol-impaired driving: DUI/DWI.*

IIHS. (2018). *How do we move the needle?: Combating alcohol- and drug-impaired driving*. Impairment meeting.

Jones, R. K., Joksch, H. C., Lacey, J. H., Wiliszowski, C., & Marchetti, L. (1995). *Field test of combined speed, alcohol, and safety belt strategies* (Report No. DOT HS 808 242). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

Jones, R. K., & Lacey, J. H. (2001, November). *Alcohol and highway safety 2001: A review of the state of knowledge* (Report No. DOT HS 809 383). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.dot.gov/people/injury/research/AlcoholHighway/

Jones, R. K., & Nichols, J. L. (2012, July). *Breath test refusals and their effect on DWI prosecution* (Report No. DOT HS 811 551). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811551.pdf

Jones, R. K., & Rodriguez-Iglesias, C. (2004, December). *Evaluation of lower BAC limits for convicted OUI offenders in Maine* (Report No. DOT HS 809 827). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/809827.pdf

Jones, R. K., Shinar, D., & Walsh, J. M. (2003, September). *State of knowledge of drug-impaired driving* (Report No. DOT HS 809 642). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/INJURY/research/StateofKnwlegeDrugs/StateofKnwlegeDrugs/index.html

Jones, R. K., Wiliszowski, C., & Lacey, J. H. (1996, October). *Evaluation of alternative programs for repeat DWI offenders* (Report No. DOT HS 808 493). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/pub/hs808493.pdf

Kaufman, E. J., & Wiebe, D. J. (2016). Impact of state ignition interlock laws on alcohol-involved crash deaths in the United States. *American Journal of Public Health*, *106*(5), 865-871.

Kelley-Baker, T., Brainard, K., Lacey, J., Vishnuvajjala, R., & Cobb, P. (2008, September). *Implementing a DWI citizen's reporting program using the* Extra Eyes *model* (Report No. DOT HS 811 038). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811038.pdf

Kelley-Baker, T., Berning, A., Ramirez, A., Lacey, J. H., Carr, K., Waehrer, G., Compton, R. (2017, May). *2013-2014 National Roadside Study of alcohol and drug use by drivers: Drug results* (Report No. DOT HS 812 411). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/13013-nrs_drug_092917_v6_tag.pdf

Kelly, E., Darke, S., & Ross, J. (2004). A review of drug use and driving: Epidemiology, impairment, risk factors and risk perceptions. *Drug and Alcohol Review*, *23*, 319-344.

Kilmer, B., Nicosia, N., Heaton, P., & Midgette, G. (2013). Efficacy of frequent monitoring with swift, certain and modest sanctions for violations: Insights from South Dakota's 24/7 Project. *American Journal of Public Health*, *103*, e37-e43.

Kubas, A., Kayabas, P., & Vachal, K. (2015). *Assessment of the 24/7 sobriety program in North Dakota: Participant behavior during enrollment* (DP-279). Upper Great Plains Transportation Institute & North Dakota Department of Transportation.

Kubas, A., Kayabas, P., & Vachal, K. (2016). *The effects of legislatively-mandated sobriety on first-time and repeat DUI offenders in North Dakota* (DP-290). Upper Great Plains Transportation Institute, North Dakota State University.

Kubas, A., Kayabas, P., & Vachal, K. (2017). *Does the 24/7 sobriety program positively influence driver behaviors in North Dakota?* www.ugpti.org/resources/reports/downloads/dp-296.pdf

Kuhns, J. B. (2012, August). *Drug-impaired driving*. Center for Problem-Oriented Policing. https://popcenter.asu.edu/sites/default/files/sites/default/files/problems/pdfs/drug_impaired_driving.pdf

Lacey, J. H., Ferguson, S. A., Kelley-Baker, T., & Rider, R. P. (2006). Low-manpower checkpoints: Can they provide effective DUI enforcement for small communities? *Traffic Injury Prevention, 7,* 213-218.

Lacey, J. H., Kelley-Baker, T., Brainard, K., Tippetts, S., & Lyakhovich, M. (2008, November). *Evaluation of the* Checkpoint Strikeforce *Program* (Report No. DOT HS 811 056). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811056.pdf

Lacey, J. H., Jones, R. K., & Anderson, E. W. (2000, October). *Evaluation of a full-time ride service program: Aspen, Colorado's* Tipsy Taxi *service* (Report No. DOT HS 809 155). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/tipsytaxi/toc.htm

Lacey, J. H., Jones, R. K., & Wiliszowski, C. H. (2000, June). *Zero-tolerance laws for youth: Four states' experience* (Report No. DOT HS 809 803). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1637

Lacey, J. H., Wiliszowski, C. H., Tippetts, A. S., & Blackman, K. (2017, May). *Determining the effectiveness of flexible checkpoints* (Report No. DOT HS 812 420). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/812420-determine-effective-flexible-checkpts.pdf

Lee, J. D., Fiorentino, D., Reyes, M. L., Brown, T. L., Omar, A., Fell, J., Ward, N., & Dufour, R. (2010, August). *Assessing the feasibility of vehicle-based sensors to detect alcohol impairment* (Report No. DOT HS 811 358). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/NVS/Crash%20Avoidance/Technical%20Publications/2010/811358.pdf

Lapham, S. C., Kapitula, L. R., C'de Baca, J., & McMillan, G. P. (2006). Impaired-driving recidivism among repeat offenders following an intensive court-based intervention. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 38*, 162-169.

Leaf, W. A., & Preusser, D. F. (2011, January). *Evaluation of Minnesota's vehicle plate impoundment law for impaired drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 811 351). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811351.pdf

Lemons, B., & Birst, A. (2016). U.S. Supreme Court approves criminalizing breath refusals. *Between the Lines, 24*(2). https://ndaa.org/wp-content/uploads/BTL-v24-n2.pdf

Lenk, K. M., Nelson, T. F., Toomey, T. L., Jones-Webb, R., & Erickson, D. J. (2016). Sobriety checkpoint and open container laws in the United States: Associations with reported drinking-driving. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *17*(8), 782-787.

Lenton, S., Fetherston, J., & Cercarelli, R. (2010). Recidivist drink drivers' self-reported reasons for driving whilst unlicensed – A qualitative study. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *42*, 637-644.

Leung, S. Y. (2011). Benzodiazepines, opioids and driving: An overview of the experimental research. *Drug and Alcohol Review*, *30*, 281-286.

Levy, M., Compton, R., & Dienstfrey, S. (2004, March). *Public perceptions of the July 2003* You Drink & Drive. You Lose *crackdown: Telephone surveys show the media campaign reaches target audience* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 809 708). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/RN-public04/RN%20PublicPercep/index.html

Li, G., Brady, J. E., & Chen, Q. (2013). Drug use and fatal motor vehicle crashes: A case-control study. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *60*, 205-210.

Linkenbach, J., & Perkins, H. W. (2005, September). *Montana's* MOST of Us Don't Drink and Drive *campaign: A social norms strategy to reduce impaired driving among 21-34-year-olds* (Report No. DOT HS 809 869). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/alcohol/SocialNorms_Strategy/index.htm

Logan, B., Kacinko, S. L., & Beirness, D. J. (2016*). An evaluation of data from drivers arrested for driving under the influence in relation to per se limits for cannabis.* AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. http://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/12/EvaluationOfDriversInRelationToPerSeReport.pdf

Logan, B. K., Lowrie, K. J., Turri, J. L., Yeakel, J. K., Limoges, J. F., Miles, A.K., Scameo, C. E., Kerrigan, S., & Farrell, L.J. (2013). Recommendations for toxicological investigation of drug-impaired driving and motor vehicle fatalities. *Journal of Analytical Toxicology*, *37*, 552-558.

Loudenburg, R., Drube, G., & Leonardson, G. (2010). *South Dakota's 24/7 sobriety program evaluation findings report*. Mountain Plains Evaluation, LLC. https://atg.sd.gov/docs/AnalysisSD24.pdf

Lowe, N. (2014, May). Screening for risk and needs using the impaired driving assessment (Report No. DOT HS 812 022). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/812022-Screening_for_Risk_and_Needs.pdf

Ma, T., Byrne, P. A., Bhatti, J. A., & Elzohairy, Y. (2016). Program design for incentivizing ignition interlock installation for alcohol-impaired drivers: The Ontario approach. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *95*, 27-32.

Macdonald, S., Zhao, J., Martin, G., Brubacher, J., Stockwell, T., Arason, N., Steinmetz, S., & Chan, H. (2013). The impact on alcohol-related collisions of the partial decriminalization of impaired driving in British Columbia, Canada. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *59*, 200-205.

Maistros, A. R., Schneider, W. H., & Beverly, R. (2014, January 12-16). Low manpower checkpoints: An efficiency and optimization case study of OVI enforcement tools [Paper presentation]. 93rd Annual Meeting of the Transportation Research Board, Washington, DC.

Marlowe, D. B., Festinger, D. S., Arabia, P. L., Croft, J. R., Patapis, N. S., & Dugosh, K.L. (2009). A systematic review of DWI court program evaluations. *Drug Court Review*, *6(2)*, 1-52. https://ndcrc.org/wp-content/uploads/2020/06/DCRVolume6_Issue2.pdf

Marques, P. R. (Ed.). (2005). *Alcohol ignition interlock devices, vol. II: Research, policy, and program status 2005*. International Council on Alcohol, Drugs and Traffic Safety.

Marques, P. R., & Voas, R. B. (2010). *Key features for ignition interlock programs* (Report No. DOT HS 811 262). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/impaired_driving/pdf/811262.pdf

Marques, P. R., Voas, R. B., Roth, R., & Tippetts, A. S. (2010, November). *Evaluation of the New Mexico ignition interlock program* (Report No. DOT HS 811 410). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811410.pdf

Mayer, R. (2014, February). *Ignition interlocks – What you need to know: A toolkit for policymakers, highway safety professionals, and advocates,* 2nd edition (Report No. DOT HS 811 883). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/impaired_driving/pdf/811246.pdf

Mayhew, D. R., Donelson, A. C., Beirness, D. J., & Simpson, H. M. (1986). Youth alcohol and relative risk of crash involvement. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *18*, 273-287.

McCartt, A. T., Blackman, K., & Voas, R. B. (2007). Implementation of Washington State's zero tolerance law: Patterns of arrests, dispositions, and recidivism. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *8*, 339-345.

McCartt, A. T., Geary, L. L., & Nissen, W. J. (2002, February). *Observational study of the extent of driving while suspended for alcohol-impaired driving* (Report No. DOT HS 809 491). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/observation_study/index.htm

McCartt, A. T., Hellinga, L. A., & Kirley, B. B. (2010). The effects of minimum legal drinking age 21 laws on alcohol-related driving in the United States. *Journal of Safety Research*, *41*, 173-181.

McCartt, A. T., Leaf, W. A., & Farmer, C. M. (2018). Effects of Washington State's alcohol ignition interlock laws on DUI recidivism: An update. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, 19(7), 665-675.

McCartt, A. T. Leaf, W. A., Farmer, C. M., & Eichelberger, A. H. (2012). *Washington State's alcohol ignition interlock law: Effects on recidivism among first-time DUI offenders*. IIHS. www.iihs.org/topics/bibliography/ref/2155

McCartt, A. T., & Northrup, V. S. (2003, November). *Enhanced sanctions for higher BACs: Evaluation of Minnesota's high-BAC law* (Report No. DOT HS 809 677). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/EnhancedSanctions/index.html

McCartt, A. T., & Northrup, V. S. (2004). Effects of enhanced sanctions for high-BAC DWI drivers on case dispositions and rates of recidivism. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 5,* 270-277.

McCartt, A. T., Wells, J. K., & Teoh, E. R. (2010). Attitudes toward in-vehicle advanced alcohol detection technology. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *11*, 156-164.

McGinty, E. E., Tung, G., Shulman-Laniel, J., Hardy, R., Rutkow, L., Frattaroli, S., & Vernick, J. S. (2017). Ignition interlock laws: Effects on fatal motor vehicle crashes, 1982–2013. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *52*(4), 417-423.

McKnight, A. S., Fell, J. C., & Auld-Owens, A. (2012, August). *Transdermal alcohol monitoring: Case studies* (Report No. DOT HS 811 603). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811603.pdf

Michigan Supreme Court and NPC Research. (2008). *Michigan DUI courts outcome evaluation: Executive summary*. Michigan Supreme Court State Court Administrative Office.

*Mitchell v. Wisconsin.* (2019). www.scotusblog.com/case-files/cases/mitchell-v-wisconsin/

Mitchell, O., Wilson, D. B., Eggers, A., & MacKenzie, D. L. (2012). Assessing the effectiveness of drug courts on recidivism: A meta-analytic review of traditional and non-traditional drug courts. *Journal of Criminal Justice*, *40*, 60-71.

Molof, M., Dresser, J., Ungerleider, S., Kimball, C., & Schaefer, J. (1995, January). *Assessment of year- round and holiday ride service programs* (Report No. DOT HS 808 203). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/39628/dot_39628_DS1.pdf?

Moskowitz, H., & Wilkinson, C. J. (2004, June). *Antihistamines and driving-related behavior: A review of the evidence for impairment* (Report No. DOT HS 809 714). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/antihistamines/Antihistamines%20Web/pages/TOC.htm

Mothers Against Drunk Driving. (2018). *2018 child endangerment report.* www.madd.org/get-help/concerned-citizen/#childendangerment

Moulton, B. E., Peterson, A., Haddix, D., & Drew, L. (2010, August). *National survey of drinking and driving attitudes and behaviors: 2008. Volume II: Findings report* (Report No. DOT HS 811 343). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811343.pdf

Movig, K. L., Mathijssen, M. P., Nagel, P. H., van Egmond, T., de Gier, J. J., Leufkens, H.G., & Egberts, A.C. (2004). Psychoactive substance use and the risk of motor vehicle accidents. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *36*, 631-636.

Moyer, A., Finney, J. W., Swearingen, C. E., & Vergun, P. (2002). Brief interventions for alcohol problems: A meta-analytic review of controlled investigations in treatment-seeking and non-treatment-seeking populations. *Addiction, 97*, 279-292.

Nagin, D. S., & Pogarsky, G. (2006). Integrating celerity, impulsivity, and extralegal sanction threats into a model of general deterrence: Theory and evidence. *Criminology*, *39*(4), 865–892.

Namuswe, E. A., Coleman, H. L., & Berning, A. (2014, March). *Breath test refusal rates in the United States – 2011 update* (Traffic Safety Facts, Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 811 881). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/Breath_Test_Refusal_Rates-811881.pdf

National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine. (2018). *Getting to zero alcohol-impaired driving fatalities: A comprehensive approach to a persistent problem*. The National Academies Press. doi.org/10.17226/24951

National Association of Drug Court Professionals. (2009). *The facts on drug courts.* http://aja.ncsc.dni.us/conferences/2009Annual/SpeakerMaterials/FactsonDrugCourts.pdf

National Center for DWI Courts. (2011). *DWI court model compliance checklist.* www.dwicourts.org/wp-content/uploads/2011%20NCDC%20Checklist%20Final-Form_0.pdf

National Center for Statistics and Analysis. (2019, December). Alcohol impaired driving: 2018 data (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 864). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812864

NCSA. (2020a, December). *State alcohol impaired-driving estimates: 2018 data* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 917). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812917

NCSA. (2020b, October). *Young drivers: 2018 data.* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 968). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/Publication/812968

National Conference of State Legislatures. (2014). *Traffic safety trends: State legislative action 2013*. www.ncsl.org/documents/transportation/2013Trafficsafetytrends.pdf

NCSL. (2016a). *Special license plates for drunk driving offenders.* www.ncsl.org/research/transportation/special-plates-for-drunk-driving-offenders.aspx

NCSL. (2016b). *Increased penalties for high blood alcohol content.* www.ncsl.org/research/transportation/increased-penalties-for-high-blood-alcohol-content.aspx

NCSL. (2018). *Traffic safety trends state legislative action.* www.ncsl.org/research/transportation/traffic-safety-trends-state-legislative-action-2017.aspx

NCSL. (2019). *Drunken/impaired driving.* www.ncsl.org/research/transportation/drunken-impaired-driving.aspx

National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances. (2000). *Uniform vehicle code. Model law on driving under the influence*. [Note: NCUTLO disbanded in January 2008. The National Committee on Uniform Traffic Control Devices has created a Rules of the Road ad-hoc committee to address ongoing needs related to the Uniform Vehicle Code and Model Traffic Ordinance.] https://iamtraffic.org/wp-content/uploads/2013/01/UVC2000.pdf

National Drug Court Resource Center. (2018). *Treatment court map.* https://ndcrc.org/wp-content/NDCRC_Court_Map/

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (1982, 2018). *Fatality Analysis Reporting System (FARS)* [Custom data set analysis]. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

NHTSA. (1996). *Drug evaluation and classification program* (Unnumbered flyer). www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/drepp.pdf

NHTSA. (2001, June). *An implementation guide for juvenile holdover programs* (Report No. DOT HS 809 260). [Report and CD-ROM.]

NHTSA. (2003a, June). *Criminal justice summit on impaired driving* (Report No. DOT HS 809 605). www.nijc.org/pdfs/TTSJL/CrimJustSum.pdf

NHTSA. (2003b, May). *.08 BAC illegal* per se *level* (Traffic Safety Facts – Laws, Vol. 1, No. 1.) www.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/drowsy_driving1/New-fact-sheet03/Point08BAC.pdf

NHTSA. (2006a, November). *Uniform guidelines for state highway safety programs*. (Highway Safety Program Guideline No. 8). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/impaireddrivingpdf.pdf

NHTSA. (2006b, April). *Low-staffing sobriety checkpoints* (Report No. DOT HS 810 590). www.iadlest.org/Portals/0/Files/Documents/DDACTS/Docs/Low-Staffing%20Sobriety%20Checkpoints,%20DOT%20HS%20810%20590,%20April%202006.pdf

NHTSA. (2006c, January). *A guide to sentencing DWI offenders. 2nd edition, 2005* (Report No. DOT HS 810 555). www.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/alcohol/dwioffenders/A%20Guide2.pdf

NHTSA. (2007, July). *Evaluation of the national impaired driving high-visibility enforcement campaign: 2003-2005* (Report No. DOT HS 810 789). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/ydydyl_2001-05.pdf

NHTSA. (2008a, January). *Administrative license revocation* (Traffic Safety Facts --Laws. Report No. DOT HS 810 878). www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Communication-%20&%20Consumer%20Information/Articles/Associated%20Files/810878.pdf

NHTSA. (2008b, January). *Open container laws* (Traffic Safety Facts --Laws. Report No. DOT HS 810 882W). www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Communication%20&%20Consumer-%20Information/Articles/Associated%20Files/810882.pdf

NHTSA. (2008c, January). *High BAC laws* (Traffic Safety Facts --Laws. Report No. DOT HS 810 883). www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Communication%20&%20Consumer%20-Information/Articles/Associated%20Files/810883.pdf

NHTSA. (2008d, January). *Vehicle and license plate sanctions* (Traffic Safety Facts --Laws. Report No. DOT HS 810 880). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/810880.pdf

NHTSA. (2013a, June). *Guidelines for creating state judicial outreach liaisons* (Report No. DOT HS 811 783). www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811783.pdf

NHTSA. (2013b, November). *Model guideline for state ignition interlock programs* (Report No. DOT HS 811 859). www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811859.pdf

NHTSA. (2016a, April). *Digest of impaired driving and selected beverage control laws, 29th edition* (Report No. DOT HS 812 119). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/-812267_2014-impaireddrivingdigest.pdf

NHTSA. (2016b, June). *Survey of DWI courts* (Traffic Tech, Technology Transfer Series. Report No. DOT HS 812 267). www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/812283-Survey-of-DWI-Courts.pdf

NHTSA. (2017, June). *Digest of impaired driving and selected beverage control laws, 30th edition, Current as of December 31, 2015* (Report No. DOT HS 812 394). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/812394-digest-of-impaired-driving-and-selected-beverage-control-laws.pdf

NHTSA. (2018a, January 25). *NHTSA launches drug-impaired driving initiative and announces March 15 summit* (Online press release). www.nhtsa.gov/press-releases/nhtsa-launches-drug-impaired-driving-initiative-and-announces-march-15-summit

NHTSA. (2018b, March 15). *NHTSA's drug-impaired driving call to action* (Web page and agenda). www.nhtsa.gov/events/drug-impaired-driving-call-action

NHTSA, GHSA, & Volpe National Transportation Systems Center. (2017, June). *Impact of the legalization and decriminalization of marijuana on the DWI system: Highlights from the expert panel meeting* (Report No. DOT HS 812 430). https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2100

National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. (2005). *A pocket guide for alcohol screening and brief intervention.* https://pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/practitioner/PocketGuide/pocket_guide.htm

National Institute on Drug Abuse. (2020). Is drug addiction treatment worth its cost? www.drugabuse.gov/publications/principles-drug-addiction-treatment-research-based-guide-third-edition/frequently-asked-questions/drug-addiction-treatment-worth-its-cost

Nesci, J. (2015). Defense of driving under the influence cases. In Y. Caplan, & B. Goldeberger (Eds.), *Garriott's medicolegal aspects of alcohol (sixth edition)* (pp. 591-640). Lawyers & Judges Publishing Company, Inc.

Neuman, T. R., Pfefer, R., Slack, K. L., Hardy, K. K., & Waller, P. (2003). Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, Volume 2: *A guide for addressing collisions involving unlicensed drivers and drivers with suspended or revoked*

*licenses.* Transportation Research Board. http://trb.org/publications/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v2.pdf

Nichols, J. L., Chaffe, R. H. B., & Solomon, M. G. (2016). More Cops More Stops: Evaluation of a combined enforcement program in Oklahoma and Tennessee. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2082

Nielson, A. L., & Watson, B. (2009). The effectiveness of designated driver programs. *Journal of the Australasian College of Road Safety*, *20*(2), 32-37.

NPC Research. (2009). *Anne Arundel County DUI court program outcome and cost evaluation*. https://npcresearch.com/wp-content/uploads/Anne_Arundel_District_DUI_Outcome_Cost_12092.pdf

National Transportation Safety Board. (2000). *Actions to reduce fatalities, injuries, and crashes involving the hard core drinking driver* (NTSB/SR-00/01). https://permanent.access.gpo.gov/websites/www.ntsb.gov/publictn/2000/SR0001.pdf

NTSB. (2013). *Reaching zero: Actions to eliminate alcohol-impaired driving* (NTSB/SR-13/01). www.ntsb.gov/safety/safety-studies/Documents/SR1301.pdf

Ojaniemi, K. K., Lintonen, T. P., Impinen, A. O., Lillsunde, P. M., & Ostamo, A. I. (2009). Trends in driving under the influence of drugs: a register-based study of DUID suspects during 1977–2007. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 41*(1), 191-196.

Otto, J., Finley, K., & Ward, N. J. (2016). *An assessment of traffic safety culture related to driving after cannabis use* (No. FHWA/MT-16-010/8882-309-02). Western Transportation Institute. https://westerntransportationinstitute.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/01/4W5483_DUIC_FINAL_REPORT.pdf

Porath-Waller, A. J. & Beirness, D. J. (2014). An examination of the validity of the standardize field sobriety test in detecting drug impairments using data from the Drug Evaluation and Classification Program. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 15*(2), 125-131.

Preusser. (2000). Identification of alcohol impairment on initial interview. http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/circulars/ec020.pdf#page=58

Probst, J., Lewis, J., Asunka, K., Hershey, J., & Oram, S. (1987, March). *Assessment of citizen group court monitoring programs* (Report No. DOT HS 807 113). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1468

Quinn-Zobeck, A. (2007). *Screening and brief intervention tool kit for college and university campuses* (Report No. DOT HS 810 751). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/links/sid/3672Toolkit/

Ramirez, A., Berning, A., Carr, K., Scherer, M., Lacey, J. H., Kelley-Baker, T., & Fisher, D. A. (2016, July). *Marijuana, other drugs, and alcohol use by drivers in Washington State* (Report No. DOT HS 812 299). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.aamva.org/MarijuanaOtherDrugsAlcoholUseByDriversInWA-July2016/

Rapoport, M. J., Lanctot, K. L., Steiner, D. L., Bedard, M., Vingilis, E., Murray, B., Schaffer, A., Shulman, K. I., & Hermann, N. (2009). Benzodiazepine use and driving: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, *70*, 663-673.

Robertson, R. D., & Holmes, E. A. (2011). *Effective strategies to reduce drunk driving: Sobriety checkpoints*. Traffic Injury Research Foundation. https://tirf.ca/wp-content/uploads/2016/08/2011_DWI_WG_Sobriety_Checkpoints_8.pdf

Robertson, R. D., Holmes, E., & Vanlaar, W. G. M. (2010). *The implementation of alcohol interlocks for first offenders: A case study*. Traffic Injury Research Foundation. http://tirf.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/CC_2010_Report_web.pdf

Robertson, R. D., Holmes, E., & Vanlaar, W. (Eds.). (2011, October 17-19). *Alcohol interlocks: Harmonizing policies and practices*: Proceedings of the 11th International Interlock Symposium, Montebello, Canada.Traffic Injury Research Foundation.

Robertson, T., Kokesch, D., & Thomka, J. (2016, September). Traffic safety resource prosecutor manual, 2nd edition (Report No. DOT HS 812 313). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.dot.gov/files/12323tsrpmanual092216v3-tagpdf

Robertson, R. D., & Simpson, H. M. (2002). *DWI system improvements for dealing with hard core drinking drivers: Prosecution*. Traffic Injury Research Foundation.

Robertson, R. D., & Simpson, H. M. (2003). *DWI system improvement: Stopping the revolving door*. Traffic Injury Research Foundation.

Robertson, R. D., Simpson H. M., & Parsons P. (2008). *Screening, assessment and treatment of DWI offenders: A guide for justice professionals and policy makers*. Traffic Injury Research Foundation. https://tirf.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/01/TIRF_DWI_Treatment_Report_2008.pdf

Robertson, R. D., Vanlaar, W. G. M., & Beirness, D. J. (2006). *Alcohol interlock programs: A global perspective*. Traffic Injury Research Foundation.

Robertson, R. D., Vanlaar, W. G., & Hing, M. M. (2018). Annual Ignition Interlock Survey 2016 & 2017: United States. Traffic Injury Research Foundation. https://tirf.us/wp-content/uploads/2018/05/2016-2017-AIIPA-TIRF-USA-Annual-Interlock-SurveyReport-24.pdf

Rogers, A. (1995). Effects of Minnesota's license plate impoundment law on recidivism of multiple DWI violators. *Journal of Safety Research*, *26*, 125-126.

Roth, R., Marques, P. R., & Voas, R. B. (2009). A note on the effectiveness of the house-arrest alternative for motivating DWI offenders to install ignition interlocks. *Journal of Safety Research*, *40*, 437-441.

Rothschild, M. L., Mastin, B., & Miller, T. W. (2006). Reducing alcohol-impaired driving crashes through the use of social marketing. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 38*, 1218-1230.

Sack, R., Foreman, C., Forni, S., Glynn, R., Lehrer, A., Linthicum, A., & Perruzzi, A. (2019, May). *Social media practices in traffic safety* (Report No. DOT HS 812 673). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2019-06/NCREP_SocialMedia19.pdf

San Jose Police Department. (2018). Public safety fee schedule. www.sjpd.org/records/fees_public_safety.asp

Sanem, J. R., Erickson, D. J., Rutledge, P. C., Lenk, K. M., Nelson, T. F., Jones-Webb, R., & Toomey, T. L. (2015). Association between alcohol-impaired driving enforcement-related strategies and alcohol-impaired driving. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 78,* 104-109.

Scherer, M., Romano, E., Caldwell, S., & Taylor, E. (2018). The impact of retail beverage service training and social host laws on adolescents' DUI rates in San Diego County, California. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 19*(2), 111-117.

Schermer, C. R., Gentilello, L. M., Hoyt, D. B., Moore, E. E., Moore, J. B., Rozycki, G., & Feliciano, D. V. (2003). National survey of trauma surgeons' use of alcohol screening and brief intervention. *The Journal of Trauma: Injury, Infection, and Critical Care*, *55*, 849-856.

Schneider, W., Stakleff, B., & Buser, L. (2017, May). *Alcohol-related hot-spot analysis and prediction*. https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/211345876.pdf

Schwilke, E. W., Sampaio dos Santos, M. I., & Logan, B. K. (2006). Changing patterns of drug and alcohol use in fatally injured drivers in Washington State. *Journal of Forensic Sciences, 51*, 1191-1198.

SCRAM Systems. (2018). *24/7 Sobriety Program Implementation Guide.* www.scramsystems.com/programs/drunk-driving/24-7-sobriety/

Sewell, R. A., Poling, J., & Sofuoglu, M. (2009). The effect of cannabis compared with alcohol on driving. *The American Journal on Addictions*, *18*, 185-193.

Shaffer, H. J., Nelson, S. E., LaPlante, D. A., LaBrie, R. A., Albanese, M., & Caro, G. (2007). The epidemiology of psychiatric disorders among repeat DUI offenders accepting a treatment- sentencing option. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *75*, 795-804.

Shinar, D. (1992). Impact of court monitoring on the adjudication of driving while intoxicated (DWI). *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 24*, 167-179.

Shinar, D., Schechtman, E., & Compton, R. P. (2000). Signs and symptoms predictive of drug impairment. *Proceedings of the 15th International Conference on Alcohol, Drugs & Traffic Safety, Stockholm.* https://drive.google.com/file/d/1-wtglFiawR43ddG8VaeGPKJ0C6zhD4mp/view

Shinkle, D., Kitch, A., & Pula, K. (2019). *Traffic safety trends – State legislative action 2018*. National Conference of State Legislatures. www.ncsl.org/Portals/1/Documents/transportation/Traffic-Safety-Trends_v04_web.pdf

Shults, R. A., Elder R. W., Nichols, J. L., Sleet, D. A., Compton, R., & Chattopadhyay, S. K. (2009). Effectiveness of multicomponent programs with community mobilization for reducing alcohol-impaired driving. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 37*, 360-371.

Shults, R. A., Elder, R. W., Sleet, D. A., Nichols, J. L., Alao, M. O., Carande-Kulis, V. G., & Zaza, S. (2001). Review of evidence regarding interventions to reduce alcohol-impaired driving. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 21(4S*), 66-84.

Simpson, H.M., & Robertson, R.D. (2001). *DWI system improvements for dealing with hard core drinking drivers: Enforcement*. Traffic Injury Research Foundation.

Sloan, F. A., Gifford, E. J., Eldred, L. M., & McCutchan, S. A. (2016). Does the probability of DWI arrest fall following participation in DWI and hybrid drug treatment court programs? *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 97*, 197-205.

Sloan, F. A., Chepke, L. M., Davis, D. V., Acquah, K., & Zold-Kilbourn, P. (2013). Effects of admission and treatment strategies of DWI courts on offender outcomes. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *53*, 112-120.

Smith, R.C., Turturici, M. & Camden, M.C. (2018). *Countermeasures against prescription and over-the-counter drug-impaired driving.* AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://aaafoundation.org/countermeasures-against-prescription-and-over-the-counter-drug-impaired-driving/

Solomon R., & Chamberlain, E. (2013). *Developments in Canadian community-based impaired driving initiatives: MADD Canada's "Campaign 911."* 20th Annual International Conference on Alcohol, Drugs and Traffic Safety. Brisbane, Queensland, Australia. https://drive.google.com/file/d/1f2U_P6RUOnQaG1reSFv8GZ0U-znMWOMi/view

Solomon, M. G., Hedlund, J. H., Haire, E. R., Chaffe, R. H. B., & Cosgrove, L. A. (2008, September). *The 2006 national Labor Day impaired driving enforcement crackdown:* Drunk Driving. Over the Limit. Under Arrest (Report No. DOT HS 811 039). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1857

Steinka-Fry, K., Tanner-Smith, E. E., & Hennessey, E. A. (2015). Effects of brief alcohol interventions on drinking and driving among youth: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Addiction and Prevention, 3*(1), 1-9.

Stewart, K. (1999). *Strategies to reduce underage alcohol use: Typology and brief overview*. https://trid.trb.org/view/787839

Stewart, K. (2006). Overview and summary. In: *Drugs and Traffic: A Symposium* (Transportation Research Circular, Number E-C096, pp. 2-10.) Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/circulars/ec096.pdf

Strand, M. C., Gjerde, H., & Mørland, J. (2016). Driving under the influence of non-alcohol drugs—an update. Part II: Experimental studies. *Forensic Science Review*, *28*(2), 79-101.

Stuster, J. W. (2000). Increasing the opportunity to examine impaired drivers. In *Issues and Methods in the Detection of Alcohol and Other Drugs* (TRB Circular E-C020, pp. D10-D14). Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/Onlinepubs/circulars/ec020.pdf

Stuster, J. W., & Blowers, P. (1995, June). *Experimental evaluation of sobriety checkpoint programs* (Report No. DOT HS 808 287). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1613

Stuster, J., & Burns, M. (1998). *Validation of the standardized field sobriety test battery at BACs below 0.10 percent* (Report No. DOT HS 808 839). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1616

Stuster, J., Burns, M., & Fiorentino, D. (2002, April). *Open container laws and alcohol involved crashes: Some preliminary data* (Report No. DOT HS 809 426). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/OpenContainer/tech_doc_page.htm

Stutts, J., Knipling, R. R., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L., & Hardy, K. K. (2005). *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO strategic highway safety plan. Volume 14: A guide for reducing crashes involving drowsy and distracted drivers* (Report No. 500 - Project G17-18 (03)). Transportation Research Board. www.trb.org/Main/Public/Blurbs/156333.aspx

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2015). *Screening, brief intervention, referral, and treatment*. www.samhsa.gov/sbirt

Surla, L.T., & Koons, S. M. (1989, January). *An evaluation of the elimination of plea bargaining for DWI offenders* (Report No. DOT HS 807 435). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1500

Syner, J., Jackson, B., Dankers, L., Naff, B., Hancock, S., & Siegler, J. (2008, April). *Strategic evaluation states initiative – Case studies of Alaska, Georgia, and West Virginia* (Report No. DOT HS 810 923). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/810923.pdf

Talpins, S., Hayes, C., & Kimball, T. (2018). *The Drug Evaluation and Classification (DEC) program. Saving lives and preventing crashes*. The Traffic Law Center. www.ndaa.org/wp-content/uploads/1033558_DREMonograph_FinalWEB.pdf

Tanner-Smith, E. E., & Lipsey, M. W. (2015). Brief alcohol interventions for adolescents and young adults: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, *51*, 1-18.

Tefft, B.C., Arnold, L.S. & Grabowski, J.G. (2016). Prevalence of marijuana use among drivers in fatal crashes: Washington, 2010-2014. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://aaafoundation.org/prevalence-marijuana-use-among-drivers-fatal-crashes-washington-2010-2014/

Tison, J., Nichols, J. L., Casanova-Powell, T., & Chaudhary, N. K. (2015, April). *Comparative study and evaluation of SCRAM use, recidivism rates, and characteristics.* (Report No. DOT HS 812 143). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1991

Toomey, T. L., & Wagenaar, A. C. (1999). Policy options for prevention: The case of alcohol, *Journal of Public Health Policy, 20*, 192-13.

Transportation Research Board. (2013). *Countermeasures to address impaired driving offenders: Toward an integrated model*. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/circulars/ec174.pdf

Tymula, A., Rosenberg Belmaker, L. A., Roy, A. K., Ruderman, L., Manson, K., Glimcher, P. W., & Levy, I. (2012). Ambiguity tolerance and risk-taking in adolescents, Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 109(42), 17135-17140.

UKATT Research Team (2005). Cost effectiveness of treatment for alcohol problems: findings of the randomised UK alcohol treatment trial (UKATT). *BMJ (Clinical research ed.)*, *331*(7516), 544.

Ulmer, R. G., Hedlund, J. H., & Preusser, D. F. (1999). *Determine why alcohol-related fatalities decreased in five states* (Contract DTHN22-97-D-05018). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

Ulmer, R. G., Shabanova, V. I., & Preusser, D. F. (2001, June). *Evaluation of use and lose laws* (Report No. DOT HS 809 285). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/pub/alcohol-laws/eval-of-law/index.html

U.S. Department of Justice. (2020, November). Drug courts (Flyer). www.ojp.gov/pdffiles1/nij/238527.pdf

Vanlaar, W., McKiernan, A., & Robertson, R. (2013). *Behavioral patterns of interlocked offenders: Phase II*. Traffic Injury Research Foundation. https://tirf.ca/news/new-tirf-report-behavioral-patterns-interlocked-offenders-phase-ii/

Vanlaar, W., Robertson, R., Schaap, D., & Vissers, J. (2010). *Understanding behavioural patterns of interlocked offenders to inform the efficient and effective implementation of interlock programs: How offenders on an interlock learn to comply*. Traffic Injury Research Foundation. https://tirf.ca/projects/behavioral-patterns-interlocked-offenders/

Vanlaar, W. G., Hing, M. M., & Robertson, R. D. (2017). An evaluation of Nova Scotia's alcohol ignition interlock program. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *100*, 44-52.

Vanlaar, W. G. M., Hing, M. M., Powell, T. C., & Robertson, R. D. (2017). *Alternatives to alcohol-impaired driving: Results from the 2016 TIRF USA road safety monitor*. Traffic Injury Research Foundation. http://tirf.us/wp-content/uploads/2017/08/RSM-TIRF-USA-Alternatives-to-Alcohol-Impaired-Driving-2016-Data-6.pdf

Van Vleck, V. N. L., & Brinkley, G. L. (2009). Alert eyes and DWIs: An indirect evaluation of a DWI witness reward program in Stockton, CA. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *41*, 581-587.

Voas, R. B. (2008). A new look at NHTSA's evaluation of the 1984 Charlottesville sobriety checkpoint program: Implications for current checkpoint issues. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *9*, 22-30.

Voas, R. B., Blackman, K. O., Tippetts, A. S., & Marques, P. R. (2001). Motivating DUI offenders to install interlocks: avoiding jail as an incentive. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *25*, 102A.

Voas, R. B., Fell, J. C., McKnight, A.S., & Sweedler, B. M. (2004). Controlling impaired driving through vehicle programs: an overview. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 5*, 292-298.

Voas, R. B., & Fisher, D. A. (2001). Court procedures for handling intoxicated drivers. *Alcohol Research and Health World*, *25*, 32-42.

Voas, R. B., Kelley-Baker, T., Romano, E., & Vishnuvajjala, R. (2009). Implied-consent laws: A review of the literature and examination of current problems and related statutes. *Journal of Safety Research*, *40*, 77-83.

Voas, R. B., & Lacey, J. H. (2011, March). *Alcohol and highway safety 2006: A review of the state of knowledge* (Report No. DOT HS 811 374). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811374.pdf

Voas, R. B., Romano, E., & Peck, R. (2006). Validity of the passive alcohol sensor for estimating BACs in DWI-enforcement operations. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 67*, 714-721.

Voas, R. B., Tippetts, A. S., Fisher, D., & Grosz, M. (2010). Requiring suspended drunk drivers to install alcohol interlocks to reinstate their licenses: Effective? *Addiction*, *105*, 1422-1428.

Voas, R. B., Tippetts, A. S., & McKnight, A. S. (2010). DUI offenders delay license reinstatement: a problem? *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *34*, 1282-1290.

Voas, R. B., Tippetts, S., & Taylor, E. (1998). Temporary Vehicle Impoundment in Ohio: A Replication and Confirmation. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *30*, 651-655.

Voas, R. B., Tippetts, A. S., Bergen, G., Grosz, M., & Marques, P. (2016). Mandating treatment based on interlock performance: evidence for effectiveness. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *40*(9), 1953-1960.

Wagenaar, A. C., & Maldonado-Molina, M. M. (2007). Effects of drivers' license suspension policies on alcohol-related crash involvement: Long-term follow-up in forty-six states. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *31*, 1399-1406.

Wagenaar, A. C., & Toomey, T. L. (2002). Effects of minimum drinking age laws: Review and analyses of the literature from 1960 to 2000. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol - Supplement*, 14, 206-225.

Wagenaar, A. C., Toomey, T. L., & Erickson, D. J. (2005). Preventing youth access to alcohol: Outcomes from a multi-community time-series trial. *Addiction*, *100*, 335-345.

Wagenaar, A. C., Zobek, T. S., Williams, G. D., & Hingson, R. (2000). *Effects of DWI control efforts: A systematic review of the literature from 1960-1991.* Minneapolis, MN: University of Minnesota School of Public Health.

Walden, M., & Walden, T. (2011). Sobriety checkpoints. *College Station, Texas: Center for Transportation Safety and Texas Transportation Institute*. groups.tti.tamu.edu/cts/files/2012/07/Sobriety-Checkpoints.pdf

Warren-Kigenyi, N., & Coleman, H. (2014, March). *DWI recidivism in the United States: An examination of state-level driver data and the effect of look-back periods on recidivism prevalence* (Traffic Safety Facts, Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 811 991). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811991-dwi_recidivism_in_usa-tsf-rn.pdf

Wechsler, H., & Nelson, T. F. (2010). Will increasing alcohol availability by lowering the minimum legal drinking age decrease drinking and related consequences among youths? *American Journal of Public Health*, *100*, 986-992.

Wells-Parker, E., Bangert-Drowns, R., McMillan, R., & Williams, M. (1995). Final results from a meta-analysis of remedial interventions with drink/drive offenders. *Addiction, 90*, 907-926.

Whetten-Goldstein, K., Sloan, F. A., Stout, E., & Liang, L. (2000). Civil liability, criminal law, and other policies and alcohol-related motor vehicle fatalities in the United States: 1984–1995. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *32*(6), 723-733.

White, W., & Gasperin, D. (2007). The "hard core drinking driver": Identification, treatment and community management. *Alcoholism Treatment Quarterly, 25*(3), 113-132.

Wiliszowski, C. H., Jones, R. K., & Lacey, J. H. (2003, June). *Examining the effectiveness of Utah's law allowing for telephonic testimony at ALR hearings* (Report No. DOT HS 809 602). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1737

Wiliszowski, C., Fell, J., McKnight, S., & Tippetts, S. (2011, March). *An evaluation of intensive supervision programs for serious DWI offenders* (Report No. DOT HS 811 446). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811446.pdf

Wilk, A. L., Jensen, N. M., & Havighurst, T. C. (1997). Meta-analysis of randomized control trials addressing brief interventions in heavy alcohol drinkers. *Journal of General Internal Medicine, 12*, 274-83.

Williams, A. F. (2003). Teenage drivers: Patterns of risk. *Journal of Safety Research, 34*, 5-15.

Williams, A. F. (2007). *Public information and education in the promotion of highway safety* (Research Results Digest 322). Transportation Research Board. http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rrd_322.pdf

Williams, R. S., & Ribisl, K. M. (2012). Internet alcohol sales to minors. *Archives of Pediatrics & Adolescent Medicine*, *166*(9), 808-813.

Wright, V. (2010). *Deterrence in criminal justice: Evaluating certainty vs. severity of punishment*. The Sentencing Project. www.sentencingproject.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/01/Deterrence-in-Criminal-Justice.pdf

Wundersitz, L. N., Hutchinson, T. P., & Wooley, J. E. (2010). *Best practice in road safety mass media campaigns: A literature review*. Centre for Automotive Safety Research. www.casr.adelaide.edu.au/reports

Ying, Y. H., Wu, C. C., & Chang, K. (2013). The effectiveness of drinking and driving policies for different alcohol-related fatalities: A quantile regression analysis. *International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health*, *10*(10), 4628-4644. www.mdpi.com/1660-4601/10/10/4628/htm

Zador, P. L., Ahlin, E. M., Rauch, W. J., Howard, J. M., & Duncan, G. D. (2011). The effects of closer monitoring on driver compliance with interlock restrictions. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *43*, 1960-1967.

Zador, P. L., Krawchuk, S. A., & Voas, R. B. (2000). Alcohol-related relative risk of driver fatalities and driver involvement in fatal crashes in relation to driver age and gender: An update using 1996 data. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *61*, 387-395.

Zwicker, T. J., Chaudhary, N. K., Maloney, S., & Squeglia, R. (2007, February). *Connecticut's 2003 impaired-driving high-visibility enforcement campaign* (Report No. DOT HS 810 689). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/810689.pdf

Zwicker, T. J., Chaudhary, N. K., Solomon, M.G., Siegler, J. N., & Meadows, J. D. (2007, August). *West Virginia's impaired driving high-visibility enforcement campaign, 2003-2005* (Report No. DOT HS 810 792). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1777

Zwicker, T. J., Hedlund, J., & Northrup, V. S. (2005, August). *Breath test refusals in DWI enforcement: An interim report* (Report No. DOT HS 809 876). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/809876.pdf

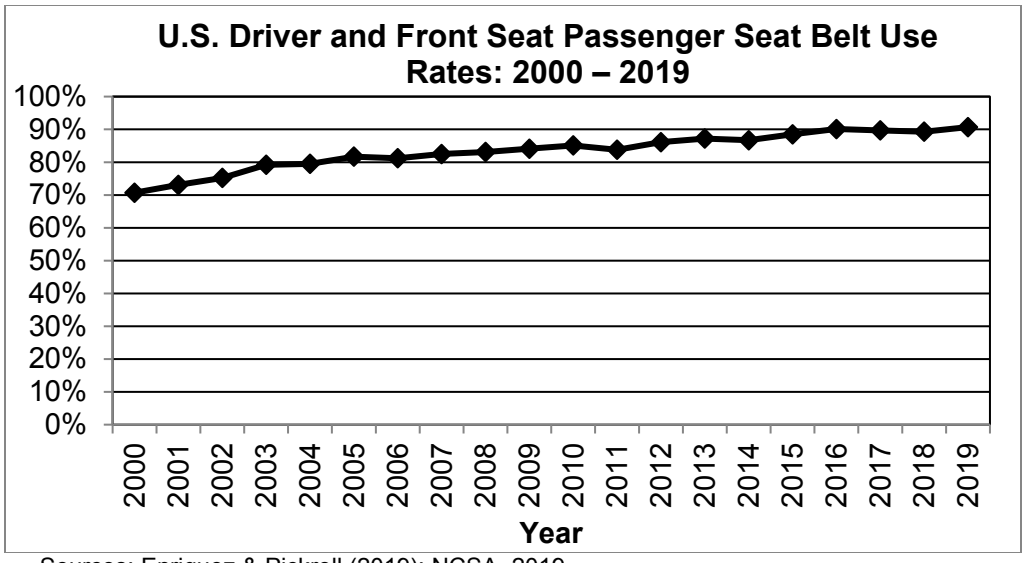
# 2. Seat Belts and Child Restraints

## Overview

Abundant research has shown that correctly using appropriate child restraints or seat belts is the single most effective way to save lives and reduce injuries in crashes. Lap and shoulder combination seat belts, when used, reduce the risk of fatal injury to front-seat passenger car occupants by 45% and the risk of moderate-to-critical injury by 50% (Kahane, 2015). For light-truck occupants, seat belts reduce the risk of fatal injury by 60% and moderate-to-critical injury by 65%.

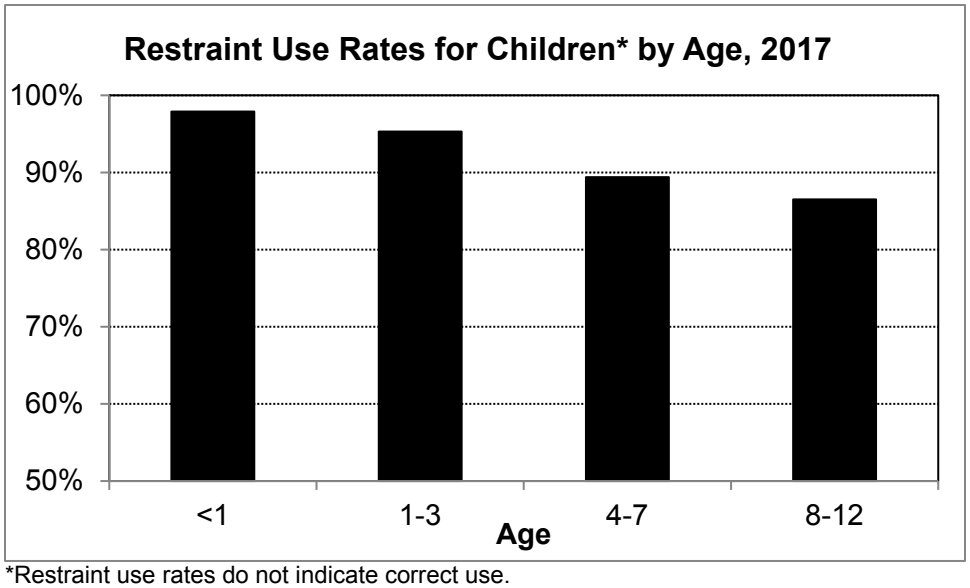
NHTSA estimates that correctly used child restraints are even more effective than seat belts in reducing fatalities to children. Child restraints reduce fatalities by 71% for infants younger than 1 year old and by 54% for children 1 to 4 years old in passenger cars. In light trucks the fatality reductions are 58% for infants and 59% for children 1 to 4 years old (NCSA, 1996; Kahane, 2015). In addition, research conducted by the Partners for Child Passenger Safety Program at the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia found that belt-positioning booster seats reduce the risk of injury to children 4 to 8 years in crashes by 45% when compared to the effectiveness of seat belts alone (Arbogast et al., 2009). However, unrestrained children continue to be overrepresented in motor vehicle fatalities, which indicates that additional lives can be saved by increasing restraint use among children (Sauber-Schatz et al., 2014).

**Trends.** The challenge is to convince all passenger vehicle occupants to buckle up. Current data show that observed daytime seat belt use nationwide was 90.7% in 2019 for adult drivers and right-front seat passengers combined (NCSA, 2019). There was no significant difference in use from 2018 (89.6%) to 2019 (90.7%). In 2019 seat belt use was over 90% in 26 States, the District of Columbia, and two U.S. Territories, with 4 States, the District of Columbia, and Guam achieving belt use rates higher than 95% (California, 96.0%, Georgia, 95.9%; Hawaii, 97.1%; Oregon, 95.7%; District of Columbia, 95.4%; and Guam, 96.9%) (NCSA, 2020a). Seat belt use, however, was less than 80% in 4 States (New Hampshire, 70.7%; Nebraska, 79.7%; South Dakota, 75.2%; and Wyoming, 78.3%) and the U.S. Virgin Islands (71.1%). Nationally, seat belt use has increased dramatically since seat belt use laws went into effect in the early 1980s (Hedlund et al., 2008; Li & Pickrell, 2018a). The National seat belt use rate has been trending upwards over the past two decades, rising 20 percentage points since 2000 (Enriquez & Pickrell, 2019; NCSA, 2019).



Sources: Enriquez & Pickrell (2019); NCSA, 2019

In general, overall restraint use for children is higher than what is demonstrated in the adult population, particularly among the youngest children. In 2017 restraint use for children less than 13 years old was 90.1% (Li & Pickrell, 2018b). Restraint use ranged from 97.9% for infants under 1 year old, to 86.5% for children 8 to 12. In general, child restraint usage rates decline as children age.



*Restraint use rates do not indicate correct use.
Source: Li and Pickrell (2018b)

However, restraint use for children is more complicated than simply "restrained versus unrestrained." In addition to overall restraint use, it is also important to consider correct restraint use. The current NHTSA recommendations include keeping children rear-facing until the rear-facing height or weight limits of the car seat are outgrown, then forward-facing with a harness until the harness is outgrown by height or weight, and then booster seat use until the seat belt fits properly on its own (NHTSA, 2014a).

The 2017 National Survey of the Use of Booster Seats (Li & Pickrell, 2018b) details the observed restraint use for children under 1, 1 to 3, 4 to 7, and 8 to 12. There were some indications of premature transition to restraint types that are not appropriate for children's age, height, and weight. In 2017 there were 92.1% of children under 1 observed in the appropriate rear-facing seats, up from 87.4% in 2015. Rear-facing and eventually forward-facing car seats are appropriate for children 1 to 3. The 2017 NSUBS found that 85.1% of children 1 to 3 used the appropriate restraint, compared to 77.0% in 2015, and 68.5% of children 4 to 7 were restrained using the appropriate forward-facing car seat or booster seat, which is up from 62.4% in 2015. Children 8 to 12 should use a booster seat until a seat belt fits properly. Of children 8 to 12 there were 85.4% appropriately restrained, compared to 83% in 2015. Child restraint use varies by race and ethnicity. Across children younger than 13 years old, White Non-Hispanics had the highest restraint use for infants birth to 12 months (99.4%) and White Non-Hispanic and Asian Non-Hispanic children had the highest restraint use for children 1 to 3 (98.1% and 98.6%, respectively) and children 8 to 12 (91.1% and 90.7%, respectively). Asian Non-Hispanic children had the highest restraint use for children 4 to 7 (99.8%). Non-Hispanic Black children had the lowest restraint use rates (birth to 12 months, 93.0%; 1 to 3, 86.8%, 4 to 7, 75.8%; 8 to 12, 79.9%).

Despite high observed belt use rates, many unrestrained people die in crashes each year. In 2018 there were 22,697 passenger vehicle occupants killed in crashes (NCSA, 2020b). Of these, where restraint use was known, 47% were unrestrained. Of the 736 children in 2018 under 15 who died in passenger vehicles, 35% were unrestrained.

**History of Occupant Restraint Laws.** All new passenger cars had some form of seat belts beginning with lap belts in 1964, shoulder belts in 1968, and integrated lap and shoulder belts in 1974 (Automobile Coalition for Traffic Safety [ACTS], 2001). However, few occupants used the belts. The first widespread survey completed in 19 cities in 1982, observed 11% belt use for drivers and front-seat passengers (Williams & Wells, 2004). This survey became the benchmark for tracking belt use nationally, until the National Occupant Protection Use Survey (NOPUS) began in 1994.

New York enacted the first statewide seat belt use law in 1984 with other States soon following. Evaluations of the first seat belt laws found that seat belt use increased following implementation of the law from baseline levels of about 15% to 20% to post-law use rates of about 50% (Nichols & Ledingham, 2008). Florida implemented a primary seat belt law in 2009. An evaluation of the law found observed seat belt use to increase by 4.3 percentage points from 80.9% to 85.2% (Nichols et al., 2012). Looking at law evaluations it appears that the relative effectiveness of implementing a primary law decreases as baseline seat belt use rates increase. As of June 2019 all States except New Hampshire require adult passenger vehicle drivers and front seat occupants to wear seat belts and 30 States and the District of Columbia also require seat belts for all rear seat passengers (GHSA, 2019a). Thirty-four States and the District of Columbia have primary enforcement seat belt use laws that permit LEOs to stop and cite a violator independent of any other traffic violation. Fifteen States have secondary enforcement laws that allow LEOs to cite violators only after they first have been stopped for some other traffic violation.

From 1978 to 1985 every State and the District of Columbia passed laws requiring child restraints for young child passengers (Kahane, 1986), and most of these laws have since been amended and strengthened to include more children and to close loopholes and exemptions. Still, great variation exists on the requirements and ages covered by State child restraint laws. See IIHS (2019a) and GHSA (2019b) for a summary of State law requirements.

For more information on the history of seat belt systems, seat belt use laws, enforcement programs, and seat belt use trends, see Kahane (2015), ACTS (2001), Solomon et al. (2004), Milano et al. (2004), NHTSA (2003), Williams and Wells (2004), and Hedlund et al. (2008). For a comprehensive summary on facts about child restraint use, see Dunn et al. (2016).

## Strategies to Improve the Safety of Passenger Vehicle Occupants

The most effective strategy for achieving and maintaining restraint use at acceptable levels is well-publicized, HVE of strong occupant restraint use laws. The effectiveness of HVE has been documented repeatedly in the United States and abroad. The strategy's three components – laws, enforcement, and publicity – cannot be separated: effectiveness decreases if any one of the components is weak or missing (Nichols & Ledingham, 2008; Tison & Williams, 2010).

These high-visibility, short-duration seat belt law enforcement programs that in the past were called STEPs (selective traffic enforcement programs), "STEP waves," or "blitzes," were demonstrated in individual communities in the late 1980s. North Carolina's *Click It or Ticket* program took this model statewide beginning in 1993 and raised the use rate above 80% (Williams & Wells, 2004). The *Click It or Ticket* model expanded nationwide in 2003 (Solomon et al., 2004) and belt use increased in almost all States from 2000 to 2006, in part due to the *Click It or Ticket* seat belt enforcement programs (Tison & Williams, 2010). Since then, most States have continued to increase or maintain their seat belt use rates. The number of States, DC, and Territories who achieved use rates of 90% or higher increased from 11 in 2006, to 29 in 2019 (NCSA, 2007; NCSA, 2020a).

A recent study examined differences between States with high and low seat belt use and how they approach occupant protection (Thomas et al., 2017). A goal of this study was to identify effective strategies employed by high belt-use States that could be adopted by low belt-use States. There were clear demographic differences in the populations in each group, and low belt-use States had a higher proportion of drivers residing in rural areas. Political and legislative support for general highway safety, and occupant protection was not as strong in low-belt-use States. Several lacked sufficient resources for safety, dedicated occupant protection coordinators, and/or internal research staff, and spent relatively little on media campaigns. Examining these differences in detail led researchers to identify four activities characteristic of the high belt-use States that the low belt-use group could adopt with reasonable expectation they would increase seat belt use. These included 1) build political, law enforcement, and community support to promote seat belt use; 2) increase enforcement of seat belt laws throughout the year; 3) develop in-house research and data analysis capabilities in the SHSO; and 4) determine what motivates a State's population to use seat belts.

Other strategies have been implemented to increase the correct use of child restraints. Child restraint misuse is an issue that has been a concern for many years. In reaction to the high levels of child restraint misuse and incompatibility issues between seat belts and child restraints, a concept of standardized child restraint installation, initially called ISOFIX, was completed as an international standard in 1999 (Klinich et al., 2012).[7] The intent of ISOFIX, later renamed as LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers For Children) as implemented in the United States, was to provide a simpler way to install child restraints and reduce misuse using special attachments on the car seat that fasten to anchors built into the vehicle. LATCH consists of two components in the vehicle – the lower anchors and the top tether anchor – with complimentary connectors on the child restraint. However, even with LATCH, misuse remains a problem with forward-facing car seats. The National Child Restraint Use Special Study (NCRUSS) conducted in 2011, found that only 48% of forward-facing child restraints were installed using the top tether, which is an important component of the LATCH system (Greenwell, 2015). It should be noted that at the time of data collection, tether use with car seats installed with the seat belt was not aggressively promoted (MacKay & Walker, 2017).

The NCRUSS examined misuse rates of car seats and booster seats in a nationally representative sample of 4,167 vehicles (Greenwell, 2015). A group of subject matter experts determined what constituted "misuse" of child restraints. Misuse was defined as an installation of the car seat/booster to the vehicle, or restraining the child in such a way that could reduce the protection of the car seat/booster in the event of a crash. Restraint-use errors varied by restraint type. Overall misuse was estimated to be 46%. Estimated misuse by restraint type was 61% for forward-facing car seats, 49% for rear-facing car seats, 44% for rear-facing convertible car seats, 24% for backless booster seats, and 16% for high-back booster seats. The most common errors for rear-facing car seats were more than three inches of lateral movement, car seat angle of less than 30 degrees (if child was less than 1), and harness slack of more than 2 inches. The most common errors for booster seats were lap belt across the abdomen/ribcage, shoulder belt behind arm or back, seat belt not buckled, and child's head above the vehicle seat back.

In order to combat this misuse, programs have been implemented to provide parents and other caregivers with "hands-on" assistance with the installation and use of child restraints. The NHTSA Standardized Child Passenger Safety (CPS) Training Course, complemented by the national certification process (funded by NHTSA and administered by Safe Kids Worldwide) developed and implemented a system to train safety professionals and other interested parties in the fundamentals of correctly choosing and installing the proper car seat for child passengers and correct placement of the child in the car seat. People who successfully completed the course are certified to educate the public in using child restraints properly and provide caregivers with this "hands-on" assistance (Womack et al., 2005). Currently, there are over 41,000 certified CPS technicians and instructors (Safe Kids Worldwide, 2018). One study found that parents and caregivers who were initially taught how to install a child restraint by a CPS technician were

[7] ISOFIX or Isofix is International Organization for Standardization standard ISO 13216, specifying the anchoring system for Group 1 child safety seats. It defines standard attachment points to be manufactured into cars, enabling compliant child safety seats to be quickly and safely secured. Isofix is an alternative to securing the seat with seat belts. Seats are secured with a single attachment at the top (top tether) and two attachments at the base of each side of the seat. It has regional names including LATCH ("Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children") in the United States and LUAS ("Lower Universal Anchorage System") or Canfix in Canada. It has also been called the "Universal Child Safety Seat System" or UCSSS.

more likely to achieve an accurate installation than those who initially learned from other sources, typically the manufacturer's manual (Mirman et al., 2017).

Child passenger safety inspection stations are places or events where parents and caregivers can receive assistance from certified CPS technicians, and are popular services provided by a variety of local CPS programs. Child passenger safety inspection stations are commonly housed at public health departments, fire departments, LEAs, healthcare organizations, family and social services departments, and other organizations that serve the community, including economically disadvantaged populations. A small study conducted in Florida examined the possibility of providing parents with remote help installing child seats using a phone app that allowed parents to interact directly with a CPS technician located elsewhere (Schwebel et al., 2017). The results reported that the accuracy of installations improved significantly compared to the installation prior to the instruction, and that parents felt more confident about the installation.

## Resources

The agencies and organizations listed below can provide more information on seat belt use and child passenger safety, and links to numerous other resources.

**Seat Belts and Child Passenger Safety**

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration:
  - Occupant Protection – www.nhtsa.gov/risky-driving/seat-belts#resources-resources
  - Car Seats and Booster Seats – www.nhtsa.gov/equipment/car-seats-and-booster-seats
  - Research and Evaluation – www.nhtsa.gov/behavioral-research;
    - Behavioral Safety Research Reports – http://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/
- AAA:
  - Seat Belts – http://exchange.aaa.com/safety/roadway-safety/safety-belts/
  - Child Passenger Safety – http://exchange.aaa.com/safety/child-safety/
- AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety: www.aaafoundation.org
- American Academy of Pediatrics, Annual Car Seat Information For Families guide: www.healthychildren.org/English/safety-prevention/on-the-go/Pages/Car-Safety-Seats-Information-for-Families.aspx
- Automotive Safety Program, Riley Hospital for Children: www.preventinjury.org
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Injury Prevention & Control: Motor Vehicle Safety: www.cdc.gov/Motorvehiclesafety/index.html
- Center for Injury Research and Prevention, The Children's Hospital of Philadelphia: https://injury.research.chop.edu/traffic-injury-prevention/child-passenger-safety#.WMauPU2Qzcs
- Governors Highway Safety Association: www.ghsa.org/html/issues/occprotection/index.html
- Insurance Institute for Highway Safety:
  - Safety Belts – www.iihs.org/topics/seat-belts
  - Child Safety – www.iihs.org/topics/child-safety
- National Safety Council:
  - Child Passenger Safety – www.nsc.org/learn/safety-knowledge/Pages/Child-Passenger-Safety.aspx

  - Child Safety Seats & Boosters - www.nsc.org/safety_road/DriverSafety/Pages/ChildPassengerSafety.aspx
- Safe Kids Worldwide:
  - Seat Belts: www.safekids.org/safetytips/field_risks/seatbelt
  - Car Seats: www.safekids.org/car-seat
  - Booster Seats: www.safekids.org/safetytips/field_risks/booster-seat
- Safe Ride News Publications: www.saferidenews.com
- National Child Passenger Safety Board: www.cpsboard.org
- SafetyBeltSafe U.S.A.: www.carseat.org/
- University of Michigan Transportation Research Institute: www.cpsbestpractice.org

**Key terms**

- CIOT: NHTSA's *Click It or Ticket* high-visibility seat belt enforcement campaign.
- CPS: Child Passenger Safety
- HVE: High-Visibility Enforcement
- LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tethers For Children
- NCRUSS: The National Child Restraint Use Special Study. A NHTSA observational study of the use of car seats and booster seats for child passengers.
- Primary enforcement seat belt use laws permit LEOs to stop and cite a violator independent of any other traffic violation. Child Passenger Safety laws are primary, unless they are covering older children in the rear seat.
- Secondary enforcement laws allow LEOs to cite violators only after they first have been stopped for some other traffic violation.

## Seat Belt and Child Restraint Countermeasures

Countermeasures to increase seat belt and child restraint use are listed in the table below. The table is intended to provide a rough estimate of each countermeasure's effectiveness, use, cost, and time required for implementation. Effectiveness is shown using a five-star rating system.

- Countermeasures that receive ★★★★ or ★★★★★ have been determined to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ★★★ are considered promising, and likely to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States, communities, and other organizations are encouraged to use ★★★, and especially ★★★★ or ★★★★★, countermeasures. They should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

Further details about the symbols and terms used are included after the table. Effectiveness, cost, and time to implement can vary substantially from State to State and community to community. Costs for many countermeasures are difficult to measure, so the summary terms are very approximate.

Each countermeasure to increase seat belt and child restraint use is discussed individually in this chapter. Full descriptions are included for ★★★, ★★★★ and ★★★★★ countermeasures. Brief descriptions are included for ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Further details about the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures are included in Appendix A2 to this report.

## Countermeasures Targeting Adults

### 1. Seat Belt Use Laws

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 State Primary Enforcement Seat Belt Use Laws | ★★★★★ | $ | Medium | Short |
| 1.2 Local Primary Enforcement Seat Belt Use Laws | ★★★ | $ | Low | Short |
| 1.3 Increased Seat Belt Use Law Penalties | ★★★★† | $ | Low | Short |

†Effectiveness has been demonstrated for increased fines but has not yet been demonstrated for driver's license points.

### 2. Seat Belt Law Enforcement

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 Short Term, High-Visibility Seat Belt Law Enforcement | ★★★★★ | $$$ | Medium† | Medium |
| 2.2 Integrated Nighttime Seat Belt Enforcement | ★★★★ | $$$ | Unknown | Medium |
| 2.3 Sustained Enforcement | ★★★ | Varies | Unknown | Varies |

†Used in many jurisdictions but often only once or twice each year

### 3. Communications and Outreach

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Supporting Enforcement | ★★★★★ | Varies | Medium | Medium |
| 3.2 Strategies for Low-Belt-Use Groups | ★★★★† | Unknown | Unknown | Medium |

†For programs supporting enforcement

## Countermeasures Targeting Children and Youth

### 4. Child/Youth Occupant Restraint Laws

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4.1 Strengthening Child/Youth Occupant Restraint Laws | ★★★★★ | $ | High | Short |

### 5. Child Restraint/Booster Seat Law Enforcement

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5.1 Short High-Visibility CR Law Enforcement | ★★★★★ | $$$ | Medium | Medium |

## 6. Communications and Outreach

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6.1 Strategies for Older Children | ★★★ | Varies | Unknown | Medium |
| 6.2 Strategies for Child Restraint and Booster Seat Use | ★★★† | Varies | Unknown | Medium |

† For stand-alone programs not supporting enforcement

## 7. Other Strategies

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7.1 School-Based Programs | ★★★ | Varies | Unknown | Varies |
| 7.2 Inspection Stations | ★★★ | $$ | High | Short |

**Effectiveness:**

★★★★★ Demonstrated to be effective by several high-quality evaluations with consistent results

★★★★ Demonstrated to be effective in certain situations

★★★ Likely to be effective based on balance of evidence from high-quality evaluations or other sources

☆☆ Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results

☆ Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

$$$ Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources

$$ Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity

$ Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## Countermeasures Targeting Adults

### 1. Seat Belt Use Laws

### 1.1 State Primary Enforcement Seat Belt Use Laws

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Primary enforcement seat belt use laws permit LEOs to stop and cite violators independent of any other traffic violation. Secondary enforcement laws allow LEOs to cite violators only after they first have been stopped for some other traffic violation.

**Use:** As of June 2019 there were 34 States and the District of Columbia that had primary belt use laws and 15 States had secondary enforcement laws. Only New Hampshire had no belt use law applicable to adults (GHSA, 2019a; IIHS, 2019a). However, some States only have primary enforcement for certain occupants (for instance drivers or people older than a specified age) and secondary enforcement for other occupants (for example, North Carolina's seat belt law is primary for drivers and front seat passengers 16 and older but secondary for rear seat passengers 16 and older). Twenty States do not have laws requiring the use of seat belts in the rear seat (GHSA, 2019a). More information on the effect of having no rear seat belt requirement is included in the "Other Issues" section below.

**Effectiveness:** In 2019 belt use averaged 92.0% in the 34 States and District of Columbia with primary belt laws and 86.2% in States with secondary or no enforcement laws (NCSA, 2019). Nichols, Tippetts, et al. (2010) examined the relationship between the type of seat belt law enforcement and seat belt use from 1997 to 2008. Compared with secondary laws, primary laws were associated with a higher observed seat belt use (10 to 12% higher) and higher seat belt use among front-seat occupants killed in crashes (9% higher).

The CDC's systematic review of 13 high-quality studies (Shults et al., 2004) found that primary laws increase belt use by about 14 percentage points and reduce occupant fatalities by about 8% compared to secondary laws. Similarly, Nichols et al. (2014) found that primary enforcement laws were associated with a 9- to 10-percentage-point increase in belt use. In another study, Farmer and Williams (2005), found that passenger vehicle driver death rates dropped by 7% when States changed from secondary to primary enforcement. However, the findings from a recent analysis of crash fatalities suggest that the safety benefits of upgrading to a primary law from a secondary law may not be as great as in earlier periods when seat belt use was lower and implementing primary laws resulted in more reductions in crash fatalities specifically associated with increased seat belt use (Harper & Strumpf, 2017). One possible explanation is that recent improvements in road and vehicle safety, in addition to the reduction in VMT post 2008, have reduced the proportion of fatal crashes that could benefit from increased belt use. It should be noted that the analysis did not account for before-and-after belt use rates in the States, which also may have contributed to the smaller observed benefits.

Research has provided strong support that changing from secondary to primary enforcement seat belt laws increases occupant seat belt use during the nighttime hours as well as the daytime hours

(Chaudhary et al., 2010; Masten, 2007). Chaudhary et al. (2010) evaluated the effects of Maine's change from secondary to primary enforcement of their seat belt law. Observational surveys conducted over an 18-month period after this change went into effect measured increases in seat belt use from 77% to 84% during the daytime and from 69% to 81% at night.

Hedlund et al. (2008) studied the effects of primary law changes on seat belt use and occupant fatalities in Michigan, New Jersey, Washington, Delaware, Illinois, and Tennessee. Strong evidence was found that primary seat belt laws increase seat belt use. Furthermore, statistically significant decreases in the number of front-seat passenger vehicle occupant fatalities were found in Michigan and Washington and the decrease in New Jersey was marginally significant. The lack of significant effects on fatalities in Illinois and Tennessee, as well as a marginal increase in Delaware, was attributed in part to the short amount of time since the implementation of the primary provisions in these States as well as the small number of fatalities in Delaware.

**Costs:** Once legislation has been enacted to upgrade a secondary law to primary, the costs are to publicize the change and enforce the new law. Publicity costs to inform the public of the law change may be low if the media covers the law change extensively. Law enforcement can adapt its secondary law enforcement strategies for use under the primary law or may be able to use new strategies permitted by the primary law. States wishing to increase enforcement and publicity to magnify the effect of the law change will incur additional costs (see Chapter 2, Section 2.1).

**Time to implement:** A primary belt use law can be implemented as soon as the law is enacted unless it has a delayed effective date, however it could include a warning period before enforcement is authorized.

**Other issues:**

- **Partial coverage seat belt laws:** Most State belt use laws cover passengers over a specified age and are designed to work in combination with child passenger safety laws covering younger passengers. However, belt use laws do not cover adult rear seat passengers in 20 States (GHSA, 2019a). The National Occupant Protection Use Survey (NOPUS) found higher observed rear seat belt use in States with belt laws covering all seating positions than in States not requiring rear seat belt use (84.3% and 62.7% in 2017, respectively) (Li & Pickrell, 2019). An analysis of Iowa, which has primary laws for front-seat passengers but no law for rear-seat passengers, found that occupants reported using seat belts 30 to 40% less often if they were a passenger in the rear than in the front (Reyes et al., 2014). This is consistent with findings obtained using household survey data from the ConsumerStyles 2012 database (Bhat, Beck, Bergen, & Kresnow, 2015). Most States' laws exempt some vehicles, such as those designed for more than 10 passengers, taxis, emergency vehicles, postal delivery vehicles, farm vehicles, pickup trucks, or vehicles not required to have seat belts (Glassbrenner, 2005). Some States exempt passengers for specified medical or physical reason. A good seat belt use law should be comprehensive, covering all seating positions equipped with a seat belt in all passenger vehicles (ACTS, 2001; NCUTLO, 2000; NHTSA, 2003). Such a law sends a clear and consistent message to the public.
- **Opposition to primary seat belt laws:** Opponents of primary seat belt use laws claim

that primary laws impinge on individual rights and provide opportunities for law enforcement to harass minority groups (St. Louis et al., 2011). Studies in several States have found that minority groups were ticketed at similar or lower rates than others after a primary law was implemented (Shults et al., 2004; Tison et al., 2011). When Michigan changed from a secondary to a primary law, harassment complaints were very uncommon both before and after the law change. The proportion of seat belt use citations issued to minority groups decreased under the primary law (Eby et al., 2004). In a telephone survey, the vast majority of people who actually received seat belt citations did not feel that they were singled out on the basis of race, age, or gender. However, some minorities and young drivers reported perceptions of harassment.

- **Effect on low-seat-belt-use groups:** Studies in States that changed their laws from secondary to primary show that belt use increased across a broad range of drivers and passengers. In some States, belt use increased more for low-belt-use groups, including Hispanics, African Americans, and impaired drivers, than for all occupants (Shults et al., 2004). This was also found in Florida where the greatest gains were among males, African Americans, pickup truck occupants, younger occupants, and those on local roads (Nichols et al., 2012).
- **Impact of regional characteristics on effectiveness of primary seat belt laws:** Research suggests that primary seat belt laws may be less effective in regions with certain economic, societal, and cultural characteristics. Specifically, there is initial evidence that primary seat belt laws were only associated with higher belt use rates in States that had higher levels of academic achievement and higher health rankings (Ash et al., 2014). Moreover, primary law States that had a high proportion of rural roads relative to urban roads were also associated with no significant increase in seat belt usage in comparison to States with secondary seat belt laws.

### 1.2 Local Primary Enforcement Seat Belt Use Laws and Ordinances

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

In some States with secondary enforcement belt use laws, individual communities have enacted and enforced community-wide primary laws or ordinances. These laws differ from statewide laws only in that they are enacted, publicized, and enforced locally. Note that this option is not available in all States.

**Use:** No comprehensive data are available on how many communities have primary laws, but local implementations have occurred in States such as Missouri (Missouri Department of Transportation, 2017).

**Effectiveness:** St. Louis County, Missouri, implemented a primary seat belt use ordinance in March 2007. Following implementation of this ordinance, the St. Louis County Police Department conducted an intense HVE campaign, accompanied by publicity in the form of variable message boards and permanent road signs, along an 8-mile corridor on State Highway 21. Observational surveys were conducted along the Highway 21 corridor and a control site prior to the start of the enforcement and immediately after its conclusion. The observational surveys measured increases in belt use from 83% to 88% along the Highway 21 corridor and a small, 59% to 57% decrease in belt use along the control corridor (Nichols, Solomon, et al., 2010).

The limited available evidence and extrapolation from the effectiveness of primary seat belt enforcement laws at the State level suggest that this countermeasure should work at the local level (Lucke et al., 2004).

**Costs:** As with a statewide law, the costs are for publicity and enforcement. Both must be directed to the community itself.

**Time to implement:** As with a statewide law, a local law can be implemented as soon as it is enacted, however it could include a warning period before enforcement is authorized. The law's debate and passage likely will generate initial publicity.

**Other issues:** See the discussion under Chapter 2, Section 1.1, Primary Enforcement Belt Use Laws.

### 1.3 Increased Seat Belt Use Law Penalties: Fines and Driver's License Points

| Effectiveness: ★★★★† | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

†Effectiveness has been demonstrated for increased fines but has not yet been demonstrated for driver's license points

Penalties for most seat belt use law violations are low. As of January 2019, a violation resulted in a typical fine of $25 or more in all but 14 States (IIHS, 2019b). Low fines may not convince nonusers to buckle up and may also send a message that seat belt use laws are not taken seriously. Some States use higher fines for first time offenders, with a maximum fine of $200 in Texas (IIHS, 2019b).

Most States penalize serious traffic law violations by assessing demerit points against a driver's license. Drivers lose their licenses if they accumulate more than a specified number of points in a specified period of time.

**Use:** As of May 2019 there were 14 primary law States in addition to the District of Columbia and 2 secondary law States that had maximum fines of $30 or more for at least some occupants (IIHS, 2019b). New Mexico and the District of Columbia assessed driver license points for all seat belt law violations and 11 States assessed points for violations of child safety seat laws.

**Effectiveness:** The effect of driver's license points on seat belt use has not been evaluated.

Houston and Richardson (2006) studied the effects of seat belt law type (primary or secondary), fine level, and coverage (front seat only or front and rear seats) using belt use data from 1991 to 2001. They found that primary belt laws and higher fines increase seat belt use.

Nichols, Tippetts, et al. (2010 and 2014) examined the relationship between seat belt violation fines and seat belt use and found that increasing fines was associated with increased seat belt use. Increasing a State's fine from $25 to $60 was associated with increases of 3% to 4% in both observed seat belt use and belt use among front-seat occupants killed in crashes, an effect that was additive with increases attributed to the type of seat belt law. Increasing the fine from $25 to $100 was associated with increases of 6% to 7% for these measures; however, there were diminishing returns for fines above this amount (Nichols, Tippetts, et al., 2014).

**Costs:** The direct costs associated with increasing fine levels or assessing driver's license points are minimal.

**Time to implement:** Both measures can be implemented as soon as they are publicized and appropriate changes are made to the motor vehicle records systems.

**Other issues:**

- **Balance:** If penalties are excessively low (around $25 or less), then they may have little effect. If they are excessively high, then LEOs may be reluctant to issue citations and judges may be reluctant to impose them. States should choose penalty levels that strike an appropriate balance.

- **Penalty levels are part of a system:** Penalty levels are part of the complete system of well-publicized enforcement of strong belt use laws. Appropriate penalty levels help make strong laws. But without effective enforcement, judicial support, and good publicity, increased penalties may have little effect.

## 2. Seat Belt Law Enforcement

### 2.1 Short-Term, High-Visibility Seat Belt Law Enforcement

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Medium† | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† Used in many jurisdictions but often only once or twice each year

The most common high-visibility seat belt law enforcement method consists of short (typically lasting 2 weeks), intense, highly publicized periods of increased belt law enforcement, frequently using checkpoints (in States where checkpoints are permitted), saturation patrols, or enforcement zones. This short-duration seat belt enforcement method was developed in Canada in the 1980s (Boase et al., 2004) and demonstrated in several U.S. communities (Williams & Wells, 2004). It was implemented statewide in North Carolina in 1993 using the *Click It or Ticket* slogan (Reinfurt, 2004), and subsequently adopted in other States under different names and sponsors (Solomon et al., 2004). NHTSA's *Click It or Ticket* HVE model is described in detail in Solomon et al. (2003 and 2007).

All HVE programs include communications and outreach strategies that use some combination of earned media (e.g., news stories and social media) and paid advertising. Communications and outreach can be conducted at local, State, regional, or national levels.

**Use:** Most States currently conduct short-term, high-visibility belt law enforcement programs in May of each year as part of national seat belt mobilizations (Nichols, Chaffee, Solomon, & Tison, 2016). Some States also conduct seat belt mobilizations in November. NHTSA has supported these campaigns. More than 10,000 LEAs took part in the May 2017 campaign (NHTSA, 2018). See Milano et al. (2004) for a detailed account of the history and evolution of the national campaigns and NHTSA (2016) for a timeline of use over time.

**Effectiveness:** Hedlund et al. (2008) compared 16 States with high seat belt rates and 15 States with low seat belt rates. The single most important difference between the two groups was the level of enforcement (how much enforcement), rather than demographic characteristics or the amount spent on media. High-belt-use States issued twice as many citations per capita during their *Click It or Ticket* campaigns as low-belt-use States. Level of enforcement is also related to type of seat belt law. Nichols, Chaffe, Solomon, and Tison (2016) found that law enforcement in primary belt use law States issued more seat belt citations in the 2013 campaign than did law enforcement in secondary belt use law States.

The CDC's systematic review of 15 high-quality studies (Dinh-Zarr et al., 2001; Shults et al., 2004) found that short-term, HVE programs increased belt use by about 16 percentage points, with greater gains when pre-program belt use was lower. Because many studies were conducted when belt use rates were considerably lower than at present, new programs likely will not have as large an effect. Following the enforcement program, belt use often dropped by about 6 percentage points demonstrating the ratchet effect typical of these programs (belt use increases during and immediately after the program and then decreases somewhat, but remains at a level higher than the pre-program belt use).

Media plays an instrumental role in HVE campaigns. The May 2002 *Click It or Ticket* campaign evaluation demonstrated the effect of different media strategies used in conjunction with enforcement (Solomon, Ulmer, & Preusser, 2002). Belt use increased by 8.6 percentage points across 10 States that used paid advertising extensively in their campaigns. Belt use increased by 2.7 percentage points across 4 States that used limited paid advertising and increased by only 0.5 percentage points across 4 States that used no paid advertising. From 2008 to 2013 National funding for the *Click it or Ticket* campaign remained steady at $8 million per year, while State funding for the campaign dropped from $16 million to $11 million per year (Nichols, Chaffe, Solomon, & Tison, 2016). Even though less funding was used to support the media portion of the program, the effect of repeating the CIOT campaign yearly acts as a booster shot for seat belt use awareness and behavior change. This is demonstrated by looking at indicators during that same period, i.e., CIOT tagline recognition increased from 73% to 83%, seat belt citations per 100,000 people dropped from 19 to 12 among reporting jurisdictions, and national observed daytime belt use increased from 83% to 87%.

Smaller-scale campaigns limited to a single travel corridor can yield a short-term improvement in observed seat belt usage along the corridor, but the effects appear to be limited to the enforcement area. Specifically, an HVE campaign conducted along a route frequented by commuters used inexpensive roadway signs and magnetic message strips on enforcement vehicles in the corridor, but only a press release was available to residents in a nearby city, which was typically the destination for commuters (Elliot et al., 2014). Although observed belt use improved significantly in the corridor, observed belt use and overall awareness of the seat belt campaign was unchanged in the nearby city. A likely explanation for this difference is lack of exposure to the location-specific campaign, since most respondents from the city reported traveling the route less than once a month.

Since 2002 and especially after 2003, there has been a history of using extensive paid advertising both nationally and in States to support the *Click it or Ticket* campaign with clear enforcement images and messages (Milano et al., 2004). The 2013 *Click It or Ticket* (CIOT) campaign used extensive paid advertising ($8 million nationally and $11 million in individual States). National observed seat belt use following CIOT was statistically unchanged from 2012 to 2013 (86% and 87%, respectively). While the effect of CIOT on observed belt use cannot be isolated from the effect of other interventions, national observed seat belt use increased from 79% to 87% over 11 years of CIOT activity (2003 – 2013) (Nichols, Chaffe, & Solomon, & Tison, 2016).

**Costs:** High-visibility enforcement campaigns are expensive. They require extensive time from State highway safety office and media staff and often from consultants to develop, produce, and distribute publicity and time from LEOs to conduct the enforcement. Paid advertising increases a campaign's effectiveness, but can be quite expensive. In the average State, paid advertising costs were nearly $350,000 for the 2007 campaign (Solomon, Preusser, Tison, & Chaudhary, 2009). More recently, the 2013 *Click It or Ticket* campaign used extensive paid advertising ($8 million nationally and $11 million in individual States) (Nichols, Chaffe, & Solomon, & Tison, 2016).

**Time to implement:** An HVE program (including media) requires 4 to 6 months to plan and implement.

**Other issues:**

- **Effects in primary and secondary belt law States:** High-visibility enforcement campaigns are effective in both primary and secondary law States. NHTSA's 2003 evaluation found that belt use increased by 4.6 percentage points across the primary law States and by 6.6 percentage points across the secondary law States with the primary law States having had higher use rates before the campaigns (Solomon et al., 2003). NHTSA's evaluation of the 2004 *Click It or Ticket* campaign found that the campaign increased belt use in 25 secondary jurisdictions by an average of 3.7 percentage points. Belt use decreased in the remaining 5 jurisdictions by an average of 2.3 percentage points (Solomon et al., 2007). NHTSA examined the effect of enforcement in the 2012 *Click It or Ticket* campaign and found that citations per 10,000 residents were twice as high in States with primary laws (16 citations versus 8 citations) as those with secondary laws (Hinch, Solomon, & Tison, 2014). The authors suggested that increasing citations in secondary States (when drivers are stopped for other violations) could be an opportunity to increase belt use.
- **Effects on low-belt-use groups:** The CDC's systematic review observed that short-term, HVE campaigns increased belt use more among traditionally lower-belt-use groups, including young drivers, rural drivers, males, African Americans, and Hispanics (Shults et al., 2004). See Chapter 2, Section 3.2 for further discussion on strategies to reach low-belt-use groups. Similarly, a more recent study also found that increases in observed seat belt use in an enforcement area were greatest among the groups that had the lowest baseline usage rates, such as males, passengers, and drivers of pickup trucks (Elliot et al., 2014).
- **Nighttime programs:** A three-year high-visibility nighttime seat belt enforcement program conducted in Maryland successfully raised nighttime seat belt use (Retting et al., 2018). This program included five waves of HVE coupled with extensive paid and earned media campaigns. The primary message of the ad campaign was that "Cops are cracking down on seat belt violations, especially at night." Driver awareness of the seat belt enforcement increased significantly during the HVE period. Furthermore, despite the fact that seat belt use rates were already high in this region (90-95%), there was a small but significant increase in observed nighttime seat belt use in three of the five waves when compared to a pre-HVE period. Control sites showed no changes in nighttime belt use across the same timeframe. A similar pattern was observed with unbelted injury crashes at night. These rates dropped at HVE sites when compared to the pre-HVE period and control sites showed no change in crash rates. Similar to the Washington program, nighttime unbelted drivers were more likely to have poorer driving records and more prior citations for speeding, negligent/reckless driving, license-related offences, and crashes.

## 2.2 Integrated Nighttime Seat Belt Enforcement

| Effectiveness: ★★★★ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

Short-term, high-visibility seat belt law enforcement programs (Chapter 2, Section 2.1) require substantial funding and law enforcement resources. In addition, some States have experienced smaller gains in seat belt use associated with enforcement campaigns after conducting them for several years (Nichols & Ledingham, 2008). These programs also have been conducted almost exclusively during daytime, and the available data suggest that belt use is lower at night (Chaudhary et al., 2005; Hedlund et al., 2004; Nichols & Ledingham, 2008).

In 2018 some 56% of passenger vehicle occupants killed in crashes at night were unrestrained (NCSA, 2020b). In contrast, 39% of fatally injured passenger vehicle occupants in daytime crashes were unrestrained. Furthermore, nighttime seat belt use among passenger vehicle occupants killed was on average 17 percentage points lower than daytime belt use, according to FARS data for the 10-year period from 2009 to 2018.

Although some data suggest that more emphasis on seat belt enforcement during the late-night hours and in conjunction with alcohol laws can provide additional gains in seat belt use and injury reduction (Nichols & Ledingham, 2008), more recent evaluations have shown mixed results (Nichols, Chaffe, & Solomon, 2016; Thomas et al., 2017). In theory, retaining the short-term, high- intensity enforcement model, but including other traffic safety issues such as DWI and excessive speed, could be effective since the same drivers tend to drink, speed, and not buckle up (Nichols, Chaffe, & Solomon, 2016). In particular, combined DWI and belt law checkpoints, saturation patrols, or enforcement zone operations could be conducted at night, when belt use is lower, DWI higher, and crash risk greater than during the day. Enforcement should be conducted in locations with adequate lighting or by using light enhancing technologies. The first demonstration of this strategy took place in 2004 in Reading, Pennsylvania (Chaudhary et al., 2005). See Chapter 1, Section 2.5 “Integrated Enforcement” for further discussion on combined seat belt and alcohol enforcement.

**Use:** There is little information available on how frequently integrated nighttime, HVE strategies are used. One demonstration of a nighttime program in Pennsylvania was conducted in 2004 (Chaudhary et al., 2005), another demonstration program involving three North Carolina communities was conducted in 2007 (Solomon et al., 2009), Washington State conducted a 2-year statewide high-visibility nighttime seat belt enforcement program from May 2007 to May 2009 (Thomas et al., 2010), and Oklahoma, Tennessee, and Maryland conducted enforcement waves from 2011 to 2013 (Nichols, Chaffe, & Solomon, 2016; Retting et al., 2018).

**Effectiveness:** A 2004 nighttime high-visibility belt enforcement program in Reading, Pennsylvania, increased nighttime front-seat-occupant belt use by 6 percentage points, from 50% to 56%. Daytime belt use increased by 3 percentage points, from 56% to 59% (Chaudhary et al., 2005).

A 2007 evaluation of three HVE demonstration programs designed to improve nighttime seat belt use in three communities – two in North Carolina with a primary seat belt law and one in

West Virginia with a secondary law – concluded that nighttime high- visibility seat belt law enforcement programs can be effective for increasing nighttime belt use (Solomon, Chaffe, & Preusser, 2009). Furthermore, roadside breath tests used to collect BAC measures in one North Carolina community reported that the program also decreased drinking and driving.

A detailed evaluation of the Washington nighttime seat belt enforcement program found that it was effective across outcome measures (Thomas et al., 2017). The program used a combination of HVE and both paid and earned media. Public surveys reported that 70% of motorists reported hearing or seeing campaign messages and noticed increased enforcement. Over the course of the program, observed daytime and nighttime seat belt use levels trended upwards from initially high levels, with a larger increase occurring for nighttime use (from around 95% to 97% at night). Additional time-series analyses of crash data found that the program was associated with 3.4 fewer nighttime fatalities per month, even after accounting for the effects associated with the State adopting primary seat belt enforcement prior to the program. An evaluation of the first year of this Washington program also looked at the characteristics of observed drivers (through self-report, driving, and criminal records) finding notable differences between unrestrained and restrained drivers by time of day (Thomas et al., 2010). For example, unrestrained nighttime drivers were 2.7 times more likely than restrained daytime drivers to have had a felony arrest and 3.0 times more likely to have had an alcohol citation. As part of the outcome evaluation, debriefings with local LEAs reported that enforcement personnel felt that the publicity campaign enhanced their efforts and that they would recommend the program to other agencies.

An evaluation study examined the effectiveness of the *More Cops More Stops* (MCMS) HVE program implemented in Oklahoma and Tennessee (Nichols, Chaffe, & Solomon, 2016). The program addressed traffic safety issues with one integrated message. The MCMS program covered impaired driving, seat belt, and speeding enforcement under a single message. During four of the six campaign waves, MCMS activity was accompanied by *Click It or Ticket* (CIOT) or *Drive Sober or Get Pulled Over* (DSOGPO) statewide campaigns. The effectiveness of the MCMS program was limited. While there were some positive outcomes in terms of increased recognition of the MCMS slogan and some increases in awareness of general traffic enforcement, overall driver perceptions of the risk of a traffic stop did not increase. The integrated program (i.e., MCMS plus statewide campaigns) likely had an impact on seat belt usage, although observational surveys provided little evidence that the MCMS phases yield gains above and beyond that associated with the statewide campaigns. However, one of the five market areas (Memphis) experienced a significant increase in daytime and nighttime seat belt usage. While the evaluation did find some positive outcomes associated with the overall program (MCMS plus statewide), the evaluation found no evidence of MCMS being an effective tool for enhancing the effect of the CIOT and DSOGPO statewide campaigns. An additional consideration was that the MCMS integrated program was taxing on law enforcement, and challenging to maintain for the full program duration.

**Costs:** The costs of combined HVE programs are similar to and probably somewhat greater than the costs of programs directed exclusively at belt law violators (Chapter 2, Section 2.1). Publicity must be directed at different offenses in turn, and LEOs must have the training and equipment to address different offenses. Nighttime programs may entail somewhat higher costs if new night-vision technology is used.

**Time to implement:** Integrated and nighttime HVE programs require 4 to 6 months to plan and implement.

## 2.3 Sustained Enforcement

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Varies |

Some jurisdictions, including California, Illinois, Kentucky, Oregon, and Washington, enforce their belt use laws vigorously as part of customary traffic enforcement .

**Use:** The extent of vigorous sustained belt law enforcement, with or without extensive publicity, is unknown.

**Effectiveness:** There are few studies of the effectiveness of sustained enforcement (Hedlund et al., 2004). California and Oregon, States that are reported to use sustained enforcement, have recorded statewide belt use well above national belt use rates since 2002 (seat belt use rates for 2002 to 2019 - California: 91 to 96% and Oregon: 88 to 96% versus nationwide: 75 to 91%) (NCSA, 2007: NCSA, 2020a).

Nichols and Ledingham (2008) conducted a review of the impact of enforcement, as well as legislation and sanctions, on seat belt use over the past two decades and concluded that sustained enforcement (implemented as a component of regular patrols or as special patrols) is as effective as “blitz” enforcement (short-term, HVE) and unlike blitz campaigns, is not usually associated with abrupt drops in belt use after program completion.

**Costs:** Sustained enforcement may require funds for publicity. As with short-term, high-visibility enforcement programs, publicity costs will depend on the mix of earned and paid media.

**Time to implement:** Sustained enforcement by LEOs can be implemented once the LEA develops and implements a sustained seat belt enforcement plan. Extensive publicity will take 3 or 4 months to plan and implement initially, but this time will decrease once the program has been implemented for some period of time.

## 3. Communications and Outreach

### 3.1 Supporting Enforcement

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: Varies | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

Effective, high-visibility communications and outreach are an essential part of successful seat belt law HVE programs (Solomon et al., 2003). Paid advertising can be a critical part of the media strategy. Paid advertising brings with it the ability to control message content, timing, placement, and repetition (Milano et al., 2004).

**Use:** All HVE programs include communications and outreach strategies that use some combination of earned media (news stories, social media) and paid advertising. Communications and outreach can be conducted at local, State, regional, or national levels.

**Effectiveness:** The May 2002 *Click It or Ticket* campaign evaluation demonstrated the effect of different media strategies. Belt use increased by 8.6 percentage points across 10 States that used paid advertising extensively in their campaigns. Belt use increased by 2.7 percentage points across 4 States that used limited paid advertising and increased by only 0.5 percentage points across 4 States that used no paid advertising (Solomon et al., 2002). Milano et al. (2004) summarize an extensive amount of information from national telephone surveys conducted in conjunction with each national campaign from 1997 to 2003. While the campaign is still used widely, there have not been recent effectiveness evaluations that consider communications and outreach changes such as the prevalence of social media and changing media mode shares.

**Costs:** Paid advertising can be expensive. On average participating States' paid advertising costs were about $2,200,000 for the 2013 campaign (Nichols, Chaffe, Solomon, & Tison, 2016).

**Time to implement:** An effective media campaign requires 4 to 6 months to plan and implement.

**Other Issues:**

- **Social media:** NHTSA and some States use social networking sites to reach the general public with messages concerning seat belt use. Although sites such as Facebook, Twitter, and YouTube can effectively and inexpensively reach large numbers of people, there are no evaluations of seat belt use campaigns that use this approach. The CDC offers tools to help with using social media, including a social media toolkit and guide for writing social media (www.cdc.gov/socialmedia/tools/guidelines). In addition, there is information available on NHTSA's traffic safety marketing website (www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/marketing-tools/social-media).

### 3.2 Strategies for Low-Belt-Use Groups

| Effectiveness: ★★★★† | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† For programs supporting enforcement

Nationally in 2018, daytime seat belt use was at 89.6%, with 47 States and the District of Columbia having seat belt use at 80% or higher (NCSA, 2020a). This indicates the large majority of drivers and passengers are wearing their seat belts during daytime hours; however, there remains a proportion of the population who still do not buckle up regularly.

Generally, seat belt use rates for male occupants are lower than rates for female occupants, 87.7% and 92.0% respectively in 2018 (Enriquez, 2019). This trend has been evident since at least 2005. Similarly, belt use rates for occupants 16 to 24 tend to be lower than the use rates of other age groups. In 2018 belt use was 91.3% for occupants 8 to 15, 87.6% for occupants 16 to 24, 89.5% for occupants 25 to 69, and 92.4% for those occupants 70 and older. Since 2005, belt use rates for Black occupants have been lower than use rates for members of other races. In 2018 belt use for Black occupants was 85.5% compared to 89.7% among White occupants, and 92.6% among members of other races. Additionally, NHTSA's 2019 National Occupant Protection Use Survey reported belt use was lower for front seat passengers (89.8%) compared to drivers (90.9%), and pickup truck occupants (85.6%) compared to occupants of passenger cars (91.2%) and vans/SUVs (92.5%) (NCSA, 2019). NHTSA's 2007 national Motor Vehicle Occupant Safety Survey (MVOSS) found the same patterns with males, young drivers, rural drivers, and pickup truck drivers-all reporting lower seat belt use (Boyle & Lampkin, 2008). An in-depth examination conducted in Louisiana of driver factors underlying self-reported seat belt use found that, in addition to demographic factors, driver motivations and habits were strong correlates of belt use (Schneider et al., 2017). Internal (want to) and external (have to) motivations to wear a seat belt along with having a well-formed habit of buckling early in a trip were associated with 100% belt use. Motivated drivers who were nevertheless inconsistent seat belt users typically lacked well-formed seat belt use habits and routines.

Most non-seat belt users report wearing seat belts at least some of the time. In NHTSA's 2007 national MVOSS, only 1% of drivers said they never used their seat belts and another 1% said they rarely used seat belts (Boyle & Lampkin, 2008). Passenger seat belt use also appears to be strongly associated with driver belt use (Han, 2017). The most frequent reasons given by drivers for not wearing a belt were that they: were only driving a short distance (59%), forgot (52%), were in a rush (39%), or they found the belt uncomfortable (35%) (Boyle & Lampkin, 2008). Drivers were able to give more than one reason for not wearing a belt so the percentages do not add up to 100%.

Riding as a backseat passenger is another factor that affects seat belt use. In one survey, 72% said they always use their belt in the back seat, compared to 91% who said they always use their belt when seated in front (IIHS, 2017). A recent analysis of data from the 2016 MVOSS found that 63% of rear-seat passengers reported being full-time users, 26% reported being part-time users, and 11% reported being non-users (Spado et al., 2019). The factors that had the strongest association with rear belt use included support for rear-belt laws, using a belt in the front seat, and belief that their State has a rear-belt law.

**Use:** Communications and outreach campaigns directed at low-belt-use groups are common, but no summary is available.

**Effectiveness:** Communications and outreach campaigns directed at low-belt-use groups have been demonstrated to be effective for targeted programs that support, and are supported by, enforcement. The effectiveness of stand-alone programs not supported by enforcement is unclear, though North Dakota has demonstrated success with its 2003 "Pick Up the Habit for Someone You Love" campaign (North Dakota DOT, 2004).

*Trauma Nurses Talk Tough*, originally developed in Oregon in 1988, is a seat belt diversion program implemented by trauma nurses in a hospital setting that targets drivers who have been ticketed for not wearing a seat belt. The program was implemented in Robeson County, North Carolina, a diverse county whose seat belt rates were consistently lower than the rest of the State. Those who went through the program were more likely to have a positive outlook on the use of seat belts. Following the program, observed seat belt use increased significantly in the county at 8 survey locations (from 81% to 86%) and 2 additional sites (from 69% to 78%) (NHTSA, 2014b; Thomas et al., 2014).

Demonstration programs conducted in Kentucky, Mississippi, North Dakota, and Wyoming from 2004 to 2007 sought to increase seat belt use through a variety of innovative approaches. The primary method employed by Mississippi, North Dakota, and Wyoming was to target low- belt-use counties for additional enforcement and enforcement focused publicity. The seat belt laws in Kentucky and Mississippi were also upgraded from secondary to primary enforcement during the demonstration programs. All 4 States achieved significant statewide increases in belt use above baseline belt use rates (Blomberg et al., 2009).

A variety of low-belt use groups have been targeted by countermeasure efforts. These are discussed in separate sections below.

**Young Males**: High-visibility enforcement programs generally have been effective in increasing belt use (see Chapter 2, Section 2.1; Shults et al., 2004). Their publicity messages and placement can be directed at specific lower-belt-use groups. The 2013 *Click It or Ticket* campaign targeted 18- to 34-year old males and found they showed greater increases in awareness of seat belt enforcement activity and seat belt checkpoints than the general population (14% versus 10% for seat belt enforcement and 10% versus 7% for seat belt checkpoints, respectively) (Nichols, Chaffe, Solomon, & Tison, 2016).The target group did not show significant increases in awareness of the CIOT slogan (5%), messages to buckle up (6%), or perceived risk of a ticket (6%), while the general population showed significant increases in these indices (6%, 8%, and 5%, respectively). The small sample size for the target group may have contributed to not finding significant increases among this group for some indices.

**Pickup Truck Drivers**: The 5 States of NHTSA's Region 6 conducted a two-week *Buckle Up in Your Truck* paid advertising campaign immediately before their May 2004 *Click It or Ticket* campaign. The truck campaign's message complemented the *Click It or Ticket* message by focusing on the dangers of riding unrestrained in a truck and stressing the usefulness of belts in

rollover crashes. The campaign spent nearly $600,000 for paid advertising in the 5 participating States. Surveys at the end of the campaign, before any enforcement-based *Click It or Ticke*t publicity, showed that belt use among pickup truck occupants increased by about 2 percentage points. Following the *Click It or Ticket* publicity, belt use among pickup truck occupants increased by another 6 percentage points (Solomon, Chaffe, et al., 2007).

In a November 2004 follow-up study, an intensive campaign using the same *Buckle Up in Your Truck* message was conducted in Amarillo, Texas. The campaign used paid advertising emphasizing belt law enforcement as well as earned media featuring local LEOs. Belt use in pickup trucks increased by 12 percentage points in Amarillo and belt use in cars increased by 8 percentage points. At the same time, belt use in a comparison community increased by 5 percentage points for pickup truck occupants and by 4 percentage points for car occupants (Solomon et al., 2007).

Iowa, Kansas, Missouri, and Nebraska (in NHTSA's Region 7) implemented a similar *Buckle Up in Your Truck* program in May 2006 and 2007. The campaign sought to increase seat belt use among pickup truck occupants by focusing on the dangers of riding unbuckled and increasing awareness of ongoing enforcement efforts. Following this campaign, these States also conducted statewide *Click It or Ticket* campaigns that included additional paid media and enforcement directed at occupants of all vehicle types. The *Buckle Up in Your Truck* campaign did increase the awareness of "buckle up in trucks" messages, but in terms of observed seat belt use, the *Click It or Ticket* campaign had the greater effect (Nichols et al., 2009).

North Dakota's *Pick Up the Habit for Someone You Love* campaign in 2003 provides one of the few examples of a successful communications and outreach program not directly connected to enforcement. It was directed at male pickup drivers, whose pre-program belt use was 20 percentage-points lower than the statewide 63% rate. A survey of these drivers identified effective message goals (*choose* and *remember* to buckle up), message strategies (motivation through loved ones, sometimes using humor), and message placement (combining paid and earned radio and television, posters, and public relations events) (North Dakota DOT, 2004). The program increased observed belt use of male pickup drivers by 7 percentage points at a total cost of $295,000.

The North Dakota and Amarillo campaigns are well-documented examples of successful programs that target low-belt-use groups. They used all the characteristics of effective communications and outreach campaigns: good target audience research, effective and creative message development, and good message placement using both paid and earned media. The overall South-Central Region campaign produced only modest gains, but Kentucky (67% to 76% statewide), Mississippi (58% to 65% in targeted counties), North Dakota (66% to 80% in targeted counties), and Wyoming (55% to 70% in targeted counties) were able to achieve significant increases in seat belt use through their programs (Blomberg et al., 2009).

**Rural Drivers**: NHTSA's Region 5 implemented a Rural Demonstration Program (RDP) prior to the May 2005 *Click It or Ticket* mobilization. The goal of the RDP was to evaluate strategies for increasing seat belt usage in rural areas. Paid media was used to notify rural residents that seat belt laws were being enforced. Active enforcement was included during the initial phase in 3

of the six Region 5 States (Illinois, Indiana, Ohio), but only the paid media component was implemented in the remaining three States (Minnesota, Michigan, Wisconsin). During the Demonstration Project phase, States that had intensified enforcement had significant increases in usage in their targeted rural areas (Nichols et al., 2007). All six Region 5 States intensified enforcement during the *Click It or Ticket* mobilization, but States that had intensified enforcement during the Demonstration Project showed substantially greater overall statewide gains during the *Click It or Ticket* phase than did the States that had not intensified enforcement during the RDP.

More recent evaluations of rural programs following the HVE model have yielded mixed results. An evaluation of Rural Initiatives conducted in Missouri and Kansas showed positive outcomes (Thomas & Blomberg, 2016). These States ran multi-wave HVE campaigns focused on rural counties from Spring 2009 to Spring 2010. The evaluations reported that seat belt use in the rural Missouri counties increased from 66.4% to 69.2%, while seat belt use in the rural Kansas counties increased from 61% to 70%. However, not all counties covered by the program experienced significant increases. Driver awareness of the targeted seat belt safety messages also increased following local media campaigns. A multi-state RDP that covered rural parts of Florida, Georgia, and Tennessee was less successful (Nichols, Chaffe, Solomon, & Tison, 2016). It included an HVE model paired with paid and earned media in four waves from November 2008 to May 2010, and it overlapped with annual CIOT campaigns. The RPD increased driver awareness of rural seat belt messages and the perceived risk of getting a ticket for driving unrestrained. Seat belt use increased in all three States but was only significantly greater than at control locations in Georgia. Concurrent, statewide CIOT may have muted the differences relative to control, and the greater effectiveness in Georgia may have been partially attributable to the broader awareness among drivers of seat belt check points (Nichols, Chaffe, Solomon, & Tison, 2016).

**Native American Drivers**: A multifaceted program was implemented on the Pine Ridge Indian Reservation (PRIR) in South Dakota to address the reservation's high proportion of fatal motor vehicle crashes and chronically low seat belt use rates (Amiotte et al., 2016). Although the PRIR was covered by an existing primary seat belt law adopted by the Oglala Sioux Tribe, the law was rarely enforced by PRIR tribal courts and LEOs stopped issuing seat belts tickets. This contributed to seat belt use rates that were as low as 10% across the PRIR. The program implemented by the PRIR included data collection on belt use, increased policing resources and enforcement, funding for a traffic court to enforce seat belt citations, funding for injury prevention specialists to address child restraint usage, and outreach involving local media and school programs. These efforts resulted in a 34% increase in observed seat belt use on the PRIR between 2007 and 2013. Another study used similar multifaceted approaches for increasing child restraint use in five tribal communities (Billie et al., 2016). Separate programs were run in each community, and each included child restraint distribution and parent education, along with varying combinations of increased citations, checkpoints, and enhanced media campaigns. These efforts resulted in higher child restraint use rates in all five communities, with larger improvements occurring in communities with low initial use rates. An important factor in the success of these programs was tailoring the interventions to local communities and adapting programming and media messages in culturally appropriate ways.

**Costs:** As with enforcement-related communications and outreach, costs vary depending on program quality and delivery. Paid advertising can be expensive.

**Time to implement:** A good media campaign will require 4 to 6 months to plan and implement.

## Countermeasures Targeting Children and Youth

## 4. Child/Youth Occupant Restraint Laws

### 4.1 Strengthening Child/Youth Occupant Restraint Laws

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Beginning with Tennessee, every State from 1978 to 1985 passed laws requiring children traveling in motor vehicles to be restrained in child restraints appropriate for the child's age and size (Kahane, 1986). Today, State child restraint laws vary in terms of who is covered by the law, the types of restraints required, and whether children are required to ride in the rear seat. In some States, children as young as 5 may be restrained using the adult seat belt, while other State laws require children up to age 9 or 80 pounds or 57 inches tall to be restrained in a child restraint or booster seat (GHSA, 2019b; IIHS, 2019a, 2019b). Research has shown that laws requiring a child restraint or booster seat for children 4 to 7 are associated with a decrease in fatalities (Mannix et al., 2012).

In general, young children are usually covered by child restraint laws, while older children and adults are covered by seat belt laws. However, in 4 States some children under 16 are covered by neither law (IIHS, 2019a, 2019b). This seems to arise from the specific wording of laws in certain States that exclude some young occupants (perhaps inadvertently) because of a particular combination of age, height, or seating position. Most child passenger safety laws are primary; however, most seat belt laws start coverage before a child reaches 18, so older children and teens might be covered by a secondary enforcement seat belt law in some States. Research has found that teens living in a secondary enforcement State are less likely to report wearing their seat belt than teens living in primary enforcement States (Garcia-Espana et al., 2012). Strong occupant restraint use laws should be comprehensive, covering all seating positions equipped with a seat belt in all passenger vehicles (ACTS, 2001; NCUTLO, 2000; NHTSA, 2003). Such a law sends a clear and consistent message to the public. NHTSA and partners have encouraged States to expand their child restraint laws to include "booster" provisions that cover children until they are big enough for the lap and shoulder belts to fit properly.

**Use:** As of November 2018, all but one State had enacted child restraint laws covering children through at least age 5 (South Dakota's law only covers children 4 and younger) (IIHS, 2019a, 2019b). However, a wide variation in age, height, and weight requirements exists among the laws of the States (GHSA, 2019b; IIHS, 2019a, 2019b).

**Effectiveness:** Research conducted by Arbogast et al. (2009) found that transitioning children from child restraints with harnesses to belt-positioning booster seats instead of vehicle seat belts provides significant safety benefits for children at least through 8, and that belt-positioning booster seats lower the risk of injury to children in crashes by 45% compared to the use of vehicle seat belts alone. Some studies evaluated the effect of booster provisions in States' laws on booster seat use (Gunn et al., 2007). Observational surveys conducted in Washington State before their booster seat law was expanded found that only 21% of children from ages 4 to 8 were using booster seats (Ebel et al., 2003). Following a new law requiring booster seats for

children weighing from 40 and 60 pounds or younger than 6 years old, observational surveys in Washington State found close to half of children 4 to 8 years old in a booster seat (Stehr & Lovrich, 2003). Similarly, an observational study of child restraint legislation in Canadian provinces found that provinces with newly passed legislation saw booster/front-facing restraint use increase to 54% from 26% previously (Simniceanu et al., 2014). However, during the same period, provinces with existing legislation saw no increase (31% versus 30%). This suggests that legislation on its own may be insufficient, and that the outreach, education, and enforcement associated with new legislation play a vital role in increasing restraint use. Another Canadian study found that a new booster-seat law was associated with a 10.8% reduction in motor-vehicle injuries among children 4-8 (Brubacher et al., 2016). The National Survey of the Use of Booster Seats found that booster seat use has remained relatively stable, despite the enactment of laws to encourage the use of booster seats (Li & Pickrell, 2018b). Booster seat use by 4- to 7-year-olds in 2017 was 40%, a non-significant change from 41% in 2006, the first year of the survey.

One study evaluated the effects of Tennessee's "booster" provisions that added new requirements for 4- to 8-year-olds in 2005 (Gunn et al., 2007). Pre- and post-law observational survey data revealed a significant increase in booster seat use among 4- to 8-year-olds from 29% to 39%. Decina et al. (2008) reported that an observational study conducted to evaluate a demonstration program found a 9-percentage-point increase in the use of child restraints, including booster seats, for children 4 to 8 following enactment of an enhanced child restraint law (booster seat law) in Wisconsin. Similarly, a second evaluation of Wisconsin's booster seat law found that while total booster seat use did increase, the law did not impact all children equally. Specifically, use of booster seats and proper use of booster seats varied among different racial and socioeconomic groups suggesting that further study is needed of the effects of booster seat legislation on all children (Brixey et al., 2011).

Several research studies (Fell et al., 2005; Margolis et al., 1996) have found restraint use levels among children and teens covered by restraint use laws are higher than those not covered, and that injury levels among children covered by child passenger safety laws are lower than children not covered.

**Costs:** The costs of expanding a restraint use law to include all seating positions in all passenger vehicles are minimal.

**Time to implement:** Expanded restraint use law coverage can be implemented as soon as the law is enacted and publicized.

**Other issues:**

- **Elements of child/youth occupant restraint laws:** The scope and wording of these laws may affect proper use of child restraints. An analysis of NASS-GES crashes involving children in not-at-fault vehicles examined predictors of restraint use (Benedetti et al., 2017). This study employed an "induced exposure" approach that approximates a random sample in the driving population. The study found that children were more likely to ride in the recommended type of restraint if their State's child/youth occupant restraint law followed best practices for child occupant protection (i.e., AAP, 2011). However, State laws did not seem to affect whether or not a child was restrained at all. The strongest

predictor of unrestrained children in this study was an unrestrained driver (see also Raymond et al., 2018). This reinforces longstanding research findings of a direct correlation between adult and child occupant restraint status, including Starnes (2003).

## 5. Child Restraint/Booster Seat Law Enforcement

### 5.1 Short-Term High-Visibility Child Restraint/Booster Law Enforcement

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

As noted in Section 2.1, high-visibility short-duration belt law enforcement programs, such as *Click It or Ticket,* have proven to be the most effective countermeasure to date for increasing seat belt use. NHTSA typically includes child restraint and booster seat use and enforcement as a part of their *Click It or Ticket* campaigns (although adult seat belt use is the main focus of CIOT, as demonstrated in the type of citations issued and depicted in the accompanying paid advertising, earned media, and social media). There is concern that LEOs are reluctant to enforce child restraint laws due to competing priorities in their departments and a lack of knowledge on the part of officers on the subject of child restraints (Decina et al., 2008; Decina et al., 1994; NHTSA, 1990). More recent research demonstrates that effective approaches for enforcing child restraint laws – in particular booster seat laws – are possible, but they depend on top management support and enforcement methods that are dedicated to booster seat and other child restraint laws (Decina, Hall, & Lococo, 2010).

As with HVE aimed at adult occupants (Section 3.1), enforcement of child restraint/booster laws should be coupled with high-visibility communications and outreach (Solomon et al., 2003). Paid advertising can be a critical part of the media strategy. Paid advertising brings with it the ability to control message content, timing, placement, and repetition (Milano et al., 2004).

**Use:** Most States currently conduct short-term, high-visibility child restraint/booster seat law enforcement programs in May of each year as part of national seat belt mobilizations (Solomon et al., 2004; Solomon et al., 2007) and in September as part of Child Passenger Safety (CPS) Week.

**Effectiveness:** In their systematic review of evidence of effectiveness for child restraint interventions, Zaza et al. (2001) determined that community-wide information plus enhanced enforcement campaigns were effective in increasing child restraint use.

**Costs:** High-visibility enforcement campaigns are expensive. They require extensive time from State highway safety offices, time from LEOs to conduct the enforcement, and time from media staff and often from consultants to develop, produce, and distribute publicity. Paid advertising increases a campaign's effectiveness but can be quite expensive.

**Time to implement:** An HVE program requires 4 to 6 months to plan and implement.

**Other issues:**

- **Barriers to enhanced enforcement programs:** Decina et al. (2008) concluded that barriers to enhanced enforcement programs, especially as related to booster seats, include: low awareness of child restraint laws among parents/caregivers; low perception of risk to child passengers; lack of knowledge about the safety benefits of booster seats among the public; lack of knowledge about the safety benefits of booster seats among

LEOs and members of the courts; low threat of being ticketed for violations; and lack of commitment to child passenger safety by law enforcement top management.

- **Strategies to enhance enforcement programs**: Decina et al. (2010) found that the most effective approaches for enforcing booster seat laws depend on top management support to enforce these laws, having resources to support dedicated booster seat law enforcement programs, and enforcement methods that are dedicated to booster seat and other child restraint laws. These elements are in addition to other aspects that have typically been used to maximize the results of child restraint enforcement efforts (NHTSA, 1990). Specifically, effective program components that have worked over time include: media coverage of enforcement and public information by the local press and radio and television stations; training of LEOs in the benefits of child passenger safety and methods of effective law enforcement; information aimed at target audiences; information coinciding with community events; a network of child restraint inspection stations; child restraint distribution programs; and PSAs and other media coverage.

## 6. Communications and Outreach

### 6.1 Strategies for Older Children

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

The number of older children killed in traffic fatalities has decreased substantially since 2007. For children 8 to 12, there has been a 16% decrease from 402 fatalities in 2009 to 339 fatalities in 2018 (NCSA, 2021). Similarly, for children 13 and 14 there has been a 38% decrease from 254 fatalities in 2009 to 158 fatalities in 2018. While increased seat belt use has undoubtedly contributed to these improvements, there is still room to improve seat belt use in these age groups. The 2017 NSUBS found that more children 8 to12 were using restraints, and only 14% were unrestrained in 2017, which is an improvement from 16% unrestrained in the 2015 NSUBS (Li & Pickrell, 2018b). While older children are using restraints more often, those who were unrestrained made up a higher proportion of deaths in fatal crashes (NCSA, 2021). For children 8 to 12, some 43% of the children killed were unrestrained, whereas only 12% of the children who survived were unrestrained. Similarly, for children 13 to 14, about 51% of the children killed were unrestrained, whereas only 21% of the children who survived were unrestrained.

As noted by Kuhn and Lam (2008a; 2008b), there is not a great deal of information on the factors influencing restraint use for children 8 to 15 years old. The few available studies have tended to focus on changing nonuse behaviors without investigating attitudinal or motivational factors that might be useful in developing additional strategies.

**Use:** There is more of an emphasis on developing and implementing programs targeting children 8 to 14. In March 2015 NHTSA announced a new campaign focused on older children 8 to 14, *Don't Give Up Until They Buckle Up*. The campaign is targeted to parents and caregivers of "tweens," with material and resources for States and programs interested in focusing on this age group. Some pilot programs have been implemented and evaluated that can be used as resources for program development. One extensive resource available is the report titled *Increasing Seat Belt Use Among 8- to 15-Year-Olds: Volumes I and II* (Kuhn & Lam, 2008a, 2008b).

**Effectiveness:** The few studies that have been conducted have produced encouraging results. The Avoiding Tween Tragedy Project was a comprehensive program aimed at increasing restraint use among 8- to 15-year-olds in Berks County, Pennsylvania (Alonge et al., 2012). The program included education at elementary, middle, and high schools, law enforcement participation, earned and paid media, and participation in community events. Restraint use increased significantly following the program (13% at elementary schools, 17% at middle schools, and 20% at high schools). Among elementary school students, back seat positioning also increased. The authors recommend that future programs targeting this age group focus on HVE and education using information designed for this age group. Because the behaviors of this age group are strongly influenced by others, a legislative focus on primary enforcement of restraint use for all occupants should be pursued if not already in place.

The *Just Get It Across* program developed by the Rainbow Babies and Children's Hospital in Cleveland, Ohio, targeted parents of 13- to 15-year-olds with a message encouraging parents to

promote seat belt use among their teens (program description and implementation: University Hospitals Rainbow Babies & Children's Hospital Injury Prevention Center, 2014). The program demonstrated increases in knowledge of seat belt laws and teen-reported reminders to wear seat belts by parents. Observed seat belt use by parents and teens also increased in the target community; however, it is not clear what role the program had in this increase because seat belt use in the control community also increased. Exposure in the control community to *Just Get It Across* messaging along with other seat belt promotions may have interfered with effective evaluation of the program (program evaluation: Zakrajsek et al., 2014).

Colorado and Nevada implemented Teen Seat Belt Demonstration Projects in 2007 and 2008 consisting of publicity and enforcement. Each State held four enforcement waves focused in areas and at times when teenagers were most likely to be driving. In addition to increases in teen awareness of seat belt messages and enforcement, teen belt use increased significantly in both States (5% in Colorado and 8% in Nevada) (Nichols et al., 2011).

A study by Nichols et al. (2018) explored the effectiveness of multi-wave teen seat belt demonstration programs in Louisiana, Mississippi, New Mexico, and Texas. These programs were established in 2009, with the first wave of focused activities starting just prior to NHTSA's *Click It or Ticket* (CIOT) campaign in May 2009. The remaining waves occurred in fall 2009, winter 2010, and in May 2010. Each wave consisted of teen-focused outreach, earned and paid media, and enforcement. Each State also had control areas where the program activity was not promoted. States differed in the type of primary media used for outreach (e.g., Louisiana and Mississippi spent more on television ads while New Mexico and Texas spent more on radio ads). The program in Mississippi appeared to be the most effective with higher awareness of seat belt messages, higher perception of strict enforcement, and statistically significant increases in observed seat belt use among teens in the program areas compared to the control areas. This coincides with the high levels of teen exposure to outreach in Mississippi (i.e., higher gross rating points of media ads) than in other States. Teens in the program areas in Texas had higher levels of awareness compared to the control, but the increases in seat belt use were similar in both areas. Neither Louisiana nor New Mexico showed increases in teen belt use above the control locations.

The Automotive Coalition for Traffic Safety (ACTS) launched two pilot programs in 2005 targeting 8- to 15-year-old tweens. These short-term school and community-based interventions targeted both children and their parents. Both programs were successful in changing knowledge and attitudes of the parents and children, but limited observations did not show significant changes in belt use among the targeted children (Jennings et al., 2006).

**Costs:** Program costs will depend on the size of the target audience and the components of the program.

**Time to implement:** Complete programs will require at least 4 months to plan and implement. School-based programs may require a full year.

### 6.2 Strategies for Child Restraint and Booster Seat Use

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

Both the American Academy of Pediatrics and NHTSA recommend children stay rear-facing as long as possible until they outgrow the height or weight limits of the seats, and then use forward-facing harnesses for as long as possible (Durbin et al., 2018; NHTSA, 2019). However, observational data from the 2017 National Survey of the Use of Booster Seats (NSUBS) show that 5.2% of children under age 1 were moved prematurely to forward-facing child restraints. Similarly, 14.9% of children 1 to 3 were not in a rear- or forward-facing child restraints but were instead in booster seats, the seat belts alone, or were unrestrained (Li & Pickrell, 2018b). Note however, that some 3-year-olds may meet the requirement of a booster seat, so while it is not best practice, it also is not technically "misuse."

A booster seat is recommended until the lap/shoulder combination belt fits properly on its own, typically when a child is 8 to 12 years old and/or 4 feet 9 inches tall. However, 2017 NSUBS data show that many children are moving into seat belts much earlier than recommended. In 2017 some 20.8% of children 4 to 7 were restrained using seat belts alone and 40.1% were using booster seats. Only 10.7% of children 8 to 12 were using booster seats (Li & Pickrell, 2018b). Due to differences in growth, children may meet the requirements for seat belts or booster seats earlier than their peers. If a child has grown to meet the requirements of a booster seat or a seat belt before reaching the recommended age group, it is not necessarily misuse.

Compared to the 2015 NSUBS, child restraint use in age groups is either unchanged or slightly higher. In 2017 some 13.7% of children 1 to 3 were rear-facing, slightly more than the 9.4% in 2015. In addition, a smaller number of children 1 to 3 were prematurely moved to booster seats (7.6% in 2017 compared to 13.6% in 2015). There were also more children 4 to 7 riding in car seats or booster seats compared with 2013 (68.5% versus 62.4%) (Li & Pickrell, 2018b).

**Use:** Communications and outreach campaigns directed at booster-seat-age children are likely common, but no summary is available.

**Effectiveness:** The effectiveness of communication and outreach strategies has been examined in various ways. Will et al. (2009) used a threat-based message to increase booster seat use among attendees of two large daycare/after-school programs in Eastern Virginia. The intervention included a video made with images to invoke emotions, crash test footage, well-respected experts, and personal stories to convey a message of high-threat consequences without using graphic, "gory" images. The study found significant increases in overall restraint use and booster seat use following exposure to the intervention and concluded that applying messages of high-threat consequences (without gore) to booster seat interventions is a promising approach. Similarly, some studies have also used a different threat-based message ("No Regrets") with some success (Bryant-Stephens et al., 2013; Winston et al., 2007). Another study found that the strongest predictors of booster seat use among Canadian parents of 4- to 9-year-olds was the parents' knowledge of the purpose and benefit of booster seat use as well as perceived community norms (Bruce et al., 2011).

The "Strike Out Child Passenger Injury" program used community sports programs to promote booster seat use among 4- to 7-year-olds in 20 rural communities across Alabama, Arkansas, Illinois, and Indiana (Aitken et al., 2013). In the intervention communities, information about proper restraint use was shared in conjunction with T-ball season. In addition to information, parents were given the opportunity to meet with a CPS technician during a T-ball event in order to get a personal assessment and recommendation for proper restraint use. Child restraints and booster seats were provided to families in need and baseball-themed prizes were provided to participants. Control communities received only an informational brochure. Following the short program, proper restraint use increased in intervention communities in 3 of 4 States. This study demonstrated that tailoring a program to fit in an established community event can have a short-term impact on restraint use in a rural community where resources are limited.

**Costs:** As with enforcement-related communications and outreach, costs vary depending on program quality and delivery.

**Time to implement:** A good educational campaign will require 4 to 6 months to plan and implement.

## 7. Other Strategies

### 7.1 School-Based Programs

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

Schools provide well-defined and somewhat controlled audiences for seat belt use programs. Education and other communications strategies can be tailored to a specific audience. While these programs are often well received in the community, there is limited information on their effectiveness.

**Use:** There are no data on the number of school-based programs operating currently.

**Effectiveness:** School programs have been shown to increase seat belt use in the few evaluations of school programs that have been conducted. The "Make It Click" program was developed in Virginia to address low seat belt use among children 8 to 12 in an economically disadvantaged urban school district (Will & Dunaway, 2017). Children, parents, and teachers were educated about proper seat belt use with activities throughout one school year. Children participated in a creativity contest, a safety-themed play, a buckle-challenge competition, afterschool programs, classroom assignments, and morning announcements. Parents were provided with flyers and presentations, while teachers received regular newsletters to keep them informed about the program. The program resulted in significantly higher observed seat belt use rates at intervention schools (32% before the program versus 68% after). During a follow-up period 4 months after the program, students at the intervention school were 3.3 times more likely to be observed wearing seat belts than students at the control schools.

Similar improvements were observed in a pilot program to increase restraint use and rear seating position among elementary schools and day care centers (Williams et al., 1997). The programs, held in conjunction with an ongoing statewide *Click It or Ticket* program, included letters and pamphlets sent to parents, proper restraint use demonstrations, assemblies emphasizing proper restraint use (at the schools), and enforcement checkpoints. Proper use increased substantially at elementary schools (36% to 64%; 49% to 71%) with smaller increases at the daycare centers (71% to 76%; 60% to 75%). The researchers concluded also that enforcement is a key ingredient of programs even among school-aged children. The smaller increase in use could also be an artifact of the daycare center having younger kids who are traditionally more likely to be restrained than elementary-aged kids.

See Section 6.1 Communications and Outreach Strategies for Older Children for additional information about programs targeting school-aged children.

**Costs:** Program costs will depend on the size of the target audience and the components of the program.

**Time to implement:** School policies can be implemented immediately. Complete programs will require at least 4 months to plan and implement and may require a full year.

### 7.2 Inspection Stations

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $$ | Use: High | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

The misuse of child restraints has been a concern for many years. Some programs have been implemented to provide parents and other caregivers with "hands-on" assistance and education about the proper installation and use of child restraints in an effort to combat widespread misuse. CPS inspection stations, sometimes called "fitting stations," are places or events where parents and caregivers can receive this assistance from certified CPS technicians. Certification courses for child safety seat checks are available through the National Child Passenger Safety Certification Program (http://cert.safekids.org).

Inspection stations in urban communities may be effective in reaching households that improperly use child restraints. One study conducted in Los Angeles that reached out to parents and caregivers using advertisements found that vehicles visiting the inspection stations had a rate of child restraint misuse of 96.2% (Bachman et al., 2016). Examples of misuse included inappropriate use of the top tether, older children prematurely restrained in front seats, and seat belts routed incorrectly. While this rate was substantially higher than the 46% misuse rate observed in the nationally representative NCRUSS sample (Greenwell, 2015), some of this difference likely reflects a broader definition of misuse in the Los Angeles study as the determination of misuse was based on American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) best practice recommendations. It is also possible that the households targeted in this community study had particularly high misuse rates. The Los Angeles inspection station study found that factors such as child age, child weight, and vehicle year led to systematic instances of child restraint misuse and should be considered when conducting inspections and addressing deficiencies in restraint use (Bachman et al., 2016).

**Use:** Child restraint inspection stations have become common components of State and local child passenger safety programs. As of 2018 more than 10,000 inspection stations were registered with NHTSA (see www.nhtsa.gov/equipment/car-seats-and-booster-seats#installation-help-inspection for locations).

**Effectiveness:** One study found that child restraint inspection events sponsored by Safe Kids Worldwide held at car dealerships, hospitals, retail outlets and other community locations positively changed parents' behavior and increased their knowledge over a 6-week follow-up period. Children arriving at the second event were restrained more safely and more appropriately than they were at the first (Dukehart et al., 2007). Another small study found that attending inspection stations may be more effective for increasing restraint use in children older than 4 (Kroeker et al., 2015). Specifically, children in this age range were more likely to depart the inspection in a restraint configuration that was more appropriate for their size and weight than prior to the inspection. Inspection stations were included in a multifaceted program to increase child restraint use in five tribal communities. At inspection stations, child restraint seats were checked, replaced, and re-installed if needed, and new seats were provided to caregivers that did not have them. Although the specific contribution of the inspection stations was not assessed, the full program resulted in four of the five tribes exceeding their overall restraint-use goals—some by a substantial margin.

Another study evaluated whether a "hands-on" educational intervention makes a difference in whether or not parents correctly use their child restraints. All study participants received a free child restraint and education, but the experimental group also received a hands-on demonstration of correct installation and use of the child restraint in their own vehicles. Parents who received this demonstration were also required to demonstrate in return that they could correctly install the restraint. Follow-up observations found that the intervention group was four times more likely to correctly use their child restraints than was the control group (Tessier, 2010).

An evaluation of the child restraint fitting station network in New South Wales, Australia, found that children whose parents attended a fitting station were significantly more likely to be properly restrained than children whose parents had not visited a fitting station. While specific to Australia, these results suggest similar benefits are possible in the United States (Brown et al., 2011).

**Costs:** Program costs will depend on the size of the target audience, the components of the program, and the level of services offered. Since permanent inspection stations listed on NHTSA's locator must have a currently certified child passenger safety technician on site during the posted hours, costs for maintaining the service includes personnel costs as well as operational expenses.

**Time to implement:** Complete programs typically require several months to plan and implement.

**Other issues:**

- **Programs to make child restraints available at low cost:** One of the issues identified when child passenger safety laws were being considered was the costs associated with obtaining child restraints. Because of this, many State and local organizations initiated programs to make child restraints available at low or no cost to parents through child restraint loan or rental programs (Zaza et al., 2001). Since then, the popularity of these programs has decreased significantly as child restraints have become more readily available and funding for such programs scarce. A recent study by CDC, however, found that child safety seat distributions—in combination with other evidence-based practices—may have contributed to significant increases in proper child restraint use in five American Indian/Alaskan Native tribal communities (Billie et al., 2016; West & Naumann, 2014). From 2010 to 2014 all five communities conducted distribution of child safety seats along with educational programs and enhanced enforcement practices. All communities reported increases in observed use of child safety seats (ranging from 6% to 40%) with four communities exceeding their initial goals. A meta-analysis of five studies (four from the United States conducted from 2000 to 2005 and one from Australia conducted in 1987) assessed the effectiveness of interventions in increasing the use of booster seats for children between 4 and 8 years old (Ehiri et al., 2006). Offering incentives such as free booster seats or discount coupons combined with education on the risk of using adult seat belts instead of booster seats, as well as education-only interventions, were all found effective in increasing use when compared to no interventions. An Australian study (Bowman et al., 1987) found no evidence of increased

use in booster seats due to law enforcement practices. Zaza et al. (2001) conducted a systematic review of evidence of effectiveness for five interventions, including child restraint distribution programs. Evidence suggests child restraint distribution coupled with education can be effective. However, the studies evaluated were mostly from the 1980s when child passenger safety laws were first being passed and the availability and costs of child restraints were much different. Louis and Lewis (1997) conducted a project to increase child restraint use in low-income minority families. Families in the program were divided into two study groups with both groups receiving free child restraints. One group also received education regarding child restraint use. The results of the study reported that distributing child restraints resulted in increased long-term use among a low-use population.

- **Availability of CPS Technicians:** The overall availability of CPS technicians throughout a State is a consideration in this countermeasure. A study conducted in Michigan compared where CPS technicians lived and worked to where the greatest needs existed, as defined by at-risk children under 9 (Macy et al., 2016). In general, there was a reasonable match between where the CPS technicians were located and where the most at-risk children resided. In most counties, the estimated distance that families traveled from home to the nearest seat check location was less than 10 miles. However, there were still many counties that had too few technicians to adequately meet local needs. Training new CPS technicians at underserved locations may be an important part of maintaining the effectiveness of this countermeasure. Digital access to CPS technicians is a potential solution. A small study in Florida provided parents with phone apps to interact directly with CPS technicians located elsewhere, to receive help installing child seats (Schwebel et al., 2017). The results reported that the accuracy of installations improved significantly compared to the installation prior to the instruction, and that parents felt more confident about the installation.

**Seat Belts and Child Restraints References**

Aitken, M. E., Miller, B. K., Anderson, B. L., Swearinger, C. J., Monroe, K. W., Daniels, D., O'Neill, J.O., Scherer, L. R., Hafner, J., & Mullins, S. H. (2013). Promoting use of booster seats in rural areas through community sports programs. *The Journal of Rural Health*, *29*, S70-S78.

Alonge, M., Alonge, C., O'Donnell, J., Harnish, A., Matz, M., & Decina, L. A. (2012, June). *Avoiding "tween" tragedies: Demonstration project to increase seat belt use among 8- to 15-year-old motor vehicle occupants* (Report No. DOT HS 811 096). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811096.pdf

American Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Injury, Violence, and Poison Prevention. (2011). Policy statement: Child passenger safety. *Pediatrics, 127*, 788-793.

Amiotte, J., Balanay, J. A., & Humphrey, C. (2016). Seat belt usage interventions for motor vehicle crash prevention on the Pine Ridge Indian Reservation, South Dakota. *Journal of Environmental Health, 78*(6), 46-52.

Arbogast, K. B., Jermakian, J. S., Kallan, M. J., & Durbin, D. R. (2009). Effectiveness of belt positioning booster seats: An updated assessment. *Pediatrics*, *124*, 1281-1286.

Ash, I. K., Edwards, A. L., & Porter, B. E. (2014). An investigation of state population characteristics that moderate the relationship of state seat belt law and use in the United States. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 71*, 129-136. doi:10.1016/j.aap.2014.05.011

Automotive Coalition for Traffic Safety. (2001). *2001 seat belt summit: Policy options for increasing seat belt use in the United States.*

Bachman, S. L., Salzman, G. A., Burke, R. V., Arbogast, H., Ruiz, P., & Upperman, J. S. (2016). Observed child restraint misuse in a large, urban community: Results from three years of inspection events. *Journal of Safety Research, 56,* 17-22.

Benedetti, M., Klinich, K. D., Manary, M. A., & Flannagan, C. A. (2017). Predictors of restraint use among child occupants. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 18*(8), 866-869.

Bhat, G., Beck, L., Bergen, G., & Kresnow, M. J. (2015). Predictors of rear seat belt use among US adults, 2012. *Journal of Safety Research*, *53*, 103-106. https://stacks.cdc.gov/view/cdc/75916

Billie, H., Crump, C. E., Letourneau, R. J., & West, B. A. (2016). Child safety and booster seat use in five tribal communities, 2010–2014. *Journal of Safety Research, 59*, 113-117.

Blomberg, R. D., Thomas, F. D., & Cleven, A. M. (2009, March). *Innovative seat belt demonstration programs in Kentucky, Mississippi, North Dakota, and Wyoming* (Report No. DOT HS 811 080). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/811080_0.pdf

Boase, P., Jonah, B. A., & Dawson, N. (2004). Occupant restraint use in Canada. *Journal of Safety Research*, *35*, 223-229.

Bowman, J. A., Sanson-Fisher, R. W., & Webb, G. R. (1987). Interventions in preschools to increase the use of safety restraints by preschool children. *Pediatrics*, *79*(1), 103-109.

Boyle, J. M. & Lampkin, C. (2008, August). 2007 Motor vehicle occupant safety survey. Volume 2, Seat belt report (Report No. DOT HS 810 975). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/810975.pdf

Brixey, S. N., Corden, T. E., Guse, C. E., & Layde, P. M. (2011). Booster seat legislation: Does it work for all children? *Injury Prevention, 17,* 233-237.

Brown, J., Finch, C. F., Hatfield, J., & Bilston, L. E. (2011). Child restraint fitting stations reduce incorrect restraint use among child occupants. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 43,* 1128-1133.

Brubacher, J. R., Desapriya, E., Erdelyi, S., & Chan, H. (2016). The impact of child safety restraint legislation on child injuries in police-reported motor vehicle collisions in British Columbia: An interrupted time series analysis. *Pediatrics & Child Health, 21*(4), 27-31.

Bruce, B. S., Snowden, A. W., Cunningham, C., Cramm, C. L., Whittle, K., Correale, H., Barwick, M., Piotrowski, C., Warda, L., & Harrold, J. (2011). Predicting parents' use of booster seats. *Injury Prevention, 17,* 313-318.

Bryant-Stephens, T., Garcia-Espana, J. F., & Winston, F. K. (2013). Boosting restraint norms: A community-delivered campaign to promote booster seat use. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 14*, 578-583.

Chaudhary, N. K., Alonge, M., & Preusser, D. F. (2005). Evaluation of the Reading, PA nighttime safety belt enforcement campaign: September 2004. *Journal of Safety Research, 36*, 321-326.

Chaudhary, N. K., Tison, J., & Casanova, T. (2010, April). *Evaluation of Maine's seat belt law change from secondary to primary enforcement* (Report No. DOT HS 811 259). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811259.pdf

Decina, L. E., Hall, W. L., & Lococo, K.H. (2010, February). *Booster seat law enforcement: Examples from Delaware, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Washington* (Report No. DOT HS 811 247). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2071

Decina, L. E., Lococo, K. H., Ashburn, W., Hall, W. L., & Rose, J. (2008, May). *Identifying strategies to improve the effectiveness of booster seat laws* (Report No. DOT HS 810 969). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1835

Decina, L. E., Temple, M. G., & Dorer, H. S. (1994, March). *Local police enforcement, public information and education strategies to foster more and proper use of child safety seats by toddlers: Evaluation of a demonstration project.* (Report No. DOT HS 808 120). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1553

Dinh-Zarr, T. B., Sleet, D. A., Shults, R. A., Zaza, S., Elder, R. W., Nichols, J. L., Thompson, R. S., Sosin, D. M., & the Task Force on Community Preventive Services. (2001). Reviews of evidence regarding strategies to increase the use of safety belts. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *21*, 48-65.

www.thecommunityguide.org/sites/default/files/publications/mvoi-AJPM-evrev-seat-belts.pdf

Dukehart, J. G., Walker, L., Lococo, K., Decina, L. E., & Staplin, L. (2007). *Safe Kids checkup events: A national study*. Safe Kids Worldwide. www.safekids.org/assets/docs/ourwork/research/research-report-cps-2006.pdf

Dunn, L., Holliday, A., & Vegega, M. (2016, March). *Motor vehicle occupant protection facts – Children, youth, young adults* (Report No. DOT HS 812 251). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/812251-youthfactsbook2016.pdf

Durbin, D. R., Hoffman, B. D., & Council on Injury, Violence, and Poison Prevention. (2018). Child passenger safety. *Pediatrics, 142*(5), e20182460. https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.2018-2460

Ebel, B. E., Koepsell, T. D., Bennett, E. E., & Rivara, F. P. (2003). Too small for a seat belt: Predictors of booster seat use by child passengers. *Pediatrics*, *111*, e323-e327.

Eby, D. W., Kostyniuk, L. P., Molnar, L. J., Vivoda, J. M., & Miller, L. L. (2004). The effect of changing from secondary to primary safety belt enforcement on police harassment. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 36*, 819-828.

Ehiri, J. E., Ejere, H. O., Magnussen, L., Emusu, D., King, W., & Osberg, S. J. (2006). Interventions for promoting booster seat use in four to eight year olds traveling in motor vehicles. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, (1).

Elliott, K. R., Solomon, M. G., & Preusser, D. F. (2014, November). *Evaluation of a high-visibility enforcement seat belt program on the Blue Ridge Parkway* (Report No. DOT HS 812 085). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1997

Enriquez, J. (2019, August). *Occupant restraint use in 2018: Results from the NOPUS controlled intersection study* (Report No. DOT HS 812 781). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812781

Enriquez, J., & Pickrell, T. M. (2019, January). *Seat belt use in 2018 – Overall results* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 812 662). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812662

Farmer, C. M., & Williams, A. F. (2005). Effect on fatality risk of changing from secondary to primary seat belt enforcement. *Journal of Safety Research, 36,* 189-194.

Fell, J. C., Baker, T. K., McKnight, A. S., Brainard, K., Langston, E., Rider, R., Levy, D., & Grube, J. (2005, September). *Increasing teen safety belt use: A program and literature review* (Report No. DOT HS 809 899). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/809899.pdf

Garcia-Espana, J. F., Winston, F. K., & Durbin, D. R. (2012). Safety belt laws and disparities in safety belt use among US high-school drivers. *American Journal of Public Health, 102*, 1128-1134.

Glassbrenner, D. (2006, March). *Safety belt use in 2005: Use rates in the states and territories* (Report No. DOT HS 809 970). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/809970

Governors Highway Safety Association. (2019a). *Seat belt laws by State.* www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2019-06/SeatBeltLaws_June19.pdf

GHSA. (2019b). *Child passenger safety*. www.ghsa.org/issues/child-passenger-safety#:~:text=Require%20all%20children%20to%20be,by%20children%20younger%20than%2013.

Greenwell, N. K. (2015, May). *Results of the national child restraint use special study* (Report No. DOT HS 812 142). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812142

Gunn, V. L., Phillippi, R. M., & Cooper, W. O. (2007). Improvement in booster seat use in Tennessee. *Pediatrics*, *119*, 131-136.

Han, G.-M. (2017). Non-seatbelt use and associated factors among passengers. *International Journal of Injury Control and Safety Promotion, 24(2)*, 251-255.

Harper, S., & Strumpf, E. C. (2017). Primary enforcement of mandatory seat belt laws and motor vehicle crash deaths. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 53*(2), pp 176-183.

Hedlund, J., Gilbert, S. H., Ledingham, K., & Preusser, D. (2008, August). *How states achieve high seat belt use rates* (Report No. DOT HS 810 962). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/810962

Hedlund, J. H., Preusser, D. F., & Shults, R. A. (2004). A research agenda for increasing safety belt use in the United States. *Journal of Safety Research*, *35*, 231-235.

Hinch, M., Solomon, M., & Tison, J. (2014, March). *The* Click It or Ticket *evaluation, 2012* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 811 989). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811989-the_click_it_or_ticket_eval_2012_rn_tsf.pdf

Houston, D. J., & Richardson, L. E. (2006). Getting Americans to buckle up: The efficacy of state seat belt laws. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 37*, 1114-1120.

Insurance Institute for Highway Safety. (2017). Unbelted: Adults admit they often skip belts in rear seat. *Status Report, 52*(5).

IIHS. (2019a). *Safety belts and child safety seats.* www.iihs.org/iihs/topics/laws/safetybeltuse?topicName=safety-belts

IIHS. (2019b). *Seat belt and child seat laws by state.* www.iihs.org/topics/seat-belts/seat-belt-law-table

Jennings, C., Merzer, A., & Mitchell, P. (2006). *Tween traffic safety: Influencing 8- to 12-year-olds to sit safely buckled in a back seat*. Automotive Coalition for Traffic Safety.

Kahane, C. J. (1986, February). *An evaluation of child passenger safety: The effectiveness and benefits of safety seats* (Report No. DOT HS 806 890). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/806890

Kahane, C. J. (2015, January). *Lives saved by vehicle safety technologies and associated Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards, 1960 to 2012–Passenger cars and LTVs–With reviews of 26 FMVSS and the effectiveness of their associated safety technologies in reducing fatalities, injuries, and crashes.* (Report No. DOT HS 812 069). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812069

Klinich, K. D., Manary, M. A., & Weber, K. B. (2012). Crash protection for child passengers: rationale for best practice. *UMTRI Research Review, 43*, 1-35.

Kroeker, A. M., Teddy, A. J., & Macy, M. L. (2015). Car seat inspection among children older than 3 years: Using data to drive practice in child passenger safety. *Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery, 79*(3), S48-S54.

Kuhn, M., & Lam, J. (2008a, May). *Increasing seat belt use among 8- to 15-year-olds: Volume I: Findings* (Report No. DOT HS 810 965). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/810965.pdf

Kuhn, M., & Lam, J. (2008b, May). *Increasing seat belt use among 8- to 15-year-olds: Volume II: Appendices* (Report No. DOT HS 810 966). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/810966.pdf

Li, R., & Pickrell, T. (2018a, April, revised). *Seat belt use in 2017—Overall results* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 812 465). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812465

Li, R., & Pickrell, T. (2018b, September). *The 2017 National Survey of the Use of Booster Seats* (Report No. DOT HS 812 617). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812617

Li, R., & Pickrell, T. M. (2019, February). *Occupant restraint use in 2017: Results from the NOPUS controlled intersection study* (Report No. DOT HS 812 594). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812594

Louis, B., & Lewis, M. (1997). Increasing car seat use for toddlers from inner-city families. *American Journal of Public Health*, *87*, 1044-1045.

Lucke, R. E., Raub, R. A., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L., & Hardy, K. K. (2004). Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, Volume 11: *A guide for increasing seatbelt use*. Transportation Research Board. http://trb.org/publications/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v11.pdf

MacKay, M., & Walker, L. (2017, September). Car seat tethers: Essential for safety but consistently overlooked. Safe Kids Worldwide. www.safekids.org/sites/default/files/study-tethers_2017_final-for_web.pdf

Macy, M. L., Brines, S., Klinich, K. D., Manary, M. A., Gebremariam, A., Teddy, A. J., & Bingham, C. R. (2016). *Child passenger safety needs and resources in Michigan*. Transportation Research Board. https://trid.trb.org/view/1470953

Mannix, R., Fleegler, E., Meehan III, W. P., Schutzman, S. A., Hennelley, K., Nigrovic, L., & Lee, L. K. (2012). Booster seat laws and fatalities in children 4 to 7 years of age. *Pediatrics, 130,* 996-1002.

Margolis, L. H., Bracken, J., & Stewart, J.R. (1996). Effects of North Carolina's mandatory safety belt law on children. *Injury Prevention*, *2*, 32-35.

Masten, S. (2007, March). *The effects of changing to primary enforcement on daytime and nighttime seat belt use. Research note* (Report No. DOT HS 810 743). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/TSF/HS810743/810743.html ; PDF available at https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/TSF/HS810743/810743.pdf

Milano, M., McInturff, B., & Nichols, J. L. (2004). The effect of earned and paid media strategies in high-visibility enforcement campaigns. *Journal of Safety Research, 35*, 203-214.

Mirman, J. H., Seifert, S. J., Metzger, K., Durbin, D. R., Arbogast, K. B., & Zonfrillo, M. R. (2017). Caregivers' use of child passenger safety resources and quality of future child restraint system installations. *Safety*, *3*(4), 24.

Missouri Department of Transportation. (2017, October 10). *Seat belt usage on the rise.* www.modot.org/node/13598

National Center for Statistics and Analysis. (1996, December). *Revised estimates of child restraint effectiveness* (Research Note. Report No. 96855). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/-ViewPublication/96855

NCSA. (2007, April). *Seat belt use in 2006 - Use rates in the States and territories* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 810 690). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/810690

NCSA. (2019, December). *Seat belt use in 2019 – Overall results* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 812 875). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812875

NCSA. (2020a, April). *Seat belt use in 2019 — Use rates in the States and Territories* (Traffic Safety Facts Crash•Stats. Report No. DOT HS 812 947). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812947

NCSA. (2020b, June). *Occupant protection in passenger vehicles: 2018 data* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 967). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812967

NCSA. (2021, January). *Children: 2018 data* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 887). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812887

National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances. (2000). *Uniform vehicle code. Model Occupant Protection Law.* https://iamtraffic.org/wp-content/uploads/2013/01/UVC2000.pdf

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (1990). *Enforcing child passenger safety laws: Eight community strategies* (Report No. DOT HS 807 631). https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/38506

NHTSA. (2003, July). *Initiatives to address safety belt use* (Unnumbered report). www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Vehicle%20Safety/Studies%20&%20Reports/Associated%20Files/OPIPT_FinalRpt_07-17-03.pdf

NHTSA. (2014a). Car seats and booster seats (Web page and portal). www.nhtsa.gov/equipment/car-seats-and-booster-seats

NHTSA. (2014b, March). *Demonstration of the trauma nurses talk tough seat belt diversion program in North Carolina reaches high-risk drivers* (Traffic Tech. Report No. DOT HS 811 874). www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811874-Trauma_Nurses_Talk_Tough_SeatBelt_NC_High-Risk-TT.pdf

NHTSA. (2016). *Campaign history: Fact sheet.* https://ncvisionzero.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/08/ciot-history.pdf

NHTSA. (2018, May 21). *Buckle up. It could save your life*. www.nhtsa.gov/press-releases/buckle-it-could-save-your-life

NHTSA. (2019). *Car seat recommendations for children*. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/carseat-recommendations-for-children-by-age-size.pdf

Nichols, J. L., Chaffe, R., & Solomon, M. G. (2012, August). *Impact of implementing a primary enforcement seat belt law in Florida: A case study* (Report No. DOT HS 811 656). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811656.pdf

Nichols, J. L., Chaffe, R. H. B., & Solomon, M. G. (2016, October). *More Cops More Stops: Evaluation of a combined enforcement program in Oklahoma and Tennessee* (Report No. DOT HS 812 337). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/812337_morecopsmorestops.pdf

Nichols, J., Chaffe, R., Solomon, M., & Tison, J. (2016, January). *The* Click It or Ticket *evaluation, 2013* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 812 238). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/812238_RN-CIOT_2013_Evaluation.pdf

Nichols, J. L., Haire, E., Elliot, K., Solomon, M., & Preusser Research Group. (2018, July). *Evaluation of teen seat belt demonstration projects in Louisiana, Mississippi, New Mexico, and Texas* (Report No. DOT HS 812 464). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/36730

Nichols, J., Haire, E., Solomon, M., Ellison-Potter, P., & Cosgrove, L. (2011, July). *Evaluation of teen seat belt demonstration projects in Colorado and Nevada* (Report No. DOT HS 811 518). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1929

Nichols, J. L., & Ledingham, K. A. (2008). *The impact of legislation, enforcement, and sanctions on safety belt use* (NCHRP Report 601). Transportation Research Board. http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_601.pdf

Nichols, J. L., Ledingham, K. A., & Preusser, D. F. (2007, April). *Effectiveness of the May 2005 rural demonstration program and the* Click It or Ticket *mobilization in the Great Lakes region: First year results* (Report No. DOT HS 810 753). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.dot.gov/buckleup/CIOT2005_effectiveness/images/810753l.pdf

Nichols, J. L., Solomon, M. G., Chaffe, R. H. B., & Preusser, D. F. (2010, May). *Evaluation of a county enforcement program with a primary seat belt ordinance: St. Louis County, Missouri* (Report No. DOT HS 811 292). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1901

Nichols, J. L., Tippetts, A. S., Fell, J. C., Auld-Owend, A., Wiliszowski, C. H., Haseltine, P. W., & Eichelberger, A. (2010, May). *Strategies to increase seat belt use: An analysis of levels of fines and the type of law* (Report No. DOT HS 811 413). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/occupant_protection/pdf/811413.pdf

Nichols, J. L., Tippetts, A. S., Fell, J. C., Eichelberger, A. H., & Haseltine, P. W. (2014). The effects of primary enforcement laws and fine levels on seat belt usage in the United States. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 15*(6), 640-644.

Nichols, J. L., Tison, J., Solomon, M. G., Ledingham, K. A., Preusser, D. F., & Siegler, J. N. (2009, June). *Evaluation of the "Buckle Up in Your Truck" programs* (Report No. DOT HS 811 131). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/811131.pdf

North Dakota Department of Transportation. (2004). *Pick Up the Habit for Someone You Love campaign* (Contract PHSP4030301).

Raymond, P., Searcy, S., Miller, S., & Redden, C. (2018, March). *Additional analysis of National Child Restraint Use Special Study: Characteristics of those not restrained* (Report No. DOT HS 812 477). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/35963

Reinfurt, D. W. (2004). *Click It or Ticket* in North Carolina: A decade of progress. *Journal of Safety Research, 35*, 181-188.

Retting, R., Ballou, M., Sexton, T., Miller, R., Rothenberg, H., Kerns, T., & Johnson, A. (2018, April). *Evaluation of nighttime seat belt enforcement demonstration program and identification of characteristics of unbelted high-risk drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 812 474). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/13289_nightimeseatbeltreport_042018_v3a-tag.pdf

Reyes, M. L., McGehee, D. V., Marshall, D., Skinner, E., Lundell, J., & Peek-Asa, C. (2014). *A comparative policy analysis of seat belt laws* (Report No. RB37-013). Iowa City, IA: University of Iowa.

Safe Kids Worldwide. (2018). *About CPS certification.* https://cert.safekids.org

Sauber-Schatz, E. K., West, B. A., & Bergen, G. (2014). Vital signs: restraint use and motor vehicle occupant death rates among children aged 0–12 years—United States, 2002–2011. *MMWR. Morbidity and mortality weekly report*, *63*(5), 113.

Schwebel, D. C., Tillman, M. A., Crew, M., Muller, M., & Johnston, A. (2017). Using interactive virtual presence to support accurate installation of child restraints: Efficacy and parental perceptions. *Journal of Safety Research, 62,* 235-243

Schneider, H., Pfetzer, E., Black, W., & Dickey, J. (2017). *Factors influencing seatbelt utilization in Louisiana and strategies to improve usage rate* (Report No. FHWA/LA.16/572). Federal Highway Administration. www.ltrc.lsu.edu/pdf/2017/FR_572.pdf

Shults, R. A., Nichols, J. L., Dinh-Zarr, T. B., Sleet, D. A., & Elder, R. W. (2004). Effectiveness of primary enforcement safety belt laws and enhanced enforcement of safety belt laws: A summary of the guide to community preventive services systematic reviews. *Journal of Safety Research, 35*, 189-196.

Simniceanu, A., Richmond, S. A., Snowdon, A., Hussein, A., Boase, P., & Howard, A. (2014). Child restraint use in Canadian provinces with and without legislation in 2010. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 15(7)*, 734-739.

Solomon, M. G., Chaffe, R. H. B., & Cosgrove, L. A. (2007, May). *May 2004* Click It or Ticket *seat belt mobilization evaluation* (Report No. DOT HS 810 716). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1771

Solomon M. G., Chaffe, R. H. B., & Preusser, D. F. (2009, August). *Nighttime enforcement of seat belt laws: An evaluation of three community programs* (Report No. DOT HS 811 189). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/16741

Solomon, M. G., Chaudhary, N. K., & Cosgrove, L. A. (2004, March). *May 2003* Click It or Ticket *safety belt mobilization evaluation* (Report No. DOT HS 809 694). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1717

Solomon, M. G., Compton, R. P., & Preusser, D. F. (2004). Taking the "*Click It or Ticket*" model nationwide. *Journal of Safety Research, 35*, 197-201.

Solomon, M. G., Gilbert, S. H. Nichols, J., Chaffe, R. H. B., Tison, J., & Chaudhary, N. K. (2007, May). *Evaluation of the May 2005* Click It or Ticket *mobilization to increase seat belt use* (Report No. DOT HS 810 778). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/2005CIOTReport.pdf

Solomon, M. G., Preusser, D. F., Tison, J., & Chaudhary, N. K. (2009, December) *Evaluation of the May 2007* Click It or Ticket *mobilization* (Report No. DOT HS 811 239). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811239.pdf

Solomon, M. G., Ulmer, R. G., & Preusser, D. F. (2002, September). *Evaluation of* Click It or Ticket *model programs* (Report No. DOT HS 809 498). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1747

Spado, D., Schaad, A., & Block, A. (2019, December). *2016 motor vehicle occupant safety survey; Volume 2: Seat belt report* (Report No. DOT HS 812 727). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/43609

Starnes, M. (2003, March). *The relationship between driver and child passenger restraint use among fatally injured child passengers age 0-15* (Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 809 558). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/809558

Stehr, S. D., & Lovrich, N. (2003). *An assessment of child car booster seat usage in the state of Washington*. Washington State University.

St. Louis, R. M., Mercer, B. J., & Eby, D. W. (2011, September). *Documenting how states recently upgraded to primary seat belt laws* (Report No. DOT HS 811 524). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811524.pdf

Tessier, K. (2010). Effectiveness of hands-on education for correct child restraint use by parents. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *42*(4), 1041-1047.

Thomas, F. D., & Blomberg, R. D. (2016, April). *Evaluation of Kansas and Missouri rural seat belt demonstrations* (Report No. DOT HS 812 268). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1981

Thomas, F. D., Blomberg, R. D., Korbelak, K. T., Fauchier, C. M. & Zhang, J. (2017, July). *Identifying opportunities to decrease vehicle occupant fatalities* (Report No. DOT HS 812 435). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/13121_beltusereport_070617_v3_tag.pdf

Thomas, F. D., Blomberg, R. D., Fairchild, J., & Cosgrove, L. (2014, March). *Demonstration of the trauma nurses talk tough seat belt diversion program in North Carolina* (Report No. DOT HS 811 873). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811873-Trauma_Nurses_Talk_Tough_SeatBelt.pdf

Thomas III, F. D., Blomberg, R. D., & Van Dyk, J. (2010, December). *Evaluation of the first year of the Washington nighttime seat belt enforcement program* (No. DOT HS 811 295). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1911

Tison, J., & Williams, A.F. (2010, January). *Analyzing the first years of the* Click It or Ticket *mobilizations* (Report No. DOT HS 811 232). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811232.pdf

Tison, J., Williams, A. F., Chaudhary, N. K., & Nichols, J. L. (2011, September). *Determining the relationship of primary seat belt laws to minority ticketing* (Report No. DOT HS 811 535). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles-/nti/pdf/811535.pdf

University Hospitals Rainbow Babies & Children's Hospital Injury Prevention Center. (2014, March). *Creating a campaign for parents of pre-drivers to encourage seat belt use by 13-to 15-year-olds* (Report No. DOT HS 811 894). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811894-Campaign_for_Parents_of_Pre-Drivers_to_Encourage_Seat_Belt_Use.pdf

West, B. A., & Naumann, R. B. (2014). Tribal motor vehicle injury prevention programs for reducing disparities in motor vehicle-related injuries. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR), 63(01)*, 28-33.

Will, K. E., & Dunaway, K. E. (2017). Evaluation of a participative education process for increasing tween restraint use in Virginia: The Make It Click initiative. *Transportation Research Part F: Traffic Psychology and Behaviour, 45*, 54-64.

Will, K. E., Sabo, C. S., & Porter, B. E. (2009). Evaluation of the Boost 'em in the Back Seat Program: Using fear and efficacy to increase booster seat use. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *41*, 57-65.

Williams, A. F., & Wells, J. K. (2004). The role of enforcement programs in increasing seat belt use. *Journal of Safety Research*, *35,* 175-180.

Williams, A. F., Wells, J. K., & Ferguson, S. A. (1997). Development and evaluation of programs to increase proper child restraint use. *Journal of Safety Research*, *28*, 69-73.

Winston, F.K., Erkoboni D., & Xie, D. (2007). Identifying interventions that promote belt-positioning booster seat use for parents with low educational attainment. *Journal of Trauma*, *63*, S29–S38.

Womack, K. N., De La Zerda, S., Block, A. W., & Guzzetta, C. S. (2005, March). *Assessment of the NHTSA standardized Child Passenger Safety (CPS) training course* (Report No. DOTHS 809 885). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.dot.gov/people/injury/research/CPS_Assessment/images/809_885.pdf

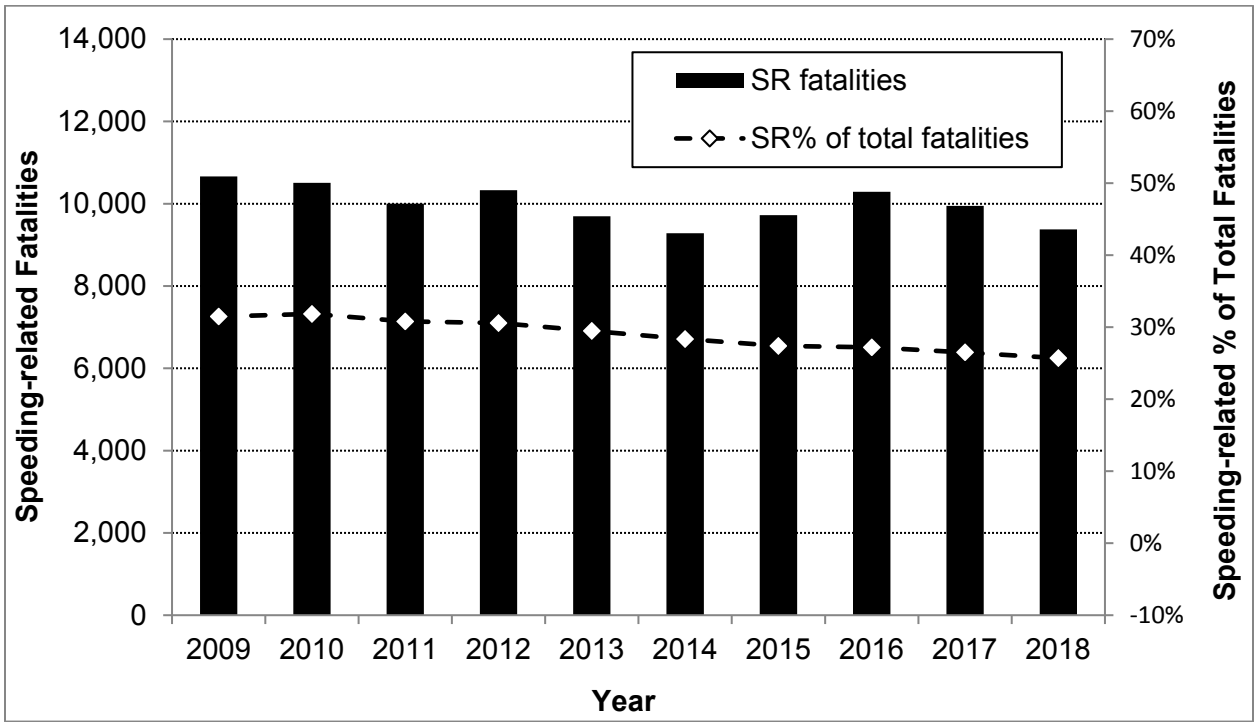
Zakrajsek, J. S., Eby, D. W., Molnar, L. J., St. Louis, R., & Zanier, N. (2014, March). *Evaluating* Just Get It Across*: A parent-directed demonstration program to increase young teen seat belt use* (Report No. DOT HS 811 893). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811893-Evaluating_Just_Get_It_Across_a_Parent-Directed_Demonstration_Program.pdf

Zaza, S., Sleet, D. A., Thompson, R. S., Sosin, D. M., & Bolen, J. C. (2001). Reviews of evidence regarding interventions to increase use of child safety seats. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *21*, 31-47.

# 3. Speeding and Speed Management

## Overview

**Characteristics and problem size: Speeding.** NHTSA defines a crash to be speeding-related if any driver involved in the crash is charged with a speeding-related offense or if a police officer indicates that racing, driving too fast for conditions, or exceeding the posted speed limit was a contributing factor in the crash. Speeding-related fatalities have generally decreased over the last decade, as shown in the figure below. In 2018 there were 9,378 speeding-related fatalities, a decrease of 6% from the 9,947 fatalities in 2017 (NCSA, 2020). Speeding is a contributing factor for 26% of fatalities in motor vehicle traffic crashes in the United States, a percentage that decreased from 31% since 2009. NHTSA has developed a webpage to visualize speeding-related fatal crashes by location, time-of-day, road type, and other factors (https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/nhtsa/fars/speeding_data_visualization/).




Source: NCSA (2020)

Younger drivers, particularly young males, continued to be the most likely to be identified as speeding in fatal crashes in 2018 (NCSA, 2020). In 2018 nearly one-third (30%) of male drivers in the 15- to 20-year-old age group involved in fatal crashes were speeding at the time of the crashes, compared to 18% for the female drivers in the same age group. Other risk factors associated with speeding in 2018 included driver alcohol use, lack of seat belt usage, driver not being properly licensed, and nighttime hours. In 2018 some 31% of all motorcycle riders (operators) involved in fatal crashes were speeding, compared to 18% of passenger car drivers, 14% of light-truck drivers, and 7% of large-truck drivers.

Speeding is legally defined by States and municipalities in terms of a "basic speed rule" and statutory maximum speed limits. The basic speed rule generally requires drivers to operate a vehicle at a speed that is reasonable and prudent for roadway conditions. Making a determination to take enforcement action is at the LEO's discretion, which may be impacted by weather, surface conditions, traffic volume, and special locations (e.g., work zones, school zones, or other environmental conditions). Statutory speed limits set maximum limits for different types of roads, and generally apply to all roads of that type even when the limits are not posted. These limits can be superseded by limits posted for specific roadway segments, usually determined by engineering studies. Special Report 254 of the Transportation Research Board, which reviewed much of the past research regarding the effects of speed and speed limits on crashes, describes the reasons for setting speed limits and other actions for managing travel speeds (TRB, 1998). The TRB guide contains much valuable information that is still very relevant for setting limits and managing speeds.

A document prepared by the Global Road Safety Partnership (Howard et al., 2008) with input from U.S. experts, updates speed management guidance based on more recent knowledge, and describes the evolution of practices used by countries with a zero deaths vision and framework. For example, practices used in such countries no longer rely on the 85th percentile or other operating speed distributions, but set limits according to injury minimization principles. A detailed description and comparison of these and other methods is provided in *Methods and Practices for Setting Speed Limits: An Informational Report* (Forbes et al., 2012), prepared by the Institute of Transportation Engineers in cooperation with FHWA. In the United States, Vision Zero is primarily an initiative targeting local jurisdictions to get them to adopt speed-management policies and roadway design practices that encourage driving at speeds that are less likely to result in serious injuries or fatalities. As of January 2018 thirty-five cities had adopted policies from this initiative (Vision Zero Network, 2018).

Speeding can be dangerous on all types of roads, but particularly on non-interstate rural and urban roadways. In 2018 there were 41% of speed-related fatalities that occurred on non-interstate rural roadways, another 44% on non-interstate urban roadways, 9% on interstate urban roadways, and 5% on interstate rural roadways (NCSA, 2020).

Speeding is also common. A 2007 nationally representative observational survey for NHTSA estimated that, in free-flowing traffic, 48% of drivers on limited access highways were exceeding the speed limit, 60% were exceeding speed limits on other major arterials, and 61% were exceeding speed limits on minor arterials and collectors (Huey et al., 2012). This percentage range is comparable to findings from a study among Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development countries, which showed that 40 to 50% of vehicles were driving above the posted speed limit (WHO, 2017).

In the 2007 NHTSA survey, many drivers were exceeding the posted speed limit by more than 10 mph on all these road types, including 16% on limited access roads, 14% on major arterials, and 15% on minor arterials and collectors. NHTSA's nationally representative observational survey was repeated in 2009, and found that free-flow speeds on limited access highways increased by 6 mph as compared with 2007 (Huey et al., 2012). The percentage of drivers exceeding the speed limit by more than 10 mph increased from 16% in 2007 to 19% in 2009 on limited access

highways. There was little change in speeds on major and minor arterials from 2007 to 2009. Slight declines (0.3 to 0.5 mph) in mean speeds were observed for major arterials, with slight increases (0.2 to 0.4 mph) on minor arterials and collectors. The percentage of drivers exceeding the speed limit by more than 10 mph increased on minor arterials and collectors (from 15% to 16%) from 2007 to 2009. A more recent survey compared data from 2009 to 2015 (NHTSA, 2018). Mean speed on the major arterials increased by 3.1 mph from 2009 to 2015, whereas only a minor change (-0.1 mph) was observed on limited access roads. In terms of percentage of vehicles surpassing the speed limit, the percent exceeding by more than 10 mph on major arterials increased from 13.3% in 2009 to 18.1% in 2015, whereas on the limited access roads, the percent exceeding by more than 10 mph was almost the same (20.1% in 2009 and 20.3% in 2015). Traffic Tech summaries are available for all three studies (NHTSA, 2012a; NHTSA, 2012b; NHTSA 2018).

Drivers themselves also report high percentages of speeding. NHTSA's most recent nationally representative survey of drivers conducted, the National Survey of Speeding Attitudes and Behaviors (NSSAB), suggests that some trends in driver attitudes and speeding behaviors may be improving (Schroeder et al., 2013). In 1997 some 31% of surveyed drivers reported passing other cars more often than other cars passed them. In 2011 about 27% of surveyed drivers reported passing other drivers more often. The percentage of drivers who reported that they enjoy the feeling of driving fast also declined, from 40% in 1997 to 27% in 2011. In addition, the percentage who thought the faster they drive, the more alert they are decreased (from 29% in 1997 to 15% in 2011), as did the percentage who reported that they try to get where they are going as fast as they can (from 30% in 1997 to 21% in 2011). A few trends did not improve: Driver impatience with slower drivers was about the same in 2011 (61%) as in 1997 (60%). In addition, the proportion of drivers stopped by police for speeding was fairly similar over these different survey periods. In 1997 some 9% of drivers reported having been stopped by police for speeding within the past 12 months, 11% reported being stopped in 2002, and 9% reported being stopped in 2011. Other driver beliefs were sometimes at odds with each other. For example, two-thirds of drivers agreed strongly that "It is unacceptable to exceed the limits by more than 20 mph," and 91% agreed that "Everyone should obey the speed limit because it's the law." Yet 82% agreed that "People should keep up with the flow of traffic," and 51% agreed that speeding tickets have more to do with raising money than they do with reducing speeding.

Drivers in the 2011 NSSAB were grouped (by analysis) into three clusters or categories according to their responses on six questions about speeding behavior (Schroeder et al., 2013). Of the sample, 30% were classified as "frequent" speeders. Forty percent of the sample of drivers was classified as "sometime" speeders, and 30% as "non-speeders" or drivers who rarely speed. The vast majority of speeders reported that they often pass others, speed by at least 15 mph on multi-lane divided highways and two-lane highways and by at least 10 mph on residential streets, and were five times more likely to have been stopped for speeding in the past 12 months than non-speeders. Unfortunately, speeders also reported taking other risky actions more often than non-speeders and sometime speeders. Speeders reported talking on the phone or texting more often, using seat belts less often, and drinking before driving slightly more often than the other groups. Speeders also tended to be younger compared to non-speeders and sometime speeders, and to view the need to do something about speeding as less important. Across all drivers, however, 87% of surveyed drivers thought it was very important (48%) or somewhat important

(39%) that something is done to reduce speeding. A recent study re-examined the NSSAB typology, and compared driver types with their speeding conviction history. The study involved a survey of Idaho drivers with 0, 1, or 2+ speeding convictions in the past 3 years (Richard et al., 2017). The study validated the notion of different types of speeders, and found that the frequent speeder group was significantly associated with a greater number of speeding convictions. Driver attitudes were also related to speeding. Survey responses reported that the frequent speeder group was more accepting of risky driving behaviors (such as drinking and driving, not using a seat belt, or red-light running) than other groups that sped less. Another study characterized motivations and types of speeders using naturalistic driving data (Richard et al., 2012, for a summary of findings; also see Richard et al., 2013a, 2013b). Speeders were classified into four general patterns based on the percentages of trips with speeding and the average amount of speeding per trip. The four patterns were: (1) incidental or infrequent speeders (few trips with speeding and little speeding on those trips); (2) situational speeders (few trips with speeding but a lot of speeding on those trips); (3) casual speeders (many trips with speeding but only small amounts of speeding on those trips); and (4) habitual speeders (speeding on most trips with a lot of speeding on those trips). Young males and young females in urban settings and young males in rural settings were more likely than older drivers to have trips with speeding. Follow-up focus groups revealed some interesting differences between speeding drivers and those who did not speed. Particularly interesting was the drivers' perception of the meaning of posted speed limits. Drivers that sped a lot considered posted limits to be guidelines rather than strict limits, while the non-speeders considered speed limits to be firm limits not to be exceeded.

A follow-up analysis using the naturalistic driving data described above found evidence for a specific type of speeding behavior that had more aggressive characteristics, such as high maximum speeds and high speed variability, in comparison to other types of speeding behaviors (Richard et al., 2016). Moreover, drivers that engaged in this type of aggressive speeding differed from other drivers in terms of self-reported measures. In general, these drivers were significantly more likely to report engaging in other risky behaviors such as tailgating, taking risks when in a hurry, and cutting off other drivers. Taken together, this analysis based on naturalistic driving behaviors suggests that aggressive driving may arise from persistent driver attitudes and personality traits.

While the legal definitions of speeding include exceeding the posted speed limit, driving too fast for existing conditions, and racing, speeding becomes an element of aggressive driving when a vehicle's speed substantially exceeds the prevailing travel speeds of other vehicles, and other driving behaviors contribute to unsafe conditions, e.g., tailgating, weaving, and rapid lane changes. Speeding is a more clearly defined problem than aggressive driving, and strategies to reduce speeding (and other serious traffic law violations) may provide a means to address the problem of aggressive driving. However, speeding is among the most complex traffic safety issues to address and requires a multi-disciplinary approach to effectively manage. Enforcement is an important element in developing a strategy to address speeding, as are considerations of engineering issues and public education and communications efforts.

**Characteristics and problem size: Aggressive and risky driving.** Aggressive and risky driving actions are also perceived to be common, although they are difficult to measure accurately. In NHTSA's 2002 survey of speeding and unsafe driving behaviors, 40% of drivers reported that

they sometimes enter an intersection "just as the light turned from yellow to red," and 11% said they often did this. In the same survey 10% reported sometimes cutting in front of another driver, and 2% said they often did this (NHTSA, 2004). About one-third (34%) of drivers reported that they feel threatened by other drivers at least several times monthly. The 2011 NSSAB did not ask about these other risky behaviors. NHTSA has estimated that two-thirds of traffic fatalities involve behaviors commonly associated with aggressive driving such as speeding, red-light running, and improper lane changes (NHTSA, 2001). Similarly, the AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety estimated that 56% of fatal crashes involved one or more driver actions typically associated with aggressive driving, the most common being excessive speed (AAAFTS, 2009).

Aggressive driving is generally understood to mean driving actions that markedly exceed the norms of safe driving behavior and that directly affect other road users by placing them in unnecessary danger. Aggressive driving may involve driver anger, attempts to gain an advantage over other drivers, and deliberate violations and deviations from normal traffic speeds (Neuman et al., 2003). It has proven challenging to arrive at a consensus for a theoretical definition of aggressive driving, and hence to come up with a working definition. Not every moving violation is considered to be aggressive driving. However, violations that encroach on others' safe space, such as driving much faster than prevailing speeds, following too closely, making unsafe lane changes, and running red lights, either on one occasion or over a period of time, may indicate a pattern of aggressive driving. Although some States have passed laws criminalizing aggressive driving, it should not be confused with road rage, which is an intentional assault by a driver or passenger with a motor vehicle or a weapon that occurs on the roadway or is precipitated by an incident on the roadway.

Causes of aggressive driving can include both personal influences, such as peer or social pressures, and environmental triggers. A predisposal to styles or habits of driving that frequently puts others at risk might be the norm for a small proportion of drivers, while others may be provoked to drive aggressively, at least occasionally, by exceptional congestion, work zone delays, poorly timed traffic signals, being late, and other frustrating conditions. Other drivers' actions are also sources of irritation for "reactive" style drivers. More than half of drivers in one study reported that they would react aggressively, particularly to being impeded, by others' reckless driving or actions perceived as directly hostile (Björklund, 2008). Other life stressors, such as combat deployments, may also contribute to aggressive driving (Sarkar, 2009). Driving actions are, however, ultimately under individual drivers' control. Behavioral countermeasures for speeding and aggressive driving must reinforce and help teach such control.

## Strategies to Reduce Speeding and Aggressive Driving

Speeding and aggressive driving actions, such as red-light running, involve traffic law violations. Therefore, deterrence through traffic law enforcement is the basic behavioral strategy that has been used to control them. This strategy involves the same components used to deter alcohol-impaired driving or seat belt nonuse: highly publicized and highly visible enforcement of practical, sound, and broadly accepted laws. Another important strategy involves setting appropriate speed limits using engineering practices that take into consideration the road segment's design, vulnerable users, traffic operations, land use, and environmental conditions (NHTSA, FHWA, & FMCSA, 2014). Information on different speed limit setting approaches is

described in *Methods and Practices for Setting Speed Limits*: An Informational Report (Forbes et al., 2012). Additionally, the *NCHRP Guide for Addressing Aggressive-Driving Collisions* (Neuman et al., 2003) suggests that successful anti-aggressive driving programs place an emphasis on enforcing all traffic laws. Such a strategy increases respect for all laws and the public's expectation that traffic laws should be obeyed.

Speeding is a traffic safety problem that is national in scope, but requires local decision making and action to be managed effectively. Local communities are in the best position to make judgments in balancing risk against mobility, and are encouraged to use all the tools that are available to make determinations regarding speed management.

Speed enforcement is among the most common traffic enforcement conducted by law enforcement across the country. Sustained enforcement of all traffic laws is strongly encouraged, including speeding violations. The enforcement of traffic laws and attentiveness to traffic safety should be a core value and practice among LEAs in order to achieve results that contribute to the quality of life in communities that are impacted by the movement of traffic. A recent analysis of speeding-related traffic issues by the National Transportation Safety Board points to the need for cooperation across Federal, State, local jurisdictions, and LEAs towards developing legislation, guidelines, and data-driven reporting practices for successful speed management (NTSB, 2017).

Specific action and decision making with respect to enforcement generally falls to the discretion of the LEO engaged with the traffic violator. While enforcement action is not always reported, it does reinforce the concept of consequences for unsafe driving and creates a perception of risk for drivers operating a vehicle unsafely. Enforcement actions for speeding violations should be fair, consistent with local or State statutes, and taken in the interest of preventing traffic crashes. Correspondingly, enforcement activity in locations with a demonstrable speeding/crash issue are ideally recommended for focused enforcement.

To support fair, defensible, and reasonable enforcement of speed, speed limits should be established through appropriate engineering practices. Roadway design can take many forms and can manage the smooth and efficient movement of traffic based on the nature of the roadway. These practices include making determinations about appropriate and reasonable speed limits.

Engineering measures may include the application of traffic calming roadway design, such as roadway diets, using devices, markings, and structures to slow traffic to increase safety, or support safety efforts near schools, parks, and other areas, particularly on collector and neighborhood roads (NHTSA, FHWA, & FMCSA, 2014; TRB, 1998; also see FHWA, 2009). "Self-enforcing" roadways is a related concept where roadways are designed in such a way as to encourage drivers to intuitively adopt speeds appropriate for the roadway without the need for posted speed limit signs (Neuman et al., 2009). This approach relies on geometric features and visual cues to shape driver speed selection towards speeds that feel safe and comfortable.

Although such measures must be carefully implemented so as not to shift speeding or safety problems to other locations, they can be useful on both local streets and transition areas such as State highways that pass through towns or rural villages (Bagdade et al., 2012). Roundabout

intersection designs and "road diets"[8] also reduce speed and crashes and can, at the same time, improve traffic flows in some situations (Rodegerdts et al., 2007; Harkey et al., 2008; Srinivasan et al., 2011). Well-timed and coordinated traffic signals can improve traffic flow and reduce red-light running and are potentially useful for managing speeds. Adequately designed turn bays and entrance and exit ramps can reduce improper merging and driving on the shoulder (Neuman et al., 2003, Strategy B1). Advance warnings of congestion or delays and well-designed and managed work zones may also decrease unexpected frustration. Intelligent Transportation System technologies such as real-time transit information, variable speed limits, variable message signs, traffic control warning devices, and other systems that respond to changing traffic and environmental conditions and provide motorists with timely information, also hold promise for improving mobility and safety by mitigating causes of delay and warning of hazardous conditions that require lower speeds. Company policies, backed up with speed monitors and logs or even speed regulators, can reduce commercial vehicle speeding. A variety of measures to reduce congestion, such as mass-transit, ride-sharing, or bicycle riding, can also diminish driver frustration that leads to aggressive driving (Shinar & Compton, 2004).

Vehicle technologies that interact with the environment, such as adaptive cruise control, ACC, and intelligent speed adaptation, hold promise. ACC works similarly to standard cruise control, except that, in addition to maintaining a speed set by the driver, a radar system in the front of the vehicle detects and responds to other vehicles in the lane ahead to maintain a safe following distance. Intelligent Speed Adaptation, or ISA, involves in-vehicle devices that "know" the speed limit through accurate speed limit mapping and vehicle location data, and provide a warning or active controls to help prevent speeding above limits (see Sections 2.3 and 3.1). These environmental and vehicular strategies are generally not included in this guide because SHSOs have little or no direct authority or responsibility for them.

Any measures that can achieve reductions in average operating speeds, including lower speed limits, enhanced enforcement, and communications campaigns, as well as engineering measures, are expected to reduce fatal and injury crashes (AASHTO, 2010). Small changes in average speed are predicted to have a substantial impact. For example, a reduction of 3 mph in average operating speed on a road with a baseline average operating speed of 30 mph is expected to produce a reduction of 27% in injury crashes and 49% in fatal crashes (AASHTO, 2010; p. 3-57, Table 3E-2). The effects on injury and fatal crashes of changes in average roadway operating speed are also greater, as a percentage, at lower initial average speeds than at higher speeds. The table below reproduces Table 3E-2 from the Highway Safety Manual and shows crash modification factors (CMFs) for fatal and injury crash reductions. To determine the expected crash reductions for different changes in average speed, subtract the CMF from 1. In the example described above – a 3 mph reduction from an initial average operating speed of 30 mph – the CMF is .73, so 1 – .73 is .27, or a 27% reduction in injury crashes. Actual effects may vary depending on the type of countermeasure and other factors. No single strategy will be appropriate for all locations, and combinations of treatments may be needed to obtain speed limit compliance and achieve crash reduction goals.

[8] A "road diet," also called a road rechannelization or a lane reduction, is a technique whereby the number or width of travel lanes is reduced to achieve improvements such as converting a through lane to a turn lane, or adding a bicycle lane.

**Expected injury and fatal crash modifications by change in average operating speed***

| Change in avg. speed | Baseline average operating speed in mph | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 |
| **Injury Crashes** | | | | | | |
| -5 | 0.57 | 0.66 | 0.71 | 0.75 | 0.78 | 0.81 |
| -4 | 0.64 | 0.72 | 0.77 | 0.8 | 0.83 | 0.85 |
| -3 | 0.73 | 0.79 | 0.83 | 0.85 | 0.87 | 0.88 |
| -2 | 0.81 | 0.86 | 0.88 | 0.9 | 0.91 | 0.92 |
| -1 | 0.9 | 0.93 | 0.94 | 0.95 | 0.96 | 0.96 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 1 | 1.1 | 1.07 | 1.06 | 1.05 | 1.04 | 1.04 |
| 2 | 1.2 | 1.15 | 1.12 | 1.1 | 1.09 | 1.08 |
| 3 | 1.31 | 1.22 | 1.18 | 1.15 | 1.13 | 1.12 |
| 4 | 1.43 | 1.3 | 1.24 | 1.2 | 1.18 | 1.16 |
| 5 | 1.54 | 1.38 | 1.3 | 1.26 | 1.22 | 1.2 |
| **Fatal Crashes** | | | | | | |
| -5 | 0.22 | 0.36 | 0.48 | 0.58 | 0.67 | 0.75 |
| -4 | 0.36 | 0.48 | 0.58 | 0.66 | 0.73 | 0.8 |
| -3 | 0.51 | 0.61 | 0.68 | 0.74 | 0.8 | 0.85 |
| -2 | 0.66 | 0.73 | 0.79 | 0.83 | 0.86 | 0.9 |
| -1 | 0.83 | 0.86 | 0.89 | 0.91 | 0.93 | 0.95 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 1 | 1.18 | 1.14 | 1.11 | 1.09 | 1.07 | 1.05 |
| 2 | 1.38 | 1.28 | 1.22 | 1.18 | 1.14 | 1.1 |
| 3 | 1.59 | 1.43 | 1.34 | 1.27 | 1.21 | 1.16 |
| 4 | 1.81 | 1.59 | 1.46 | 1.36 | 1.28 | 1.21 |
| 5 | 2.04 | 1.75 | 1.58 | 1.46 | 1.36 | 1.27 |

NOTE: Although data used to develop these CMFs are international, the results apply to North American conditions.

*This table can be used to estimate expected changes in injury and fatal crashes (if no Crash Modification Factors are available) for treatments reducing average travel speeds of a road by the amounts listed.
Source: Reproduced from AASHTO (2010), p. 3-57; Table 3E-2. Crash Modification Factors for Changes in Average Operating Speed from Highway Safety Manual.

Speed management and the setting of appropriate speed limits requires a coordinated effort among State and local highway safety offices, engineering offices, and LEAs. A collaborative effort using a multi-disciplinary approach will support better informed and enforceable speed limits likely to have public and political support. Neuman et al. (2009) and other guides in the NCHRP report 500 series provide more detailed information and steps to develop comprehensive safety plans. For example, a comprehensive strategy may begin with data analysis to prioritize corridors, intersections or other areas with crash problems related to speeding or aggressive driving. Analyses may require, at a minimum, crash data and roadway inventory data, both of which are typically maintained and analyzed by State DOTs. Next steps should include

identifying other important partners, establishing crash reduction goals, and performing additional diagnosis such as through interdisciplinary, roadway safety audits to identify the specific problems and potential solutions. Next, program developers should conduct economic and feasibility analyses to prioritize among alternate solutions and develop implementation plans. Finally, partners cooperate to implement engineering, enforcement and communications strategies to achieve the desired behaviors and target crash reductions. Combining appropriate countermeasures may achieve greater effects. Communications strategies are important to support enforcement and some types of engineering countermeasures. See Neuman et al. (2003) for specific examples of cooperative strategies on aggressive driving, and Neuman et al. (2009) for more information on speed limit setting, roadway design, traffic enforcement, and public information and educational strategies to reduce speeding-related crashes. State highway safety offices can also promote dissemination of effective practices through the types of safety projects recommended and funded.

The same cooperative methods can be useful in addressing local speeding or aggressive driving concerns, for example, in a neighborhood or on a road segment or corridor. Public safety, local public works or engineering departments, the State DOT, and potentially other partners including community leaders and concerned people should be involved at an early stage in the speed management process. An interdisciplinary speed management working group may help to foster long-term commitment, cooperation, and improvement over time (Bagdade et al., 2012).

The national *Speed Management Program Plan* updated the national speed management goals and actions for the U.S. Department of Transportation. This plan emphasizes the importance of comprehensive and cooperative efforts, and outlines the national role in helping States and local agencies reduce speeding-related crashes, injuries and fatalities using the traditional approaches of engineering, enforcement, education and evaluation (NHTSA, FHWA, & FMCSA, 2014). This national plan has several goals and objectives for the DOT related to developing knowledge about the relationships between travel speed and speed limits on crash risk, causes and types of speeding, and developing and testing innovation measures such as variable speed limits combined with automated enforcement and other new technologies. The plan also aims to provide leadership for public policy decision-making, and technical assistance and tools to help agencies develop speed management strategies that meet local needs. The plan promotes the development of data driven models that target enforcement resources where they are most needed to achieve the greatest safety benefits.

The national efforts to address dangerous speeding and aggressive driving include better understanding of speeding in relation to road designs and environments, and the motivations and choices of drivers. More comprehensive or different types of measures may be needed to address certain types of speeders, including flagrant and repeat offenders, than are generally employed. As part of a comprehensive road safety strategy, the United Kingdom has embarked upon an ambitious research program known as High UnSafe Speed Accident Reduction (HUSSAR) to understand the human, psychological, and emotional factors in speeding and other dangerous driver behaviors so that interventions may better target barriers to speed compliance (Fuller, Bates, et al., 2008; Fuller, Hannigan, et al., 2008; Stradling et al., 2008; and others). These efforts resulted in the implementation of a national speed awareness course in the United Kingdom that speeders can take as an alternative to paying penalties for low-level speeding

infractions (Ipsos MORI et al., 2018). More information is provided about this countermeasure in section A.3.2. As already mentioned, several recent U.S. studies have also begun to characterize speeding motivations and attitudes and types of speeding behaviors that may warrant different types of strategies.

A significant body of research has also emerged in the past few years shedding light on characteristics of angry and aggressive drivers and risk-taking tendencies such as impulsiveness or even genetic predispositions. A few pilot studies have noted glimmers of success in helping some of these drivers achieve better control. As examples, a group in Estonia pilot-tested an intervention with promising results (Paaver et al., 2013). The intervention was provided by trained psychologists and focused on teaching driving students about impulsive personality and information processing styles, different types of impulsivity and how to recognize such tendencies in oneself, and potential situational triggers that may induce subjects to behave impulsively and take risks. The test group had half as many speeding violations over a year following the intervention as a control group of students from the same driving schools.

Another effort in the United Kingdom developed and trialed an intensive personal intervention to target attitudes, skills, and knowledge relating to crash risk among young men with social and behavioral risk factors and high levels of road traffic collisions (Tapp et al., 2013). The intervention sought to teach "smoothness and control." The study measured positive and long-lasting impacts among the men who completed the program. One of the challenges, however, was achieving recruitment and completion among this cohort.

A small study pilot-tested a work-related driver behavior modification program using feedback and goal setting, as well as a social-norming branding (Newman et al., 2014). This trial showed at least short-term improvement in drivers' compliance with speed limits. These and other research efforts may ultimately lead to changes in education, training, and enforcement interventions that will have more beneficial effects on safety than most driver interventions to date.

## Resources

As mentioned in the introduction, this document is restricted to behavioral countermeasures that are typically under the direct authority of SHSOs. But a comprehensive, multifaceted approach that incorporates assessing and addressing engineering and environmental issues as well as enforcement, legislative, and program evaluation needs, is essential to most effectively reduce speeding-related crashes and injuries.

Other resources and links:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
  - Speeding – www.nhtsa.gov/risky-driving/speeding
  - Speeding Visualization – https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/nhtsa/fars/speeding_data_visualization/
  - Enforcement and Justice Services – www.nhtsa.gov/enforcement-justice-services
  - Research and Evaluation – www.nhtsa.gov/behavioral-research
  - Behavioral Safety Research Reports – https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov

- FHWA Safety Office, Speed Management Safety page and links: www.safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/
  - Speed Concepts: Informational Guide – www.safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/ref_mats/fhwasa10001/
  - Methods and Practices for Setting Speed Limits- www.safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/ref_mats/fhwasa12004/
- AASHTO Highway Safety Manual: www.highwaysafetymanual.org/
  - AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, including the NCHRP Report 500 series guides on reducing crashes: www.trb.org/Main/Blurbs/152868.aspx
- Centers for Disease Control, Community Speed Reduction and Public Health. Health Resources In Action resources: www.cdc.gov/healthyplaces/healthtopics/transportation/practice.htm
- Crash Modification Factors Clearinghouse: www.cmfclearinghouse.org/
- NCHRP Report 504, Design Speed, Operating Speed, and Posted Speed Practices: https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_504.pdf
- NCHRP Report 622, *Effectiveness of Behavioral Highway Safety Countermeasures*: www.nap.edu/openbook.php?record_id=14195
- Transportation Research Board Special Report 254, *Managing Speed: Review of Current Practice for Setting and Enforcing Speed Limits*: https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/sr/sr254.pdf
- Global Road Safety Partnership, *Speed Management: Road Safety Manual for Decision-makers and Practitioners*: www.who.int/roadsafety/projects/manuals/speed_manual/en/
- Transportation Research International Documentation (TRID) database – bibliographic database of transportation-related research: https://trid.trb.org
- National Transportation Safety Board, *Reducing Speeding-Related Crashes Involving Passenger Vehicles*: www.ntsb.gov/safety/safety-studies/Documents/SS1701.pdf

# Speeding and Speed Management Countermeasures

Countermeasures to reduce aggressive driving and speeding are listed in the table below. The table is intended to provide a rough estimate of each countermeasure's effectiveness, use, cost, and time required for implementation. Effectiveness is shown using a five-star rating system.

- Countermeasures that receive ★★★★ or ★★★★★ have been determined to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ★★★ are considered promising, and likely to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States, communities, and other organizations are encouraged to use ★★★, and especially ★★★★ or ★★★★★, countermeasures. They should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

Further details about the symbols and terms used are included after the table. Effectiveness, cost, and time to implement can vary substantially from State to State and community to community. Costs for many countermeasures are difficult to measure, so the summary terms are very approximate.

Each countermeasure to reduce aggressive driving and speeding is discussed individually in this chapter. Full descriptions are included for ★★★, ★★★★ and ★★★★★ countermeasures. Brief descriptions are included for ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Further details about the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures are included in Appendix A3 to this report.

### 1. Laws

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 Speed Limits | ★★★★★† | $ | High | Short |
| 1.2 Aggressive Driving and Other Laws | ☆ | $ | Low | Short |

† When enforced and obeyed

### 2. Enforcement

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 Automated Enforcement | ★★★★★ | $$$† | Medium | Medium |
| 2.2 High-Visibility Enforcement | ☆☆ | $$$ | Low†† | Medium |
| 2.3 Other Enforcement Methods | ☆☆ | Varies | Unknown | Varies |

† Can be covered by violator fines
†† For aggressive driving, but use of short-term, HVE campaigns for speeding is more widespread

### 3. Penalties and Adjudication

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Penalty Types and Levels | ☆☆ | Varies | High | Low |
| 3.2 Diversion and Plea Agreement Restrictions, Traffic Violator School | ☆ | Varies | Unknown | Varies |

### 4. Communications and Outreach

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4.1 Communications and Outreach Supporting Enforcement | ★★★ | Varies | Medium | Medium |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ★★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective by several high-quality evaluations with consistent results |
| ★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective in certain situations |
| ★★★ | Likely to be effective based on balance of evidence from high-quality evaluations or other sources |
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Laws

### 1.1 Speed Limits

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★† | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

† When enforced and obeyed

Speed limits are only one part of the system that attempts to control driving speeds. Well-established speed limits based on the use of appropriate engineering practices form the basis for roadway design and operations. Active enforcement and supportive adjudication are also essential to support established limits (NHTSA, FHWA, & FMCSA, 2014).

Speed limits are set both by legislation and by administrative action. General speed limits apply to all roads in a class, such as rural interstates or local streets. They are set by State, municipal, or even at times by Federal law based on tradeoffs between safety, travel efficiency, and community concerns, taking into account the design characteristics of each road class. Speed zones apply to road segments where the general speed limit is thought to be inappropriate. Speed limits in these zones usually are set by administrative action based on the road segment's free-flowing travel speeds, crash experience, road and land use conditions, and other factors (TRB, 1998).

**Use:** A speed limit is in effect on all road segments in all States. For summaries of each State's maximum speed limits see the Governors Highway Safety Association (2018a) and the Insurance Institute for Highway Safety (2019a) websites. NHTSA (2013) provides an updated publication with each State's complete speed limit laws.

**Effectiveness:** The effects of maximum speed limits on speeds, crashes, and casualties have been studied extensively over the past 40 years. However, recent actions by States raising maximum limits, as well as changes in road design, hardware, vehicles, and drivers suggest that new studies may be needed. In 1974 the 55 mph National Maximum Speed Limit (NMSL) was enacted to conserve fuel. Travel decreased, speeds decreased on roads where the speed limit was lowered to 55 mph, and total traffic fatalities decreased by 9,100 from 1973. The slower and more uniform speeds due to the 55-mph limit are judged to have saved between 3,000 and 5,000 lives in 1974 (TRB, 1984). As fuel became plentiful again, travel increased and compliance with the 55-mph limit decreased markedly. In 1987 Congress allowed States to raise speed limits to 65 mph on rural interstate highways. States that raised their limits generally saw increases of about 4 mph in average speeds and 85th percentile speeds and statistically significant increases in traffic fatalities on these roads. In 1995 Congress repealed the NMSL and returned full authority to set speed limits back to the States. Again, increased speed limits produced modest increases in both average and 85th percentile speeds as well as increases in traffic fatalities (TRB, 1998; TRB, 2006). Speed limit increases from 75 to 80 mph on rural Texas interstates in 2006 also resulted in increased speeds relative to a comparison highway where the limit wasn't changed (Retting & Cheung, 2008). Utah increased maximum speed limits on certain highways from 75 to 80 mph in 2010 and again in 2013. After the limit increases, average vehicle speed increased by about 3 mph, and vehicles were significantly more likely to surpass 80 mph (Hu, 2017). A recent study found that each 5 mph increase of the State maximum speed limit was

associated with an 8% increase in fatality rates on interstates and freeways and a 4% increase on other roads (Farmer, 2016). The study estimated that there were 33,000 more traffic fatalities between 1995 and 2013 than would have been expected if State maximum speed limits had not increased since 1993.

Lower maximum speed limits definitely reduce crashes and casualties when lower limits result in reduced speeds. In general, speeds tend to decrease, but to a lower degree than the reduction in limits. Similarly, when limits are raised, speeds tend to increase by a smaller amount than the change in limits. The same holds true on any road: if a lower speed limit yields reduced operating speeds, crashes and injuries are expected to decrease (AASHTO, 2010). A more comprehensive effort that includes changes to the roadway and/or enhanced enforcement may be required to reduce travel speeds by the desired amount, especially if the road design does not reflect the desired speed limit and operating speeds (TRB, 1998). The State of Victoria, Australia, implemented a comprehensive effort to reduce speeds that combined review and adjustment of speed limits, covert and overt forms of enforcement, a media campaign, penalty restructuring, and other efforts. An evaluation found these combined elements reduced injury crashes by 10% and fatal crashes by 27% (D'Elia et al., 2007).

Several studies examined the effects of speed limit changes (both increases and decreases) in Hungary. For example, urban speed limits were decreased from 60 km/h to 50 km/h (approximately 37 mph to 31 mph) in March 1993, and this change resulted in a decrease in mean speed by 8% and a decrease in road fatalities by 18%. In other cases rural speed limits were increased from 80 km/h (50 mph) to 90 km/h (56 mph) in May 2001, and the mean speed increased by 2.5% and fatalities increased by 13%. A detailed description and more case studies (Australia, Denmark, Norway, etc.) are provided in *Speed and Crash Risk* (International Transport Forum, 2018).

When urban speed limits were increased from 50 to 70 km/h (from 31 to 43 mph) or from 70 to 80 km/h (from 43 to 50 mph) on 19 urban road segments in Hong Kong, crashes increased by 20 to 30% (Wong et al., 2005).

A systematic evaluation of changed speed limits on rural roads and motorways in Sweden also found fairly consistent increases in travel speeds on all types of rural roads when limits were raised and decreases on roads where limits were lowered (TRB, 1998). Increases of the posted speed limit by 10 km/h (6.2 mph) led to increases in speeds on the order of about 3 to 3.6 km/h (1.9 to 2.2 mph) in mean speeds (weighted for segments length and volume, and including all vehicles on a section for a given time period, not just free flow speeds). Decreases of the posted speed limit of 10 km/h (6.2 mph) led to decreases of about 2 to 3.3 km/h (1.2 to 2 mph) for most road types (Vadeby & Forsman, 2014). These findings are generally in line with those of earlier studies of the effects of changing limits by 5 or more mph.

Relatively few studies have examined the safety effects of speed limit changes on lower-speed roads. Earlier studies found little effect on driving speeds or crash rates when speed limits were raised to near the 85th percentile travel speed or lowered to near the 35th percentile speed, either on rural roads or on urban and suburban arterials (TRB, 1998, p. 6). However, a study from Edmonton, Alberta, Canada, found that speeds on residential streets decreased significantly when

limits were lowered and supported with enforcement or other measures (Islam et al., 2013). Specifically, this study found significant speed reductions (3.9 to 4.9 km/h [2.4 to 3.0 mph], 3 and 6 months after treatment, respectively) when posted speed limits in residential areas were reduced from 50 km/h (31 mph) to 40 km/h (25 mph). Changes in posted limits were accompanied by education and enforcement measures, but no changes were made to the roadway. Speeds were reduced on both collector and local road types, in all types of communities, for light and heavy vehicles, for different times of day and on weekends and weekdays. Compliance improved over time up to 6 months post-implementation. Following the lowering of urban default maximum speed limits from 60 km/h (37.3 mph) to 50 km/h (31.1 mph) in 2003 in Adelaide (South Australia), low speed roads showed a significant reduction in mean speed from 46.9 km/h (29.1 mph) to 44.8 km/h (27.8 mph) (Kloeden & Woolley, 2012). From 2003 to 2010 yearly mean speeds have remained lower than before the limits were changed, fluctuating between a high of 44.8 km/h (27.8 mph) and a low of 43.3 km/h (26.9 mph). A follow-up study (Kloeden & Wooley, 2017) found a general downward trend in speeds from 2003 to 2016. In 2016 the mean speed was 41.67 km/h (25.9 mph).

**Costs:** The immediate costs of changing speed limits are for new signage and for publicizing the new limit. Enforcing the new limit may involve substantial costs.

**Time to implement:** Speed limit changes can be implemented quickly, as soon as signage is in place and the new limits are publicized.

**Other issues:**

- **Public acceptance, roadway characteristics, enforcement, and publicity:** Lowering speed limits can reduce average driving speeds, but it is generally difficult to enforce and obtain broad compliance with a lower speed limit on a roadway designed for much higher speeds (TRB, 1998). Thus, speed limits must be considered as part of a system including roadway design and other characteristics, active enforcement, and publicity.
- **Rational speed limits:** Speed limits on many road segments are frequently not obeyed, and average travel speeds on these segments substantially exceed the speed limit. One strategy that has been proposed to increase overall safety is to carefully set and enforce credible speed limits for homogeneous road segments. Once credible, also called rational, speed limits are established, aggressive enforcement is used to enforce close to the actual limit. The goal of this strategy is to increase the public's overall acceptance of speed limits while reducing the number of people driving at speeds considerably higher than the limit. Evidence suggests that drivers' perceptions of safe speed are in fact influenced by their expectation of what speed above the limit would trigger a ticket (Mannering, 2009). Therefore, lower tolerances would help to increase the perception of the risk of exceeding limits by even small amounts. Although consistency in speed limit setting practices should provide better information about appropriate speeds to drivers, the safety effects of combining rational speed limit setting (with limits raised to between the 50th and 85th percentile free flow operating speed) with enhanced enforcement close to the new limit are uncertain. Reviews of the evidence suggest that it can be difficult to implement or sustain enhanced levels of enforcement. In general, higher speed limits are very likely to lead to higher average speeds if nothing is done to the road or enhanced enforcement is not maintained (Hauer, 2009). Higher average speeds are predicted to lead to increases in

fatal and injury crashes (ASHTO, 2010). When testing the effects of raising speed limits, followed by enhanced enforcement in Mississippi and Virginia, average speeds increased in both locations.

In Virginia average speeds tended to increase about 2 mph at locations where the limit was raised by 5 mph and by 3 to 4 mph where it was raised by 15 mph (Freedman et al., 2007). Average speed in Virginia increased by a statistically significant 3 to 4 mph when the limit was raised from 55 to 65 mph on two rural highways (Fontain et al., 2007). Speed variance did not increase and compliance overall was improved in Virginia, which supplemented stricter enforcement with enhanced roadside signs, media publicity, and brochures. Average speeds as well as speed variance increased in Mississippi, where limits were increased on different sections of one route by 5 to 15 mph and the number of extreme speeders were not reduced, except on sections where limits were increased by 15 mph (Freedman et al., 2007).

Mississippi chose to enforce only flagrant violators (at least 5 mph above the limit). Crash effects were inconclusive over both of these fairly short-term evaluations (1 to 1.5 years), although crashes were higher during the Mississippi trial compared to a prior three-year period. A test in Minnesota yielded more promising, though inconclusive crash trends (Harder & Bloomfield, 2007). The Minnesota campaign, which used speeding and crash histories to help target enforcement, effectively reduced mean speeds and especially excessive speeding (speeds of 70 mph and more), but the study period was insufficient to assess crash trends. Extensive radio publicity supplemented by earned media was used in the Minnesota campaign, but it was unclear if these efforts were successful at reaching the target audience.

- **Variable speed limits**: Speed limits that may adjust to adverse or changing environmental conditions are considered by FHWA to have promise in restoring credibility of speed limits on some highways. Variable speed limits (VSLs) have long been used on European freeways to manage speed and traffic flows. As of 2013 five metropolitan areas in the United States are employing enforceable, variable speed limits on freeways (posted on changeable message signs) (Office of the Assistant Secretary for Research and Technology, 2013). Variable speed limits are also being used in work zones by 11 agencies including Utah DOT, Minnesota DOT, and Texas DOT (Office of the Assistant Secretary for Research and Technology, 2013; National Work Zone Safety Information Clearinghouse, 2016). A high-quality study of safety effects of variable limits deployed on freeways in the St. Louis area reported crash reductions of 8%. The congestion relief benefits were not as high as the public and agencies had hoped, however, leading to somewhat equivocal support for the measure (Bham et al., 2010). No other quality evaluations are available at present. Preliminary investigation of a Wyoming freeway VSL system showed speed reductions from 0.47 to 0.75 mph for every mph reduction in speed limit (Buddemeyer et al., 2010). Other States that have used VSL systems to alter speed limits for weather conditions include Alabama, Delaware, and Washington (Katz et al., 2012). Automated speed enforcement could potentially be linked to variable limits to increase compliance.

- **Work zone speed limits:** If drivers perceive that limits are too low, workers are not present, and other changes to the roadway do not seem to justify the lower limits, they may not comply, and extensive enforcement may be needed to enforce the limit (Ullman et al., 2013). Sharma et al. (2017) collected data from nine construction work zones in Iowa during 2014 and 2015. The study found consistent speed reductions associated with work zone speed limits, compared to data collected from the time period when work zones were not in place at the same locations.
- **Speed limit reductions with advance warning flasher (AWF):** In Nebraska seven high-speed intersections equipped with AWFs were selected and tested to examine effects of speed limit reductions in transitional speed zones (Wang & Sharma, 2017). The results showed that a 10-mph reduction from 65 mph posted speed zones led to a 3.8 mph reduction in mean speed, but a 5-mph reduction from a 60 mph posted speed zones did not yield any significant reductions in mean speed.
- **Setting speed limits at high-risk locations:** A project by Jurewicz et al. (2014) provided guidelines for setting speed limits at high-risk locations in Australia based on the road category/function and the presence of a severe crash risk (i.e., severe crash rate per 100 million vehicle kilometers traveled), types of road use and users, road features, and speeds. The recommendations incorporate other considerations that affect crash risk such as the presences of high-numbers of pedestrians and cyclists, access point density, AADT, among other factors.
- **Vision Zero speed limit resolutions:** An increasing number of cities are adopting the objectives of Vision Zero to prevent reckless driving, increase safety for all road users, and mitigate road trauma. A range of measures can be used to achieve objectives through speed limit reductions, automated enforcement of speed violations using an expansive network of speed cameras, media campaigns, and engineering measures such as speed humps. New York City is one of the early adopters of the program and enacted a law to implement city-wide speed limits of 25 mph in October 2014 (a decrease from the previous 30 mph) (New York City Mayor's Office of Operations, 2015). This speed limit reduction potentially halves the fatality risk for a struck pedestrian. Similarly, the Seattle lowered its speed limit to 20 mph on residential streets and to 25 mph on arterials in 2016 (Seattle Department of Transportation, 2017).

### 1.2 Aggressive Driving and Other Laws

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Short |

This approach targets aggressive drivers who violate traffic laws repeatedly or whose violations lead to crashes producing serious injury or death. Aggressive driving actions are covered by specific traffic laws, such as the laws regarding speeding, improper lane changes, and following too closely, or by general laws, such as those that target reckless driving. The primary traffic law strategy to address aggressive driving is to assure that more severe penalties are available for repeat offenders and for violations causing death or serious injuries.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *There is currently no evidence that aggressive driving laws in general, or increased penalties, in particular, affect aggressive driving and related crashes.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A3, Section 1.2.

## 2. Enforcement

### 2.1 Automated Enforcement

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $$$† | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† Can be covered by violator fines

The use of automated enforcement systems to address speeding and red-light running are in use across the United States. Many States have prohibitions in their laws to prevent the use of automated enforcement technology; others have enabling legislation and/or parameters on the use of the technology; and others still have no legislation that addresses the technology's use.

Automated speed enforcement (commonly referred to as "photo radar") and red light camera systems should be used as a component of a broader traffic safety and speed management program supported by a demonstrated need through problem identification. These systems should be used to support traditional enforcement efforts, or be deployed in locations where enforcement may be unsafe or impractical for LEOs to make traffic stops.

Automated enforcement systems function by capturing violations, recording relevant data about the violations, and recording images of the violator vehicles. Red light camera systems employ sensors linked to a camera and data collection equipment. Vehicles that enter an intersection against red signal lights are detected; the cameras capture series of images (and with some systems, video) to depict the violations. Sensors provide additional violation data, such as the vehicle speed, the time the light had been red at the point the vehicle entered the intersection, and temporal information. Images and violation data are reviewed at a later time, and when appropriate a traffic citation is issued and mailed to the registered owner of the vehicle. Some States involve driver liability to determine responsibility for violations. This approach requires a more involved process in which approaching and receding images are captured, and include an image of the driver. Review and processing of citations in such States is more intensive, and places a higher burden on the State to identify the driver for a conviction or finding of responsibility. Many States operating in this manner apply penalty points against the license of the driver.

Other jurisdictions use a registered owner liability approach to enforcement. The processes for this approach are generally more limited and are not reliant on charging the actual driver of the vehicle. This approach places the burden on the registered owner, regardless of who was driving the vehicle to resolve the citation. In many cases, the only defenses would be in cases where it can be demonstrated the vehicle had changed ownership, was stolen, or an error occurred in processing the citation.

Guidance documents have been produced by the FHWA and NHTSA for the use of red light camera systems and automated speed enforcement. Red-Light Camera Systems Operational Guidelines (FHWA, 2005) provides information on red light camera program costs, effectiveness, implementation, and other issues, Eccles et al. (2012), and NHTSA and FHWA (2008) released automated enforcement program and operational guides with information on

identifying problems and setting up and maintaining an effective and transparent, community-supported enforcement program using speed or red light cameras.

In 2011 and 2012 Miller et al. (2016) surveyed agencies with current or recently discontinued automated speed enforcement programs. They found that States and agencies varied greatly in the legislation and the technologies used for automated enforcement. These differences influenced the amount and type of data collected, types of fixed and mobile camera units used, and enforcement duration and schedule. Almost 63% of the 90 responding agencies reported not being aware of the NHTSA Speed Enforcement Camera Systems Operational Guidelines (NHTSA, 2008). Half of the surveyed agencies reported past or upcoming plans for evaluation of crash-related effectiveness of the program; however, 62% of agencies regularly reviewed speed data and 63% regularly reviewed crash data to determine locations for deployment of automated enforcement.

**Use:** Red light camera systems are used extensively in other industrialized countries and were first employed in the United Sates in 1993 (National Campaign to Stop Red Light Running, 2002). As of September 2019 red light camera systems were being used in 341 communities in 22 States and the District of Columbia (GHSA, 2019; IIHS, 2019b). As of 2018 speed cameras were being used in approximately 137 jurisdictions in 14 States and the District of Columbia (GHSA, 2019; IIHS, 2019c). Speed cameras also are used extensively in other countries (Speed Camera Database, 2019; WHO, 2004).

**Effectiveness:** The effectiveness of red light camera systems has been studied previously and mixed results with respect to crash type and experience were found. It should be noted that red light camera technology does not cause traffic crashes. While the presence of a red light camera system has reflected increased numbers of lower impact rear end crashes at intersections where the systems are installed resulting from drivers stopping for the red light, research has also found a reduction in more dangerous offset and right angle crashes at intersections with red light cameras (Aeron-Thomas & Hess, 2006; Decina et al., 2007; MacCubbin et al., 2001; McGee & Eccles, 2003; Retting et al., 2003; Washington & Shin, 2005; WHO, 2004; IIHS, 2017). The best-controlled studies have found that intersections with high total volumes, higher entering volumes on the main road, longer green (through) cycle lengths, protected left turn phases, and higher publicity may also increase the safety and cost benefits of red light camera enforcement (Council et al., 2005; Washington & Shin, 2005). Additional studies may provide greater insight into whether or not such crashes persist where the technology is in place for longer periods of time. The effect of warning signs, public education, and familiarity with the presence of the system in the fullness of time is not clear.

Warning signs for drivers indicate the presence of automated enforcement systems in the community, and the approaches where the technology is deployed. Washington and Shin (2005) recommended the use of warning signs as they enable drivers to come into compliance before crashes or enforcement events occur, and provide fair warning to drivers of potential enforcement action in general. The researchers also caution that less expensive engineering solutions should be sought before implementing camera programs.

The use of speed cameras can contribute to reductions in speed and crash experience. Decina et al. (2007) reviewed 13 safety impact studies of automated speed enforcement internationally, including one study from a U.S. jurisdiction. The best-controlled studies suggest injury crash reductions relating to the introduction of speed cameras are likely to be in the range of 20 to 25% at conspicuous, fixed camera sites. Similarly, in South Australia, injury crash data for 35 safety camera intersections for 5 years before and after the speed camera installation showed an estimated reduction of up to 21% (Kloeden et al., 2018). Wilson et al. (2010) reviewed 28 studies of automated enforcement from U.S. sites and found reductions of 8 to 49% for all crashes and reductions of 11 to 44% for crashes related to serious injuries and fatalities. Covert, mobile enforcement programs also result in significant crash reductions area-wide (Thomas et al., 2008). Crash-based studies from the United States have reported positive safety benefits of crash and speed reductions from mobile camera enforcement on 14 urban arterials in Charlotte, North Carolina (Cunningham et al., 2008), and from fixed camera enforcement on an urban Arizona freeway (Shin et al., 2009). In Great Britain the effects of fixed speed cameras on crashes were estimated by examining data from before and after camera installations at 2,500 locations. Researchers estimated that installing another 1,000 cameras could prevent approximately 1,130 collisions and approximately 330 serious injuries (Tang, 2017). In France 2,756 speed cameras were installed from 2003 to 2010. A program evaluation estimated that the cameras prevented around 15,000 road traffic deaths during that time (WHO, 2017).

The Shin et al. (2009) study examined effects of a fixed camera enforcement program applied to a 6.5-mile urban freeway section through Scottsdale, Arizona. The speed limit on the freeway was 65 mph; the enforcement trigger was set to 76 mph. Total *target* crashes were reduced by an estimated 44 to 54%, injury crashes by 28 to 48%, and property damage only crashes by 46 to 56% during the 9-month program period. Since analyses found low speeding detection rates during peak travel times, the target crashes (speeding-related crashes) were considered to be those that occurred during non-peak flow periods (weekends, holidays, and non- peak weekdays hours). In addition to the crash reductions, average speed was decreased by about 9 mph and speed variance also decreased around the enforced zones. Another positive finding from this study was that all types of crashes appeared to be reduced, with the possible exception of rear-end crashes, for which effects were non-significant. Thus, there were no obvious trade-offs of decreases in some crash types at the expense of increases in others. The program effects should be considered short-term. There was also very limited examination of spillover effects, including the possibility of traffic or crash diversion to other routes.

Speed cameras were also installed on Interstate 10, west of central Phoenix, and were supported by mobile (vehicle mounted) speed camera units. In 2009 and 2010, a political determination was made to discontinue the speed camera program. Among the factors impacting the decision was the fatal shooting of the operator of a mobile speed camera in his vehicle that created concerns for the safety of field personnel. Additionally, a change in administration in the State shifted the view of automated enforcement in general, and on the freeways around Phoenix, in particular. However, there are local jurisdictions in Arizona that have retained their automated enforcement systems, and continue to operate speed enforcement and red light camera programs.

Pilot project evaluations of speed camera use in the United States have also obtained promising speed reductions from fixed speed cameras in low-speed school zones in Portland, Oregon

(Freedman et al., 2006), and low-speed limit residential streets and school zones in Montgomery County, Maryland (Retting et al., 2008). In the latter case, speed reductions attributed to spillover from the automated enforcement program were also observed on unenforced comparison streets. In an update to the original study by Retting et al. (2008), Hu and McCartt (2016) evaluated speed data from 18 of the 20 original speed cameras and data from 9 of the 10 control sites. Between the 6 months before and 7.5 years after the start of the speed camera program, mean speeds decreased by 13% at the camera sites, 5% at the spillover sites, and by 4% at the unenforced comparison sites. The percentage of vehicles exceeding the speed limit by more than 10 mph decreased by 64% at camera sites, by 39% at spillover sites, and by 43% at unenforced comparison sites.

The percentage of speeders was also substantially reduced when police-operated photo radar enforcement vans were present in a work zone on a non-interstate highway in Portland, Oregon, but there was no carry-over when the enforcement was not present (Joerger, 2010). Given that there was no evidence of any accompanying signs or publicity, there was, however, no reason to expect carry-over outside of the enforced periods. Crash and injury outcomes were not evaluated in these studies.

The use of fixed speed cameras has also been evaluated in Norway. Hoye (2015) investigated the effects of speed cameras on injury crashes and the number killed or severely injured (KSI) on short, medium, and long road lengths downstream of camera sites from 2000 to 2010. Short road lengths were 100 m upstream to 100 m downstream of the camera site, medium road lengths were 100 m upstream to 1 km downstream of the camera site, and long road lengths were 100 m upstream to 3 km downstream of the camera site. There was a 22% reduction in injury crashes on road sections of medium length, but no significant reductions for short or long road lengths. Additional speed cameras installed in 2004 or later furthered the reduction in injury crashes and KSI with 9% and 39% reductions respectively on long road lengths, and 32% and 49% reductions respectively on medium road lengths.

**Costs:** Costs will be based on equipment choices, operational and administrative characteristics of the program, and specific negotiations with vendors. Cameras may be purchased, leased, or installed and maintained by contractors for a negotiated fee (NHTSA & FHWA, 2008). Most jurisdictions contract with private vendors to install and maintain the cameras and, to process images and violations. A substantial portion of the fines from red-light citations is generally used to cover program costs (Washington & Shin, 2005). Operating costs of automated enforcement systems vary based on the nature of the system, administrative costs, and negotiated fees to vendors providing services to a jurisdiction. Many systems are turnkey operations in which a vendor provides all the equipment, vehicles, and support services necessary to collect violation data and issue a citation. The cost for this service may be based on a fixed monthly fee, or on a negotiated fee for issued or paid citations.

Costs to communities or States for the installation of fixed equipment can vary based on the type of system, the number of devices in use, and the type of sensors being employed to collect violation data. Jurisdictions must make the return on investment decisions for accepting these costs based on their determination of need, risk versus mobility assessment, and budgetary projections and constraints.

Fixed speed camera costs may not be similar to those for red light camera programs, based on volume of activity and violations they generate. An economic analysis estimated the total cost savings of the Scottsdale freeway fixed speed enforcement were from $16.5 to $17.1 million per year, considering only camera installation and operational cost estimates and crash cost impacts (other potential economic impacts were not considered) (Shin et al., 2009). Chen (2005) provides an extensive analysis of the costs and benefits of the British Columbia, Canada, mobile speed camera program and estimated a societal savings of C$114 million and a savings of over C$38 million for the Insurance Corporation of British Columbia that funded the program. Gains et al. (2004) reported a 4:1 overall societal cost to benefit ratio of operating the national (fixed) speed camera program in the United Kingdom based on 33% reductions in personal injury crashes at camera sites and a 40% reduction in the number of people killed and seriously injured. Also, Tang (2017) estimated net benefits of installing 1,000 cameras to be around £21 million in Great Britain based on data from 2,500 fixed cameras crashes.

**Time to implement:** Once any necessary legislation is enacted, automated enforcement programs generally require up to 9 months to plan, publicize, and implement.

**Other issues:**

- **Laws:** Many jurisdictions using automated enforcement are in States with laws authorizing its use. Some States permit automated enforcement without a specific State law. Others prohibit or restrict some forms of automated enforcement (GHSA, 2018a; IIHS, 2019a). In yet others there is no specific statute, and it cannot be inferred from case law whether the State allows automated enforcement. As of December 2018, nine States permit the use of speed cameras under at least some circumstances, 13 States have laws that prohibit speed cameras, and 28 States have no laws addressing speed camera use (GHSA, 2018a). See NCUTLO (2000) for a model automated enforcement law.
- **Public acceptance:** Public surveys typically show strong support for red light cameras and somewhat weaker support for speed cameras (NHTSA, 2004). A 2011 nationally representative survey of drivers found that 86% thought automated speed cameras would be acceptable to enforce speed limits in school zones. Significant majorities also thought they would be acceptable at high-crash locations (84%), in construction zones (74%), and in areas that would be hazardous for police officers to stop vehicles (70%) or would cause congestion (63%). Thirty-five percent thought automated camera enforcement of speeds is acceptable on all roads (Schroeder et al., 2013). Support appears highest in jurisdictions that have implemented red-light or speed cameras. A survey of District of Columbia residents found 76% favored speed cameras, with even higher support among non-drivers (Cicchino et al., 2014). A larger majority of 87% favored the use of red light cameras. Interestingly, support was lower for measures not currently in use, including photo-enforcement of stop signs (50%) and yielding at crosswalks (47%). Again, support was higher among non-drivers for these measures. However, efforts to institute automated enforcement often are opposed by people who believe that speed or red light cameras intrude on individual privacy or are an inappropriate extension of law enforcement authority. They also may be opposed if they are viewed as revenue generators rather than methods for improving safety. Drivers responding to the NHTSA survey, although indicating support generally for automated enforcement in certain types of locations or

conditions, were also more likely to somewhat agree or strongly agree with the statement that speed cameras are used to generate revenue (70%) than with the statement that speed cameras are used to prevent accidents (55%) (Schroeder et al., 2013). Such concerns should be carefully and openly addressed in any automated enforcement program. FHWA recommends, for example, that per citation payment arrangements to private contractors should be avoided to reduce the appearance of conflicts of interest (FHWA, 2005). A case study from the Portland, Oregon, RLC program indicates that the vendor payment structure is a blended contract. The vendor receives a fixed amount per intersection to install and operate the cameras (the city picks the sites) and a monthly amount based on the number of citations that are issued (Eccles et al., 2012). The marginal amount decreases with more citations issued. The current payment structure is $27 per citation for the first 500 paid citations in a month, $20 for citations 501 to 700, and $18 for each paid citation over 700. Two research papers have discussed how Australia and the United Kingdom have dealt with the opponents of and controversies associated with speed cameras and expanded programs at the same time (Delaney et al., 2003; Delaney et al., 2005). Also see Eccles et al. (2012) for more in-depth description of best practices for speed camera programs and case study examples of sustained programs.

- **Legality:** State courts have consistently supported the constitutionality of automated enforcement (Poole, 2012).
- **Covert versus overt enforcement:** Covert, mobile speed camera enforcement programs may provide a more generalized deterrent effect and may have the added benefit that drivers are less likely to know precisely when and where cameras are operating. Drivers may therefore be less likely to adapt to cameras by taking alternate routes or speeding up after passing cameras, but data are lacking to confirm this idea (Thomas et al., 2008). Public acceptance may be somewhat harder to gain with more covert forms of enforcement (NHTSA & FHWA, 2008). Fixed, or signed, conspicuous mobile enforcement may also be more noticeable and achieve more rapid site-specific speed and crash reductions at high crash locations. However, the use of general signs in jurisdictions with automated enforcement (not at specifically enforced zones), media, and other program publicity about the need for speed enforcement may help to overcome the idea that covert enforcement is unfair, and promote the perception that enforcement is widespread, enhancing deterrence effects. Based on lessons learned abroad, a mix of conspicuous and covert forms of enforcement may be most effective. See Belin et al. (2010) for a comparison of Australian covert and Swedish fixed, overt systems. NHTSA and FHWA's operational guidelines document outlines other considerations of overt and covert speed enforcement and signing strategies (NHTSA & FHWA, 2008).
- **Halo effects:** More research is needed to shed light on spillover effects (positive or negative) of automated speed enforcement programs of varying characteristics. While fixed cameras may yield more dramatic decreases in crashes at the treated sites (which, however, are often sites with high crash frequencies that are likely to decrease in subsequent years) than mobile enforcement, there is little reason to expect that there would be a significant positive spillover effect. In fact, some studies have detected crash migration related to conspicuous, fixed camera enforcement (Decina et al., 2007). There is also a possibility of negative spillover resulting from mobile camera enforcement, but signing and random deployment practices may reduce that possibility (Thomas et al., 2008).

- **Average speed (over distance) enforcement:** A review of the evidence to date suggests that enforcement (using cameras and camera sites) of average motorist speed over distance is associated with reductions in average and 85th percentile speeds, and the proportion of speeding vehicles (e.g., Ilgaz & Saltan, 2017). Such systems have the potential to reduce speed variability and improve traffic flow characteristics, and may help to avoid negative halo effects such as crash migration to downstream sites that fixed or overt mobile enforcement sometimes experience (Soole et al., 2013). In Italy section control was implemented in December 2005, and by 2014, a total of 320 camera sites were operational. A program evaluation showed decreases in mean speed and speed variability. For example, on urban motorways, mean speed decreased by 10% and the number of crashes decreased by 32% (Montella et al., 2015).
- **Enforcement threshold:** Victoria, Australia, has had success with a program that tightened enforcement tolerances as part of an overall speed management package that included automated and other enforcement, publicity, and penalty restructuring (D'Elia et al., 2007). An experiment in Finland also found that lowering the enforcement threshold of fixed, speed camera enforcement on a rural, two-lane road from 20 km/h (12.4 mph) above the limit to 4 km/h (2.5 mph) above the limit (advertised as zero tolerance) and publicity of the measure reduced mean speeds by 2.5 km/h (1.6 mph) and speed variance by 1.1 km/h (0.7 mph) in comparison with a similar, camera-enforced corridor where the threshold was not reduced (Luoma et al., 2012). The percentage of vehicles exceeding the speed limit was reduced from 23% to 10%, so deterrence of speeding was increased without increasing the processed citations (police or administrative burden). The speed effect of the reduced threshold was within the range of effect of the initial implementation of the automated camera enforcement.
- **Implementation Considerations:** Ontario, Canada, offers suggestions for municipalities that are considering initiating a red light camera program based on the lessons learned during 13 years of red light camera program operations. As of 2014 there were over 190 camera operating sites in South and Central Ontario, spanning seven municipalities according to Solomon et al. (2014), who offer suggestions for improving the effectiveness of these programs covering aspects related to planning, implementation, performance, evaluation, and supporting policy.

### 2.2 High-Visibility Enforcement

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Low-Medium† | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† Use is low for aggressive driving, but use of short-term, HVE campaigns for speeding is more widespread

High-visibility enforcement campaigns have been used to deter speeding and aggressive driving through specific and general deterrence. In the HVE model, law enforcement targets certain high-crash or high-violation geographical areas using either expanded regular patrols or designated aggressive driving patrols. The objective is to convince the public that speeding and aggressive driving actions are likely to be detected and that offenders will be arrested and punished.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has been examined in several research studies. Overall, the findings regarding countermeasure effectiveness are inconclusive. While some studies suggest that high-visibility, anti-speeding and aggressive driving enforcement campaigns produce some safety-related benefits, other comparable studies show no benefits or even negative outcomes.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A3, 2.2.

### 2.3 Other Enforcement Methods

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Varies |

Several technologies have been recommended to address speeding and aggressive driving, and LEAs around the country have conducted innovative and effective aggressive driving enforcement programs. These include several different types of infrastructure-based and in-vehicle technologies, such as speed trailers, drone radar, and intelligent speed adaptation (see Appendix A3, Section 2.3 for more details).

**Effectiveness Concerns*:*** *In general, these technological measures have not been adequately studied to reliably determine their effectiveness.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A3, Section 2.3.

## 3. Penalties and Adjudication

### 3.1 Penalty Types and Levels

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆† | Cost: Varies | Use: High | Time: Low |

† For general traffic offenses

This countermeasure involves implementing progressive penalty types and levels for speeding and the traffic offenses included under aggressive driving as part of each State's overall driver control system.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure is widely used. Its effectiveness has been examined in several research studies. The balance of the evidence suggests that these types of countermeasures are ineffective in the long term.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A3, Section 3.1.

### 3.2 Diversion and Plea Agreement Restrictions; Traffic Violator School

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Varies |

In this countermeasure, drivers who have accumulated a specific number of demerit points on their driver's licenses are given the option of attending Traffic Violator School in order to reduce their punishment.

**Effectiveness Concerns**: *Although there is some research examining the effectiveness of this countermeasure, there is insufficient evidence to conclude that the positive effects outweigh the negative effects that have also been observed.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A3, Section 3.2.

## 4. Communications and Outreach

### 4.1 Communications and Outreach Supporting Enforcement

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: Varies | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

Effective, high-visibility communications and outreach are essential parts of successful speed and aggressive-driving enforcement programs (Neuman et al., 2003; NHTSA, 2000). All examples discussed in Chapter 3, Sections 2.2, High-Visibility Enforcement, and 2.3, Other Enforcement Methods, used extensive communications campaigns to support their enforcement efforts. Most campaigns to date have not used paid advertising. The success of paid advertising in seat belt use campaigns (Chapter 2, Section 3.1) suggests that it is worth considering for speed and aggressive driving enforcement campaigns.

The objective should be to provide information about the program, including expected safety benefits, and to persuade motorists that detection and punishment for violations is likely. See also Neuman et al. (2003, Strategy A2). Communications and outreach programs urging drivers to behave courteously or not to speed are unlikely to have any effect unless they are tied to vigorous enforcement (Neuman et al., 2003, Strategy A2). Campaign messages that are pre-tested to ensure they are relevant to the target audience and that reach the audience with sufficient intensity and duration to be perceived and noticed are most likely to be effective (Preusser et al., 2008). Other State and community partners may also help leverage resources and achieve a wider reach if they have common goals and concerns (GHSA, 2018b).

An assessment report prepared for the Governors Highway Safety Association also recommends raising the priority of speed enforcement as a traffic safety priority among LEAs, the general public, and the courts (Sprattler, 2012). Such an effort may require careful framing of the message that speed enforcement is a public injury prevention strategy. Health Resources in Action developed community resources for the CDC highlighting injury-reduction and public health and community livability issues in relation to speed and speed management (Health Resources in Action, 2013; and other resources available at www.cdc.gov/healthyplaces/healthtopics/transportation/practice.htm).

**Use:** Most aggressive driving and speed enforcement programs have a communications and outreach component. At least half the States have a named public awareness campaign (Sprattler, 2012).

**Effectiveness:** A meta-analysis of 67 worldwide studies of the effect of road safety campaigns on crashes suggests a general campaign effect of 9%; however, anti-drunk-driving campaigns were considerably more effective than anti-speeding campaigns (Phillips et al., 2011). Other evidence comes from publicity associated with automated enforcement programs. Reductions in crashes in Victoria, Australia, have been attributed to a television advertising campaign that supported, but did not relate directly, to automated speed enforcement initiatives (Bobevski et al., 2007). A study from Charlotte, NC also found that publicity from an aggressive media outreach campaign and on-going publicity related to automated enforcement was responsible for an 8 to 9% reduction in crashes (Moon & Hummer, 2010). Effects carried over for several months after

the program ended before gradually returning to pre-intervention levels. Earlier evidence from Australia also suggested that paid media advertising could enhance the effectiveness of automated speed enforcement (Cameron et al., 1992). The evidence from seat belt (Chapter 2, Sections 2.1, 2.2, and 3.1) and alcohol-impaired driving (Chapter 1, Sections 2.1 and 2.2) enforcement programs also strongly suggests that good communications and outreach are essential to a successful enforcement program.

**Costs:** Good media campaigns can be expensive. See Chapter 2, Section 3.1.

**Time to implement:** An effective media campaign requires 4 to 6 months to plan and implement.

**Other issues:**

- **Effective campaign characteristics:** The Phillips et al. (2011) meta-analysis of publicity campaigns attempted to identify factors associated with successful campaigns. The researchers caution that they could not assess factors that were not reported on frequently, or had little variation, and also could not assess important program aspects such as the degree of publicity achieved, whether a campaign addressed the social norm, or whether behavioral change was achieved. As mentioned above, they found that speed-based campaigns were generally less effective than alcohol-themed ones. In addition, results suggested that the type of message delivery had an effect. Messages delivered through personal communications or at the roadside (such as variable and mixed message signs, etc.) were independently associated with greater effectiveness than campaigns that used mass media. Roadside delivery may provide the message in a context-relevant way that is more proximal to the potentially negative behaviors (such as speeding), while personal communications may improve processing of the message and message uptake compared with mass media delivery. However, the authors emphasized that the potential target reach of mass media suggests it still be considered a viable method of delivery.
- As found in Philadelphia's *Heed the Speed* campaign, getting message penetration through signs, flyers and other community outreach is a challenge in a large urban setting (Blomberg et al., 2012).

**Speed and Speed Management References**

AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. (2009). *Aggressive driving: Research update*. https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/ref_mats/fhwasa1304/resources2/38%20-%20Aggressive%20Driving%202009%20Research%20Update.pdf

Aeron-Thomas, A. S., & Hess, S. (2006) Red-light cameras for the prevention of road traffic crashes. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 2006, Issue 2, CD003862. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6492462/

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials. (2010). *Highway safety manual*, *1st Ed*. www.highwaysafetymanual.org

Bagdade, J., Nabors, D., McGee, H., Miller, R., & Retting, R. (2012, November). *Speed management: A manual for local rural road owners* (Report No. FHWA-SA-12-027). Federal Highway Administration. https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/local_rural/training/fhwasa010413spmgmt/speedmanagement guide.pdf

Belin, M-Å, Tillgren, P., Vedung, E., Cameron, M., & Tingvall, C. (2010). Speed cameras in Sweden and Victoria, Australia—A case study. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 42*, 2165–2170.

Bham, G. H., Long, S., Baik, H., Ryan, T., Gentry, L., Lall, K., Arezoumandi, M., Liu, D., Li, T., & Schaeffer, B. (2010). *Evaluation of variable speed limits on I-270/I-255 in St. Louis* (Report No. OR11-014). Missouri Department of Transportation. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/25621

Björklund, G. M. (2008). Driver irritation and aggressive behaviour. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 40*, 1069-1077.

Blomberg, R. D., Thomas III, F. D., & Marziani, B. J. (2012, July). *Demonstration and evaluation of the* Heed the Speed *pedestrian safety program* (Report No. DOT HS 811 515). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1917

Bobevski, I., Hosking, S., Oxley, P., & Cameron, M. (2007). *Generalized linear modeling of crashes and injury severity in the context of the speed-related initiatives in Victoria during 2000-2002* (Report No. 268). Monash University Accident Research Centre. www.monash.edu/__data/assets/pdf_file/0020/216542/Generalised-linear-modelling-of-crashes-and-injury-severity-in-the-context-of-the-speed-related-initiatives-in-Victoria-during-2000-2002.pdf

Buddemeyer, J., Young, R. K., & Dorsey-Spitz, B. (2010). Rural, variable speed limit system for southeast Wyoming. *Transportation Research Record, 2189,* 37-44.

Cameron, M. A., Cavallo, A., & Gilbert, A. (1992). *Crash-based evaluation of the speed camera program in Victoria 1990-91. Phase 1: general effects, Phase 2: effects of program mechanisms* (Report No. 42). Monash University Accident Research Centre. www.monash.edu/__data/assets/pdf_file/0004/216904/muarc042.pdf

Chen, G. (2005). Safety and economic impacts of photo radar program. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 6*, 299-307.

Cicchino, J. B., Wells, J. K. & McCartt, A. T. (2014) Survey about pedestrian safety and attitudes toward automated traffic enforcement in Washington, D.C. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 15*, 414-423.

Council, F. M., Persaud, B., Eccles, K., Lyon, C., & Griffith, M. S. (2005, April). *Safety evaluation of red-light cameras* (FHWA-HRT-05-048). Federal Highway Administration. www.fhwa.dot.gov/publications/research/safety/05048/05048.pdf

Cunningham, C. M., Hummer, J. E., & Moon, J. P. (2008). Analysis of automated speed enforcement cameras in Charlotte, NC. *Transportation Research Record*, 2078, 127-134.

Decina, L. E., Thomas, L., Srinivasan, R., & Staplin L. (2007, September). *Automated enforcement: A compendium of worldwide evaluations of results* (Report No. DOT HS 810 763). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1763

Delaney, A., Diamantopoulou, K., & Cameron, M. (2003). *MUARC's speed enforcement research: Principles learnt and implications for practice* (Report No. 20). Monash University Accident Research Centre. www.monash.edu/__data/assets/pdf_file/0020/217163/MUARCs-Speed-Enforcement-Research-Principles-Learnt-and-Implicationsfor-Practice.pdf

Delaney, A., Ward, H., Cameron, M., & Williams, A. F. (2005). Controversies and speed cameras: Lessons learnt internationally. *Journal of Public Health Policy, 26*, 404-415.

D'Elia, A., Newstead, S., & Cameron, M. (2007). *Overall impact during 2001-2004 of Victorian speed-related package* (Report No. 267). Monash University Accident Research Centre. www.monash.edu/__data/assets/pdf_file/0003/217335/Overall-impact-during-2001-2004-of-Victorian-speed-related-package.pdf

Eccles, K. A., Fiedler, R., Persaud, B., Lyon, C., & Hansen, G. (2012). *Automated enforcement for speeding and red light running* (Report 729). Transportation Research Board. https://download.nap.edu/cart/download.cgi?record_id=22716

Farmer, C. M. (2016). Relationship of traffic fatality rates to maximum state speed limits. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *18*(4), 375-380.

Federal Highway Administration. (2005). *Red-light camera systems operational guidelines.* (Publication No. FHWA-SA-05-002). www.safety.fhwa.dot.gov/intersection/conventional/signalized/rlr/fhwasa05002/fhwasa05002.pdf

FHWA. (2009). *Engineering countermeasures for reducing speeds: A desktop reference of potential effectiveness*. www.safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/ref_mats/eng_count/

Fontaine, M. D., Park, B., & Son, H. (2007). *Demonstration and evaluation of rational speed limits: Virginia Department of Transportation evaluations*. Center for Transportation Studies.

Forbes, G. J., Gardner, T., McGee, H., & Srinivasan, R. (2012, April). *Methods and practices for setting speed limits: An informational report* (Report No. FHWA-SA-12-004). Federal Highway Administration. https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/ref_mats/fhwasa12004/fhwasa12004.pdf

Freedman, M., De Leonardis, D., Polson, A., Levi, S., & Burkhardt, E. (2007, September). *Field test of the impact of setting and enforcing rational speed limits; Gulfport, Mississippi--demonstration community* (Report No. DOT HS 810 849). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1790

Freedman, M., De Leonardis, D., Raisman, G., Inyo Swan, D., Davis, A., Levi, S., Rogers, I., & Bergeron, E. (2006, February). *Demonstration of automated speed enforcement in school zones in Portland, Oregon* (Report No. DOT HS 810 764). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1766

Fuller, R., Bates, H., Gormley, M., Hannigan, B., Stradling, S., Broughton, P., Kinnear, N., & O'Dolan, C. (2008, November). *The conditions for inappropriate high speed: A review of the research literature from 1995 to 2006* (Road Safety Research Report 92). https://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/+/http:/www.dft.gov.uk/pgr/roadsafety/research/rsrr/theme2/conditions1.pdf

Fuller, R., Hannigan, B., Bates, H., Gormley, M., Stradling, S., Broughton, P., Kinnear, N., & O'Dolan, C. (2008, November). *Understanding inappropriate high speed: A qualitative analysis* (Road Safety Research Report 94). https://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/20090510225915/www.dft.gov.uk/pgr/roadsafety/research/rsrr/theme2/analysis.pdf

Gains, A., Heydecker, B., Shrewsbury, J., & Robertson S. (2004, June). *The national safety camera programme: Three-year evaluation report*. PA Consulting Group.

Governors Highway Safety Association. (2018a). *Speeding and aggressive driving*. www.ghsa.org/taxonomy/term/336

GHSA. (2018b). *A guide for effectively partnering with State highway safety offices.* www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2018-04/partnering2018.pdf

GHSA. (2019). *Speed and red light cameras, June 2019*. www.ghsa.org/taxonomy/term/296

Harder, K. A., & Bloomfield, J. R. (2007). *Evaluating the effectiveness of the Minnesota speed management program.* www.lrrb.org/PDF/200721.pdf

Harkey, D. L., Srinivasan, R., Baek, J., Council, F. M., Eccles, K., Lefler, N, Gross, F., Persaud, B., Lyon, C., Hauer, E., & Bonneson, J. A. (2008). *Crash reduction factors for traffic engineering and ITS improvements* (Report No. 617). Transportation Research Board. https://download.nap.edu/cart/download.cgi?record_id=13899

Hauer, E. (2009). Speed and safety. *Transportation Research Record*, *2103*, 10-17.

Health Resources in Action. (2013). *Public health impact: Community speed reduction*. https://hria.org/wp-content/uploads/2013/12/SpeedImpactBrief_120313.pdf

Howard, E., Mooren, L., Nilsson, G., Quimby, A., & Vadeby, A. (2008). *Speed management: Road safety manual for decision-makers and practitioners.* Global Road Safety Partnership and the World Health Organization. https://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/43915/1/9782940395040_eng.pdf

Høye, A. (2015). Safety effects of fixed speed cameras—An empirical Bayes evaluation. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 82*, 263-269.

Hu, W., & McCartt, A. T. (2016). Effects of automated speed enforcement in Montgomery County, Maryland, on vehicle speeds, public opinion, and crashes. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 17*(sup1), 53-58.

Hu, W. (2017). Raising the speed limit from 75 to 80 mph on Utah rural interstates: Effects on vehicle speeds and speed variance. *Journal of Safety Research*, *61*, 83-92.

Huey, R., De Leonardis, D., & Freedman, M. (2012, July). *National traffic speeds survey II: 2009* (Report No. DOT HS 811 638). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811638.pdf

Huey, R., De Leonardis, D., Shapiro, G., & Freedman, M. (2012, August). *National traffic speeds survey I: 2007* (Report No. DOT HS 811 663). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1941

Insurance Institute for Highway Safety. (2017). *Status report: October 2017*, *52*(7). https://trid.trb.org/view/1490006.

IIHS. (2019a). *Maximum posted speed limits by state.* iihs.org/topics/speed/speed-limit-laws.

IIHS. (2019b). *U.S. communities using red light cameras.* iihs.org/topics/red-light-running/red-light-camera-communities.

IIHS. (2019c). *Automated enforcement*. iihs.org/topics/red-light-running/automated-enforcement-laws.

International Transport Forum. (2018). *Speed and crash risk.* www.itf-oecd.org/sites/default/files/docs/speed-crash-risk.pdf

Ilgaz, A., & Saltan, M. (2017). An evaluation of section control: Analyses of speed behavior of drivers at a university campus. *International Journal for Traffic & Transport Engineering, 7*(4), 461-474.

Ipsos MORI, Barrett, G., & Institute for Transport Studies. (2018, May). Impact evaluation of the National Speed Awareness Course. Ipsos MORI Social Research Institute. https://assets.publishing.service.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/706208/national-speed-awareness-course-evaluation.pdf

Islam, M. T., El-Basyouny, K., & Ibrahim, S. E. (2013). The impact of lowered residential speed limits on vehicle speed behavior. *Safety Science*, *62*, 483-494.

Joerger, M. (2010). *Photo radar speed enforcement in a state highway work zone: Yeon Avenue demonstration project* (Report No. OR-RD-10-17). Oregon Department of Transportation. https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/ref_mats/fhwasa1304/resources2/32%20-%20Photo%20Radar%20Speed%20Enforcement%20In%20A%20State%20Highway%20Work%20Zone-%20Demonstration%20Project%20Yeon%20Avenue.pdf

Jurewicz, C., Phillips, C., Tziotis, M., & Turner. B. (2014). *Model national guidelines for setting speed limits at high-risk locations.* Austroads Ltd. https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/7922/97227f61aeba9ed7e2a1c612a117ebeab607.pdf?_ga=2.90740634.1631171615.1569857698-1132096733.1569857698

Katz, B., O'Donnell, C., Donoughe, K., Atkinson, J., Finley, M., Balke, K., Kuhn, B., & Warren, D. (2012, August 24). *Guidelines for the use of variable speed limit systems in wet weather* (Report No. FHWA-SA-12-022). Federal Highway Administration. https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/ref_mats/fhwasa12022/index.cfm

Kloeden, C. N., & Woolley, J. E. (2012, May). *Vehicle speeds in South Australia 2010* (Report No. CASR097). Centre for Automotive Safety Research. http://casr.adelaide.edu.au/publications/list?id=1281

Kloeden, C. N., & Woolley, J. E. (2017, November). *Vehicle speeds in South Australia 2016* (Report No. CASR144). Centre for Automotive Safety Research. http://casr.adelaide.edu.au/casrpubfile/2077/CASR144.pdf

Kloeden, C. N., Mackenzie, J. R. R., & Hutchinson, T. P. (2018, February). *Analysis of crash data from safety camera intersections in South Australia* (No. CASR143). Centre for Automotive Safety Research. http://casr.adelaide.edu.au/casrpubfile/2122/CASR143.pdf

Luoma, J., Rajamäki, R., & Malvivuo, M. (2012). Effects of reduced threshold of automated speed enforcement on speed and safety. *Transportation Research Part F*, *15*, 243-248.

Maccubbin, R., Staples, B., & Salwin, A. (2001, August 13). *Automated enforcement of traffic signals: A literature review* (Project No. 0900610D-02). Federal Highway Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/3822

Mannering, F. (2009). An empirical analysis of driver perceptions of the relationship between speed limits and safety. *Transportation Research Part F*, *12*, 99-106.

McGee, H. W., & Eccles, K. A. (2003). *Impact of red light camera enforcement on crash experience* (NCHRP Synthesis No. 310). Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_syn_310.pdf

Miller, R. J., Osberg, J. S., Retting, R., Ballou, M., & Atkins, R. (2016, April). *System analysis of automated speed enforcement implementation* (Report No. DOT HS 812 257). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/812257_systemanalysisase.pdf

Montella, A., Imbriani, L. L., Marzano, V., & Mauriello, F. (2015). Effects on speed and safety of point-to-point speed enforcement systems: Evaluation on the urban motorway A56 Tangenziale di Napoli. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 75*, 164-178.

Moon, J-P., & Hummer, J. E. (2010). Speed enforcement cameras in Charlotte, North Carolina: Estimation of longer-term safety effects. *Transportation Research Record*, *2182*, 31-39.

National Campaign to Stop Red Light Running. (2002). *Stop on red = Safe on green: A guide to red light camera programs*. www.elkgrovepd.org/UserFiles/Servers/Server_118017/File/StopOnRedSafeOnGreen.pdf

National Center for Statistics and Analysis. (2020, April) *Speeding: 2018 data* (Traffic Safety Facts. DOT HS 812 932). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812932

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (2000, March). *Aggressive driving enforcement: Strategies for implementing best practices* (Report No. DOT HS 809 031). https://library.ctr.utexas.edu/digitized/govdoc/dot-hs-809-031.pdf

NHTSA. (2001, September). *National aggressive driving action guide: A criminal justice approach* (Report No. DOT HS 809 351).

NHTSA. (2004, May). *National survey of speeding and unsafe driving attitudes and behavior: 2002; Vol. II: Findings* (Report No. DOT HS 809 730). www.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/drowsy_driving1/speed_volII_finding/SpeedVolumeIIFindingsFinal.pdf

NHTSA. (2008, March). *Speed enforcement program guidelines* (Report No. DOT HS 810 915). https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/ref_mats/fhwasa09028/resources/Speed%20Enforcement%20Program%20Guidelines.pdf#page=1

NHTSA. (2013, December). Summary of state speed laws, 12th ed. (Report No. DOT HS 811 769). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/summary_state_speed_laws_12th_edition_811769.pdf

NHTSA. (2012a, September). *National traffic speeds survey I: 2007* (Traffic Tech: Technology Transfer Series. Report No. DOT HS 811 644). www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/traffic_tech/811644.pdf

NHTSA. (2012b, August). *National traffic speeds survey II: 2009*. (Traffic Tech: Technology Transfer Series. Report No. DOT HS 811 647). www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811647.pdf

NHTSA. (2018, March). *National traffic speeds survey III: 2015* (Traffic Tech: Technology Transfer Series. Report No. DOT HS 812 489). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/traffic_tech/812489_tt-national-traffic-speeds-survey-iii-2015.pdf

NHTSA & Federal Highway Administration. (2008, March). *Speed enforcement camera systems: Operational guidelines* (Report No. DOT HS 810 916). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/ref_mats/fhwasa09028/resources/Speed%20Camera%20Guidelines.pdf

NHTSA, FHWA, & Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration. (2014, May). *Speed management program plan* (Report No. DOT HS 812 028). www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/812028-SpeedMgtProgram.pdf

National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances. (2000). *Automated traffic law enforcement model law*. https://iamtraffic.org/wp-content/uploads/2013/01/UVC2000.pdf

National Transportation Safety Board. (2017). *Reducing speeding-related crashes involving passenger Vehicles.* (Safety Study NTSB/SS-17/01). www.ntsb.gov/safety/safety-studies/Documents/SS1701.pdf

National Work Zone Safety Information Clearinghouse. (2016). *Variable speed limit.* www.workzonesafety.org/swz/swztechnology-application/types-of-applications/variable-speed-limit/

Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L., Hardy, K. K., Bond, V. L., Potts, I., & Lerner, N. (2009). *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, volume 23: A guide for reducing speeding-related crashes* (Report No. 500, Vol. 23). Transportation Research Board. https://download.nap.edu/cart/download.cgi?record_id=14227

Neuman, T. R., Pfefer, R., Slack, K. L., Hardy, K. K., Raub, R., Lucke, R., & Wark, R. (2003). *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, volume 1: A guide for addressing aggressive-driving collisions.* Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/Onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v1.pdf

Newman, S., Lewis, I., & Warmerdam, A. (2014). Modifying behaviour to reduce over-speeding in work-related drivers: An objective approach. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 64,* 23-29.

New York City Mayor's Office of Operations. (2015, April). New York Vision Zero Report. www.nyc.gov/html/visionzero/assets/downloads/pdf/vision-zero-1-year-report.pdf

Office of the Assistant Secretary for Research and Technology. (2013). *2013 Deployment Tracking Survey Results.*

Paaver, M., Eensoo, D., Kaasik, K., Vaht, M., Mäestu, J., & Harro, J. (2013). Preventing risky driving: A novel and efficient brief intervention focusing on acknowledgement of personal risk factors. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *50*, 430-437.

Phillips, R. O., Ulleberg, P., & Vaa, T. (2011). Meta-analysis of the effect of road safety campaigns on accidents. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *43*, 1204-1218.

Poole, B. (2012). *An overview of automated enforcement systems and their potential for improving pedestrian and bicyclist safety* (White Paper Series). Pedestrian and Bicycle Information Center. www.pedbikeinfo.org/cms/downloads/WhitePaper_AutomatedSafetyEnforcement_PBIC.pdf

Preusser, D. F., Williams, A. F., Nichols, J. L., Tison, J., & Chaudhary, N. K. (2008). *Effectiveness of behavioral highway safety countermeasures* (NCHRP Report No. 622). Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_622.pdf

Retting, R., & Cheung, I. (2008). Traffic speeds associated with implementation of 80 mph speed limits on West Texas rural interstates. *Journal of Safety Research,* 39, 529-534.

Retting, R. A., Ferguson, S. A., & Hakkert, A. S. (2003). Effects of red light cameras on violations and crashes: A review of the international literature. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 4*, 17-23.

Retting, R. A., Farmer, C. M., & McCartt, A. T. (2008) Evaluation of automated speed enforcement in Montgomery County, Maryland. *Traffic Injury Prevention* 9, 440-445.

Richard, C. M., Campbell, J. L., Lichty, M. G., Brown, J. L., Chrysler, S., Lee, J. D., Boyle, L., & Reagle, G. (2012). *Motivations for speeding, Volume I: Summary report* (Report No.

DOT HS 811 658, August). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. at www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811658.pdf

Richard, C. M., Campbell, J. L., Lichty, M. G., Brown, J. L., Chrysler, S., Lee, J. D., Boyle, L., & Reagle, G. (2013a, September). *Motivations for speeding, Volume II: Findings report* (Report No. DOT HS 811 818). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811818.pdf

Richard, C. M., Campbell, J. L., Lichty, M. G., Brown, J. L., Chrysler, S., Lee, J. D., Boyle, L., & Reagle, G. (2013b, August). *Motivations for speeding, Volume III: Appendices* (Report No. DOT HS 811 819). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811819.pdf

Richard, C. M., Divekar, G., & Brown, J. L. (2016, April). *Motivations for speeding – Additional data analysis* (Report No. DOT HS 812 255). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/812255-MotivationsSpeedingAdditionalDataAnalysis.pdf

Richard, C. M., Payn, B. A., Bacon-Abdelmoteleb, P., Graving, J., Liu, T., Divekar, G., & Reagle, G. (2017, December). Matching countermeasures to driver types and speeding behavior (Report No. DOT HS 812 455). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/34993

Rodegerdts, L., Blogg, M., Wemple, E., Myers, E., Kyte, M., Dixon, M., List, G., Flannery, A., Troutbeck, R., Brilon, W., Wu, N., Persaud, B., Lyon, C., Harkey, D., & Carter, D. (2007). *Roundabouts in the United States,* (NCHRP Report 572). Transportation Research Board. www.nap.edu/catalog/23216/roundabouts-in-the-united-states [Also listed as "Applying roundabouts in the United States." The report itself omits the word "Applying" in the title.]

Sarkar, S. (2009, January 11-15). *Driving behaviors, risk perceptions, and stress: An examination of military personnel during wartime deployment.* Transportation Research Board 88th Annual Meeting [Washington, DC] Compendium of Papers DVD. Transportation Research Board.

Schroeder, P., Kostyniuk, L., & Mack, M. (2013, December). *2011 National survey of speeding attitudes and behaviors* (Report No. DOT HS 811 865). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1960

Seattle Department of Transportation. (2017). *Vision Zero 2017 progress report*. www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/beSuperSafe/VZ_2017_Progress_Report.pdf

Sharma, A., Huang, T., Roy, S., & Savolainen, P. (2017). *Setting work zone speed limits*. www.intrans.iastate.edu/app/uploads/2018/03/setting_work_zone_speed_limits_w_cvr.pdf

Shin, K., Washington, S. P., & van Schalkwyk, I. (2009). Evaluation of the Scottsdale Loop 101 automated speed enforcement demonstration program. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *41*, 393-403.

Shinar, D., & Compton, R. (2004). Aggressive driving: An observational study of driver, vehicle, and situational variables. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 36*, 429-437.

Solomon, H., Izadpanah, P., Brady, M., & Hadayeghi, A. (2014, September 28-October 1). *So you're considering a red light camera program? Lessons and insights from over a decade of camera operation in south and central Ontario*. 2014 Conference of the Transportation Association of Canada, Montreal, Canada.

Soole, D. W., Watson, B. W., & Fleiter, J. J. (2013). Effects of average speed enforcement on speed compliance and crashes: A review of the literature. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *54*, 46-56.

Speed Camera Database. (2019). *Speed camera statistics.* https://scdb.info/en/stats/

Sprattler, K. (2012). *Survey of the states: Speeding and aggressive driving.* Governors Highway Safety Association. https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/ref_mats/fhwasa1304/resources2/21%20-%20Survey%20of%20the%20States%20-%20Speeding%20and%20Aggressive%20Driving.pdf

Srinivasan, R., Baek, J., Smith, S., Sundstrom, C., Carter, D., Lyon, C., Persaud, B., Gross, F., Eccles, K., Hamidi, A., & Lefler, N. (2011). *Evaluation of safety strategies at signalized intersections* (Report No. 705). Transportation Research Board. www.nap.edu/catalog/14573/evaluation-of-safety-strategies-at-signalized-intersections

Stradling, S., Broughton, P., Kinnear, N., O'Dolan, C., Fuller, R., Gormley, M., & Hannigan, B. (2008, November). *Understanding inappropriate high speed: A quantitative analysis.* Road Safety Research Report 93. [Great Britain] Department for Transport. https://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/20090511042505/www.dft.gov.uk/pgr/roadsafety/research/rsrr/theme2/safety93.pdf

Tang, C. K. (2017). *Do speed cameras save lives?* London School of Economics. https://eprints.lse.ac.uk/86567/1/sercdp0221.pdf

Tapp, A., Pressley, A., Baugh, M., & White, P. (2013). Wheels, skills and thrills: A social marketing trail to reduce aggressive driving from young men in deprived areas. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *58*, 148-157.

Thomas, L. J., Srinivasan, R., Decina, L. E., & Staplin L. (2008). Safety effects of automated speed enforcement programs: Critical review of international literature. *Transportation Research Record*, *2078*, 117-126.

Transportation Research Board. (1984). *55: A decade of experience.* (Transportation Research Board Special Report 254). www.nap.edu/catalog/11373/55-a-decade-of-experience-special-report-204

TRB. (1998). *Managing speed: Review of current practice for setting and enforcing speed limits* (Transportation Research Board Special Report 254). https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/sr/sr254.pdf

TRB. (2006). *Safety impacts and other implications of raised speed limits on high-speed roads* (Research Results Digest 303). https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rrd_303.pdf

Ullman, G. L., Brewer, M. A., Bryden, J. E., Corkran, M. O., Hubbs, C. W., Chandra, A. K., & Jeannotte, K. L. (2013). *Traffic enforcement strategies for work zones* (Report No. 746).

Transportation Research Board. www.camsys.com/sites/default/files/publications/nchrp_rpt_746.pdf

Vadeby, A., & Forsman, Å. (2014). Evaluation of new speed limits in Sweden: A sample survey. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 15,* 778-785.

Vision Zero Network (2018). *Vision Zero Network* (Web page). www.visionzeronetwork.org/about/vision-zero-network/

Wang, S., & Sharma, A. (2017). Assessing the impact of speed-limit reduction near signalized high-speed intersections equipped with advance-warning flashers. *Journal of Transportation Engineering, Part A: Systems, 143*(6), 04017014.

Washington, S. P. & Shin, K. (2005, June*). The impact of red light cameras (automated enforcement) on safety in Arizona* (Report No. FHWA-AZ-05-550). Federal Highway Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/38404

Wilson, C., Willis, C., Hendrikz, J. K., Le Brocque, R., & Bellamy, N. (2010). Speed cameras for the prevention of road traffic injuries and deaths. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 11. www.speedcamerareport.co.uk/cochrane_sys_review_10.pdf

World Health Organization. (2004). *World report on road traffic injury prevention*. World Health Organization. www.who.int/publications/i/item/world-report-on-road-traffic-injury-prevention

WHO. (2017). *Managing speed.* www.who.int/publications/i/item/managing-speed Wong, S. C., Sze, N. N., Lo, H. K., Hung, W. T., & Loo, B. P. Y. (2005). Would relaxing speed limits aggravate safety? A case study of Hong Kong. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 37*, 377-388

# 4. Distracted Driving

## Overview

Distracted driving is common, though difficult to measure and sometimes observe. Similar to drowsy driving, distracted driving is associated with lifestyle patterns, attitudes, and choices (Ranney, 2008). Distracted driving has received a great deal of attention over the last decade. The U.S. Department of Transportation held two distracted driving summits in Washington, DC, and developed a *Blueprint for Ending Distracted Driving* (NHTSA, 2012). Although much of the attention and research has concentrated on cell phones and texting, that is just one of many potential distractions behind the wheel. NHTSA has defined distracted driving as "anything that diverts the driver's attention from the primary tasks of navigating the vehicle and responding to critical events. To put it another way, a distraction is anything that takes your eyes off the road (visual distraction), your mind off the task of driving (cognitive distraction), or your hands off the wheel (manual distraction)" (NHTSA, n.d.). NHTSA hosted a technical meeting in 2015 to discuss cognitive distraction or mind-wandering (when drivers take their minds off the driving task).

A related issue that is emerging as a growing safety concern is distracted pedestrians using cell phones and electronic devices in the roadway environment. A literature review from NHTSA found that, based on the limited amount of research done on pedestrian distraction, distraction is associated with a small but statistically significant decrease in pedestrian safety (Scopatz & Zhou, 2016). This issue is discussed in more detail in Chapter 8.

**Problem size and characteristics.** Distraction occurs when a driver's attention is diverted away from driving to some other activity. A distraction can be produced by something a driver sees or hears, some physical task not directly involved in driving such as eating or operating the car radio, or mental activities such as cell phone conversations (Goodwin et al., 2005, Section III).

It is clear that the public perceives driver distraction to be a serious traffic safety issue. In 2013 the AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety surveyed 3,103 U.S. residents and found that about 9 in 10 (88%) of people say distracted driving is a "somewhat" or "much bigger" problem today compared to 3 years ago, and 89% believe drivers talking on cell phones are a "somewhat" or "very serious" threat to their personal safety (Hamilton et al., 2013). In 2015 the AAA Foundation repeated this survey with 2,442 U.S. residents and found that almost the same proportion (85%) say distracted driving is a "somewhat" or "much bigger" problem today compared to 3 years ago, and 86% believe drivers talking on cell phones are a "somewhat" or "very serious" threat to their personal safety (AAAFTS, 2016). This trend continued in the 2017 AAA Foundation survey conducted with 2,613 respondents (AAAFTS, 2018). Distracted driving was reported to be the most prevalent traffic safety problem by the majority (87.5%) of respondents. Almost all respondents (97%) reported that drivers who text or email while driving pose a serious threat, followed by drivers who talk on the phone while driving (88%). Similarly, in 2012 NHTSA conducted 6,016 telephone interviews and asked respondents how safe they would feel in a variety of situations in which they are passengers in vehicles operated by drivers who are engaged in other activities while driving. NHTSA found that about two-thirds (66%)

would feel "somewhat" or "very" unsafe if the driver was to "talk on a cell phone while holding the phone" and almost all (95%) would feel "somewhat" or "very" unsafe if the driver was to "read emails or text messages" or "send text messages or emails" (Schroeder et al., 2013). This survey was repeated in 2015 with 6,011 respondents and very similar proportions were reported for these questions (Schroeder et al., 2018).

Although people are concerned about distracted driving they frequently admit to engaging in such behaviors behind the wheel. In the 2013 AAA Foundation survey two-thirds (67%) of respondents admitted to talking on the phone while driving during the past 30 days (Hamilton et al., 2013). A third (35%) admitted to reading text messages while driving and a fourth (26%) had sent text messages. The 2015 AAA Foundation survey found that more than two-thirds (69.9%) of respondents admitted to talking on the phone while driving during the past 30 days (AAAFTS, 2016). Two in five drivers (42.3%) admitted to reading text messages while driving in the past 30 days, and nearly one-third (31.5%) had sent text messages. The proportions continued to increase in the 2017 AAA Foundation survey in which 45% of drivers reported reading and 35% reported composing messages and emails while driving (AAAFTS, 2018). These findings show that the problem has gradually worsened since the 2013 survey. The AAA Foundation summarized its findings by observing that a substantial number of drivers have a "Do as I say, not as I do" attitude with regard to distracted driving – they view these behaviors as dangerous, but engage in them nevertheless. The 2015 NHTSA survey also asked about a variety of behaviors related to distracted driving (Schroeder et al., 2018). Among the behaviors that drivers reported doing at least sometimes:

- 82% talking to other passengers;
- 68% adjusting the car radio;
- 48% eating or drinking;
- 42% interacting with children in the back seat;
- 38% making or accepting phone calls;
- 36% using a navigational system;
- 36% using a smartphone for driving directions;
- 17% changing CDs, DVDs, or tapes;
- 12% reading email or text messages;
- 9% sending text messages or email;
- 5% taking pictures with phones.

The type of device and interaction also influences drivers' perception of the potential for distraction and their willingness to use the device while driving. People perceive the use of hands-free devices as less risky than the use of handheld devices when driving. The proportion of drivers who reported talking on hands-free cell phones (60.5%) in the 2017 AAA Foundation (2018) survey was higher than those who reported talking on handheld cell phones (49.1%). Similarly, nearly half (47%) of the respondents in the 2015 NHTSA telephone survey reported feeling safe if the driver was using a hands-free cell phone to make or answer calls; this is a 7-point and 27-point increase from the reported results of the NHTSA surveys conducted in 2012 and 2010 respectively (Schroeder et al., 2013; Schroeder et al., 2018; Tison et al., 2011).

Many factors can affect drivers' decisions to engage in distracted driving. Most often, the perceived benefits outweigh the perceived risks (Lissy et al., 2000). Recent research has focused

on factors influencing teen drivers' cell phone use. Trivedi et al. (2017) conducted a longitudinal multistage survey study of teens starting in 10th grade through 2 years after high school. They found that peer texting behaviors were significantly associated with participants' own reported texting behaviors while driving. A recent study of 249 university undergraduate students (18-44 years, $M = 22$) reported that the perceived benefits of cell phone conversations while driving include less boredom and the feeling of "getting more done" (Sanbonmatsu et al., 2016). Students who reported using their cell phones while driving were also more likely to perceive higher ability to drive when distracted for themselves and others. Unsurprisingly, these students were also less likely to support legislation to restrict cell phone use while driving. The presence of legislation regulating cell phone use does not necessarily prevent drivers from engaging in such behaviors. An analysis of reported cell phone use among U.S. adolescent drivers (16 to 18 years old) was conducted using the 2011-2014 Traffic Safety Culture surveys. The study found that legislation banning handheld phone use may lower the incidence of reported phone conversations in this population; however, texting bans were not associated with similar decreases in reported texting behaviors while driving (Rudisill et al., 2018).

The role of distraction in crashes can be difficult to determine because pre-crash distractions often leave no evidence for LEOs or crash investigators to observe and drivers are often reluctant to admit to having been distracted right before a crash. Distraction-affected crashes is a relatively new measure that focuses on distractions that are most likely to influence crash involvement, such as dialing a cell phone or texting, and distraction by an outside person/event (NHTSA, 2012). According to the NCSA (2020), there were 2,841 fatalities in distraction-affected crashes in 2018. This represents a decrease of 12% from the 3,242 fatalities in 2017 (NCSA, 2019, 2020). Eight percent (2,628) of all fatal crashes in 2018 were distraction-affected crashes (NCSA, 2020).

The risks posed by specific distracted driving behaviors are beginning to be understood thanks to naturalistic driving studies that use onboard sensors and cameras to capture data right before crashes as well as during normal driving situations. The Second Strategic Highway Research Program Naturalistic Driving Study (SHRP2 NDS) included 3,500 participants, 35 million miles of continuous driving data, and 905 injury and property-damage-only (PDO) crashes. As such, it provided the first opportunity to perform a direct case-cohort analysis of the crash risk associated with observable distractions compared to regular driving (Dingus et al., 2016). In the table below, a change in risk greater than 1 represents increases in crash risk due to the secondary task, while a change in risk less than 1 represents a decrease in crash risk. For example, interacting with a handheld cell phone increases the risk of a crash 3.6 times compared to baseline driving without a phone in hand. The table also shows baseline prevalence of the distraction in terms of the percentage of time drivers engaged in a distracting task while driving.

| Type of Distraction | Change in Risk (Odds Ratio) | Baseline Prevalence |
|---|---|---|
| *Total cell (handheld)* | *3.6* | *6.4%* |
| Cell dial (handheld) | 12.2 | 0.1% |
| Cell text (handheld) | 6.1 | 1.9% |
| Cell reach | 4.8 | 0.6% |
| Cell browse | 2.7 | 0.7% |
| Cell talk | 2.2 | 3.2% |
| *Total in-vehicle device* | *2.5* | *3.5%* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| In-vehicle device (other, e.g., touchscreen) | 4.6 | 0.8% |
| In-vehicle climate control | 2.3 | 0.6% |
| In-vehicle radio | 1.9 | 2.2% |
| *Reading/writing (including tablet)* | 9.9 | 0.1% |
| *Reaching for object (other than cell phone)* | 9.1 | 1.1% |
| *Looking at outside object* | 7.1 | 0.9% |
| *Eating* | 1.8 | 1.9% |

Note: All odds ratios statistically different from 1 at the 0.05 level of significance.
Source: Dingus et al. (2016).

A recent study focused on the relationship between drivers' handheld cell phone use and subsequent crash involvement. Owens et al. (2018) performed a case-crossover analysis using the SHRP2 NDS data. A total of 566 crashes of varying severity were matched to 1,749 instances of normal driving on variables including the subject driver, weather, time of day, and speed. The use of handheld cell phones in general, and specifically performing tasks with visual and manual elements (such as texting) were significantly associated with increased crash involvement (excluding crashes where the driver was struck from behind). Of the visual-manual tasks, texting was significantly associated with increased crash involvement. The table below presents these changes in crash involvement when using a handheld cell phone relative to driving without performing secondary tasks.

| Type of Distraction | Change in Risk (Odds Ratio, 95% CI) |
|---|---|
| *Any cell phone use* | *1.80 (1.06 - 3.07)* |
| Overall visual-manual tasks | 2.19 (1.19 – 4.02) |
| Texting | 2.54 (1.18 – 5.50) |

Note: All odds ratios statistically different from 1 at the 0.05 level of significance.
Source: Owens et al. (2018).

The study also found that increases in crash involvement associated with visual-manual tasks were greater for crashes in free-flow traffic. Rear-end crashes and run-off road crashes were more prevalent in the crash data than other types of crashes; drivers' visual-manual cell phone interactions were associated with increased instances of both these crash types. Run-off road crashes were also significantly associated with any cell phone use, including reaching for the device, browsing, or answering calls (Owens et al., 2018).

Another naturalistic study was conducted from 2007 to 2015 with approximately 15,000 teen drivers (16 to 19 years old). Videos of 2,229 moderate to severe crashes (vehicle impact forces > 1g) including single- and multi-vehicle crashes were extracted and analyzed (Carney et al., 2018). About 59% involved teen drivers who were distracted in the 6 seconds prior to crashing. The most common distractions included attending to passengers (15%), using cell phones (12%), or attending/reaching inside the vehicles (11%). Over the course of the study duration, there were increases in the proportion of crashes in which the drivers were attending to passengers, attending to objects inside or outside the vehicles, singing/dancing to music, or operating/looking at cell phones (i.e., not talking or listening); whereas crashes associated with behaviors such as talking/listening on cell phone and smoking declined.

Klauer et al. (2014) used a naturalistic study to examine distracted behaviors and their effects on the risk of being involved in crashes or near-crashes among 42 novice drivers. Some of the findings are shown in the table below. Novices were eight times more likely to be involved in crashes or near-crashes when dialing cell phones and seven times more likely to be involved in crashes or near-crashes when reaching for cell phones. While the novice driver study had far fewer participants than the SHRP 2 NDS study above, it demonstrated that the risks posed by types of distraction are problematic for young drivers just as they are for the general driving population.

**Estimated Change in Crash Risk When Engaging in Secondary Tasks, Newly Licensed (Novice) Drivers**

| Type of secondary task | Change in risk |
|---|---|
| *Using a cell phone* | |
| Dialing | 8.3 |
| Reaching for phone | 7.1 |
| Texting | 3.9 |
| *Reaching for object (other than cell phone)* | 8.0 |
| *Looking at outside object* | 3.9 |
| *Eating* | 3.0 |

Note: All odds ratios statistically different from 1 at the 0.05 level of significance.
Source: Klauer et al. (2014).

Given the possible visual, manual, and cognitive attention changes caused by secondary tasks while driving, none of the distractions listed in the tables above is easily addressed. Moreover, it is important to note that many studies on distracted driving and its consequences were conducted prior to the proliferation of smart phones, navigation apps and devices, and built-in technologies. Consequently, it is possible that distraction-related crashes will escalate as the prevalence, diversity, and use of new technologies continues to increase.

## Strategies to Reduce Distracted Driving

It is difficult to convince or require drivers to avoid distractions while driving. Many drivers consider some distractions such as eating or drinking, listening to the radio, or talking on on cell phones, to be important and common activities and they are unlikely to give them up. Moreover, studies indicate that drivers themselves are poor judges of the performance decrements that result from distracting activities (Horrey et al., 2008). The 2015 National Survey on Distracted Driving Attitudes and Behaviors found that a large portion of drivers do not believe that their driving performance is affected by cell phone use, and that over half of drivers who talk on the phone while driving believe that their driving is the same while using cell phones (Schroeder et al., 2018).

Some States have investigated ways to counter distracted driving. For example, Oregon formed a distracted driving task force committee to identify the factors leading to distracted driving and to develop recommendations to mitigate the problem (Oregon Department of Transportation, 2017). The committee encouraged the revision of Oregon's current cell phone law to make it more effective by enforcing, educating, citing, and convicting cell phone use violations, improving collection of crash and citation data, and increasing coordinated communication of strategies among stakeholders involved in reducing distracted driving. Other recommendations also

included the increase in government and academic distracted driving research, the development of a public educational campaign, and the development of a distracted driving toolkit (research, education, policy, and enforcement resources) tailored to local communities.

Few studies have examined if the standard behavioral countermeasures of laws, enforcement, and sanctions (which are used successfully for impaired driving, seat belt use, aggressive driving, and speeding) are effective for distracted drivers. However, the results of three NHTSA demonstration projects, focused on HVE combined with paid and earned media, suggest that these elements show promise in reducing the use of handheld phones and texting (Cosgrove et al., 2011). Some GDL provisions help reduce distracted driving in young drivers by enforcing limits on the number of passengers and restrictions on cell phone use (see Chapter 6, Sections 1.3 to 1.5).

Job-related distracted driving may be reduced through employer policies and programs. Employer-based resources are available from the Network of Employers for Traffic Safety through trafficsafety.org. The National Safety Council also provides resources to employers, including an online distracted driving course at www.nsc.org/safety-training/defensive-driving/courses/online/distracted. Communications and outreach may be useful in raising awareness of specific distraction issues among certain high-risk populations. Currently, it is unknown if these strategies have been evaluated. As with the environmental and vehicular countermeasures mentioned below, commercial driver countermeasures are not discussed in this guide because they generally do not fall under the SHSO jurisdiction.

A variety of environmental and vehicular strategies have the potential to address distracted driving. Rumble strips, both on the shoulder and the centerline, have demonstrated their effectiveness in preventing crashes associated with inattention (Persaud et al., 2016). Other roadway improvements such as wide and visible edge lines, more easily visible road signs, and better lighting at night can help drivers who are not fully alert. Vehicular strategies also can address driver distraction. Collision avoidance technologies, such as lane departure warning, crash-imminent braking, and forward collision warning, and vehicle-to-vehicle and vehicle-to-infrastructure communications technologies, hold promise for reducing crashes among drivers who are inattentive (IIHS, 2012; IIHS, 2014). Such technologies, once available only in luxury brands, are now offered in many new vehicles. Additionally, in-vehicle technology in the future may be able to detect driver distraction by monitoring driver performance and then alerting drivers (Aghaei et al., 2016; Donmez et al., 2007; Koesdwiady et al., 2016; Kuo et al., 2019). On the other hand, built-in technologies such as navigation and entertainment systems in vehicles may create more potential distractions (Strayer et al., 2017). NHTSA developed Visual-Manual Driver Distraction Guidelines for In-Vehicle Electronic Devices pertaining to original equipment in-vehicle electronic devices (78 Fed. Reg. 24,817, 2013). Although voluntary, the Guidelines encourage automobile manufactures to design in-vehicle devices so that potentially distracting tasks are limited while driving. This chapter only addresses behavioral strategies. It does not include environmental, vehicular, and engineering countermeasures because SHSOs generally do not have authority or responsibility in these areas.

## Resources

The agencies and organizations listed below can provide more information on distracted driving and links to numerous other resources.

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration:
  - Research and Evaluation – www.nhtsa.gov/behavioral-research
  - Distracted Driving – www.nhtsa.gov/risky-driving/distracted-driving
  - Behavioral Safety Research Reports – https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/
  - Traffic Safety Marketing – www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/distracted-driving
- Governors Highway Safety Association: www.ghsa.org
- National Safety Council: www.nsc.org/learn/NSC-Initiatives/Pages/distracted-driving.aspx; www.nsc.org/road-safety/tools-resources/infographics/hands-free-is-not-risk-free
- National Conference of State Legislatures: www.ncsl.org/research/transportation/spotlight-distracted-driving
- Insurance Institute for Highway Safety: www.iihs.org
- AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety: www.aaafoundation.org
- Network of Employers for Traffic Safety: https://trafficsafety.org

For overviews of distracted driving prevalence, risks, legislation, research, and recommended strategies, see the following.

- NHTSA's *Understanding the Effects of Distracted Driving and Developing Strategies to Reduce Resulting Deaths and Injuries: A Report to Congress* – DOT HS 812 053 (Vegega et al., 2013).
- NHTSA's *Driver Distraction: A Review of the Current State-of-Knowledge* – DOT HS 810 787 (Ranney, 2008).
- *Overview of the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration's Driver Distraction Program* – DOT HS 811 299 (NHTSA, 2010).
- GHSA's Distracted Driving: Survey of the States (GHSA, 2013).
- World Health Organization's *Mobile Phone Use: A Growing Problem of Driver Distraction* (WHO & NHTSA, 2011).
- NHTSA's *Blueprint for Ending Distracted Driving* – DOT HS 811 629 (NHTSA, 2012).

## Key terms

- GDL: Graduated driver licensing, a three-phase system for beginning drivers consisting of a learner's permit, a provisional license, and a full license. A learner's permit allows driving only while supervised by a fully licensed driver. A provisional license allows unsupervised driving under certain restrictions.

# Distracted Driving Countermeasures

Countermeasures to reduce distracted driving are listed in the table below. The table is intended to provide a rough estimate of each countermeasure's effectiveness, use, cost, and time required for implementation. Effectiveness is shown using a five-star rating system.

- Countermeasures that receive ★★★★ or ★★★★★ have been determined to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ★★★ are considered promising, and likely to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States, communities, and other organizations are encouraged to use ★★★, and especially ★★★★ or ★★★★★, countermeasures. They should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

Further details about the symbols and terms used are included after the table. Effectiveness, cost, and time to implement can vary substantially from State to State and community to community. Costs for many countermeasures are difficult to measure, so the summary terms are very approximate.

Each countermeasure to reduce distracted driving is discussed individually in this chapter. Full descriptions are included for ★★★, ★★★★, and ★★★★★ countermeasures. Brief descriptions are included for ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Further details about the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures are included in Appendix A4 to this report.

### 1. Laws and Enforcement

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 GDL Requirements for Beginning Drivers | ★★★★★† | $ | High | Medium |
| 1.2 Cell Phone and Text Messaging Laws | ☆☆ | $ | Medium | Short |
| 1.3 High-Visibility Cell Phone/Text Messaging Enforcement | ★★★★ | $$$ | Low | Medium |
| 1.4 General Distraction Laws | ☆ | Varies | High†† | Short |

† Effectiveness demonstrated for passenger restrictions
†† Included under reckless driving; use of explicit distraction laws is low

## 2. Communications and Outreach

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 Communications and Outreach on Distracted Driving | ☆ | $$ | High | Medium |

## 3. Other Countermeasures

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Employer Programs | ☆ | $ | Unknown | Short |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ★★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective by several high-quality evaluations with consistent results |
| ★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective in certain situations |
| ★★★ | Likely to be effective based on balance of evidence from high-quality evaluations or other sources |
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Laws and Enforcement

### 1.1 Graduated Driver Licensing Requirements for Beginning Drivers

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★† | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† Effectiveness demonstrated for passenger restrictions

Studies suggest teenagers and adults are similar in terms of how often they engage in potentially distracting activities while driving (Foss & Goodwin, 2014; Klauer et al., 2014). However, as mentioned in the introduction, teens are at higher risk for a crash when engaged in distracting activities compared to adults (Klauer et al., 2014). Driving requires more of their deliberate attention compared to experienced drivers (Lansdown, 2002). Moreover, key areas of the brain are still developing during adolescence, making it difficult for teens to manage potential distractions (Keating, 2007).

Several elements of GDL reduce the likelihood of distractions for newly licensed drivers. GDL systems usually include a passenger restriction. Passengers, especially teenage passengers, are a major source of distraction for young, beginning drivers (Foss & Goodwin, 2014). Cell phones can also distract drivers (see Appendix A4, Section 1.2), so they are often restricted under GDL. The NCHRP guide for reducing crashes involving young drivers describes key provisions of GDL laws (Goodwin et al., 2007). The Insurance Institute for Highway Safety (2019) and the Governors Highway Safety Association (2019) summarize State GDL laws. These summaries are updated monthly. See Chapter 6, Sections 1.1 and Appendix A6, Section 1.7, for a complete discussion of GDL for beginning young drivers.

**Use:** As of November 2016 all 50 States and the District of Columbia had some GDL components in place. Laws in 46 States and the District of Columbia limit the number of passengers allowed with a driver with a provisional license (GHSA, 2019). Thirty-eight States and the District of Columbia prohibit the use of cell phones, both handheld and hands-free, by drivers with learner's permits or provisional licenses or by drivers under 18.

**Effectiveness:** Several studies document that passenger GDL restrictions reduce teenage driver crashes and injuries (Chaudhary et al., 2018; Goodwin et al., 2007; Hedlund & Compton, 2005; Williams, 2007); however, an evaluation of a GDL cell phone restriction suggests cell phone restrictions may have little effect on teenage drivers' cell phone use (Ehsani et al., 2016; Foss et al., 2009; Goodwin et al., 2012). This finding is consistent with McCartt et al. (2014) who determined that cell phone laws, in general, have little effect on teenagers' use of cell phones while driving.

One factor that may undermine the effectiveness of GDL restrictions on cell phone use in teen drivers is the perception that the risk of penalty from not complying with the law is low. A study of GDL violations in Washington State and North Carolina found low overall enforcement of the GDL requirement laws, particularly the cell phone use requirement in both States (AAAFTS, 2014). The authors cite that one possible explanation for low enforcement of cell phone requirements is that it may be difficult for officers to discern whether a particular cell phone activity is a banned task or one that is allowed.

As GDL cell phone non-use requirements can be difficult to enforce, the most frequently charged GDL violation in Washington and North Carolina study was violation of passenger restrictions that are easier to observe (AAAFTS, 2014). In an analysis of naturalistic driving data, the most frequently seen driving behavior leading up to a teen crash was attending to passengers (Carney et al., 2015). Limiting the number of young passengers to none or one significantly decreases crash risk (Masten et al., 2013; McCarett et al., 2010). Not only are GDL passenger restrictions associated with a decrease in crashes, they may also help with reducing passenger injuries (Zhu et al., 2016) and multi-passenger crashes (McCarrtt & Teoh, 2015).

It should be noted that the AAA Foundation (AAAFTS, 2014) found that a high proportion of GDL citations, including those for cell phone and passenger restrictions, were dismissed by the Washington and North Carolina courts and that these dismissals "may very well be detrimental to the overall effectiveness of GDL programs."

**Costs:** Publicity for GDL restriction changes can be delivered directly by the Department of Motor Vehicles to young drivers as they apply for their learner's permits and provisional licenses, so costs can be minimal. Information about GDL restrictions can also be provided through driver education courses.

**Time to implement:** GDL passenger or cell phone restriction changes require several months to implement for drivers receiving a provisional license. They then will take 1 or 2 years before all provisionally licensed drivers are subject to the new restrictions.

### 1.2 Cell Phone and Text Messaging Laws

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |

This countermeasure involves legislation to curtail distracted driving or driver cell phone use. It has been implemented at both the State and local level throughout the country. Bans on texting are more common than bans on handheld cell phone use. Twenty-one States and the District of Columbia have laws banning handheld cell phones while driving, but at present no State restricts *hands-free* phone use for all drivers (GHSA, 2020). Forty-eight States and the District of Columbia have banned text messaging for all drivers. An additional State, Missouri, bans drivers under 21 from text messaging. As of February 2020, Montana is the only State with no laws on driver cell phone use (GHSA, 2020).

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *The effectiveness of laws banning cell phone use has been examined in several research studies. The results across types of phone use are inconsistent. Specifically, research examining prohibitions on hands-free phone use and texting have yielded mixed results in terms of reductions in phone use while driving and reduced crashes. There is some evidence that banning handheld cell phone use leads to long-term reductions in this behavior; however, it is unknown if drivers are simply switching to hands-free use. At this time, there is insufficient consensus across research findings to determine that this countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A4, Section 1.2.

### 1.3 High-Visibility Cell Phone and Text Messaging Enforcement

| Effectiveness: ★★★★ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

Numerous studies demonstrate that HVE can be effective in curbing alcohol-impaired driving and increasing seat belt use among drivers (see Chapter 1, Section 2.1 and Chapter 2, Section 2.1). NHTSA has examined whether the HVE model could be effective in reducing handheld cell phone use and texting among drivers.

Similar to sobriety checkpoints, the objective is to deter cell phone use by increasing the perceived risk of a ticket. The HVE model combines dedicated law enforcement with paid and earned media supporting the enforcement activity. Law enforcement officers actively seek out cell phone users through special roving patrols or through a variety of enforcement techniques such as the spotter technique where a stationary officer will radio ahead to another officer when a driver using a cell phone is detected. Officers report that higher vantage points, SUVs, and unmarked vehicles are strategies useful in identifying violators (Chaudhary et al., 2014). Both earned and paid media are critical to ensure the general public is aware of the enforcement activity and to increase the perception that being caught is likely.

NHTSA conducted an HVE demonstration project aimed at reducing cell phone use among drivers. The program tagline was: "Phone in one hand. Ticket in the other." Pilot programs were tested in Hartford, Connecticut, and Syracuse, New York, from April 2010 to April 2011. Law enforcement officers conducted four waves of enforcement during the year. Approximately 100 to 200 citations were issued per 10,000 population during each enforcement wave. Paid media (TV, radio, online advertisements, and billboards) and earned media (e.g., press events and news releases) supported the enforcement activity. For more details about the program, see Chaudhary et al. (2014).

To examine the effectiveness of HVE in larger jurisdictions, NHTSA proceeded to implement an HVE campaign in Delaware and in nine California counties in the Sacramento area. Three waves of enforcement were conducted from November 2012 to June 2013. Paid and earned media were similar to that in Hartford and Syracuse. See Schick et al. (2014) and Chaudhary et al. (2015) for more information.

Observations from the previous demonstration projects in Hartford/Syracuse and California/Delaware reported that relatively few citations were issued for texting while driving. Moreover, feedback from LEOs suggested that enforcing laws prohibiting texting while driving was difficult. In 2012 NHTSA undertook a third demonstration program to determine the enforceability of texting laws and to test methods for enforcing these laws. LEAs in Connecticut and Massachusetts participated in the program. Four waves of enforcement were conducted in each State over 2013 and 2014. The evaluation suggested that having a strong set of distracted driving laws helps with enforcement of texting laws (see Retting et al., 2017).

**Use:** To date a limited number of States have implemented HVE programs to address talking on cell phones and texting while driving.

**Effectiveness:** Results from the NHTSA HVE program suggest handheld cell phone use among drivers dropped 57% in Hartford and 32% in Syracuse (Chaudhary et al., 2014). The percentage of drivers observed manipulating a phone (e.g., texting or dialing) also declined. Public awareness of distracted driving was already high before the program, but surveys suggest awareness of the program and enforcement activity increased in both Hartford and Syracuse. Surveys also showed most motorists supported the enforcement activity. Similar reductions in cell phone use were observed following the campaign in California (34% reduction) and Delaware (33% reduction), although decreases were also noted in comparison communities (Chaudhary et al., 2015; Schick et al., 2014). Although these results are encouraging, the effect of HVE campaigns on crashes is not certain. An analysis of crash data from before and after the enforcement period found no effects of HVE on the incidence of distraction-related crashes (Chaudhary et al., 2015). Note that the evidence for effectiveness is based on community and smaller statewide programs that targeted handheld cell phone use. There is no evidence available that HVE programs specifically targeting texting will be as effective.

**Costs:** High-visibility enforcement campaigns are expensive. They require time from LEOs to conduct the enforcement. In addition, time is needed from State highway safety office and media staff and often from consultants to develop, produce, and distribute advertising, educational material, and other communications tools. In the NHTSA demonstration program, both Connecticut and New York received $200,000 to implement and evaluate the program, and each State contributed an additional $100,000 to the Federal funds. Paid media costs for the program in the two States were over $500,000.

**Time to implement:** An HVE program requires 4 to 6 months to plan and implement.

### 1.4 General Driver Distraction Laws

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: High† | Time: Short |

† Included under reckless driving; use of explicit distraction laws is low

This countermeasure involves laws that specifically target the issue of distracted drivers. This law would permit drivers who are involved in a crash or who commit an infraction to be cited for distracted driving if a police officer believes distraction to be the underlying cause. Distraction is "anything that diverts the driver's attention from the primary tasks of navigating the vehicle and responding to critical events" (NHTSA, n.d.).

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *Laws that specifically target distracted drivers are not widely enforced, and this countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A4, Section 1.4.

## 2. Communications and Outreach

### 2.1 Communications and Outreach on Distracted Driving

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: High | Time: Medium |

This countermeasure involves distracted driving communications and outreach campaigns directed to the general public. Since distracted driving is a particular concern among teenage drivers (Foss & Goodwin, 2014; NHTSA, 2012), distracted driving campaigns may specifically target teen drivers. Some campaigns carry a general "pay attention" message, while others are directed at specific behaviors such as cell phone use.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *Based on NCHRP research, there are no studies of any campaign's effects on driver knowledge, attitudes, or behavior (Stutts et al., 2005, Strategies C1 and D2). Though distracted driving outreach campaigns are widespread, there is little information that exists regarding their effectiveness.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A4, Section 2.1.

## 3. Other Countermeasures

### 3.1 Employer Programs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |

This countermeasure involves job-related distracted driving. There are many ways States can work with employers to address distracted driving. Employers can protect themselves by implementing policies that prohibit distracted driving and by monitoring compliance. The Network of Employers for Traffic Safety (NETS) program is an initiative founded by NHTSA and led by participating employers that is aimed at improving traffic safety of employees and broader members of the community. NETS provides a variety of road safety resources for participating employers that can be found at https://trafficsafety.org/road-safety-resources/distracted-driving-campaign-materials-graphics/. The National Safety Council has developed a policy kit to assist employers with implementing or strengthening a cell phone ban, available at https://safety.nsc.org/cellphonekit.

**Use:** At least 17 States and the District of Columbia have worked with employers in their States to develop distracted driving policies (GHSA, 2013).

**Effectiveness Concerns:** No employer distracted driving program has currently been evaluated.

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A4, Section 2.1.

**Distracted Driving References**

78 Fed. Reg. 24,817 (proposed April 26, 2013). Visual-Manual NHTSA Driver Distraction Guidelines for In-Vehicle Electronic Devices.

AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. (2014, August). *Violations and enforcement of graduated driver licensing restrictions in North Carolina and Washington State*. http://docplayer.net/27987553-Violations-and-enforcement-of-graduated-driver-licensing-restrictions-in-north-carolina-and-washington-state.html

AAAFTS. (2016, February). *2015 traffic safety culture index.* https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/02/2015TrafficSafetyCultureIndexReport.pdf

AAAFTS. (2018, March). 2017 Traffic Safety Culture Index. *AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety.* https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/03/TSCI-2017-Report.pdf

Aghaei, A. S., Donmez, B., Liu, C. C., He, D., Liu, G., Plataniotis, K. N., Chen, H.-Y. W., & Sojoudi, Z. (2016). Smart driver monitoring: When signal processing meets human factors: in the driver's seat. *IEEE Signal Processing Magazine*, *33*(6), 35-48.

Carney, C., Harland, K. K., & McGehee, D. V. (2018). Examining teen driver crashes and the prevalence of distraction: Recent trends, 2007–2015. *Journal of Safety Research*, *64*, 21-27.

Carney, C., McGehee, D., Harland, K., Weiss, M., & Raby, M. (2015). *Using naturalistic driving data to assess the prevalence of environmental factors and driver behaviors in teen driver crashes.* AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/12/2015TeenCrashCausationReport.pdf

Chaudhary, N. K., Casanova-Powell, T. D., Cosgrove, L., Reagan, I., & Williams, A. (2014, March). *Evaluation of NHTSA distracted driving demonstration projects in Connecticut and New York* (Report No. DOT HS 81 635). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1959

Chaudhary, N. K., Connolly, J., Tison, J., Solomon, M., & Elliott, K. (2015, January). *Evaluation of the NHTSA distracted driving high-visibility enforcement demonstration projects in California and Delaware* (Report No. DOT HS 812 108). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1995

Chaudhary, N. K., Williams, A. F., & Preusser, D. (2018, January 7-11). *Evaluation of Connecticut's 2008 graduated driver licensing upgrades* (Paper No. 18-02614). Transportation Research Board 97th Annual Meeting, Washington, DC.

Cosgrove, L., Chaudhary, N., & Reagan, I. (2011, July). *Four high-visibility enforcement waves in Connecticut and New York reduce hand-held phone use.* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 811 845). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1937

Dingus, T. A., Guo, F., Lee, S., Antin, J. F., Perez, M., Buchanan-King, M., & Hankey, J. (2016). Driver crash risk factors and prevalence evaluation using naturalistic driving data. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, *113*(10), 2636-2641.

Donmez, B., Boyle, L. N, & Lee, J.D. (2007). Safety implications of providing real-time feedback to distracted drivers. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *39*, 581-590.

Ehsani, J. P., Ionides, E., Klauer, S. G., Perlus, J. G., & Gee, B. T. (2016). Effectiveness of cell phone restrictions for young drivers: Review of the evidence. *Transportation Research Record*, *2602*(1), 35–42. https://doi.org/10.3141/2602-05

Foss, R. D., Goodwin, A. H. (2014). Distracted driver behaviors and distracting conditions among adolescent drivers: Findings from a naturalistic study. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, *54*, S50-S60.

Foss, R. D., Goodwin, A. H., McCartt, A. T., & Hellinga, L. A. (2009). Short-term effects of a teenage driver cell phone restriction. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *41*, 419-424.

Governors Highway Safety Association. (2013, July). *Distracted driving: Survey of the States*. www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2016-12/2013_distraction.pdf

GHSA. (2019, September). *Teen and novice drivers.* www.ghsa.org/taxonomy/term/331

GHSA. (2020, February). *Distracted driving.* www.ghsa.org/issues/distracted-driving

Goodwin, A., Foss, R., Hedlund, J., Sohn, J., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L., & Hardy, K. K. (2005). *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, Volume 16*: *A guide for reducing alcohol-related collisions*. Transportation Research Board. https://trb.org/publications/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v16.pdf

Goodwin, A., Foss, R., Sohn, J., & Mayhew, D. (2007). *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, Volume 19*: *A guide for reducing collisions involving young drivers*. Transportation Research Board. https://download.nap.edu/cart/download.cgi?record_id=14103

Goodwin, A. H., O'Brien, N. P., & Foss, R. D. (2012). Effect of North Carolina's restriction on teenage driver cell phone use two years after implementation. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 48,* 363-367.

Hamilton, B., Arnold, L. S., & Tefft, B. C. (2013, November). *Distracted driving and perceptions of hands-free technologies. Findings from the 2013 Traffic Safety Culture Index*. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. www.cogosense.com/distracted-driving/images/research/whitepapers/2013-TSCI-Cognitive-Distraction.pdf

Hedlund, J., & Compton, R. (2005). Graduated driver licensing research in 2004 and 2005. *Journal of Safety Research*, *36*, 109-119.

Horrey, W. J., Lesch, M. F., & Garabet, A. (2008). Assessing the awareness of performance decrements in distracted drivers. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *40*, 675-682.

Insurance Institute for Highway Safety. (2012, July 3). They're working: Insurance collision claims data show which new technologies are preventing crashes. *Status Report*, Special Issue: Crash Avoidance, *47*(5). http://multivu.prnewswire.com/broadcast/56874/56874sr.pdf

IIHS. (2014, October 24). Technology that pays attention to the road when drivers don't. In *Status Report, Eyes on the road, Searching for answers to the problem of distracted driving, 49*(8). www.iihs.org/api/datastoredocument/status-report/pdf/49/8

IIHS. (2019). *Teenagers - May 2019* (Web page).www.iihs.org/iihs/topics/laws/graduatedlicenseintro?topicName=teenagers

Keating, D. P. (2007). Understanding adolescent development: Implications for driving safety. *Journal of Safety Research*, *38*, 147-157.

Klauer, S. G., Guo, F., Simons-Morton, B. G., Ouimet, M. C., Lee, S. E., & Dingus, T. A. (2014). Distracted driving and risk of road crashes among novice and experienced drivers. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, *370*, 54-59.

Koesdwiady, A., Soua, R., Karray, F., & Kamel, M. S. (2016). Recent trends in driver safety monitoring systems: State of the art and challenges. *IEEE Transactions on Vehicular Technology*, *66*(6), 4550-4563.

Kuo, J., Lenné, M. G., Mulhall, M., Sletten, T., Anderson, C., Howard, M., Rajaratnam, S., Magee, M., & Collins, A. (2019). Continuous monitoring of visual distraction and drowsiness in shift-workers during naturalistic driving. *Safety Science, 119*, 112-116.

Lansdown, T.C. (2002). Individual differences during driver secondary task performance: Verbal protocol and visual allocation findings. *Accident Analysis & Prevention¸ 34*, 655-662.

Lissy, K., Cohen, J., Park, M., & Graham, J. D. (2000). Cellular phones and driving: Weighing the risks and benefits. *Risk in Perspective*, *8*(6), 1-6.

Masten, S. V., Foss, R. D., & Marshall, S. W. (2013). Graduated driver licensing program component calibrations and their association with fatal crash involvement. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 57*, 105-113.

McCartt, A. T., Kidd, D. G., & Teoh, E. R. (2014). Driver cellphone and texting bans in the United States: Evidence of effectiveness. *Annals of Advances in Automotive Medicine, 58*, 99.

McCartt, A. T., & Teoh, E. R. (2015). Tracking the progress in teenage driver crash risk in the United States since the advent of graduated driver licensing programs. *Journal of Safety Research, 53*, 1-9.

McCartt, A. T., Teoh, E. R., Fields, M., Braitman, K. A., & Hellinga, L. A. (2010). Graduated licensing laws and fatal crashes of teenage drivers: A national study. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 11*(3), 240-248.

National Center for Statistics and Analysis. (2019). *Distracted driving in fatal crashes, 2017* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 812 700). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812700

NCSA. (2020). *Distracted driving 2018* (Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 812 926). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812926

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (n.d.). *Distraction.* https://one.nhtsa.gov/Research/Human-Factors/Distraction

NHTSA. (2010). *Overview of the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration's driver distraction program* (Report No. DOT HS 811 299). www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/distracted_driving/pdf/811299.pdf

NHTSA. (2012). *Blueprint for ending distracted driving* (Report No. DOT HS 811 629). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811629.pdf

Oregon Department of Transportation. (2017). *Reducing distracted driving in Oregon: An interdisciplinary approach to a statewide problem.* www.oregon.gov/ODOT/Safety/Documents/DistractedDrivingReport.pdf

Owens, J. M., Dingus, T. A., Guo, F., Fang, Y., Perez, M., & McClafferty, J. (2018). *Crash risk of cell phone use while driving: A case-crossover analysis of naturalistic driving data.* AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/01/CellPhoneCrashRisk_FINAL.pdf

Persaud, B., Lyon, C., Eccles, K., & Soika, J. (2016). Safety effectiveness of centerline plus shoulder rumble strips on two-lane rural roads. *Journal of Transportation Engineering*, *142*(5).

Ranney, T. A. (2008). *Driver distraction: A review of the current state-of-knowledge* (Report No. DOT HS 810 787). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/NRD/Multimedia/PDFs/Crash%20Avoidance/2008/810787.pdf

Retting, R., Sprattler, K., Rothenberg, H., & Sexton, T. (2017). *Evaluating the enforceability of texting laws: Strategies tested in Connecticut and Massachusetts* (Report No. DOT HS 812 367). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/812367-textenforce_ctandma.pdf

Rudisill, T. M., Smith, G., Chu, H., & Zhu, M. (2018). Cellphone legislation and self-reported behaviors among subgroups of adolescent US drivers. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, *62*(5), 618-625.

Sanbonmatsu, D. M., Strayer, D. L., Behrends, A. A., Ward, N., & Watson, J. M. (2016). Why drivers use cell phones and support legislation to restrict this practice. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *92*, 22-33.

Schick, A., Vegega, M., & Chaudhary, N. (2014). *Distracted driving high-visibility enforcement demonstrations in California and Delaware* (Traffic Tech. Report No. DOT HS 811 993). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2022

Schroeder, P., Wilbur, M., & Peña, R. (2018, March). National survey on distracted driving attitudes and behaviors - 2015 (Report No. DOT HS 812 461). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/35960

Schroeder, P., Meyers, M., & Kostyniuk, L. (2013). *National survey on distracted driving attitudes and behaviors – 2012* (Report No. DOT HS 811 729). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811729.pdf

Scopatz, R. A., & Zhou, Y. (2016). *Effect of electronic device use on pedestrian safety: A literature review* (Report No. DOT HS 812 256). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/812256-effectelectronicdeviceusepedestriansafety.pdf

Strayer, D. L., Cooper, J. M., Goethe, R. M., McCarty, M. M., Getty, D., & Biondi, F. (2017). *Visual and cognitive demands of using in-vehicle infotainment systems*. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/11/VisualandCognitive.pdf

Stutts, J., Knipling, R. R., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L., & Hardy, K. K. (2005). *A guide for addressing collisions involving distracted or fatigued drivers* (Report 500, Vol. 14). Transportation Research Board. https://download.nap.edu/cart/download.cgi?record_id=23420

Tison, J., Chaudhary, N., & Cosgrove, L. (2011). *National phone survey on distracted driving attitudes and behaviors* (Report No. DOT HS 811 555). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. at www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811555.pdf

Trivedi, N., Haynie, D., Bible, J., Liu, D., & Simons-Morton, B. (2017). Cell phone use while driving: Prospective association with emerging adult use. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *106*, 450-455.

Vegega, M., Jones, B., & Monk, C. (2013). *Understanding the effects of distracted driving and developing strategies to reduce resulting deaths and injuries: A Report to Congress* (Report No. DOT HS 812 053). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1999

Williams, A. F. (2007). Contribution of the components of graduated licensing to crash reductions. *Journal of Safety Research, 38*, 177-184.

World Health Organization & NHTSA. (2011). *Mobile phone use: A growing problem of driver distraction*. www.who.int/violence_injury_prevention/publications/road_traffic/-distracted_driving_en.pdf

Zhu, M., Zhao, S., & Long, D. L. (2016). The association of graduated driver licensing with nondriver transport-related injuries among adolescents. *Epidemiology, 27*(5), 620-623.

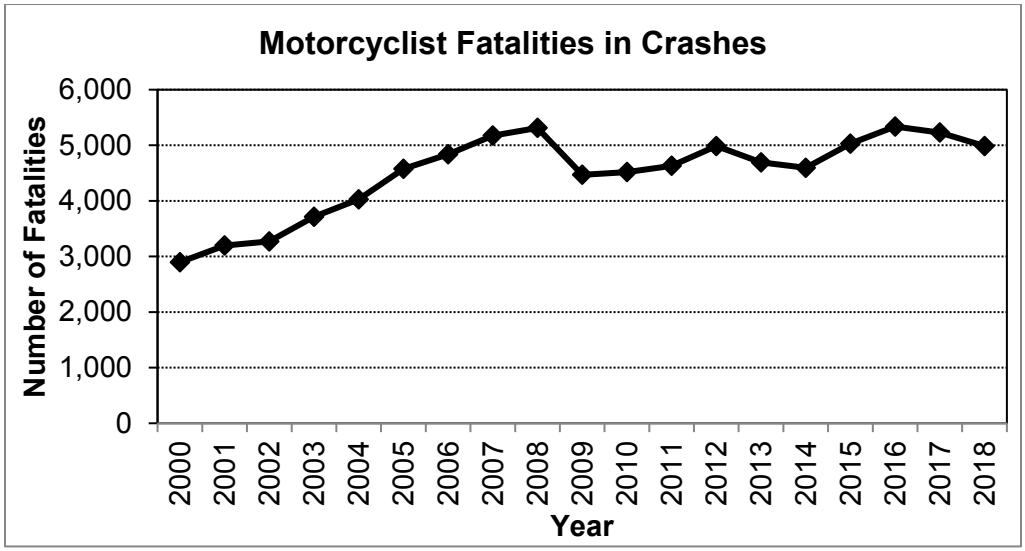
# 5.Motorcycle Safety

## Overview

A motorcycle is inherently more difficult to operate than a passenger vehicle because it requires more physical skill and strength. The relationship of motorcycle speed and stability is also a critical consideration when riding a motorcycle, as the stability of a motorcycle is relative to speed. As speed increases, the motorcycle becomes more stable, requiring less effort from the operator to maintain its balance, even as it becomes less maneuverable. At lower speeds, the motorcycle becomes less stable, requiring greater effort from the operator to balance it.

A motorcycle offers the rider virtually no protection in a crash. Crash data confirm this observation. For example, NHTSA estimates that in 2018, motorcyclists were about 27 times more likely than passenger car occupants to die in traffic crashes per vehicle mile traveled (VMT), and motorcyclists were killed at a rate of 24.83 fatalities per 100 million VMT compared to 0.91 fatalities per 100 million VMT for passenger cars (NCSA, 2020).

**Trends.** Motorcycling has become increasingly popular over the last 20 years and the total VMT on motorcycles has nearly doubled since 1998 (NCSA, 2000; NCSA, 2020). Along with this growth in popularity are increases in crashes and fatalities involving motorcyclists. From 2000 to 2008 the number of motorcyclists killed in crashes increased by 83% and the number injured increased by 66%. In 2008 motorcyclist fatalities increased for the 11th consecutive year to 5,312, a level not seen since 1980 (NHTSA, 2011). Between 2008 and 2014 the number of motorcyclist fatalities fluctuated, but steadily increased since 2014 (see figure below) with a slight decrease in 2017 and again in 2018. The most recent data show that in 2018 there were 4,985 fatalities, a 5% decrease from the 5,229 motorcyclists killed in 2017 (NCSA, 2020). Motorcyclists accounted for 14% of total motor vehicle related fatalities during 2018.




Source data: NHTSA (2011), NCSA (2020)

In 2018 some 38% of motorcyclist fatalities (NCSA, 2020) and 55% of all motorcyclists injured (NHTSA, 2020) occurred in single-vehicle crashes. More than half (52%) of all fatalities occurred on weekdays, and 59% of fatalities occurred in daylight (NCSA, 2020). Ninety-one percent of motorcyclists killed were males (NHTSA, 2020), and passengers comprised 6% of motorcycle fatalities (NCSA, 2020).

While the number of motorcyclists involved in injury crashes increased among all age groups, one trend that has continued for about 20 years are increases in fatalities and injuries among older motorcyclists. In 2018 some 63% of the motorcyclists killed in crashes were 35 or older and 46% were 45 or older, compared to 1998, when 45% of the motorcyclists killed were 35 or older and 22% were 45 or older (NHTSA, 2020). Moreover, injuries among motorcyclists 50 and older increased at the fastest rate. Motorcyclists 50 and older were estimated to account for 15% and 26% of motorcyclists injured nationally during 1998 and 2008, respectively (NHTSA, 1998, 2008). In 2018 motorcyclists 50 and older were estimated to account for 31% of the motorcyclists injured (NHTSA, 2018b [FARS]; NHTSA, 2018a [CRSS]). Note that CRSS estimates and NASS GES estimates are not comparable due to different sample designs.

Speeding is more prevalent in fatal crashes involving motorcycle operators than among other types of motor vehicle operators. Thirty-one percent of all motorcycle operators involved in fatal crashes in 2018 were speeding, compared to 18% of passenger car drivers (NCSA, 2020). Motorcycle operators involved in fatal crashes had worse prior driving records than other passenger vehicle drivers, including more driving while impaired (DWI) convictions, speeding convictions, and suspensions or revocations. Additionally, 28% of the motorcycle operators involved in crashes in 2018 did not have valid motorcycle operator licenses. In 2018 there were 26% of the motorcycle operators killed in crashes who had BACs of .08 g/dL or higher. Nationally, 38% of fatally injured motorcyclists in known cases of helmet use were not helmeted, although this percentage varies from State to State from a high of 81% in Indiana to a low of 3% in Louisiana. Among the 19 States with mandatory helmet use by all motorcycle riders, the known helmet use in fatal crashes ranged from 62% in West Virginia to 97% in Louisiana. In contrast, States with helmet use requirements for only a subset of the motorcyclists or no requirement had known helmet use in fatal crashes ranging from 19% in Indiana to 58% in Michigan.

Other trends in motorcycle safety relate to the types of motorcycles being produced and purchased. The number of registrations for all types of motorcycles has steadily increased and doubled from 2002 (4.2 million) to 2017 (8.4 million); there was a slight decrease in total registrations in 2018 (8.3 million) (Toeh, 2019). The majority of registrations in 2018 were cruiser (3.5 million) and touring bikes (1.8 million). Registrations for supersport motorcycles, which are built on racing bike frames and can reach speeds of nearly 190 mph, peaked between 2008 and 2010, and then declined to about 602,000 in 2018; however, supersport registrations are still 66% higher than in 2002. Operators of cruisers (32%) and supersport bikes (22%) were the highest number of fatalities among all motorcycle rider deaths in 2017 (IIHS, 2018). Fifty-six percent of supersport operator fatalities in 2017 were 30 years old or younger. In contrast, the majority of fatally injured cruiser (84%) and touring bike operators (94%) were older than 30. Motorcyclist fatality rates per 100,000 registered vehicles have increased from 56.36 in 2009 to 57.52 in 2018 (NHTSA, 2020). Helmet use varied among operators of different motorcycle types

in 2017; 81% of fatally injured supersport operators and 51% of cruiser and touring bike operators were helmeted (IIHS, 2018). These results suggest that the types of risks taken may vary in association with the style of bike chosen (Teoh & Campbell, 2010).

Another emerging trend having safety implications is the increased use of low-powered cycles such as mopeds, electric-assist bicycles, and scooters. State laws defining and regulating these vehicles vary as do crash reporting procedures, making it difficult to track crash data trends. While these are different vehicles in terms of their speed and power capabilities (most States classify these vehicles based on criteria including maximum speed, generally 20 to 30 mph), some countermeasures aimed at motorcycles (such as helmet use laws) apply to low-powered cycles. However, riders of low-powered cycles may face different safety problems than motorcycle riders.

## Strategies to Improve Motorcycle Safety

Various strategies are employed to improve motorcycle safety. The most demonstrably effective strategy is the use of motorcycle helmets that meet FMVSS 218. Other strategies include training and the use of high-visibility gear. It is generally understood that motorcycle riders should be properly trained and licensed. They should also be alert and aware of the risks they face while riding while impaired by alcohol or drugs. These and other strategies are discussed in the National Agenda for Motorcycle Safety (NAMS), a comprehensive, collaborative, and multidisciplinary blueprint for motorcycle safety (NHTSA, 2000a). The recommendations of the NAMS were prioritized in 2013 (NHTSA, 2013a). See also the NAMS Implementation Guide (NHTSA, 2006), NHTSA's Motorcycle Safety 5-Year Plan (NHTSA, 2019), the U.S. DOT *Action Plan to Reduce Motorcycle Fatalitie*s (U.S. DOT, 2007), and the CDC's *Motorcycle Safety Guide* (CDC, 2011). In addition, a review of State Motorcycle Safety Program Technical Assessments summarizes program recommendations, implementations, and barriers to implementation from nine State motorcycle safety program technical assessments conducted by NHTSA (Baer & Skemer, 2009).

The most demonstrable objectives for improving motorcycle safety are to increase helmet use and reduce alcohol- and drug-impaired motorcycle riding. These objectives are difficult to accomplish. However, universal helmet laws are highly effective in assuring that virtually all motorcycle riders use helmets, but they also are politically difficult to enact and retain. Based on the research discussed in this document, strategies based only on communications and outreach to promote helmet use and reduce impaired motorcycling appear to be no more successful with motorcycle riders than other communications and outreach campaigns for other road users.

Another objective is to increase other motorists' awareness of motorcyclists by increasing the visibility of motorcyclists and educating drivers on the importance of sharing the road with motorcycles. Daytime running lights (DRLs) for motorcycles improve motorcycle conspicuity, but there is evidence suggesting that the increased prevalence of DRLs in the vehicle fleet has reduced the benefits of DRLs on motorcycles (for example, see Jenness et al., 2011, and Pierowicz et al., 2011). Most motorcycles on the road have headlights that turn on automatically when the engines are started (NCHRP, 2008, Strategy 11.1 D2). In addition, as of June 2017, at least 24 States required daytime headlight—some States required use on all motorcycles while

others specified requirement based on year of the motorcycle model manufacture (MSF, 2017; MLF, 2018). At least 22 other States and the District of Columbia that require the use of headlights permit modulating headlights (MLF, 2018). Modulating headlights cause the headlight to move from high- to low-beam rapidly. These can increase motorcycle visibility (Olson et al., 1979), but integration of these devices into the motorcycle fleet has been slow.

A similar way to improve motorcycle conspicuity is to manipulate the front-light configuration. A 2012 simulation study by Cavallo and Pinto showed that daytime running lights on cars create "visual noise" that interferes with the lighting of motorcycles and affects their visual conspicuity (Cavallo & Pinto, 2012). As a potential solution, Pinto et al. (2014) tested three front-light configurations in a daytime environment that included cars using day running lights. They found that while adding more lights to the configuration did not improve conspicuity over a typical single front-light configuration, changing the color of that light from white to yellow resulted in significantly higher detection (74% versus 54%). A similar study found that a single, white, central headlight with two additional yellow lights on the forks and one on the motorcyclist's helmet increased motorcyclist conspicuity both in daylight and nighttime driving (Ranchet et al., 2016). These findings suggest that lighting has a role promoting motorcycle conspicuity.

Motorcycle crashes can also be prevented, or the crash severity mitigated, by the use of vehicle technologies such as antilock brakes (Bayly et al., 2006). For example, two studies by IIHS found that motorcycles with antilock brakes had a lower fatal crash involvement than motorcycles without antilock brakes (Teoh, 2011, 2013).

Many environmental factors can also affect motorcycle safety. Slippery roadway surfaces and markings, surface irregularities and debris, unpaved shoulders, and unforgiving roadway barriers all can be dangerous. These issues are not included in this guide because State Highway Safety Offices have little or no authority or responsibility for them. See National Cooperative Highway Safety Research Report 500, Volume 22, *Guide for Addressing Collisions Involving Motorcycles*, for a thorough discussion of environmental and other strategies. www.trb.org/Publications/Public/Blurbs/A_Guide_for_Addressing_Collisions_Involving_Motorc_160626.aspx

## Resources

For a broad set of resources for State safety agencies and on-going research efforts:

- Government Accountability Office's Report to Congressional Committees – www.gao.gov/assets/660/650037.pdf
- The Community Guide's *Motorcycle Helmets: Universal Helmet Laws – www.thecommunityguide.org/sites/default/files/assets/MVOI-Motorcycle-Helmets-Laws-Mandating-Use_1.pdf*

NHTSA's web pages:

- Motorcycles – www.nhtsa.gov/road-safety/motorcycles
- NHTSA's NCSA Motor Vehicle Traffic Crash Data Resource Page - https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/#!/
- Research and Evaluation - www.nhtsa.gov/research-data

- Behavioral Safety Research Reports – https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov
- www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/motorcycle-safety

# Motorcycle Safety Countermeasures

Countermeasures to improve motorcycle safety are listed in the table below. The table is intended to provide a rough estimate of each countermeasure's effectiveness, use, cost, and time required for implementation. Effectiveness is shown using a five-star rating system.

- Countermeasures that receive ★★★★ or ★★★★★ have been determined to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ★★★ are considered promising, and likely to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there is limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is undetermined based on current evidence (☆☆).

States, communities, and other organizations are encouraged to use ★★★, and especially ★★★★ or ★★★★★, countermeasures, and to exercise caution when selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, as these countermeasures do not have conclusive evidence on their effectiveness. When deploying a new or emerging countermeasure with unproven effectiveness, it is valuable to include an evaluation of the countermeasure in connection with its use.

Further details about the symbols and terms used are included after the table. Effectiveness, cost, and time to implement can vary substantially from State to State and community to community. Costs for many countermeasures are difficult to measure, so the summary terms are very approximate.

Each countermeasure to improve motorcycle safety is discussed individually in this chapter. Full descriptions are included for ★★★, ★★★★ and ★★★★★ countermeasures. Brief descriptions are included for ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Further details about the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures are included in Appendix A5 to this report.

### 1. Motorcycle Helmets

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 Universal Motorcycle Helmet Use Laws | ★★★★★ | $ | Medium | Short |
| 1.2 Motorcycle Helmet Use Promotion Programs | ☆ | Varies | Low to Medium | Varies |
| 1.3 Motorcycle Helmet Law Enforcement: Noncompliant Helmets | ☆ | $ | Unknown | Medium |

### 2. Alcohol Impairment

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 Alcohol-Impaired Motorcyclists: Detection, Enforcement, and Sanctions | ★★★ | Varies | Unknown | Varies |
| 2.2 Alcohol-Impaired Motorcyclists: Communications | ☆ | $$ | Medium | Medium |

### 3. Motorcycle Rider Licensing and Training

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Motorcycle Rider Licensing | ☆ | $ | High | Medium |
| 3.2 Motorcycle Rider Training | ☆☆ | $$ | High | Varies |

### 4. Communications and Outreach

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4.1 Conspicuity and Protective Clothing | ☆ | Varies | High | Medium |
| 4.2 Motorist Awareness of Motorcyclists | ☆ | Varies | High | Medium |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ★★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective by several high-quality evaluations with consistent results |
| ★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective in certain situations |
| ★★★ | Likely to be effective based on balance of evidence from high-quality evaluations or other sources |
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Motorcycle Helmets

### 1.1 Universal Motorcycle Helmet Use Laws

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Motorcycle helmets are highly effective in protecting motorcycle riders' heads in crashes. Research indicates that helmets reduce motorcycle rider fatalities by 22 to 42% and brain injuries by 41 to 69% (Coben et al., 2007; Cummings et al., 2006; Deuterman, 2004; Liu et al., 2008; NHTSA, 2003; NHTSA, 2006; NHTSA, 2019). A Cochrane Collaboration review of 61 studies concluded that risk reductions were on the high end of the ranges mentioned above, with higher quality studies indicating that the protective effect of helmets was about a 42% reduction in risk of fatality in a crash and 69% for risk of a head injury in a crash. This review found that there was insufficient evidence to determine the effect on neck or facial injuries, or the effects of types of FMVSS 218 compliant helmets on injury outcomes (Liu et al., 2008). Others have found no evidence that helmets increase the risk of neck injuries (Brewer et al., 2013; NCHRP, 2008, Strategy E1; NHTSA, 2000; Philip et al., 2013; Ulmer & Preusser, 2003).

State universal coverage helmet-use laws are effective at increasing helmet use. In 2018 observed compliant helmet use was 83% across States with universal helmet laws that cover all riders, and 57% across States with no law or partial coverage laws (NCSA, 2019). A systematic review of U.S. motorcycle helmet laws found that States with universal coverage laws: (1) had motorcycle helmet use rates 53 percentage points higher than States with partial coverage or no law; (2) had 29% fewer motorcycle fatalities; and (3) had lower fatality rates per registered motorcycle and per vehicle mile traveled (Guide to Community Preventive Services, 2013).

Nationally in 2018, FMVSS 218 compliant helmet use was 71% (NCSA, 2019). Use of noncompliant helmets increased slightly from 7% in 2017 to 9% in 2018, while helmet non-use decreased slightly from 28% in 2017 to 20% in 2018.

**Use:** The first universal helmet law was enacted in 1966. Universal laws were in effect in 47 States and the District of Columbia by 1975. After Federal penalties were eliminated in 1975 for States failing to have a universal law, about half the States repealed their laws. Several States have enacted or repealed helmet laws since then. The IIHS (2019) summarizes the helmet law history in each State.

As of 2019 there were 19 States and the District of Columbia that had helmet laws covering all riders (IIHS, 2019). Three States (Illinois, Iowa, and New Hampshire) did not have motorcycle helmet laws. The remaining States had laws covering only riders under a specified age, typically 17 or 20. The motorcycle helmet laws of 30 States and the District of Columbia apply to motorcycles. Seventeen States have motorcycle helmet laws that do not cover certain low-powered cycles, typically those with engine displacements under 50cc or with maximum speeds less than 30 mph.

**Effectiveness:** Studies of helmet use among motorcyclists indicate that universal helmet use laws are effective in increasing helmet use, which reduces injuries, decreases hospital admissions

and treatment costs, and lowers insurance claims. Studies in States that enacted universal helmet laws observed use rates of 90% or higher immediately after the laws became effective, compared to 50% or lower before the laws (Ulmer & Preusser, 2003, Section II). States that repealed universal helmet laws observed the opposite effect, as use rates dropped from above 90% to about 50% (Kyrychenko & McCartt, 2006; Preusser et al., 2000, Section V; Ulmer & Preusser, 2003, Sections IV and V). Injury severity and mortality rates increased in States that repealed universal helmet laws, with post-repeal rates similar to rates in States with partial motorcycle helmet laws (Striker et al., 2016; Wiznia et al., 2016). Carter et al. (2017) evaluated the impact of the repeal of Michigan's helmet law by comparing motorcyclist fatalities, injuries, and helmet use rates over a period of 12 months before and after the repeal. Among riders involved in crashes, helmet use decreased 24% to 27% after the repeal. The decrease was sharper among alcohol-intoxicated riders, among passengers than operators, and among females than males. A 14% increase was observed in head injury trauma in hospitalized motorcycle riders. There was no change in overall fatality rates in the 12 months before and after the repeal. Reenactment of a universal law in Louisiana (after a cycle of repeals and reenactments since 1968) resulted in increases in helmet use among riders involved in crashes, from 42% before reenactment to 87% following (Gilbert et al., 2008).

The Community Preventive Services Task Force conducted a systematic review of 60 studies (through August 2012) evaluating motorcycle helmet laws in the United States. This review found that universal helmet use laws consistently increased helmet use and decreased injuries and deaths associated with motorcycling. Universal helmet laws are also associated with economic benefits at the societal level due to avoided productivity loss and healthcare costs (Peng et al., 2017). The Task Force concluded that universal coverage laws were substantially more effective than partial coverage laws or no law (Guide to Community Preventive Services, 2013; Peng et al., 2017). The U.S. General Accounting Office (GAO, now the Government Accountability Office) reviewed 46 studies of State helmet laws published before 1990. GAO concluded that motorcycle rider fatality rates were 20 to 40% lower with universal helmet laws (GAO, 1991; Ulmer & Preusser, 2003, Section II). Studies since 1990 confirm these results (Cummings et al., 2006; Houston & Richardson, 2008; Kyrychenko & McCartt, 2006; Morris, 2006; Ulmer & Northrup, 2005; Ulmer & Preusser, 2003, Section II).

Some States have helmet laws that mandate use for young riders. Helmet use is generally low in these States (GAO, 1991; Olsen et al., 2016), and these partial coverage laws do not translate into meaningful reductions in young rider fatality rates (Brooks et al., 2010; Houston, 2007). Additionally, Weiss et al. (2010) compared the risk of traumatic brain injury among youth in States with limited-age helmet laws and States with universal helmet laws. They found a 37% increase in risk of traumatic brain injury requiring hospitalization for youth in States with partial coverage helmet laws compared to States with universal helmet laws. A recent study of emergency department and inpatient records in 11 States (5 with universal helmet laws and 6 with partial helmet laws) reported increases of 2 percentage points in traumatic brain injuries in States with partial helmet laws compared to States with universal helmet laws (Olsen et al., 2016). Injuries to the head and neck areas were found to be lower and injuries to extremities higher in States with universal coverage helmet laws. Overall, the study concluded that helmet use was associated with reduced risk of head, facial, and traumatic brain injury, as well as motorcycle-crash related fatalities. However, this risk reduction was less pronounced in States

with universal helmet laws than States with partial helmet laws. Another study reported a reduction in fatality rates among all ages for partial coverage laws compared to no law, but the effect was much smaller (7% to 8%) than that for universal coverage (22% to 33%) (Houston & Richardson, 2008). Moreover, when Florida eliminated the requirement that all motorcycle riders 21 and older wear helmets, there was an 81% increase in motorcyclist fatalities (Ulmer & Northrup, 2005). Fatalities even increased among riders under 21 who were still covered by the helmet law.

Hospital admissions and treatment costs have also increased following repeal of universal helmet laws (Derrick & Faucher, 2009; GAO, 1991; Peng et al., 2017). Almost half of all motorcyclists admitted to hospitals lacked sufficient health care insurance or were covered by government services, so the public ultimately shares many costs, as well as a greater long-term burden of care (Derrick & Faucher, 2009; GAO, 1991; NHTSA, 2019). In addition, an analysis of insurance claims data found that when Michigan's helmet law was amended from a universal coverage law to a partial coverage law (effective since April 2012), claims increased by more than 22% compared with control States (HLDI, 2013). Medical costs related to motorcycle crashes are typically higher in States with partial helmet laws. Olsen et al. (2016) reported that median medical costs were 37% lower for emergency department visits and 21% lower for in-patient hospital charges in States with universal helmet laws. The Community Preventive Services Task Force found in their systematic review of 22 studies that universal coverage motorcycle helmet laws resulted in significant economic benefits (Guide to Community Preventive Services, 2013; Community Preventive Services Task Force, 2017; Peng et al., 2017). These studies show that universal coverage laws provide greater safety and cost benefits than laws that cover only a specific age group or riders having a certain amount of insurance.

**Costs:** Once legislation requiring universal helmet use has been enacted, implementation costs are minimal. The inevitable controversy surrounding the legislation will help to publicize the new law extensively. Motorcycle helmet laws can be enforced during regular traffic patrol operations because helmet use is easily observed.

**Time to implement:** Although a universal helmet use law can be implemented as soon as the law is enacted, enacting such a law is a complex and time-consuming process, and may require the involvement of a "champion."

**Other issues:**

- **Opposition to motorcycle helmet laws:** Any effort to enact a universal helmet law can expect immediate, well-coordinated, and highly political opposition (NHTSA, 2003). Helmet law opponents claim that helmet laws impinge on individual rights. They also claim that helmets interfere with motorcycle riders' vision or hearing, though research shows that these effects are minimal (NHTSA, 1996). See Jones and Bayer (2007) for a history of opposition to helmet laws in the United States. Derrick and Faucher (2009) also discuss national policy, organized opposition, and helmet law changes over four decades.
- **Noncompliant helmets:** Some riders in States with universal helmet laws wear helmets that do not comply with FMVSS 218 (NCSA, 2019). See the discussion in Appendix A5, Section 1.3.

- **Compliance Benefits from Enacting Other Safety Laws:** Helmet law compliance has been shown to benefit from the enactment and enforcement of other motorcycle safety laws. In 2007 existing motorcycle safety laws in Puerto Rico were augmented to reduce the legal BAC limit to .02 g/dL, and require motorcycle riders to wear protective safety apparel, along with other requirements. One benefit of the amended law was that the use of DOT-compliant motorcycle helmets increased, even though helmet laws already existed (Fell et al., 2017). From 2006 to 2007 Puerto Rico riders' use of DOT-compliant motorcycle helmets rose from 39.4% to 56.4% and continued to increase to greater than 70% three years later. Observed DOT-compliant helmet use reached 86%, 4 years after the 2007 Puerto Rico law change.

### 1.2 Motorcycle Helmet Use Promotion Programs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Varies |

A few States with or without universal motorcycle helmet-use laws promote helmet use through communications and outreach campaigns. NHTSA has developed helmet use promotion brochures, flyers, and PSAs suitable for television and radio that are available online. NCHRP (2008) describes elements that should be included in a campaign should one be undertaken. The WHO has developed a manual for decision-makers and safety practitioners to use when developing programs to improve motorcycle helmet use (see Chapter 3 in WHO, 2006).

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *There appear to be no formal evaluations of the effect of helmet use promotion programs in States without universal helmet laws (NCHRP, 2008).*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A5, Section 1.2.

### 1.3 Motorcycle Helmet Law Enforcement: Noncompliant Helmets

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

This countermeasure involves legislation and enforcement of laws that require motorcyclists to wear helmets that comply with FMVSS 218. For FMVSS 218 compliant helmet laws to be effective, they must be enforced, publicized, and adequately funded. NHTSA makes videos available for motorcyclists and law enforcement demonstrating how to identify compliant and noncompliant helmets, and how to choose a helmet that fits correctly (www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/motorcycle-safety/rider-safety). States may access these videos for their own outreach campaigns. NHTSA also produced a brochure on how to identify noncompliant helmets, www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/14283-identify_unsafe_motorcycle_helmets_070919_v4_tag.pdf. See NHTSA's *Choose the Right Motorcycle Helmet* page for information on identifying the correct helmet fit and helmet safety ratings (www.nhtsa.gov/motorcycle-safety/choose-right-motorcycle-helmet). NHTSA also produced publications designed to teach motorists about motorcycle rider behaviors of which they may not be aware (see www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/motorcycle-safety/motorist-awareness-motorcycles).

**Effectiveness Concern:** *The effectiveness of an enforcement program on noncompliant helmet use has not been evaluated.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A5, Section 1.3.

## 2. Alcohol Impairment

### 2.1 Alcohol-Impaired Motorcyclists: Detection, Enforcement, and Sanctions

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

Alcohol impairment is a substantial problem for motorcyclist operators, even more than for drivers of other motor vehicles. In 2018 some 25% of motorcycle operators involved in fatal crashes had BACs of .08 g/dL or higher, which is higher than the rate for passenger car drivers (21%) and light-truck drivers (19%) (NCSA, 2020). The highest percentages of alcohol-impaired motorcycle operators killed were in the 40-to-44 age group (34%) followed by the 45-to-49 age group (33%) and the 35-to-39 age group (33%), when compared to other age groups (NCSA, 2020). An additional 8% of fatally injured motorcycle operators had at least some measurable level of alcohol in their blood (BAC .01 to .07 g/dL). Fatally injured motorcycle operators with BACs .08 g/dL or higher were less likely to wear helmets than were sober operators – 53% versus 66%, respectively. In 2018 some 33% of operators killed in single-vehicle crashes on weekdays had BACs of .08 g/dL or above, and on weekends, this figure climbed to 44%. The 2013-2014 National Roadside Survey found that 5.0% of motorcycle operators on weekend nights had BACs of .08 g/dL or above, as compared to 1.4% of passenger vehicle drivers (Ramirez et al., 2016).

Motorcyclists are included in and affected by the comprehensive strategies to reduce alcohol-impaired driving discussed in detail in Chapter 1. However, some law enforcement and sanction strategies may be especially useful for motorcyclists, while others may be less effective.

Law enforcement officers on traffic patrol use characteristic driving behaviors, or cues, to identify drivers who may be impaired by alcohol. Some of the cues for motorcycle operators, such as trouble maintaining balance at a stop, are different from those for cars and trucks. Stuster (1993) identified and validated 14 cues useful for identifying alcohol-impaired motorcycle operators. NHTSA published a brochure and a law enforcement training video discussing the cues (NHTSA, 2013b). The cues for motorcycle operators are part of the Standardized Field Sobriety Tests training given to all LEOs.

Vehicle impoundment or forfeiture can be an effective deterrent to drinking and driving for all drivers (see Chapter 1, Section 4.3). It may be even more effective for motorcyclists. Research by Becker et al. (2003) confirmed earlier findings that many motorcyclists do not find traditional impaired driving sanctions such as fines and license suspension to be effective deterrents (although self-reported beliefs may not reflect actual effectiveness of these other sanctions). However, motorcyclists tended to be highly concerned for the safety and security of their motorcycles.

These findings suggest a potentially effective strategy to reduce alcohol-impaired motorcycling: HVE using officers trained in identifying impaired motorcycle riders and other motor vehicle drivers, with offender sanctions including vehicle impoundment or forfeiture. This strategy would treat motorcyclist operators on an equal footing with other vehicle drivers in impaired-driving enforcement and publicity, but it may be controversial and therefore difficult to enact or

enforce. However, a Washington State law that allows officers to impound motorcycles for impaired riding was not found to cause unforeseen problems with LEOs or with towing companies (McKnight et al., 2013).

**Use:** Thirty-two of 43 responding States reported that they have programs for law enforcement on how to detect impaired motorcyclists or enforce laws related to operating motorcycles while impaired (Baer et al., 2010). NHTSA (2006) provides resources for law enforcement and State programs on the detection of impaired riding, including examples of State programs that distribute the NHTSA cue cards and brochures to law enforcement (Illinois), provide a web-based seminar for officers (Minnesota), and regularly establish high-visibility law enforcement presence at major rider events (Ohio, Wisconsin).

**Effectiveness:** Some agencies have reported some success in using the cues for identifying alcohol-impaired motorcycle riders, but no evaluation data on the extent of their use are available (NCHRP, 2008, Strategy B3). Although there is limited evidence of the effects of enforcement and sanctions on impaired motorcycle riding, sobriety checkpoints and saturation patrols have demonstrated effectiveness in reducing impaired driving and crashes generally. See Chapter 1 for more information on enforcement strategies and other tools.

**Costs:** Law enforcement training costs are low and training material is available. Enforcement itself can be carried out during regular traffic patrol and as part of all impaired driving enforcement programs. A major campaign including alcohol-impaired motorcycle operators may require additional costs for publicity.

**Time to implement:** Law enforcement training can be conducted quickly. A major campaign will require 4 to 6 months to plan and implement.

**Other issues:**

- **BAC limits:** BACs as low as .05 g/dL caused some detectable levels of impairment, primarily in reaction time, among experienced riders in tests on controlled courses (Creaser et al., 2007). Puerto Rico passed a law in 2007 lowering the BAC limit for motorcyclists to .02 g/dL. In Fell et al. (2017), LEOs expressed that it was difficult to detect operator impairment with BAC of just over the .02 g/dL limit. Nevertheless, more than half of citations at checkpoints for riding impaired were for BACs between .01 and .07 g/dL, suggesting that checkpoints are a successful method of enforcing the .02 g/dL limit.
- **Drugs other than alcohol:** Drugs other than alcohol can impair motorcycle riders. Potentially impairing drugs include over-the-counter and prescription medications as well as illegal drugs. The 2013-2014 National Roadside Survey reported that 22.3% of nighttime weekend motorcycle operators who provided oral fluid and/or blood samples tested positive for drugs (illegal drugs or medications), compared to similar numbers of passenger car drivers, 24.3% (Kelly-Baker et al., 2017). The extent to which drugs impair driving performance or contribute to crashes is not well understood, however, for either four-wheeled vehicles or for motorcycles. Furthermore, individual differences in metabolism of drugs and level of impairment, as well as polydrug use complicate the understanding of drug impairment on motor vehicle drivers (Compton et al., 2009). (See

Compton et al.'s [2009] Report to Congress on drug-impaired driving for a discussion of current knowledge and recommendations for improving States data and records systems and statutes.) Law enforcement should consider drugs as potential impairing agents for motorcycle riders just as for other vehicle operators. See also Chapter 1, Section 7 on drug-impaired driving.

- **Targeted enforcement:** As with other crash problems, better identification of problem areas (either impaired riding or impaired riding crashes) and targeting enforcement to such locations, events, or times could improve enforcement effectiveness.
- **Alcohol Ignition Interlocks:** One strategy to reduce alcohol-impaired motorcycling is to use ignition interlocks to prevent impaired motorcyclists from being able to operate their motorcycles. Although it is feasible to implement interlocks on motorcycles, there are liability and safety concerns primarily associated with retests that must be considered. In a study of motorcycle interlocks (Marques & McKnight, 2017), retesting while riding was considered to be unsafe by most study participants. It can sometimes be difficult to find a safe place to stop and perform the retest. The requirements and option to implement motorcycle interlocks depends on State regulations. Some States require interlocks on all vehicles driven by offenders, while other States expressly forbid them on motorcycles, and the level of enforcement varies greatly between jurisdictions.

### 2.2 Alcohol-Impaired Motorcyclists: Communications and Outreach

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |

This countermeasure involves communications and outreach campaigns directed at drinking and riding. Although States typically implement these campaigns, they can also be conducted by local riding groups.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *A literature search found no evaluations of the safety effectiveness of any drinking and riding campaigns.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A5, Section 2.2.

## 3. Motorcycle Rider Licensing and Training

### 3.1 Motorcycle Rider Licensing

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Medium |

The goal of licensing is to ensure that motorcycle riders have the minimum skills needed to operate motorcycles safely (NHTSA, 2000). All 50 States, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico require motorcycle operators to obtain a motorcycle operator license or endorsement before they ride on public highways (MSF, 2018). Most States will waive the skills test, and sometimes the knowledge test, for motorcyclists who have completed approved motorcycle rider training courses, if the student passes the knowledge and skills tests administered at the conclusion of the course.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *Although this countermeasure is widely used, the effectiveness of current licensing and testing on crashes and safety has not been evaluated.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A5, Section 3.1.

### 3.2 Motorcycle Rider Training

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: High | Time: Varies |

This countermeasure involves rider education and training courses provided by States, rider organizations (for example, some ABATE and Gold Wing groups), manufacturers (Harley-Davidson), the U.S. military, and others. This training can be required for all motorcycle operators or those under a specified age.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure is widely used. Its effectiveness has been examined in several research studies. Despite some positive research findings, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A5, Section 3.2.

## 4. Communications and Outreach

### 4.1 Communications and Outreach: Conspicuity and Protective Clothing

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

This countermeasure involves communications and outreach campaigns promoting the use of protective clothing and measures that increase rider conspicuity, such as clothing and auxiliary devices. Measures that may increase rider conspicuity include wearing brightly colored clothing, clothing that incorporates retroreflective materials, and/or white- or bright-colored helmets (for increased visibility during day or night). Additional solutions include the use of continuous headlights, auxiliary head and brake lights, and flashing headlights.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure is widely used, but it has not been extensively studied. There is some evidence that certain approaches may lead to limited positive outcomes; however, there are insufficient evaluation data to determine the extent of effectiveness.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A5, Section 4.1.

### 4.2 Communications and Outreach: Motorist Awareness of Motorcyclists

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

This countermeasure involves communications and outreach campaigns to increase other drivers' awareness of motorcyclists. Typical themes are "*Share the Road* " or "Watch for Motorcyclists." (See NHTSA's Traffic Safety Marketing website for Motorist Awareness of Motorcycles information - www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/motorcycle-safety/motorist-awareness-motorcycles.) Some States build campaigns around "Motorcycle Awareness Month," often in May, early in the summer riding season. Many motorcyclist organizations, including MSF, SMSA, the Gold Wing Road Riders Association, and State and local rider groups, have driver awareness material available. Some organizations also make presentations on driver awareness of motorcyclists to driver education classes.

**Effectiveness:** *Although this countermeasure is widely used, no evaluations of the effectiveness of campaigns to increase driver awareness of motorcyclists are available.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A5, Section 4.2.

**Motorcycle Safety References**

Baer, J. D., Ayotte, K., & Baldi, S. (2010, February). *Evaluation of state motorcycle safety programs* (Report No. DOT HS 811 269). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/811269

Baer, J., & Skemer, M. (2009, January). *Review of state motorcycle safety program technical assessments* (Report No. DOT HS 811 082). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/811082

Bayly, M., Regan, M., & Hosking, S. (2006). *Intelligent transport systems and motorcycle safety* (Report No. 260). Monash University Accident Research Centre. www.monash.edu.au/muarc/reports/muarc260.pdf

Becker, L. R., McKnight, A. S., Nelkin, V. S., & Piper, D. L. (2003, February). *Drinking, riding, and prevention: A focus group study* (Report No. DOT HS 809 490). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/motorcycle/drinkrideprevent/DrinkRidePrevention.pdf

Brewer, B. L., Diehl, A. H., Johnson, L. S., Salomone, J. P., Wilson, K. L., Atallah, H. Y., Feliciano, D. V., & Rozycki, G. S. (2013). Choice of motorcycle helmet makes a difference: A prospective observational study. *Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery, 75,* 88-91.

Brooks, E., Naud, S., & Shapiro, S. (2010). Are youth-only motorcycle helmet laws better than none at all? *American Journal of Forensic Medicine and Pathology, 31,* 125-129.

Carter, P. M., Buckley, L., Flannagan, C. A., Cicchino, J. B., Hemmila, M., Bowman, P. J., Almani, F., & Bingham, C. R. (2017, January). The impact of Michigan's partial repeal of the universal motorcycle helmet law on helmet use, fatalities, and head injuries. *American Journal of Public Health*, *107*(1), 166-172.

Cavallo, V., & Pinto, M. (2012). Are car daytime running lights detrimental to motorcycle conspicuity? *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *49*, 78-85.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011). *Motorcycle safety: How to save lives and save money*. www.cdc.gov/motorvehiclesafety/pdf/mc2012/MotorcycleSafetyBook.pdf

Coben, J. H., Steiner, C. A., & Miller, T. R. (2007). Characteristics of motorcycle-related hospitalizations: Comparing states with different helmet laws. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 39*, 190-196.

Community Preventive Services Task Force. (2017). Motorcycle helmet laws prevent injury and save lives: Recommendation of the Community Preventive Services Task Force. American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 52(6), 817–819. www.thecommunityguide.org/sites/default/files/publications/mvoi-ajpm-rec-universalhelmets.pdf

Compton, R., Vegega, M., & Smithers. D. (2009, December) *Drug-impaired driving: Understanding the problem and ways to reduce it: A Report to Congress* (Report No. HS 811 268). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1949

Creaser, J. I., Ward, N. J., Rakauskas, M. E., Boer, E., Shankwitz, C., & Nardi, F. (2007, December). *Effects of alcohol on motorcycle riding skills* (Report No. DOT HS 810 877). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1826

Cummings, P., Rivara, F. P., Olson, C. M., & Smith, K. M. (2006). Changes in traffic crash mortality rates attributed to use of alcohol, or lack of a seat belt, air bag, motorcycle helmet, or bicycle helmet, United States, 1982-2001. *Injury Prevention, 12*, 148-154.

Derrick, A. J. & Faucher, L. D. (2009). Motorcycle helmets and rider safety: A legislative crisis. *Journal of Public Health Policy, 30,* 226-242.

Deuterman, W. (2004, March). *Motorcycle helmet effectiveness revisited* (Report No. DOT HS 809 715). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/809715

Fell, J. C., Ramirez, A., McKnight, A. S., Yao, J., & Auld-Owens, A. (2017, April). *Changes to Puerto Rico's motorcycle rider law* (Report No. DOT HS 812 397). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2091

General Accounting Office. (1991). *Highway safety: Motorcycle helmet laws save lives and reduce costs to society.* U.S. General Accounting Office (now the Government Accountability Office). http://archive.gao.gov/d19t9/144486.pdf

Gilbert, H., Chaudhary, N., Solomon, M., Preusser, D., & Cosgrove, L. (2008, May). *Evaluation of the reinstatement of the helmet law in Louisiana* (Report No. DOT HS 810 956). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1838

Guide to Community Preventive Services. (2013). *Motor vehicle-related injury prevention: Use of motorcycle helmets, universal helmet laws*. www.thecommunityguide.org/sites/default/files/assets/MVOI-Motorcycle-Helmets-Laws-Mandating-Use.pdf

Highway Loss Data Institute. (2013). *The effects of Michigan's weakened motorcycle helmet use law on insurance losses*. IIHS. www.iihs.org/media/13465fd7-23d7-46fd-a15e-ddf13d66c490/-2043639476/HLDI%20Research/Bulletins/hldi_bulletin_30.09.pdf

Houston, D. J. (2007). Are helmet laws protecting young motorcyclists? *Journal of Safety Research, 38*, 329-336.

Houston, D. J., & Richardson, L. E. (2008). Motorcyclist fatality rates and mandatory helmet-use laws. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 40*, 200-208.

IIHS. (2018). *Motorcycles and ATVs—Fatality facts 2017*. www.iihs.org/topics/fatality-statistics/detail/motorcycles-and-atvs

IIHS. (2019). *Motorcycles, May 2019.* www.iihs.org/topics/motorcycles#overview

Jenness, J. W., Jenkins, F., & Zador, P. (2011, September). *Motorcycle conspicuity and the effect of fleet DRL: Analysis of two-vehicle fatal crashes in Canada and the United States 2001-2007* (DOT HS 811 505). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811505.pdf

Jones, M. M., & Bayer, R. B. (2007). Paternalism & its discontents: Motorcycle helmet laws, libertarian values, and public health. *American Journal of Public Health, 97*, 208-217.

Kelley-Baker, T., Berning, A., Ramirez, A., Lacey, J. H., Carr, K., Waehrer, G., & Compton, R. (2017, May). *2013-2014 National Roadside Study of alcohol and drug use by drivers: Drug results* (Report No. DOT HS 812 411). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2097

Kyrychenko, S. Y., & McCartt, A. T. (2006). Florida's weakened motorcycle helmet law: Effects on death rates in motorcycle crashes. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *7*, 55-60.

Liu, B. C., Ivers, R., Norton, R., Blows, S., & Lo, S. K. (2008). Helmets for preventing injury in motorcycle riders. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 1*. Art No.: CD004333.

Marques, P. R., & McKnight, A. S. (2017, June). *Examination of the feasibility of alcohol interlocks for motorcycles* (Report No DOT HS 812 423). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2099

McKnight, A. S., Billheimer, J. W., & Tippetts, S. (2013, January). *An examination of Washington state's vehicle impoundment law for motorcycle endorsements* (Report No. DOT HS 811 696). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811696.pdf

Morris, C. C. (2006). Generalized linear regression analysis of association of universal helmet laws with motorcyclist fatality rates. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *38*, 142-147.

Motorcycle Legal Foundation. (2018). *State-by-state guide to motorcycle laws*. www.motorcyclelegalfoundation.com/state-by-state-guide-to-motorcycle-laws/#daytimeheadlights

Motorcycle Safety Foundation. (2017). *State on-highway motorcycle equipment requirements.* www.msf-usa.org/downloads/Equipment_Chart_2017-MSFlogo.pdf

MSF. (2018). *State motorcycle operator licensing - 2018.* www.msf-usa.org/downloads/State-Motorcycle-Operator-Licensing-CSI-2018.pdf

National Center for Statistics and Analysis. (2000). *Traffic safety facts 1999* (Report No. DOT HS 809 089). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/809089

NCSA. (2017, March). *Motorcycles: 2015 data* (Report No. DOT HS 812 353). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812353

NCSA. (2019, July). *Motorcycle helmet use in 2018 – Overall result.* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 812 720). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812720

NCSA. (2020, November). *Motorcycles: 2018 data* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 979). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812979

National Cooperative Highway Research Program. (2008). *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, volume 22: A guide for addressing collisions involving motorcycles* (NCHRP Report 500). Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v22.pdf

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (1996, June). *Do motorcycle helmets interfere with the vision and hearing of riders?* (Traffic Tech. Technology Transfer Series No. 127). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/tt127.pdf

NHTSA. (1998, 2008). National Automotive Sampling System – General Estimates System [Custom data set analysis.]. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

NHTSA. (2000a, November). *National Agenda for Motorcycle Safety*. (Report No. DOT HS 809 156). https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/motorcycle/00-nht-212-motorcycle/toc.html

NHTSA. (2003, January). *The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration motorcycle safety program* (Report No. DOT HS 809 539). https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/motorcycle/motorcycle03/McycleSafetyProgram.pdf

NHTSA. (2006, December). *Implementation guide for the National Agenda for Motorcycle Safety* (Report No. DOT HS 810 680). https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/motorcycle/NAMS2006/images/ImplementationGuide.pdf

NHTSA. (2011, October). *Traffic safety facts - 2009: Motorcycles* (Report No. DOT HS 811 389). https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/811389

NHTSA. (2013a, June). *Prioritized recommendations of the National Agenda for Motorcycle Safety* (Report No. DOT HS 811 789). www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811789.pdf

NHTSA. (2013b, March). *The detection of DWI motorcyclists.* https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/motorcycle/610DWIMotorcyWeb/pages/807856-Detection-DWI-Motorcyclists.pdf [See also Stuster, 1993, below.]

NHTSA. (2018a). *Crash Report Sampling System* [Custom data set analysis]. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

NHTSA. (2018b, 2020). *Fatality Analysis Reporting System* [Custom data set analysis]. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

NHTSA. (2019, May). *Motorcycle safety 5-year plan* (Report No. DOT HS 812 488).

Olsen, C. S., Thomas, A. M., Singleton, M., Gaichas, A. M., Smith, T. J., Smith, G. A., Peng, J., Bauer, M. J., Qu, M., Yeager, D., Kerns, T., Burch, C., & Cook, L. J. (2016). Motorcycle helmet effectiveness in reducing head, face and brain injuries by state and helmet law. *Injury Epidemiology*, *3*(1), 8.

Olson, P. L., Halstead-Nussloch, R., & Sivak, M. (1979, October). *Development and testing of techniques for increasing the conspicuity of motorcycles and motorcycle drivers* (Unnumbered report). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://deepblue.lib.umich.edu/bitstream/2027.42/487/2/43121.0001.001.pdf

Peng, Y., Vaidya, N., Finnie, R., Reynolds, J., Dumitru, C., Njie, G., Elder, R., Ivers, R., Sakashita, C., Shults, R. A., & Sleet, D. A. (2017). Universal motorcycle helmet laws to reduce injuries: A community guide systematic review. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *52*(6), 820-832.

Philip, A. F., Fangman, W., Junlin, L., Lilienthal, M., & Choi, K. (2013). Helmets prevent motorcycle injuries with significant economic benefits. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 14,* 496-500.

Pierowicz, J., Gawron, V., Wilson, G., & Bisantz, A. (2011, September). *The effects of motor vehicle fleet daytime running lights (DRL) on motorcycle conspicuity* (DOT HS 811 504). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811504.pdf

Pinto, M., Cavallo, V., & Saint-Pierre, G. (2014). Influence of front light configuration on the visual conspicuity of motorcycles. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *62*, 230-237.

Preusser, D. F., Hedlund, J. H., & Ulmer, R. G. (2000, September). *Evaluation of motorcycle helmet law repeal in Arkansas and Texas* (Report No. DOT HS 809 131). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.dot.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/motorcycle/EvalofMotor.pdf

Ramirez, A, Berning, A., Kelley-Baker, T., Lacey, J. H., Yao, J., Tippetts, A. S., Scherer, M., Carr, K., Pell, K., & Compton, R. (2016, December). *2013–2014 national roadside study of alcohol and drug use by drivers: Alcohol results* (Report No. DOT HS 812 362). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2084

Ranchet, M., Cavallo, V., Dang, N.-T., & Vienne, F. (2016). Improving motorcycle conspicuity through innovative headlight configurations. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *94*, 119-126.

Striker, R. H., Chapman, A. J., Titus, R. A., Davis, A. T., & Rodriguez, C. H. (2016). Repeal of the Michigan helmet law: The evolving clinical impact. *American Journal of Surgery, 211*(3), 529-533.

Stuster, J. (1993). *The detection of DWI motorcyclists* (Report No. DOT HS 807 839). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1559 [Note: Revised in 2013 as DOT HS 807 856, see NHTSA 2013b above.]

Teoh, E. R. (2011). Effectiveness of antilock braking systems in reducing motorcycle fatal crashes. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 12*, 169-173.

Teoh, E. R. (2013). *Effects of antilock braking systems on motorcycle fatal crash rates: An update*. IIHS. www.iihs.org/api/datastoredocument/bibliography/2042

Toeh, E. R. (2019). *Motorcycles registered in the United States, 2002-18*. IIHS. www.iihs.org/api/datastoredocument/bibliography/2181

Teoh, E. R., & Campbell, M. (2010). Role of motorcycle type in fatal motorcycle crashes. *Journal of Safety Research, 41*, 507-512.

Ulmer, R. G., & Northrup, V. S. (2005, August). *Evaluation of the repeal of the all-rider motorcycle helmet law in Florida* (Report No. DOT HS 809 849). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/motorcycle/FlaMCReport/pages/Index.htm

Ulmer, R. G., & Preusser, D. F. (2003, October). *Evaluation of the repeal of motorcycle helmet laws in Kentucky and Louisiana* (Report No. DOT HS 809 530). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/PEOPLE/injury/pedbimot/motorcycle/kentuky-la03/index.html

U.S. Department of Transportation. (2007, October). *U.S. Department of Transportation action plan to reduce motorcycle fatalities* (Report No. DOT HS 810 855). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Communication%20&%20Consumer%20Information/Articles/Associated%20Files/4640-report2.pdf

Weiss, H., Agimi, Y., & Steiner, C. (2010). Youth motorcycle-related brain injury by state helmet law type: United States, 2005-2007. *Pediatrics, 126*, 1149-1155.

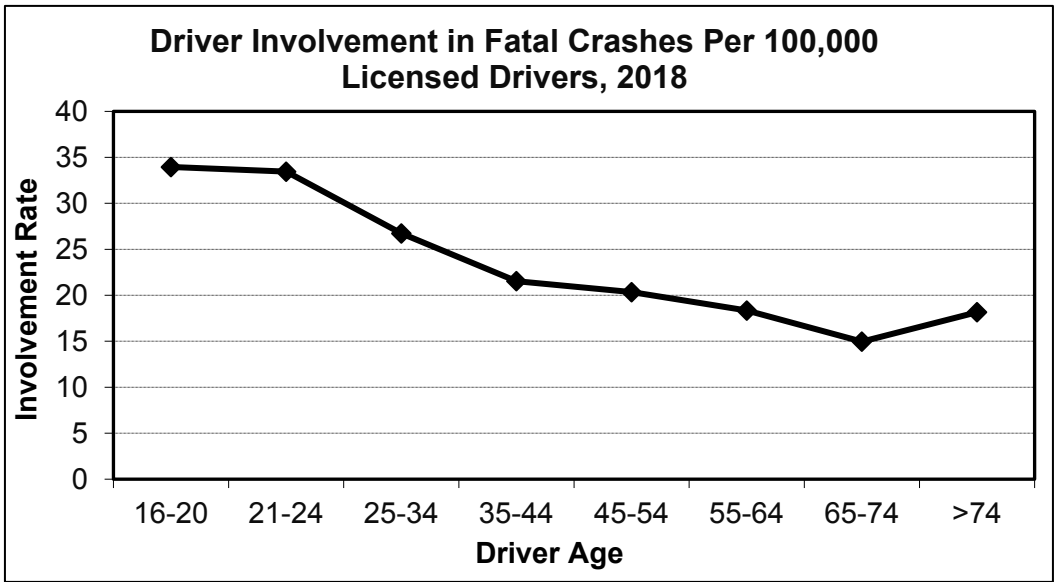
Wiznia, D. H., Kim, C.-Y., Dai, F., Goel, A., & Leslie, M. P. (2016). The effect of helmets on motorcycle outcomes in a level I trauma center in Connecticut. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *17*(6), 633-637.

World Health Organization (WHO). (2006). *Helmets: A road safety manual for decision-makers and practitioners.* Geneva. www.who.int/roadsafety/projects/manuals/helmet_manual/en/

# 6. Young Drivers

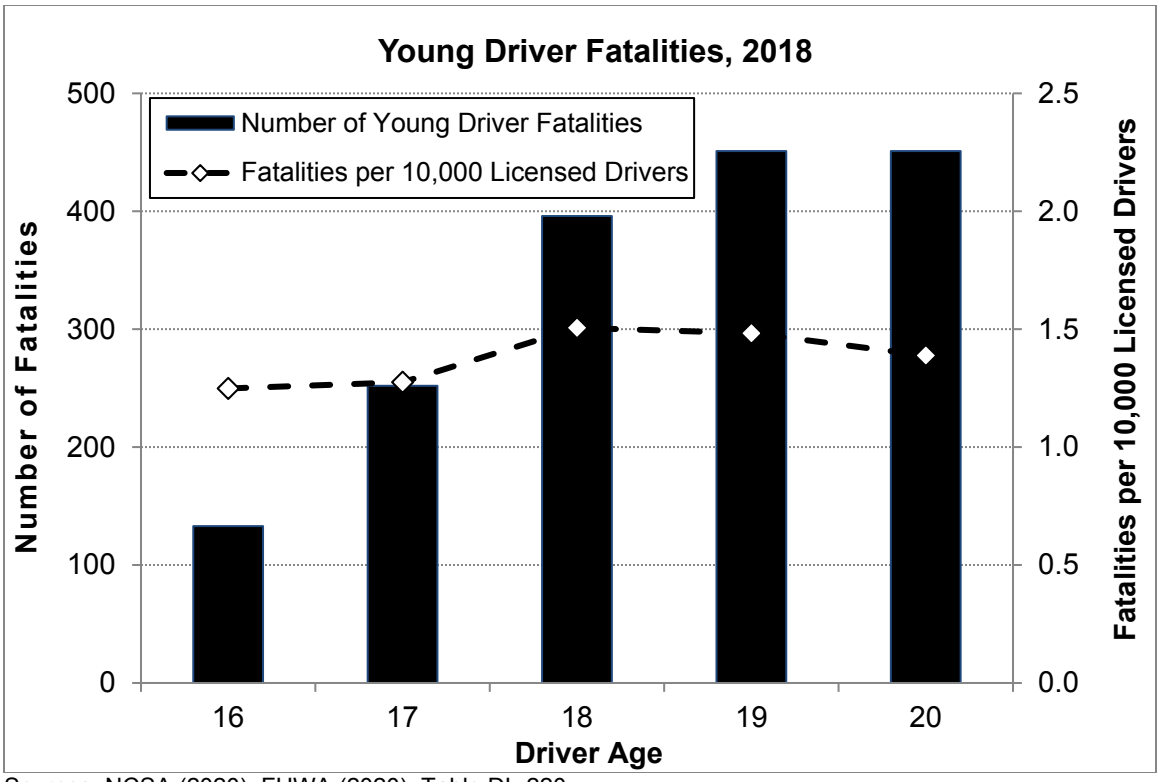
## Overview

Motor vehicle crashes were the leading cause of unintentional death in 2018 for the 15 to 24-years old age group in the United States (CDC, 2020). In 2018 there were 1,719 drivers 15- to 20- years old who were killed, and an estimated 199,000 were injured in motor vehicle crashes (NCSA, 2020). In comparison with adult drivers, young drivers are substantially over-involved in crashes. In 2018 drivers 15 to 20 made up 5.3% of licensed drivers in the United States, yet they made up 8% of total drivers in all fatal crashes and 12% of drivers in all crashes. As shown in the figure below, drivers 16 to 20 years old have the highest involvement in fatal crashes of any age group.




Sources: NCSA (2020); FHWA (2020), Table DL-220

As shown in the figure below, the number of young driver fatalities increases with age. However, the rate of young driver fatalities per 10,000 licensed drivers is relatively stable among drivers age 16 to 20 (between 1.25 at 16 and 1.51 at 18).



Sources: NCSA (2020); FHWA (2020), Table DL-220

With the exception of drivers 80 and older, per mile driven, young drivers are even more over-involved in fatal crashes than older drivers. The trend has largely remained the same over the years (McCartt & Teoh, 2015). From April 2016 to March 2017, drivers 16 to 19 years old had the highest crash rate as compared to all other age groups, except drivers 80 and older. Drivers 16 to 19 years old were involved in 4.8 fatal crashes per 100 million travel miles, compared to 3.3 for drivers 20 to 24, 2.3 for drivers 25-29, 1.4 for drivers 30-59, 1.3 for drivers 60-69, 1.8 for drivers 70-79, and 5.4 for drivers 80+ (IIHS, 2019a). Sixty-three percent of the people killed in young driver crashes in 2018 were the teen driver themselves. Twelve percent of fatalities were passengers of the teen drivers and 57% of these were teen passengers.

**Trends.** From 2009 to 2018 there was a 20% decrease in the number of young drivers (15 to 20) involved in fatal crashes, compared to a 14% increase in all drivers involved in fatal crashes during the same period (NCSA, 2020). The number of young drivers involved in police reported crashes decreased 1% from 2017 to 2018. The reasons for the reductions in the number of fatal crash involvements and police-reported crashes among young drivers are not entirely known. Many factors could have led to this decline, including teen drivers waiting longer to get licensed, the advancement in vehicle safety technology, establishment of multi-stage licensing systems, and education and enforcement of traffic laws (Alderman & Johnston, 2018; Shults et al., 2016).

**Young-driver characteristics.** Young drivers have high crash risks for two main reasons, as documented by extensive research summarized in Hedlund et al. (2003). First, they are inexperienced, just learning to drive. The mechanics of driving require much of their attention, so safety considerations frequently are secondary. They do not have experience in recognizing potentially risky situations or in reacting appropriately and controlling their vehicles in these

situations. Second, normal adolescent development involves increases in novelty seeking and risk-taking behaviors (Kelley et al., 2004). In fact, research on adolescent development suggests that key areas of the brain involved in judgments and decision making continue to develop beyond adolescence (Dahl, 2008; Keating, 2007; Somerville, 2016; Steinberg, 2007).

Inexperience makes certain circumstances more dangerous for younger drivers. In addition, immaturity increases the likelihood of young drivers putting themselves in risky circumstances. Young drivers are especially at-risk in the following five circumstances (Alderman & Johnston, 2018; Ferguson, 2003; Williams, 2003):

- Nighttime driving: Driving is more difficult and dangerous at night for everyone, but particularly for teenagers. Young drivers have less experience driving at night than during the day, and drowsiness and alcohol may be more of a factor at night (Lin & Fearn, 2003; Paterson & Dawson, 2016).
- Driving under the influence of substances: Young drivers' inexperience with both driving and drinking means that they have a higher crash risk at all BACs than older drivers (Voas et al., 2012). Self-reported incidence of alcohol-impaired driving by high school seniors has steadily decreased from 13.1% in 2013, to 9.1% in 2015, and to 8.1% in the most recent survey in 2017 (CDC, 2018). The percentage of high school seniors reporting that they rode with an impaired teen driver has steadily decreased from 31.5% in 2007 to 16% in 2017. In contrast, the percentage of high school seniors who self-reported driving after the use of drugs including marijuana and combinations of drugs and alcohol in 2017 was 13%. Historical data on young drivers' driving under the influence of drugs other than alcohol are sparse; however, some surveys show that the use of marijuana and other illicit drugs may be more prevalent than alcohol in young drivers (Li et al., 2016; O'Malley & Johnston, 2013).
- Passenger interactions: Teenage passengers can distract young drivers and encourage them to take risks (Foss & Goodwin, 2014; Lin & Fearn, 2003).
- Belt use: Seat belts reduce the risk of injury or fatality in a crash (see Chapter 2, Overview), but teenage drivers and passengers have lower reported belt use rates than adult drivers and passengers (Ferguson, 2003; Shults et al., 2016). In 2017 teen drivers had the lowest self-reported seat belt use rates compared to all other age groups (CDC, 2018).
- Cell phone use: All drivers are at higher risk when talking or texting (see Appendix A4, Section 1.2); however, young drivers have more difficulty handling distractions (Lee, 2007). Teenage and young drivers have repeatedly been found to have increased levels of crash risk due to distractions involving cell phone use (Guo et al., 2017; Delgado et al., 2016).

## Strategies to Reduce Crashes Involving Young Drivers

Graduated driver licensing addresses both the inexperience and immaturity of young drivers. GDL provides a structure in which beginning drivers gain substantial driving experience in less risky situations. GDL raises the minimum age of full licensure and helps parents manage their teenage drivers. GDL's effectiveness in reducing young driver crashes has been demonstrated many times (Chaudhary et al., 2018; Masten et al., 2013; Masten et al., 2015; Russell et al., 2011; Shope, 2007; Simpson, 2003; Williams, 2017; Williams et al., 2012).

Driver education was developed to teach both driving skills and safe driving practices. Based on evaluations to date driver education for beginning drivers does a good job at teaching driving skills but has not definitively been shown to reduce the number of crashes or crash rate. Rather, some research has suggested that it lowers the age at which teenagers become licensed, and therefore increases exposure, so its overall effect is to *increase* the number of crashes (Roberts & Kwan, 2001; Thomas, Blomberg, & Fisher, 2012; Vernick et al., 1999). Current research is investigating ways to integrate driver education with GDL (Mayhew et al., 2014 and 2017) and is developing second-level programs for drivers who have acquired basic driving skills and have been, or are nearing, licensure. Driver education is more effective if combined with an effective GDL program that does not allow a lower licensing age. Many States have completed NHTSA-sponsored driver education assessments to strengthen their programs and align with national standards.

Parents play key roles in their teenagers' driving. In many States, a parent or guardian must sign the driver's license application for a teenager under 18, and a parent can withdraw approval at any time. Parents can set limits on their teenagers' driving. In addition, parents can be involved explicitly and formally through GDL requirements such as minimum hours of supervised driving practice, or they can be involved voluntarily and informally. Several parent- teen driving guide programs can provide assistance (Curry, Peek-Asa, et al., 2015). At least one driving guide program has successfully encouraged parents to impose more driving restrictions on their teens (Simons-Morton, 2007). Technologies are available to assist parents in monitoring their newly licensed teen driver. When combined with a comprehensive system for providing feedback to parents and teens, these technologies have been promising in reducing the incidence of risky driving behaviors among teens (Carney et al., 2010; Farah et al., 2014; McGehee et al., 2007; Reyes et al., 2018; Reyes et al., 2016; Simons-Morton et al., 2013). Finally, several States now require parent involvement in driver education, usually in the form of a mandatory parent orientation class. All these approaches are promising, though none have been shown as of yet to reduce young driver crashes or fatalities.

Some traffic laws apply only to young drivers. GDL systems have been adopted by all 50 States to help novices gain experience in safe settings. Minimum legal drinking age (MLDA) and zero-tolerance BAC laws apply specifically to people under 21, as discussed in Chapter 1. Some States have restrictions on cell phone use and texting that apply only to young drivers (see Appendix A4, Section 1.2). With all these, enforcement is critical if the laws are to have any effect. The law enforcement system faces several problems when dealing with young drivers. In deciding whether to make a traffic stop, it can be difficult for LEOs to determine a person's age to know whether GDL and zero-tolerance laws apply. It has been suggested that a vehicle decal identifying a driver as "young" and subject to GDL requirements may be beneficial for enforcement reasons. New Jersey is the first State to pass legislation requiring young drivers subject to GDL restrictions to be identified via a vehicle decal. Studies examining the effectiveness of the decal requirement in New Jersey found that citation rates for violations of licensing restrictions sharply increased and police-reported crash rates decreased the year after the decal requirement went into effect (Curry et al., 2013; McCartt et al., 2012). A follow-up study found that the decline in crash rates could not be attributed to increases in young drivers' compliance with passenger or nighttime restrictions but may have been the result of a general

increase in safer behaviors when displaying decals (Palumbo et al., 2018). Even if the driver is young, in many States, teens may only be stopped for a primary offense, such as speeding. Once stopped, there may be a tendency for officers in some situations not to make arrests or for prosecutors to dismiss charges because the offender is "just a kid." Finally, the legal system imposes additional requirements for people under the age of legal adulthood (18 in most States). See NHTSA and NIAAA (1999) for a discussion of these requirements and processes for alcohol-related offenses.

Young drivers are discussed in other chapters of this guide. See the following.

- Chapter 1, Alcohol-Impaired Driving, Sections 6.1-6.4 (minimum-drinking-age-21 laws, zero-tolerance BAC laws, school and youth alcohol programs).
- Chapter 4, Distracted Driving, Sections 1.1 and Appendix A4, Sections 2.1 and 3.1 (GDL requirements, communications and outreach, and employer programs).
- Appendix A5, Motorcycle Safety, Section 3.1 (GDL for motorcyclists).
- Chapter 10, Drowsy Driving, Sections 1.1 and Appendix A10, Sections 2.1 and 3.1 (GDL requirements, communications and outreach, and employer programs).

Except for GDL requirements applying to automobile drivers, these discussions are not repeated in this chapter.

Environmental and vehicular strategies can improve safety for young drivers, as they can for all drivers. However, these types of countermeasures are not included because State Highway Safety Offices do not have authority or responsibility in these areas.

## Resources

The agencies and organizations listed below can provide more information on young drivers and links to numerous other resources.

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration:
  - Teen Drivers – www.nhtsa.gov/road-safety/teen-driving
  - Driver Safety Research Reports: New Drivers – www.nhtsa.gov/road-safety/teen-driving#resources
- Behavioral Safety Research Reports – https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: www.cdc.gov/Motorvehiclesafety/Teen_Drivers/index.html
- Governors Highway Safety: Association: www.ghsa.org/html/issues/teens/index.html
- Insurance Institute for Highway Safety: www.iihs.org/iihs/topics/t/teenagers/topicoverview
- National Safety Council: www.nsc.org/learn/NSC-Initiatives/Pages/teen-driving.aspx
- American Automobile Association: https://teendriving.aaa.com

For an overview of young-driver issues and research, see the papers in the June 2006 Supplement of *Injury Prevention* (www.injuryprevention.bmj.com/content/12/suppl_1), the special issue of the 2007 *Journal of Safety Research* (www.sciencedirect.com/science/journal/00224375/38/2), or the special issue of the 2008 *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*

(www.ajpmonline.org/issue/S0749-3797%2808%29X0014-5). See also Alderman & Johnston (2018) and Williams et al. (2012) for summaries of much of the research on young driver issues. Additionally, an NCHRP Report 500 guide for the American Association of Motor Vehicle Administrators' Strategic Highway Safety Plan provides a detailed discussion of strategies for reducing crashes involving young drivers (Goodwin et al., 2007), and GHSA (2012) published *Curbing Teen Driver Crashes: An In-Depth Look at State Initiatives*, which describes strategies States employ to reduce teen driver crashes.

# Young Driver Countermeasures

Countermeasures to improve young-driver safety are listed in the table below. The table is intended to provide a rough estimate of each countermeasure's effectiveness, use, cost, and time required for implementation. Effectiveness is shown using a five-star rating system.

- Countermeasures that receive ★★★★ or ★★★★★ have been determined to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ★★★ are considered promising, and likely to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States, communities, and other organizations are encouraged to use ★★★, and especially ★★★★ or ★★★★★, countermeasures. They should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

Further details about the symbols and terms used are included after the table. Effectiveness, cost, and time to implement can vary substantially from State to State and community to community. Costs for many countermeasures are difficult to measure, so the summary terms are very approximate.

Each countermeasure to improve young-driver safety is discussed individually in this chapter. Full descriptions are included for ★★★, ★★★★ and ★★★★★ countermeasures. Brief descriptions are included for ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Further details about the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures are included in Appendix A6 to this report

### 1. Graduated Driver Licensing

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 Graduated Driver Licensing (GDL) | ★★★★★ | $ | High | Medium |
| 1.2 Learner's Permit Length, Supervised Hours | ★★★★★ | $ | High | Medium |
| 1.3 Intermediate – Nighttime Restrictions | ★★★★★ | $ | High | Medium |
| 1.4 Intermediate – Passenger Restrictions | ★★★★★ | $ | High | Medium |
| 1.5 Cell Phone Restrictions | ☆☆ | $ | Medium | Medium |
| 1.6 Belt Use Requirements | ☆☆ | $ | Low | Medium |
| 1.7 Intermediate – Violation Penalties | ☆ | $ | High | Medium |

## 2. Driver Education

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 Pre-Licensure Driver Education | ☆☆ | $$$ | Medium | Long |
| 2.2 Post-Licensure Driver Education | ☆ | $$$ | Low | Long |

## 3. Parents

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Parent Roles in Teaching and Managing Young Drivers | ☆☆ | $$ | Medium | Short |
| 3.2 Electronic Technology for Parental Monitoring | ★★★ | $ | Low | Short |

## 4. Traffic Law Enforcement

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4.1 Enforcement of GDL and Zero-Tolerance Laws | ★★★ | $$ | Unknown | Short |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ★★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective by several high-quality evaluations with consistent results |
| ★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective in certain situations |
| ★★★ | Likely to be effective based on balance of evidence from high-quality evaluations or other sources |
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Graduated Driver Licensing

### 1.1 Graduated Driver Licensing

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

GDL is a three-phase system for beginning drivers, consisting of a learner's permit, an intermediate license, and a full license. A learner's permit allows driving only while supervised by a fully licensed driver. An intermediate license allows unsupervised driving under certain restrictions. These usually include limits on driving at night or with teenage passengers. The learner's permit and the intermediate license each must be held for a specified minimum period of time.

GDL serves two functions: reducing risk and reducing exposure. GDL allows beginning drivers to acquire driving experience in less-risky situations and under direct supervision during the learner's permit phase. It helps young drivers avoid dangerous conditions such as late-night driving or driving with teenage passengers in the vehicle during the intermediate phase. GDL delays full licensure by requiring a minimum time in both the learner's permit and intermediate phases. Compared to earlier requirements in many jurisdictions, where beginning drivers could receive a full license at 16 (and sometimes earlier) by passing a minimal driving test, GDL reduces the amount of unsupervised driving by 16-year-olds. GDL also ensures that young drivers are more mature when they receive their first unrestricted license. Based on a national survey, the majority of parents (61 to 98% depending on the policy) support GDL policies that are as strong as, or even stronger, than policies currently in place in the United States (Williams et al., 2011).

All States now have some form of GDL in place. However, as of September 2020, no State GDL systems met all the qualification criteria set forth by the Fixing America's Surface Transportation (FAST) Act for GDL incentive grants. For example, some States have night restrictions beginning later than 10 p.m., or allow teens to carry more than one passenger younger than 21. GHSA (2019a) and IIHS (2019b) document GDL laws in each State. These websites are updated monthly. The papers in the special issue of the 2007 *Journal of Safety Research* describe GDL's history, components, effectiveness, parental roles, potential enhancements, and research needs. Strategies for implementing or improving GDL systems are described in NCHRP's *Guide for Reducing Collisions Involving Young Drivers* (Goodwin et al., 2007, strategies A1 through A5). See also NHTSA's *Traffic Safety Facts* on GDL (NHTSA, 2008) and Report to Congress (Compton & Ellison-Potter, 2008), and the Traffic Injury Research Foundation's *New GDL Framework: Evidence Base to Integrate Novice Driver Strategies* (Mayhew et al., 2014).

**Use:** All States and the District of Columbia had some GDL components in place as of May 2019. In addition, all States and the District of Columbia had a three-phase GDL system in place (GHSA, 2019a; IIHS, 2019b).

**Effectiveness:** GDL's effectiveness in reducing young driver crashes and fatalities has been well-documented (Baker, Chen, & Li, 2007; Chapman et al., 2014; Chaudhary et al., 2018; Fell et al., 2011; Lyon et al., 2012; Masten et al., 2011, 2013, and 2015; McCartt et al., 2010; Russell

et al., 2011; Shope, 2007; Simpson, 2003; Williams, 2017). The most restrictive GDL programs–those with at least a 6-month holding period during the learner stage, a night restriction beginning no later than 10 p.m., and restrictions allowing no more than one teen passenger–are associated with a 38% reduction in fatal crashes and a 40% reduction in injury crashes among 16-year-old drivers (Baker et al., 2007). In addition to reducing crashes, GDL is associated with declines in hospitalization rates and charges for 16-year-old drivers (Margolis et al., 2007; Pressley et al., 2009). A review of Georgia's GDL laws 15.5 years after implementation suggests that positive outcomes continue to be seen over time (Thompson et al., 2016). Fatal crash rates of young drivers 16 to 19 who participated in the State's GDL system were examined over 21 years (5.5 years prior to and 15.5 years after GDL law implementation). Overall, the fatal crash rates stayed similar to the pre-implementation rates, but they did decrease for certain groups of young drivers. The highest rates of decline were among male drivers who were 16 and 17 years old. The greatest changes in the rate of decline between pre- and post-law implementation were for alcohol- and speeding-related crashes, which are two of the three risky behaviors targeted by the State's GDL laws.

**Costs:** GDL's primary costs result from the intermediate license, which adds to licensing agency workload by requiring each beginning driver to receive three licenses in succession rather than two. These costs are typically covered by small fees charged by the licensing agency.

**Time to implement:** Licensing changes typically require up to a year to plan, publicize, and implement.

**Other issues:**

- **Age of licensure:** Over the years, there has been discussion about the most appropriate age for allowing teenagers to drive independently (Foss et al., 2014; Williams, 2009; Williams et al., 2013). Licensing ages vary from State to State, from a low of 14½ in South Dakota to a high of 17 in New Jersey. Delaying licensure, either through higher entry ages or GDL requirements such as extended learner stages, can reduce young driver crashes (Foss et al., 2014). For example, New Jersey's GDL system has eliminated most crashes among 16-year-old drivers and has reduced crashes among 17-year-olds by 16% (Williams et al., 2010). However, a national study found a significant increase in fatal crash rates among 18-year-olds associated with stronger GDL components (Masten et al., 2011). Similar increases in overall crash rates have been found in drivers 18 and older (Conner & Smith, 2017; Curry, Metzger, et al., 2017; Thompson et al., 2016). (But see Foss et al. [2014] for an exception: drivers licensed at 18 were more likely than drivers licensed at any other age to be involved in injury crashes in the first year post-licensure). These findings indicate that there might be value in extending GDL provisions for drivers 20 and younger; one study found a lack of evidence for extension of provisions beyond 21 years old (Curry, Metzger, et al., 2017). In addition, licensure rates have decreased among young teenagers (HLDI, 2013; Shults & Williams, 2013). Thus, there is concern that teens may be delaying licensure until they are 18 or older in order to avoid GDL provisions, leading them to miss out on the safety benefits of GDL. However, based on findings from additional studies, it appears the economic recession and lack of employment for young teenagers has been the driving force behind the delay of licensure and not avoidance of GDL (HLDI, 2013; Tefft et al., 2013a; Williams, 2011).

### 1.2 GDL Learner's Permit Length, Supervised Hours

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★† | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

†Learner's permit length proven to reduce crash rates

With a learner's permit, a novice can drive when accompanied by an adult supervisor. The learner's permit allows and encourages beginning drivers to acquire substantial driving experience. To aid this, most States require the learner's permit to be held for a minimum period of time, and most require a minimum number of supervised driving hours. Surveys show that parents and teenagers strongly support the learner's permit holding period and supervised driving requirements (Block & Walker, 2008; Mayhew, 2003; McKay et al., 2008; Williams, 2011; Williams et al., 2011).

**Use:** As of September 2019 there were 48 States and the District of Columbia that required learner's permits to be held for at least 6 months, with 8 of these States requiring a minimum holding period of a full year. However, Connecticut and South Dakota reduce the required length of time for a permit to be held if the young driver completes driver's education (IIHS, 2019b).

Forty-six States and the District of Columbia required some minimum number of supervised driving hours, with about half of them requiring 50 hours. Forty-one States plus the District of Columbia required that at least some of these hours be obtained at night. In addition, a few States required additional supervised hours to be completed during the intermediate license phase (GHSA, 2019a). Some States reduced or eliminated supervised driving requirements for driver education graduates. However, evidence suggests this practice results in *higher* crash rates among young drivers (Mayhew, 2007).

**Effectiveness:** Since learner's permit drivers are being supervised, it is not surprising that crash rates during the learner's permit period are very low. For young drivers holding their first unsupervised licenses, the limited available evidence suggests that crash rates decreased after jurisdictions with no learner's permit holding requirement implemented a 6-month requirement (Ehsani et al., 2013; Mayhew, 2003). Moreover, longer permit holding periods appear to result in even larger crash reductions. Masten et al. (2013) found that a 9- to 12-month leaner's permit holding period resulted in 26% lower fatal crash incidence among 16-year-old drivers and 17% lower incidence among 17-year-olds compared to requiring learner permits for up to 4 months. Furthermore, Curry et al. (2014) found that intermediate-phase drivers had incrementally smaller increases in crash rates during their initial months of driving independently for every month up to 6 months that they delayed obtaining full licensure.

However, the effect of supervised hours is currently unclear. Some studies have found supervised hours requirements lead to reductions in fatal crashes when hourly requirements are combined with mandatory learner's permit holding periods (Baker et al., 2006; Lyon et al., 2012). However, evaluations have found no relationship between the number of required supervised driving hours and fatal crash involvement among young drivers (Ehsani et al., 2013; Foss et al., 2012; Masten et al., 2013; McCartt et al., 2010). Based on telephone interviews with parents in 5 States, only 32% knew the correct number of supervised driving hours their teens were required to complete (Foss et al., 2012; O'Brien et al., 2013). Therefore, the lack of effect of supervised

hours on fatal crash outcomes may be explained, in part, by a lack of parental knowledge of the supervised driving requirements.

**Costs:** Once GDL is in place, requirements for the learner's permit can be implemented at very little cost.

**Time to implement:** GDL requirement changes typically require about 6 months to notify the public and implement the changes.

### 1.3 GDL Intermediate License Nighttime Restrictions

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

Driving at night increases the fatal crash risk for all drivers, and especially for teenage drivers (Hedlund et al., 2003; Tefft et al., 2013b; Williams, 2003). A study found that the rate of driver fatalities was 5 times higher among 16- and 17-year-olds from 10 p.m. to 5:59 a.m. compared to driving during the day (Tefft et al., 2013b). Driving at night is more difficult, driver drowsiness is more common, and alcohol is more likely to be used. Many intermediate license drivers have limited experience driving at night. For these reasons, a nighttime driving restriction helps reduce risk for intermediate level drivers.

The restricted hours vary widely, from 6 p.m. to 6 a.m. in the most restrictive State, to 1 a.m. to 5 a.m. in the least restrictive (GHSA, 2019a; IIHS, 2019b). The most common hours are 11 p.m. or midnight to 5 or 6 a.m. However, a starting time earlier than midnight will prevent more crashes, especially since teenage driver crashes occur more frequently before midnight than after (Foss & Goodwin, 2003; Shults & Williams, 2016; Williams, 2003). An analysis of fatal crash data for drivers 16 and 17 estimated that while these drivers only take about 11% of their trips from 9 p.m. to 5:59 a.m., these trips account for almost one-third (31%) of fatal crash involvement in this age-group (Shults & Williams, 2016).

NHTSA's Motor Vehicle Occupant Safety Survey found that 73% of the general public believe teenagers should not be allowed to drive unsupervised after 9 p.m. (Block & Walker, 2008). Another national survey of parents found 90% support a nighttime driving restriction, with 77% saying it should be 10 p.m. or earlier (Williams et al., 2011). These perceptions match observed driving trends, which show that greater reductions in crash rates are associated with nighttime restrictions starting at or before 10 p.m. (Shults & Williams, 2016). There is an almost two-fold increase in the proportion of young driver (16 and 17 years old) involvement in fatal crashes before midnight compared to after midnight. Twenty-three States and the District of Columbia had nighttime restrictions starting at 12 a.m. or later, with almost 93% of nighttime travel by drivers 16 and 17 ending before midnight.

**Use:** As of September 2019 there were 49 States and the District of Columbia that restricted intermediate license drivers from driving during specified nighttime hours (the exception is Vermont). Many States allowed driving during the restricted hours for work or school-related activities (GHSA, 2019a; IIHS, 2019b).

**Effectiveness:** The effectiveness of nighttime driving restrictions in reducing both nighttime driving and nighttime crashes has been demonstrated conclusively (Fell et al., 2011; Hedlund et al., 2003; Hedlund & Compton, 2005; Lin & Fearn, 2003; Lyon et al., 2012; Masten et al., 2013; McCartt et al., 2010). The earlier a night restriction begins, the greater the reduction in crashes. For example, night restrictions that begin at 9 p.m. are associated with an 18% reduction in fatal crashes compared to no restriction. The reduction is only 9% when the night restriction begins at 1 a.m. (McCartt et al., 2010).

**Costs:** Once GDL is in place, a nighttime driving restriction can be implemented or modified at very little cost.

**Time to implement:** GDL requirement changes typically require about 6 months to notify the public and implement the changes.

### 1.4 GDL Intermediate License Passenger Restrictions

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

Young passengers are associated with a substantial increase in the risk of a fatal crash for teenage drivers (Chen et al., 2000; Ouimet et al., 2010; Ouimet et al., 2015; Preusser et al., 1998; Tefft et al., 2013b). Each additional passenger is associated with an additional increase in fatal crash risk (Chen et al., 2000; Ouimet et al., 2015; Preusser et al., 1998; Tefft et al., 2013b). Fatal crash risks are highest when young male drivers carry same age passengers, especially if those passengers are also male (Chen et al., 2000; Ouimet et al., 2010; Ouimet et al., 2015; Tefft et al., 2013b).

To reduce this risk, most States include a passenger restriction in their GDL requirements for intermediate licensees. According to NHTSA's Motor Vehicle Occupant Safety Survey, 86% of the general public believe that teenagers should have a restriction on the number of teenage passengers they can carry (Block & Walker, 2008). In a national survey 89% of parents say they support passenger restrictions; 82% think the passenger limit should be one or zero (Williams et al., 2011).

**Use:** As of September 2019 there were 46 States and the District of Columbia that restricted in some way the number of passengers who can be carried by an intermediate license driver (GHSA, 2019a; IIHS, 2019b). The most common passenger restrictions limit teenage drivers to zero or just one passenger. Some restrictions apply to all passengers and some only to passengers younger than a specified age. A few States allow exceptions for transporting family or household members.

**Effectiveness**: There is growing evidence that passenger restrictions are effective in reducing young driver crashes, though the restrictions sometimes are violated (Carpenter & Pressley, 2013; Fell et al., 2011; Goodwin & Foss, 2004; Lyon et al., 2012; Masten et al., 2013; McCartt et al., 2010; Williams, 2007). California allows no passengers younger than 20 for teenagers who hold intermediate licenses. Four studies demonstrate the positive effects of this restriction. For example, one study showed a 38% decrease in 16-year-old-driver crashes in California in which a teen passenger was killed or injured (Williams, 2007). A NHTSA study evaluated passenger restrictions in California, Massachusetts, and Virginia. Results showed 16-year-old driver crashes were reduced in all three States, as were motor-vehicle-related injuries among 15- to 17-year-olds (Chaudhary et al., 2007). In North Carolina a teen passenger restriction was enacted independent of any other changes to the State's GDL system. Subsequent to this restriction, 16-year-old-driver crashes involving passengers decreased by 32% (Foss, 2009). National studies have also found large crash rate reductions for passenger restrictions. For example, McCartt et al. (2010) found a 21% reduction in fatal crashes among 15- to 17-year-olds when no passengers were permitted and a 7% reduction when one passenger was allowed. Similarly, Masten et al. (2013) found a 20% lower fatal crash rate among 16-year-old drivers and a 12% lower fatal crash rate among 17-year-old drivers when no more than one young passenger was allowed for at least the first 6 months of independent driving.

**Costs:** Once GDL is in place, a passenger restriction can be implemented at very little cost.

**Time to implement:** GDL requirement changes typically require about 6 months to notify the public and implement the changes.

### 1.5 GDL Cell Phone Restrictions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |

This countermeasure involves States including cell phone restrictions in their GDL laws. These bans cover *all* cell phone use, not just handheld phones. In some States, the cell phone restrictions cover teenagers holding a learner's permit and intermediate license; in other States, the restrictions cover all drivers under a certain age, such as 18 or 19 (GHSA, 2019b; IIHS, 2019c).

**Effectiveness Concerns**: *This countermeasure is widely used. Its effectiveness has been examined in a few research studies. Despite some positive research findings, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A6, Section 1.5.

### 1.6 GDL Belt Use Requirements

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |

This countermeasure involves explicitly requiring belt use under their GDL laws. Note that young drivers are covered by seat belt laws in all States (with the exception of New Hampshire, which only requires seat belts for people under 18) (GHSA 2019c; IIHS, 2019d). An explicit belt use requirement in a State's GDL law may have more influence on beginning drivers than the State's overall belt use law. This may be especially true in States where a GDL belt use requirement is coupled with primary enforcement for young drivers and in States where seat belt violations result in delayed graduation to the next GDL stage.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *To date there has been only one evaluation of the effects of explicit seat belt use requirements in GDL laws. This evaluation found no evidence that the countermeasure had any effect on teen driver belt use (Freedman & Levi, 2008).*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A6, Section 1.6.

### 1.7 GDL Intermediate License Violation Penalties

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

This countermeasure involves a probationary feature included in the intermediate phase of many graduated licensing systems, which is commonly referred to as *contingent advancement*. Typically, contingent advancement means that an intermediate license holder must maintain a violation free driving record for a specified amount of time before they can obtain a full license.

**Effectiveness:** *The few evaluations of early stand-alone probationary license systems generally found no substantial benefits (McKnight & Peck, 2003; Simpson, 2003). No recent evaluations have attempted to separate out the effect of penalties for GDL or other traffic law violations from the overall effects of GDL. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A6, Section 1.7.

## 2. Driver Education

### 2.1 Pre-Licensure Driver Education

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Medium | Time: Long |

This countermeasure involves some form of driver education before licensure, typically for anyone younger than 18. Most commonly, this includes 30 hours of classroom instruction and 6 hours of behind-the-wheel practice, although requirements vary considerably across States (Thomas et al., 2012). This training can include either commercial or high school driver education programs.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure is used in many States. Its effectiveness has been examined in several research studies. The balance of the evidence suggests that these types of countermeasures are ineffective in the long term.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A6, Section 2.1.

### 2.2 Post-Licensure or Second-Tier Driver Education

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Low | Time: Long |

This countermeasure involves post-licensure driver education curricula that are integrated with driver education included in GDL (Smith, 1994). These "second-tier" post-licensure courses teach safety-related information, building on the on-road experience that the students have acquired in their initial months of driving. They should not be confused with "advanced driving performance" courses that teach driving skills such as panic braking, skid control, and evasive lane-changing maneuvers.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A6, Section 2.2.

## 3. Parents

### 3.1 Parental Roles in Teaching and Managing Young Drivers

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

This countermeasure involves programs based on direct interaction and engagement with parents to better equip them to supervise and manage their teens' driving during the GDL phase. These programs typically involve a variety of approaches to educate parents and get them involved in promoting their teen's safe driving.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has been examined in several research studies. Despite some positive research findings, particularly in terms of behavioral changes, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A6, Section 3.1.

### 3.2 Electronic Technology for Parental Monitoring

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Technologies have been developed to aid parents in monitoring their teenage drivers. Monitoring can include driving behaviors and performance (e.g., aggressive driving, drowsiness, and distraction), as well as situational aspects of trips (geographic extent, passengers, road and trip characteristics; Lerner et al., 2010). For example, many GPS companies offer "teen tracking" services that will notify parents if their teens go beyond geographical boundaries or if they are speeding at any given time. Video-based in-vehicle devices, such as DriveCam, can provide visual monitoring of teen drivers.

The smartphone-based Teen Driver Support System (TDSS) has been used to provide real-time feedback to teen drivers about unsafe driving behaviors. If a monitored driver does not cease the unsafe behavior (e.g., texting or aggressive driving), text notifications are used to report the behavior to parents (Creaser et al., 2015). The effectiveness of the TDSS program is currently under evaluation by the Minnesota Local Road Research Board (see https://mntransportationresearch.org/2019/08/21/new-project-effectiveness-of-teenage-driver-support-system for details).

In addition to aftermarket in-vehicle systems, vehicle-embedded systems that enable parental monitoring and setting limits on speed and infotainment use are becoming available. Some examples include Ford's MyKey, GM's Teen Driver, and Hyundai's Curfew Alert technologies. See www.carfax.com/blog/5-teen-driving-technologies for descriptions of these systems.

**Use:** The extent of the use of electronic monitoring and feedback systems is currently unknown; however, the advent of smartphone-based systems and applications may provide low-cost alternatives to more expensive aftermarket devices.

Trust in teenagers, costs, or concerns about privacy may dissuade parents from using electronic monitoring systems (McCartt et al., 2007; Curry, Peek-Asa, et al., 2015). One survey in Ireland of teen drivers' willingness to use a smartphone-based monitoring system reported that the risk of increased insurance premiums and the potential for device-based distraction deterred willingness to use the technology (Kervick, Hogan, O'Hora, & Sarma, 2015). However, peer approval and adoption of the technology was associated with positive willingness.

**Effectiveness:** While more research is needed to determine the impact of electronic monitoring on crashes and fatalities among young drivers (Reyes et al., 2016), many studies have reported positive benefits due to electronic monitoring of teen drivers in both learner and early post-licensure periods.

Reyes et al. (2016) conducted two studies to evaluate if post-drive electronic device feedback provided to newly licensed teen drivers can reduce risky behaviors, and if video feedback enhanced benefits of the intervention. In the first study, the rate of unsafe driving events (such as abrupt acceleration, deceleration, or steering maneuvers; traffic violations; or improper seat belt use) for teens who received feedback from an electronic monitoring device (video-based or non-

video based) were significantly lower than the control group. Mean unsafe event rates were 6.1 per 1,000 miles for teens with either form of feedback in comparison with 35.3 per 1,000 miles among teens with no feedback. There were no significant differences between the video and non-video intervention groups, suggesting that the provision of any feedback is likely to deter unsafe driving behaviors among teens. A second study was conducted with teen drivers of varying ages during unsupervised driving experiences (Reyes et al., 2018). Drivers who received video-based feedback--irrespective of age or experience--had lower rates of unsafe driving events than drivers who received no feedback.

Electronic monitoring technologies can help reduce the incidence of risky driving behaviors among teens by encouraging parental feedback. (Carney et al., 2010; Farah et al., 2014; Farmer et al., 2010; McGehee et al., 2007; Musicant & Lampel, 2010; Peek-Asa et al., 2019; Simons-Morton et al., 2013). One evaluation of the Steering Teens Safe (see section A3.1 for more information) program points to the importance of electronic monitoring systems in enabling event-focused feedback and communication between parents and teen drivers (Peek-Asa et al. 2019). The Peek-Asa group found that teen drivers who received parental feedback based on electronic monitoring had 85% fewer unsafe events than those who received no feedback at all, whereas those who received only electronic feedback had 65% fewer events than the control group.

Currently, there are no evaluations of vehicle-embedded electronic monitoring systems for parental monitoring.

**Costs:** The costs of electronic monitoring devices are usually paid for by the teen drivers and their families. Costs to the State or agency is low, but the device purchase and maintenance costs to parents or guardians can be substantial. Smartphone-based systems offer low cost alternatives to vehicle-based devices.

**Time to Implement:** Use of monitoring devices can start immediately upon installation.

## 4. Traffic Law Enforcement

### 4.1 Enforcement of GDL and Zero-Tolerance Laws

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Two traffic laws apply only to young drivers: GDL laws and zero-tolerance laws that prohibit drivers under 21 from having BACs of .02 g/dL or greater. As discussed in Chapter 1, Section 6.2, zero-tolerance laws are often not actively publicized or enforced. It's likely that increased publicity and enforcement would reduce teenage drinking and driving.

GDL laws, discussed in Chapter 6, Sections 1.1-1.6, also appear not to be enforced vigorously. A study in two States identified modest numbers of citations for some offenses, noting that other GDL restrictions were rarely enforced (AAAFTS, 2014). Some GDL provisions such as nighttime driving restrictions are inherently difficult to enforce because violations are difficult to detect (Hedlund et al., 2003). A study in one State found that intermediate license drivers and their parents were quite aware of their GDL law's nighttime and passenger restrictions. Both restrictions were violated, though not frequently. Teenagers expressed little concern regarding GDL enforcement. Although surveys of LEOs found that most were supportive of GDL, officers were not familiar with GDL details and considered GDL enforcement a low priority (Goodwin & Foss, 2004). Another study found that teen drivers reported frequently violating passenger restrictions, with and/or without their parents' knowledge/permission, because local police did not routinely enforce GDL restrictions (Chaudhary et al., 2007).

A recent study of fatal teen driver crashes from 1998 to 2016 in New Jersey reported both extensive public health campaigns and targeted enforcement of GDL laws are necessary for the prevention of such crashes (Bonne et al., 2018). GDL was implemented in New Jersey in 2002. However, significant reductions in teen fatal crashes and the number of fatally injured teenagers were seen only after a comprehensive campaign of public awareness, education, and enforcement began in 2010. School outreach, classroom discussions, parent/teen orientations, and PSAs on GDL were distributed as part of the awareness campaign. Enforcement practices consisted of checkpoints near high schools and targeted enforcement of GDL provisions based on decals. Teen driver crashes in the 4-year pre-campaign period (2006-2010) was compared with a 6-year post-campaign period (2010-2016). Teen-involved crashes decreased 31%, teen driver fatalities decreased 47%, and teen-involved fatal crashes decreased by 43% after the campaign.

Parents are in the best position to enforce GDL requirements (Chapter 6, Section 3.1). However, some law enforcement support for GDL nighttime driving and teenage passenger restrictions may be useful to emphasize that the requirements are important. GDL law violations are penalized by driver license actions, such as suspension or revocation of the learner's permit or intermediate license or an extension of the time before full licensure. This means they can be applied administratively and do not involve criminal court proceedings. As noted in Chapter 1, Section 6.2, administrative penalties for zero-tolerance laws are more efficient and allow for a more immediate sanction than criminal penalties. Another issue with enforcement concerns the difficulties in identifying drivers that qualify as falling under the GDL system in a given State. It has been suggested that young drivers should be required to affix a vehicle decal identifying

them as qualifying for the GDL program to make them more readily identifiable (Curry et al., 2015). New Jersey was the first State to implement this countermeasure.

**Use**: The amount of enforcement of zero-tolerance and GDL laws is unknown.

**Effectiveness:** Zero-tolerance law publicity and enforcement likely will reduce teenage drinking and driving, as discussed in Chapter 1, Section 6.2. High-visibility enforcement of GDL provisions would be most effective if compliance with nighttime and passenger restrictions are included as part of the zero-tolerance efforts. One study investigated whether well-publicized enforcement, including checkpoints near high schools, could increase compliance with seat belt laws and GDL provisions. The study found only modest increases in seat belt use and compliance with the GDL passenger restriction, although levels of compliance prior to the enforcement efforts were already high (Goodwin et al., 2006).

Studies evaluating the effectiveness of vehicle decals in New Jersey have found increases in citations for violations of licensing restrictions and decreases in crash rates among intermediate license holders in the year after the requirement went into effect (Curry et al., 2013; McCartt et al., 2012). A longer term (2-year) evaluation of the effect of the decal provision on police-reported crash rates and citations was conducted and baseline comparisons using data from a 4-year pre-decal period were performed (Curry, Elliott, et al., 2015). The study showed that the adjusted crash rates for intermediate license holders were 9.5% lower after the decal provision. There were no changes in crash rates or citations for holders of learner's permit (Curry, Pfeiffer, et al., 2015).

**Costs:** See Chapter 1, Section 6.2, for zero-tolerance law enforcement strategies and costs. GDL law enforcement costs will depend on how the enforcement is conducted. Enforcement through regular patrols will require moderate costs for training. Special patrols or checkpoints will require additional staff time. To be most effective, all enforcement efforts will require good publicity to both teens and parents. Publicity to teens can be delivered through high schools, colleges, recreational venues attended by youth, and media directed to youth. The cost of vehicle decals can be paid for by the licensee when they receive a learner's permit or intermediate license. In New Jersey vehicle decals cost $4 for a pair.

**Time to implement:** Enforcement programs can be implemented in 3 or 4 months, as soon as appropriate training, publicity, and equipment are in place.

**Other issues:**

- **Preventative measures:** A recent NHTSA study examined the feasibility of deterring drunk driving among teen drivers by fitting the vehicle with alcohol ignition interlocks (Kelley-Baker et al., 2017). Stakeholders participated in meetings conducted in 2010, including interlock device and service providers, community representatives, insurance companies, current voluntary and involuntary users of interlock devices 16- to 26 years old, parents, and teen drivers. Insights from these discussions pointed to the need for a change in the social norming of interlock devices from a punitive to a preventative measure. Parents were generally supportive of interlock devices as a way to prevent drunk driving among their children. The responses from current users pointed to mixed

acceptance of the device. Future research into such preventative measures could provide a front-line enforcement of laws and restrictions.

- **Compliance with restrictions:** Several studies have shown that teenagers do not always comply with GDL restrictions (Goodwin & Foss, 2004; Williams et al., 2002) and effectiveness of GDL may be reduced. It should be noted, however, that GDL has been shown to be effective even in the absence of police enforcement. For example, focus groups with parents and teen drivers conducted in California, Massachusetts, and Virginia revealed that passenger restrictions were frequently violated in all three States, but even incomplete adherence to the restrictions had a positive impact on teen driver crashes (Chaudhary et al., 2007). In general, compliance with restrictions will be higher in States that have well-designed GDL systems with restrictions that are considered reasonable by parents and teens (Foss & Goodwin, 2003). Curry, Pfeiffer, and Elliott (2017) used the quasi-induced exposure (QIE) method to estimate young, intermediate drivers' compliance with both the passenger and nighttime restrictions of GDL in New Jersey. The QIE method assumed that young intermediate drivers in multi-vehicle crashes (with only one driver held responsible for the crash) were reasonably representative of the population of young intermediate drivers. Data from 9,250 drivers who were involved in multi-vehicle crashes from July 2010 to June 2012 were examined. Noncompliance with the passenger restriction averaged 8.3%, and noncompliance with the nighttime restriction was 3.1%. Certain groups and situations were associated with higher rates of noncompliance—male drivers, those residing in low-income and urban areas, weekend trips, and trips in the summer months. The authors concluded that outreach should be focused, where possible, on higher-risk situations and groups with higher noncompliance.
- **Citation dismissal in the courts:** One study in two States noted relatively high rates of GDL-related citations being dismissed by the courts, which could have a negative impact on the effectiveness of those programs (AAAFTS, 2014).

**Young Driver References**

AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. (2014). *Violations and enforcement of graduated driver licensing restrictions in North Carolina and Washington State*. http://docplayer.net/27987553-Violations-and-enforcement-of-graduated-driver-licensing-restrictions-in-north-carolina-and-washington-state.html

Alderman, E. M., & Johnston, B. D. (2018). The teen driver. *Pediatrics*, *142*(4), e20182163. https://pediatrics.aappublications.org/content/pediatrics/142/4/e20182163.full-text.pdf

Baker, S. P., Chen, L-H., & Li, G. (2006, June). *National evaluation of graduated driver licensing programs* (Report No. DOT HS 810 614). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1903

Baker, S. P., Chen, L-H., & Li, G. (2007). *Nationwide review of graduated driver licensing.* AAA Foundation. www.aaafoundation.org/nationwide-review-graduated-driver-licensing/

Block, A. W., & Walker, S. (2008, December). *2007 Motor Vehicle Occupant Safety Survey: Driver education and graduated driver licensing* (Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 811 047). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1865

Bonne, S., Suber, I., Anderson, A., & Livingston, D. H. (2018). Implementation is not enough: Graduated drivers licensing benefits from a comprehensive enforcement, education, and awareness campaigns. *Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery*, *85*(4), 704-710.

Carney, C., McGehee, D. V., Lee, J. D., Reyes, M. L. & Raby, M. (2010). Using an event-triggered video intervention system to expand the supervised learning of newly licensed adolescent drivers. *American Journal of Public Health, 100,* 1101-1106.

Carpenter, D., & Pressley, J. C. (2013). Graduated driver licensing nighttime compliance in U.S. teen drivers involved in fatal motor vehicle crashes. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *56*, 110-117.

Centers for Diseases Control and Prevention. (2018). High School Youth Risk Behavior Survey. https://nccd.cdc.gov/Youthonline/App/Default.aspx

CDC. (2020). *Ten leading causes of death and injury: 10 leading causes of injury deaths by age group highlighting unintentional deaths, United States – 2018.* www.cdc.gov/injury/wisqars/LeadingCauses.html

Chapman, E. A., Masten, S. V., and Browning, K. K. (2014) Crash and traffic violation rates before and after licensure for novice California drivers subject to different driver licensing requirements. *Journal of Safety Research, 50,* 125-138.

Chaudhary, N. K., Williams, A. F., & Nissen, W. (2007, September). *Evaluation and compliance of passenger restrictions in a graduated driver licensing program* (Report No. DOT HS 810 781). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1769

Chaudhary, N. K., Williams, A. F., & Preusser, D. (2018). *Evaluation of Connecticut's 2008 graduated driver licensing Upgrades* (No. 18-02614). Proceedings of the Transportation Research Board 97th Annual Meeting, Washington, DC.

Chen, L., Baker, S. P., Braver, E. R., & Li, G. (2000). Carrying passengers as a risk factor for crashes fatal to 16- and 17-year-old drivers. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 283,* 1578-1582.

Compton, R. P., & Ellison-Potter, P. (2008, July). *Teen driver crashes: A Report to Congress* (Report No. DOT HS 811 005). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1849

Conner, K. A., & Smith, G. A. (2017). An evaluation of the effect of Ohio's graduated driver licensing law on motor vehicle crashes and crash outcomes involving drivers 16 to 20 years of age. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *18*(4), 344-350.

Creaser, J., Morris, N., Edwards, C., Manser, M., Cooper, J., Swanson, B., & Donath, M. (2015). *Teen driver support system (TDSS) field operational test*. Minnesota: Center for Transportation Studies – University of Minnesota. www.roadwaysafety.umn.edu/publications/researchreports/pdfdownload.pl?id=2712

Curry, A. E., Elliott, M. R., Pfeiffer, M. R., Kim, K. H., & Durbin, D. R. (2015). Long-term changes in crash rates after introduction of a graduated driver licensing decal provision. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *48*(2), 121-127.

Curry, A. E., Metzger, K. B., Williams, A. F., & Tefft, B. C. (2017). Comparison of older and younger novice driver crash rates: Informing the need for extended graduated driver licensing restrictions. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *108*, 66-73.

Curry, A. E., Peek-Asa, C., Hamann, C. J., & Mirman, J. H. (2015). Effectiveness of parent-focused interventions to increase teen driver safety: A critical review. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, *57*(1), S6-S14.

Curry, A. E., Pfeiffer, M. R., Durbin, D. R., Elliott, M. R., and Kim, K. H. (2014). *Young driver crash rates in New Jersey by driving experience, age, and license phase*. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/12/OlderVsYoungerNovicesNJReport.pdf

Curry, A. E., Pfeiffer, M. R., & Elliott, M. R. (2017). Compliance with and enforcement of graduated driver licensing restrictions. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *52*(1), 47-54.

Curry, A. E., Pfeiffer, M. R., Elliott, M. R., & Durbin, D. R. (2015). Association between New Jersey's graduated driver licensing decal provision and crash rates of young drivers with learners' permits. *Injury Prevention*, *21*(6), 421-423.

Curry A. E., Pfeiffer M. R., Localio R., & Durbin, D. (2013). Graduated driver licensing decal law: Effect on young probationary drivers. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *44*, 1-7.

Dahl, R. E. (2008). Biological, developmental, and neurobehavioral factors relevant to adolescent driving risks. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *35*(3S), S278-S284.

Delgado, M. K., Wanner, K. J., & McDonald, C. (2016). Adolescent cellphone use while driving: An overview of the literature and promising future directions for prevention. *Media and Communication*, *4*(3), 79.

Ehsani, J. P., Bingham, C. R., & Shope, J. T. (2013). The effect of the learner license graduated driver licensing components on teen drivers' crashes. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 59,* 327-336.

Farah, H., Musicant, O., Shimshoni, Y., Toledo, T., Grimberg, E., Omer, H., & Lotan, T. (2014). Can providing feedback on driving behavior and training on parental vigilant care affect male teen drivers and their parents? *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 69*, 62-70.

Farmer, C. M., Kirley, B. B., & McCartt, A. T. (2010). Effects of in-vehicle monitoring on the driving behavior of teenagers. *Journal of Safety Research*, *41*(1), 39-45.

Federal Highway Administration. (2020). *Highway statistics 2018*. www.fhwa.dot.gov/policyinformation/statistics/2018/dl220.cfm

Fell, J. C., Jones, K., Romano, E., & Voas, R. (2011). An evaluation of graduated driver licensing effects on fatal crash involvements of young drivers in the United States. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *12*, 423-431.

Fell, J. C., Jones, K., Romano, E., & Voas, R. (2001). An evaluation of graduated driver licensing effects on fatal crash involvements of young drivers in the United States. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 12*(5), 423-431.

Ferguson, S. A. (2003). Other high-risk factors for young drivers – How graduated licensing does, doesn't, or could address them. *Journal of Safety Research, 34*, 71-77.

Foss, R. D. (2009). *Effect of adding a passenger restriction to an already effective GDL system*. Presentation at the TRB Young Driver Mid-Year Meeting, Washington, DC, July 13-14, 2009. www.youngdriversafety.org/docs/2009/Foss.pdf

Foss, R. D., & Goodwin, A. H. (2003). Enhancing the effectiveness of graduated driver licensing legislation. *Journal of Safety Research, 34*, 79-84.

Foss, R. D., & Goodwin, A. H. (2014). Distracted driver behaviors and distracting conditions among adolescent drivers: Findings from a naturalistic study. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, *54*, S50-S60.

Foss, R. D., Masten, S. V., Goodwin, A. H., & O'Brien, N. P. (2012, March). *The role of supervised driving requirements in graduated driver licensing programs* (Report No. DOT HS 811 550). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811550.pdf

Foss, R., Masten, S., & Martell, C. (2014). Examining the safety implications of later licensure: Crash rates of older vs. younger novice drivers before and after graduated driver licensing. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/12/OlderVsYoungerLicensingCrashesReport.pdf

Freedman, M., & Levi, S. (2008). *Evaluation of a seat belt restriction in a graduated driver licensing program*. Presentation at the 2008 Lifesavers Conference. Portland, OR.

Goodwin, A. H., & Foss, R. D. (2004). Graduated driver licensing restrictions: Awareness, compliance, and enforcement in North Carolina. *Journal of Safety Research, 35*, 367-374.

Goodwin, A., Foss, R., Sohn, J., & Mayhew, D. (2007). Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, Volume 19: *A guide for reducing collisions involving young drivers*. Transportation Research Board. https://trb.org/Publications/Blurbs/159494.aspx

Goodwin, A. H., Wells, J. K., Foss, R. D., & Williams, A. F. (2006). Encouraging compliance with graduated driver licensing restrictions. *Journal of Safety Research, 37*, 343-351.

Governors Highway Safety Association. (2012). *Curbing teen driver crashes: An in-depth look at state initiatives*. www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2017-08/Curbing%20Teen%20Driver%20Crashes%20-%20FINAL.pdf

GHSA. (2019a, September). *Teen and novice drivers.* www.ghsa.org/taxonomy/term/331

GHSA. (2019b, September). *Distracted driving.* www.ghsa.org/issues/distracted-driving

GHSA. (2019c, September). *Seat belts*. www.ghsa.org/html/stateinfo/laws/seatbelt_laws.html

Guo, F., Klauer, S. G., Fang, Y., Hankey, J. M., Antin, J. F., Perez, M. A., Lee, S. E., & Dingus, T. A. (2017). The effects of age on crash risk associated with driver distraction. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, *46*(1), 258-265.

Hedlund, J., & Compton, R. (2005). Graduated driver licensing research in 2004 and 2005. *Journal of Safety Research, 36*, 109-114.

Hedlund, J., Shults, R. A., & Compton, R. (2003). What we know, what we don't know, and what we need to know about graduated driver licensing. *Journal of Safety Research, 34*, 107-115.

Highway Loss Data Institute. (2013). *Evaluation of changes in teenage driver exposure*. *Highway Loss Data Institute Bulletin*, *30(17)*. www.iihs.org/media/9e8ce82c-8744-4157-9080-0efffb97076d/-292726267/HLDI%20Research/Bulletins/hldi_bulletin_30.17.pdf

Insurance Institute for Highway Safety. (2019a). *Fatality Facts 2018 - Teenagers.* www.iihs.org/iihs/topics/t/teenagers/fatalityfacts/teenagers

IIHS. (2019b). *Teenagers - May 2019.* www.iihs.org/iihs/topics/laws/graduatedlicenseintro?topicName=teenagers

IIHS. (2019c, September). *Cell phone use laws by State*. www.iihs.org/topics/distracted-driving/cellphone-use-laws

IIHS. (2019d). *Safety belts.* www.iihs.org/iihs/topics/laws/safetybeltuse?topicName=safety-belts

Keating, D. P. (2007). Understanding adolescent development: Implications for driving safety. *Journal of Safety Research, 38,* 147-157.

Kelley, A. E, Schochet, T., & Landry, C. F. (2004). Risk taking and novelty seeking in adolescence: Introduction to part I. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, 1021*, 27–32.

Kelley-Baker, T., Taylor, E., Berning, A., Yao, J., Lauer, L., & Watson, D. (2017, June). *The feasibility of voluntary ignition interlocks as a prevention strategy for young drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 812 425). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/35005

Kervick, A. A., Hogan, M. J., O'Hora, D., & Sarma, K. M. (2015). Testing a structural model of young driver willingness to uptake Smartphone Driver Support Systems. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *83*, 171-181.

Lee, J. D. (2007). Technology and teen drivers. *Journal of Safety Research*, *38*, 203-213.

Lerner, N., Jenness, J., Singer, J., Klauer, S., Lee, S., Donath, M., Manser, M., & Ward, N. (2010, August). *An exploration of vehicle-based monitoring of novice teen drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 811 333). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. at www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/811333.pdf

Li, K., Simons-Morton, B., Gee, B., & Hingson, R. (2016). Marijuana-, alcohol-, and drug-impaired driving among emerging adults: Changes from high school to one-year post-high school. *Journal of Safety Research*, *58*, 15-20.

Lin, M-L., & Fearn, K. T. (2003). The provisional license: Nighttime and passenger restrictions – A literature review. *Journal of Safety Research, 34*, 51-61.

Lyon, J. D., Pan, R., & Li, J. (2012). National evaluation of the effect of graduated licensing laws on teenager fatality and injury crashes. *Journal of Safety Research*, *43*, 29-37.

Margolis, L. H., Masten, S. V., & Foss, R. D. (2007). The effects of graduated driver licensing on hospitalization rates and charges for 16- and 17-year-olds in North Carolina. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 8,* 35-38.

Masten, S. V., Foss, R. D., & Marshall, S. (2011). Graduated driver licensing and fatal crashes involving 16- to 19-year-old drivers. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *306*, 1099-1103.

Masten, S. V., Foss, R. D., & Marshall, S. (2013). Graduated driver licensing program component calibrations and their association with fatal crash involvement. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *57*, 105-113.

Masten, S. V., Thomas, F. D., Korbelak, K. T., Peck, R. C., & Blomberg, R. D. (2015, November). *Meta-analysis of graduated driver licensing laws* (Report No. DOT HS 812 211). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1965

Mayhew, D. R. (2003). The learner's permit. *Journal of Safety Research, 34,* 35-43.

Mayhew, D. R. (2007). Driver education and graduated licensing in North America: Past, present, and future. *Journal of Safety Research, 38*, 229-235.

Mayhew, D., Williams, A., and Pashley, C. (2014). *A New GDL Framework: Evidence Base to Integrate Novice Driver Strategies.* Ottawa, Ontario: Traffic Injury Research Foundation. http://tirf.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/01/NSC_GDL_Report-_ExecutiveSummary_6.pdf

Mayhew, D. R., Williams, A. F., Robertson, R., & Vanlaar, W. (2017). Better integrating driver education and training within a new graduated driver licensing framework in North America. *Recherche Transports Sécurité*, *2016*(01-02), 97-105.

McCartt, A. T., Hellinga, L. A., & Haire, E. R. (2007). Age of licensure and monitoring teenagers' driving: Survey of parents of novice teenage drivers. *Journal of Safety Research*, *38*(6), 697-706.

McCartt, A. T., Oesch, N. J., Williams, A. F., & Powell, T. C. (2012). New Jersey's license plate decal requirement for graduated driver licenses: Attitudes of parents and teenagers, observed decal use, and citations for teenage driving violations. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *14*, 244-258

McCartt, A. T., & Teoh, E. R. (2015). Tracking progress in teenage driver crash risk in the United States since the advent of graduated driver licensing programs. *Journal of Safety Research*, *53*, 1-9.

McCartt, A. T., Teoh, E. R., Fields, M., Braitman, K. A., & Hellinga, L. A. (2010). Graduated licensing laws and fatal crashes of teenage drivers: A national study. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *11*, 240-248.

McGehee, D. V., Raby, M., Carney, C., Lee, J. D., & Reyes, M. L. (2007). Extending parental mentoring using an event triggered video intervention in rural teen drivers. *Journal of Safety Research, 38,* 215-227.

McKay, M. P., Coben, J. H., Larkin, G. L., & Shaffer, A. (2008). Attitudes of teenagers and their parents to Pennsylvania's graduated driver licensing system. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *9*, 217-223.

McKnight, A. J., & Peck, R. C. (2003). Graduated driver licensing and safer driving. *Journal of Safety Research*, *34,* 85-89.

Musicant, O., & Lampel, L. (2010). When technology tells novice drivers how to drive. *Transportation Research Record*, *2182*(1), 8-15.

National Center for Statistics and Analysis. (2020, October). *Young drivers: 2018 data* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 968). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812968

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (2008, January). *Graduated driver licensing system* (Traffic Safety Facts, Laws. Report No. DOT HS 810 888W). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/810888.pdf

NHTSA & NIAAA. (1999, September). *Sentencing and dispositions of youth DUI and other alcohol offenses: A guide for judges and prosecutors* (Report No. DOT HS 808 891). www.ncjrs.gov/pdffiles1/Digitization/186183NCJRS.pdf

O'Brien, N. P., Foss, R. D., Goodwin, A. H., & Masten, S. V. (2013). Supervised hours requirements in graduated driver licensing: Effectiveness and parent awareness. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *50,* 330-335.

O'Malley, P. M., & Johnston, L. D. (2013). Driving after drug or alcohol use by US high school seniors, 2001–2011. *American Journal of Public Health*, *103*(11), 2027-2034.

Ouimet, M. C., Pradhan, A. K., Brooks-Russell, A., Ehsani, J. P., Berbiche, D., & Simons-Morton, B. G. (2015). Young drivers and their passengers: A systematic review of epidemiological studies on crash risk. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, *57*(1), S24-S35.

Ouimet, M. C., Simons-Morton, B. G., Zador, P. L., Lerner, N. D., Freedman, M., Duncan, G. D., & Wang, J. (2010). Using the U.S. National Household Travel Survey to estimate the impact of passenger characteristics on young drivers' relative risk of fatal crash involvement. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *42*, 689-694.

Palumbo, A. J., Pfeiffer, M. R., Elliott, M. R., & Curry, A. E. (2018). Young driver compliance with graduated driver licensing restrictions before and after implementation of a decal provision. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, *62*(5), 612-617.

Paterson, J. L., & Dawson, D. (2016). Fatigue and Road Safety for Young and Novice Drivers. In D. Fisher, J. Caird, W. Horrey, & L. Trick (Eds.), *Handbook of Teen and Novice Drivers: Research, Practice, Policy, and Directions* (pp. 229-238). Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press by Taylor & Francis Group.

Peek-Asa, C., Reyes, M. L., Hamann, C. J., Butcher, B. D., & Cavanaugh, J. E. (2019). A randomized trial to test the impact of parent communication on improving in-vehicle feedback systems. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *131*, 63-69.

Pressley, J. C., Benedicto, C. B., Trieu, L., Kendig, T., & Barlow, B. (2009). Motor vehicle injury, mortality, and hospital charges by strength of graduated driver licensing laws in 36 states. *The Journal of Trauma: Injury Infection, and Critical Care*, *67*(1 Supp.), S43-S53.

Preusser, D. F., Ferguson, S. A., & Williams, A. F. (1998). The effect of teenage passengers on the fatal crash risk of teenage drivers. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 30*, 217-222.

Reyes, M. L., McGehee, D. V., & Carney, C. (2018, July). *Age versus experience: Evaluation of video feedback intervention for newly licensed teen drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 812 508). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/36729

Reyes, M. L., McGehee, D. V., Jenness, J. W., Krueger, J., & Riegler, K. (2016, July). *Video and non-video feedback interventions for teen drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 812 291). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1976/dot_1976_DS1.pdf

Roberts, I., & Kwan, I. (2001). School based driver education for the prevention of traffic crashes. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, Issue 3. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD003201.

Russell, K. F., Vandermeer, B., & Hartling, L. (2011). Graduated Driver Licensing for reducing motor vehicle crashes among young drivers. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, Issue 10. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD003300.pub3.

Shope, J. T. (2007). Graduated driver licensing: Review of evaluation results since 2002. *Journal of Safety Research, 38,* 165-175.

Shults, R. A., Banerjee, T., & Perry, T. (2016). Who's not driving among US high school seniors: A closer look at race/ethnicity, socioeconomic factors, and driving status. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *17*(8), 803-809.

Shults, R. A., Haegerich, T. M., Bhat, G., & Zhang, X. (2016). Teens and seat belt use: What makes them click? *Journal of Safety Research*, *57*, 19-25.

Shults, R. A., & Williams, A. F. (2013). Trends in driver licensing status and driving among high school seniors in the United States, 1996-2010. *Journal of Safety Research*, *46*, 167-70.

Shults, R. A. & Williams, A. F. (2016). Graduated driver licensing night driving restrictions and drivers 16 or 17 years involved in fatal night crashes—United States, 2009–2014. *MMWR Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, *65*(29), 725-730.

Simons-Morton, B. G. (2007). Parental involvement in novice teen driving: Rationale, evidence of effects, and potential for enhancing graduated driver licensing effectiveness. *Journal of Safety Research, 38*, 193-202.

Simons-Morton, B. G., Bingham, C. R., Ouimet, M. C., Pradhan, A. K., Chen, R., Barretto, A., & Shope, J.T. (2013). The effect on teenage risky driving of feedback from a safety monitoring system: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Adolescent Health, 53*, 21-26.

Simpson, H. M. (2003). The evolution and effectiveness of graduated licensing. *Journal of Safety Research, 34*, 25-34.

Smith, M. F. (1994, May 31). *Research agenda for an improved novice driver education program* Report to Congress (Report No. DOT HS 808 161). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/13466

Somerville, L. H. (2016). Searching for signatures of brain maturity: What are we searching for? *Neuron*, *92*(6), 1164-1167.

Steinberg, L. (2007). Risk taking in adolescence: New perspectives from brain and behavioral science. *Current Directions in Psychological Science, 16*, 55-59.

Tefft, B. C., Williams, A. F., & Grabowski, J. G. (2013a). *Timing of driver's license acquisition and reasons for delay among young people in the United States*. AAA Foundation. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/01/TimingofDriversLicenseAcquisitionReport.pdf

Tefft, B. C., Williams, A. F., & Grabowski, J. G. (2013b). Teen driver risk in relation to age and number of passengers, United States, 2007-2010. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 14,* 283-292.

Thomas, F. D., Blomberg, R. D., & Fisher, D. L. (2012, April). *A fresh look at the state of driver education in America* (Report No. DOT HS 811 543). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1919

Thomas, F. D., Blomberg, R. D., Korbelak, K., Stutts, J., Wilkins, J., Lonero, L., Clinton, K., & Black, D. (2012, June). *Examination of supplemental driver training and online basic driver education* (Report No. DOT HS 811 609). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1920

Thompson, N. J., McGee, R. E., & Feng, J. (2016). Impact of Georgia's teenage and adult driver responsibility act: 15-year follow-up. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *17*(2), 195-201.

Vernick, J. S., Li, G., Ogaitis, S., MacKenzie, E. J., Baker, S. P., & Gielen, A. C. (1999). Effects of high school driver education on motor vehicle crashes, violations, and licensure. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 16*, 40-46.

Voas, R. B., Torres, P., Romano, E., & Lacey, J. H. (2012). Alcohol-related risk of driver fatalities: An update using 2007 data. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs*, *73*(3), 341-50.

Williams, A. F. (2003). Teenage drivers: patterns of risk. *Journal of Safety Research, 34*, 5-15.

Williams, A. F. (2007). Contribution of the components of graduated licensing to crash reductions. *Journal of Safety Research, 38,* 177-184.

Williams, A. F. (2009). Licensing age and teenage driver crashes: A review of the evidence. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *10*, 9-15.

Williams, A. F. (2011). Teenagers' licensing decisions and their views of licensing policies: A national survey. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *12*(4), 312-319.

Williams, A. F. (2017). Graduated driver licensing (GDL) in the United States in 2016: A literature review and commentary. *Journal of Safety Research*, *63*, 29-41.

Williams, A. F., Braitman, K. A., & McCartt, A. T. (2011). Views of parents of teenagers about licensing policies: A national survey, *Traffic Injury Prevention, 12*, 1-8

Williams, A. F., Chaudhary, N. K., Tefft, B. C., & Tison, J. (2010). Evaluation of New Jersey's graduated driver licensing program. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *11*, 1-7.

Williams, A. F., McCartt, A. T., Mayhew, D. R., & Watson, B. (2013). Licensing age issues: Deliberations from a workshop devoted to this topic. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 14,* 237-243.

Williams, A. F., Nelson, L. A., & Leaf, W. A. (2002). Responses of teenagers and their parents to California's graduated licensing system. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *34*, 835-842.

Williams, A. F., Tefft, B. C., & Grabowski, J. G. (2012). Graduated driver licensing research, 2010-present. *Journal of Safety Research, 43*, 195-203.

# 7. Older Drivers

## Overview

In 2018 nearly 20% of licensed drivers in the United States were 65 or older (FHWA, 2020). As drivers age, their physical and mental abilities, driving behaviors, and crash risks all change, though age alone is not determinative of driving performance. Many features of the current system of roads, traffic signals and controls, laws, licensing practices, and vehicles were not designed to accommodate older drivers. Older Americans are increasingly dependent on driving to maintain their mobility, independence, and health. The challenge is to balance mobility for older drivers with safety for all road users.

**Trends.** From 1982 to 2018 the proportion of licensed drivers 65 and older rose from 11% to 20% and the proportion of these older drivers in fatal crashes rose from 7% to 14%.

**People 65 and Older: Number and Proportion of Total Populations**

| | Resident Population | | Licensed Drivers | | Drivers In Fatal Crashes | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Year** | **Million** | **%** | **Million** | **%** | **N** | **%** |
| **1982** | 26.8 | 12% | 16.8 | 11% | 3,894 | 7% |
| **2018** | 52.4 | 16% | 45.2 | 20% | 7,316 | 14% |
| **2030** | 73.1* | 21%* | 62.1* | > 20%* | ? | ? |

*Projected numbers based on 2017 population estimates
Sources: NHTSA - FARS (1982, 2018); FHWA Highway Statistics (1995, 2020); NCSA (2020); Vespa et al. (2020)

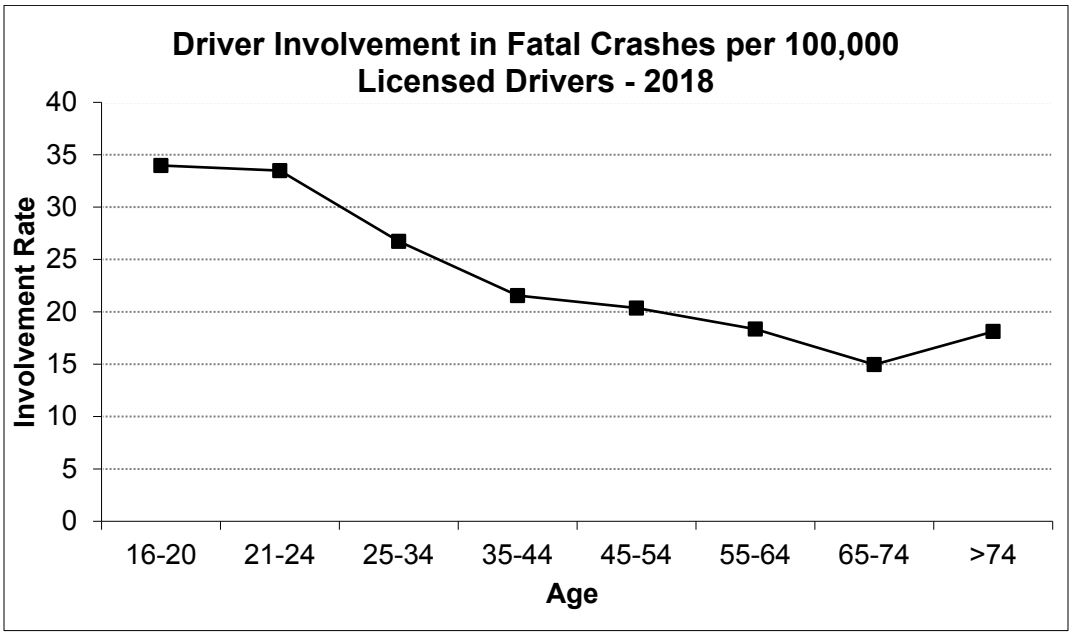
The U.S. population 65 and older increased at a much faster rate (15.1%) than the total population (9.7%) from 2000 to 2010 (Census Bureau, 2014). Between 2010 and 2017, the resident population 65 and older continued to increase at a much higher rate (25.7%) than all other age groups combined (2.2%) (Census Bureau, 2018). By 2030, the Census Bureau estimates that the resident population over 65 will double the 2010 population, to over 73 million, and will comprise 21% of the total U.S. population (Vespa et al., 2020).

The licensed driver population likely will grow even faster. The proportion of people 65 or older who held a driver's license rose from 63% in 1982 to 86% in 2018 (FHWA, 2020). As of 2018, there were 92.8% of people 65 to 69 who were licensed, as are 91.1% of people 70 to 74, 86.7% of people 75 to 79, 79.2% of people 80 to 84, and 61.5% of people 85 and older (FHWA, 2020). With current life expectancy in this country at 78.6 years on average (CDC, 2017), and with advances in medical science, older Americans are staying mobile and active longer. Those who will reach 65 in the coming decade have been projected to drive more miles and are expected to continue driving later in life than previous generations. This increasingly active and mobile older population gives rise to the need to enhance their safety, and the safety of all road users, while addressing their mobility needs and quality of life.

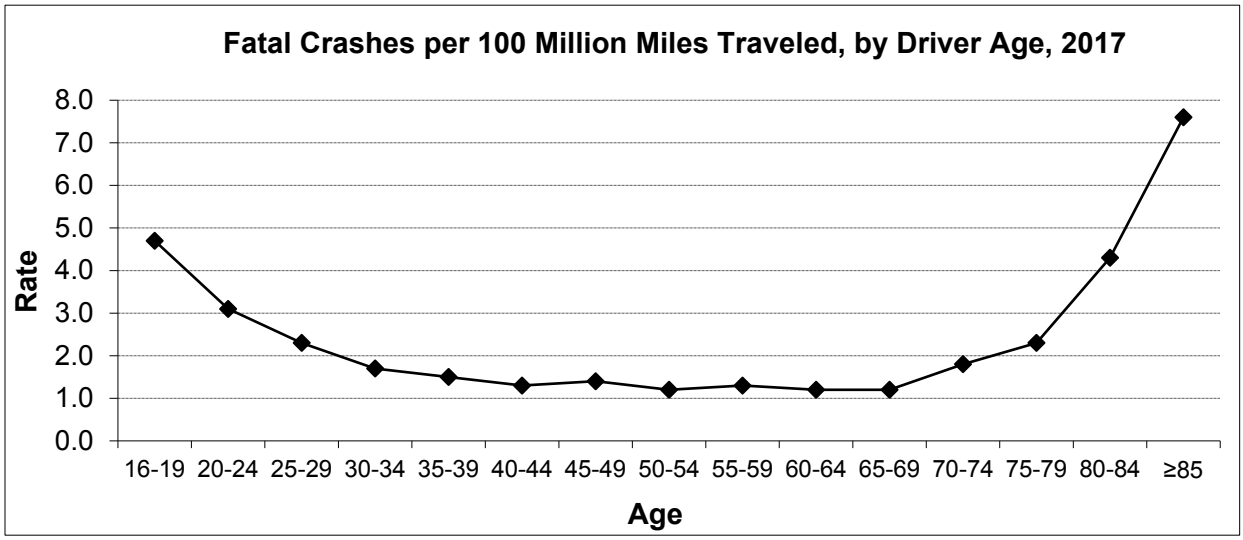
The licensure rate probably will increase because tomorrow's older people likely will be healthier and more accustomed to driving than today's. By 2030, if 85% of older people are licensed, there will be over to 62 million licensed drivers who are at least 65 years old.

**Older driver characteristics.** Certain changes are often linked to the normal aging process (Potts et al.'s 2004 NCHRP report, Section III; IIHS, 2019).

- Fragility increases. The same crash force produces more serious injuries to a 70-year-old than to a 20-year-old, and injuries take longer to heal.
- Drivers' overall functional abilities decline as their physical, visual, and cognitive capabilities diminish with age. Though at very different rates for different people, physical capabilities including hearing, muscle tone, and reaction time as well as visual capabilities (especially night vision) all decline. Cognitive capabilities can also diminish. Driving is a complex activity that requires a variety of high-level cognitive skills that can diminish through changes that occur with normal aging and/or as a result of dementia. As drivers get older, they tend to be overrepresented in crashes requiring navigation of more complex situations such as intersections, left turns, and reacting to an impending crash (Stutts et al., 2009). That said, mild cognitive decline can still allow for safe driving (Staplin et al., 2019). Overall, tests of functional ability to drive may provide better indicators of driving health. The state of current research on visual scanning ability and availability of training programs for visual scanning skills has been summarized in a recent NHTSA report (Lococo & Staplin, 2018).
- Many older drivers use medications, with over 90% taking prescription medications (Rosenbloom & Santos, 2014). These medications alone and/or in combination with other medications may be necessary to control disease or health conditions, but also may cause drowsiness or otherwise affect driving.
- Older drivers are less likely than younger people to drive after drinking or using recreational drugs. While drivers over 70 were overrepresented in several crash types, drivers 60 and older were less likely than younger drivers to be involved in alcohol-related crashes (Stutts et al., 2009).
- Older drivers are less likely to drive aggressively or to speed. However, they may exhibit other risky behaviors, such as driving more slowly than prevailing traffic or failing to detect or accurately judge the speed of an oncoming vehicle while making a left turn. The most frequent driving errors made by older adults include the failure to yield right-of-way (Mayhew et al., 2006), inadequate surveillance, and misjudgment of gaps (Cicchino & McCartt, 2015). Older adults are more likely to be involved in angle collisions, overtaking- and merging-related collisions, and crashes in intersections (Lombardi et al., 2017).
- Most older drivers reduce their driving mileage as their lifestyles change. Many older drivers recognize and avoid driving in situations in which they feel uncomfortable, such as at night, on high-speed roads, or in unfamiliar situations (Staplin & Lococo, 2003). Older drivers were underrepresented in nighttime-related crashes, probably due in part to this group's tendency to avoid or limit driving at night (Stutts et al., 2009). However, such driving avoidance may not always be due to consideration of functional impairments, and can instead arise due to other factors including changes in lifestyle or travel preferences or a reduced need to drive (Molnar et al., 2015).




Source: NHTSA (2020), Table 62




Source: Insurance Institute for Highway Safety [IIHS] (2019)

These characteristics produce the following results.

- The older driver (65+) crash involvement rate in fatal crashes per licensed driver is *lower* than for younger drivers (<65).
- The average fatal crash rate for drivers 70 and older *per mile traveled* is *higher* than for all age groups except drivers 16 to19 (IIHS, 2019). This is due to changes in driving habits and increased susceptibility to injury among older drivers:
    - Older drivers drive fewer miles annually than younger drivers but tend to drive more on local roads where there are more potential hazards, such as traffic congestion and confusing intersections (Wang et al., 2003). The majority of older

drivers' fatal crashes occur on rural roadways (Stutts et al., 2009). In 2018 more drivers 65 and older were killed on rural roadways (53%) as compared to urban roadways (46%) (NCSA, 2020).

- Older drivers are more fragile; thus, they will more likely sustain a serious injury or fatality than younger drivers. They may also experience long-term health issues and resultant frailty due to the lack of physiological stamina. Fragility, as measured by deaths per driver involved in crashes, begins to increase between 60 to 64 years old and increases steadily with advancing age. Fragility, rather than an increased tendency to get into crashes, accounts for about 60% to 95% (depending on age group and gender) of the increased fatality rates per miles traveled in older drivers (Li et al., 2003).
- Other research has concluded that the fatal crash risk for drivers 70 and older declined in 1997 to 2005 at a rate faster than that for the comparison group of 35- to 54-year-old drivers (Cheung & McCartt, 2011). Cheung and McCartt suggest that this reduction in fatality risk for older drivers is due to their decreased likelihood of being involved in crashes combined with increases in their chances of survival when they are involved in crashes. The exact reasons for the increase in survivability were unclear, and could have included factors such as safer vehicles, lesser driving exposure, access to better emergency and trauma care, and improvements in overall health. For example, improvement in occupant restraint systems have been shown to improve crash outcomes across age groups. Although these changes have benefitted younger occupants to a greater extent than older occupants, all occupants are safer when belted (Kahane, 2013). The decline in the national fatal crash rate for drivers 70 and older were similar to the decline for middle age drivers during the 2007–2012-time period. However, when considering the duration from 1997 to 2012, fatal crash rates per licensed driver fell 42% for drivers 70 and older and 30% for 35- to 54-year-old drivers. The 49% decline in the national fatal crash involvement rate for drivers 80 and older was the largest for any age group (Cicchino & McCartt, 2014).

## Strategies to Reduce Crashes and Injuries Involving Older Drivers

The overall goal of older-driver-related countermeasures is to enable older drivers to retain as much mobility through driving as is consistent with safety on the road for themselves, their passengers, and other road users. "Safe mobility for life" was the key phrase used in the U.S. Department of Transportation's *Safe Mobility for a Maturing Society: Challenges and Opportunities* plan published in 2003 (U.S. DOT, 2003). The plan established strategies to address safe mobility on the State or local level. Strategies included educating and training older drivers to assess their driving capabilities and limitations; improving skills when possible; voluntarily limiting driving to circumstances in which they feel most comfortable driving; helping drivers adapt to medical or functional limitations affecting driving with treatment (such as eyeglasses or cataract surgery to improve vision) or vehicle adaptations (such as extra mirrors, extended gear shift levers, hand controls, or pedal extenders); and using license renewal procedures or referrals from law enforcement, clinicians (primary care providers or specialists),

family, or friends to identify older drivers who cannot drive safely, in certain situations or at all, and restrict or revoke their driver's licenses.

In 2005 NHTSA developed the *Older Driver Traffic Safety Plan* that synthesized research findings and expert opinions and guided subsequent NHTSA research and programs (NHTSA, 2005). Building on that work, NHTSA produced the *Older Driver Program Five-Year Strategic Plan* in 2010 focused on how NHTSA would address the safety needs of older drivers from 2012 to 2017 (NHTSA, 2010). Based on interviews and expert panel input and other research, NHTSA identified three main program initiatives (communications, partnerships, and driver licensing policies) to guide the implementation of its *Older Driver Traffic Safety Plan* for 2012-2017. In 2013 NHTSA developed the *Traffic Safety for Older People – 5-Year Plan* to address traffic safety concerns of older road users - drivers, passengers, and pedestrians. The plan described research and other program activities in the near term (within the next 2 years), short term (3 to 5 years), and long term (beyond 5 years from the initiation of the plan). The plan was developed around four main elements, data, vehicle, behavior, and pedestrian safety. NHTSA notes this plan was intended to be a dynamic guide, reviewed and modified in response to new research and other information related to traffic safety for older people (NHTSA, 2013). In November 2016 NHTSA conducted a day-long meeting of experts titled *Enhancing Safety for Aging Road Users* to identify interventions to improve older driver traffic safety. The inputs from the meeting influenced NHTSA research and program related projects for 2017-2018 and will be considered in the next revision of the *Traffic Safety for Older People – 5 Year Plan*. The meeting videos are available at www.nhtsa.gov/events/enhancing-safety-aging-road-users. NHTSA also provides actionable information for family and friends of older drivers on its website, including the *How to Understand and Influence Older Drivers* resource at www.nhtsa.gov/older-drivers/how-understand-and-influence-older-drivers.

There are vehicular, environmental, and societal strategies critical to providing safety and mobility for older people, but are for the most part beyond the control of SHSOs. Vehicles can be designed with better crash protection for older and more easily injured occupants, with controls and displays that are easier to see, reach and understand, and with crash warning and crash avoidance technology. These measures will make vehicles safer for everyone, not just older people. Aftermarket vehicle devices, such as one-hand joystick driving controls, can make driving possible or easier for people with some physical limitations. Roadways with separate left turn lanes, protected left turn signal phases, larger and more-visible signage, more- visible lane markings, rumble strips, and a host of other measures assist all drivers. These subjects are not discussed in this guide because they do not fall under direct SHSO jurisdiction. However, it is important that SHSOs become at least somewhat familiar with basic concepts of transportation planning and engineering – such as those mentioned above – since SHSOs can be expected to play increasingly important roles in partnerships to enhance older driver safety and mobility efforts.

NHTSA's *Highway Safety Program Guideline No. 13 – Older Driver Safety* provides States with key elements of a comprehensive older driver safety program aiming to reduce older driver crashes, fatalities, and injuries. Many guideline elements can be addressed directly by SHSOs, as NHTSA notes, "each State older driver safety program should address driver licensing and medical review of at-risk drivers, medical and law enforcement education, roadway design, and

collaboration with social services and transportation services providers" to maximize benefits. The guideline also includes recommendations for program management, communications, and program evaluation and data components that should be included in a State older driver safety program (NHTSA, 2014). FHWA also provides an updated list of resources on transportation engineering aspects as relevant to older driver and road user safety: https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/older_users/.

Of all the subject areas in this countermeasure guide, those related to older drivers are perhaps the most complex because they involve so many issues beyond traffic safety. Sooner or later, in the interest of safety, most older people must restrict or cease driving, either by choice or as the result of the State licensing authority restricting or revoking their license. Driving cessation can have a substantial effect on the older driver's mobility and on physical and mental health. SHSOs and licensing agencies cannot act alone but must plan and implement their older driver policies and programs as part of integrated community activities to improve older people's safety, mobility, and health. As just one example, some communities have established referral centers where people can go for "one-stop" access to resources for addressing the full range of transportation safety and mobility issues, including driving skills assessment, educational courses, licensing regulations and practices, and public transportation. The Florida DOT, in collaboration with a range of State, industry, academic, and community partners, supports the Safe Mobility for Life Coalition (http://safemobilityfl.com/index.htm). Its coalition partners provide education, services, and tips for older drivers in community events. California's Department of Aging collaborates with Area Agencies on Aging to provide local community-based services, including transportation assistance (www.aging.ca.gov/Programs_and_Services/Home_and_Community_Services/). See Stutts (2005) for summaries of comprehensive programs for older drivers in six States.

Several studies and policy papers discuss older driver safety. See, in particular, the Department of Transportation's *Safe Mobility for a Maturing Society: Challenges and Opportunities* (U.S. DOT, 2003) and NCHRP's *Guide for Addressing Collisions Involving Older Drivers* (Potts et al., 2004) for summaries and references to further information. The Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development's *Ageing and Transport: Mobility Needs and Safety Issues* (OECD, 2001) presents a discussion from an international perspective. The NCHRP synthesis *Improving the Safety of Older Road Users* (Stutts, 2005) summarizes State activities as of 2005. A report issued by the AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety (Stutts & Wilkins, 2009) documents U.S. policies and practices for improving the safety of older drivers and identifies model programs. These policies and practices and model programs are updated and made available through the AAAFTS "Driver Licensing Policies and Practices" and "Noteworthy Initiatives" databases that can be searched by State or by policy/topic area (http://lpp.seniordrivers.org/).

## Resources

The agencies and organizations listed below can provide more information on older drivers and links to numerous other resources.

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration:
    - Older Drivers – www.nhtsa.gov/road-safety/older-drivers

  - Older Driver Safety Research Reports and Fact Sheets: www.nhtsa.gov/road-safety/older-drivers#resources
- Clearinghouse for Older Road User Safety (ChORUS): www.roadsafeseniors.org/
- Behavioral Safety Research Reports – https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Injury Prevention & Control: Motor Vehicle Safety: Older Adult Drivers: www.cdc.gov/Motorvehiclesafety/Older_Adult_Drivers/index.html
- AAA: www.seniordriving.aaa.com/
- AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety: www.aaafoundation.org/category/vulnerable-road-users/
- AARP: www.aarp.org/driversafety
- Governors Highway Safety Association: www.ghsa.org/html/issues/olderdriver.html
- Insurance Institute for Highway Safety: www.iihs.org/iihs/topics/t/older-drivers/topicoverview
- National Aging and Disability Transportation Center**:** www.nadtc.org/
- The International Association of Directors of Law Enforcement Standards and Training: www.iadlest.org/training/older-driver-law-enforcement-training
- National Safety Council: www.nsc.org/road-safety
- FHWA's 2014 Handbook for Designing Roadways for the Older Population: www.safety.fhwa.dot.gov/older_users/handbook/

# Older Driver Countermeasures

Countermeasures to improve older driver safety are listed in the table below. The table is intended to provide a rough estimate of each countermeasure's effectiveness, use, cost, and time required for implementation. Effectiveness is shown using a five-star rating system.

- Countermeasures that receive ★★★★ or ★★★★★ have been determined to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ★★★ are considered promising, and likely to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States, communities, and other organizations are encouraged to use ★★★, and especially ★★★★ or ★★★★★, countermeasures. They should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

Further details about the symbols and terms used are included after the table. Effectiveness, cost, and time to implement can vary substantially from State to State and community to community. Costs for many countermeasures are difficult to measure, so the summary terms are very approximate.

Each countermeasure to improve older driver safety is discussed individually in this chapter. Full descriptions are included for ★★★, ★★★★ and ★★★★★ countermeasures. Brief descriptions are included for ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Further details about the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures are included in Appendix A7 to this report.

### 1. Communications and Outreach

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 Formal Courses for Older Drivers | ☆☆ | $ | Low | Short |
| 1.2 General Communications and Education | ☆ | $ | Unknown | Short |

## 2. Licensing

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 License Screening and Testing | ★★★★ | $$ | High | Medium |
| 2.2 Referring Older Drivers to Licensing Agencies | ★★★★ | $$ | Low | Medium |
| 2.3 License Restrictions | ★★★★ | $ | Low | Short |
| 2.4 Medical Advisory Boards | ☆ | Varies | High | Medium |
| 2.5 License Renewal Policies: In-Person Renewal, Vision Test | ☆☆ | $$$ | Medium | Medium |

## 3. Traffic Law Enforcement

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Law Enforcement Roles | ★★★ | Varies | Medium | Varies |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ★★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective by several high-quality evaluations with consistent results |
| ★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective in certain situations |
| ★★★ | Likely to be effective based on balance of evidence from high-quality evaluations or other sources |
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Communications and Outreach

### 1.1 Formal Courses for Older Drivers

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Short |

This countermeasure involves formal courses specifically developed for older drivers. These courses are typically offered by organizations such as AAA, AARP, and the National Safety Council, either independently or under accreditation by States. The courses typically involve 6 to 10 hours of classroom training in basic safe driving practices and in how to adjust driving to accommodate age-related cognitive and physical changes. Courses combining classroom and on-the-road instruction have been offered in some locations (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy D2).

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *The effectiveness of formal courses for older drivers has been examined in several research studies. While these studies have found some positive outcomes in self-reported driving behaviors and reductions in police-issued citations, there is no evidence that this countermeasure reduces crashes relative to comparison groups.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A7, Section 1.1.

### 1.2 General Communications and Education

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

This countermeasure involves educational material for older drivers to inform them of driving risks, help them assess their driving knowledge and capabilities, suggest methods to adapt to and compensate for changing capabilities, and guide them in restricting their driving in more risky situations. These include a variety of self-assessment tools, programs, and other information developed by organizations such as AAA, AARP, American Geriatrics Society (AGS), American Medical Association (AMA), American Society on Aging (ASA), American Occupational Therapy Association (AOTA), CDC, NHTSA, and WebMD.

Other material is available to assist drivers and family members in understanding how aging affects driving, the effects of medications and health conditions on driving ability, how to assess an older driver's skills, how to use specialized vehicle equipment to adapt to certain physical limitations, how to guide older drivers into voluntarily restricting their driving, and how to report older drivers to the department of motor vehicles if necessary (Stutts, 2005). Additional information can be found on the NHTSA website (www.nhtsa.gov/road-safety/older-drivers) and the ChORUS website (www.roadsafeseniors.org). In February 2017 AGS, under a cooperative agreement with NHTSA, released a "Driving Safety" toolkit with resources for older drivers and caregivers, on their public education website (HealthinAging.org), see www.healthinaging.org/aging-and-health-a-to-z/topic:driving-safety/. See www.programsforelderly.com/index-senior-safety.php#drivingandsafety for information on programs that promote safe driving for older drivers. WebMD also presents resources to guide caregiver discussions on driving safety.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *There are no known evaluations of the effects of this material on driving or on crashes (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy D2).*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix Section 7, 1.2.

## 2. Licensing

### 2.1 License Screening and Testing

| Effectiveness: ★★★★† | Cost: $$ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† Proven for identifying drivers whose driving should be limited

State licensing agencies vary considerably in their procedures for screening and evaluating driver abilities and skills (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy C2; American Geriatrics Society, 2016; Lococo, Stutts, et al., 2017; NHTSA, 2017). Many do not include all the recommendations on medical conditions from the American Medical Association's 1st and 2nd editions of the *Physician's Guide to Assessing and Counseling Older Drivers* (Carr et al., 2010; Wang et al., 2003). In 2016 the American Geriatric Society assumed the role of updating the Physician's Guide, and changed the name for the 3rd edition to the *Clinician's Guide to Assessing and Counseling Older Drivers* (AGS, 2016), to be inclusive of the varying health care practitioners involved with health care issues associated with older people. The 4th edition was released in 2019 and is available at https://geriatricscareonline.org/ProductAbstract/clinicians-guide-to-assessing-and-counseling-older-drivers-4th-edition/B047.

NHTSA conducted extensive evaluations of the state of driver medical review practices and licensing outcomes (Lococo et al., 2016; Lococo, Sifrit, et al., 2017; Lococo, Stutts, et al., 2017). States that have medical review practices in the form of medical professionals on licensing review panels or have Medical Advisory Boards benefit from their inputs in addition to the referrals by the driver's physician (NHTSA, 2017).

NHTSA and AAMVA have developed *Model Driver Screening and Evaluation Program Guidelines for Motor Vehicle Administrators* (Staplin & Lococo, 2003). This was the final stage in a research program that investigated the relationships between functional impairment and driving skills; methods to screen for functional impairment; and the cost, time, legal, ethical, and policy implications of the guidelines (Staplin, Lococo, Gish, & Decina, 2003a).

The *Model Driver Guidelines'* goal is to keep drivers on the road as long as they are safe, through early identification and assessment together with counseling, remediation, and license restriction when needed (Staplin & Lococo, 2003). The guidelines, tested in Maryland, outlined a complete process of driver referral, screening, assessment, counseling, and licensing action (Staplin & Lococo, 2003; Staplin, Lococo, Gish, & Decina, 2003b). They include 9 simple visual inspection tests licensing agency personnel can administer to screen for functional ability (Staplin & Lococo, 2003). The results of a survey of State motor vehicle departments outlines some of the legal, policy, cost, and other criteria required before the implementation of guidelines in some States (Staplin & Lococo, 2003, Appendix C).

In 2008 the screening and testing of older drivers was a major discussion at the North American License Policies Workshop sponsored by the AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. One of the general themes of this workshop was "while certain declines are generally associated with aging, consensus is lacking on whether or at what age people should be required to be screened or tested. Regardless, it is generally accepted that final licensing decisions should be based on

functional performance, not age, as there is wide variation in how people age" (Molnar & Eby, 2008, p.3). In 2009 NHTSA and AAMVA also developed the *Driver Fitness Medical Guidelines*; see www.aamva.org/uploadedFiles/MainSite/Content/SolutionsBestPractices/BestPracticesModelLegislation(1)/DriverFitnessMedicalGuidelines_092009.pdf.

**Use:** All States screen and test referred drivers, though their procedures and criteria vary considerably (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy C2). See also the AAAFTS (2016a) "Driver Licensing Policies and Practices" database showing each State's driver licensing policies and practices regarding older and medically at-risk drivers. As of 2016 Utah was evaluating its restricted licensing practices; results are yet unavailable (AAAFTS, 2016b; See Chapter 7, section 2.3 License Restrictions for more information).

**Effectiveness:** There is strong evidence that State screening and assessment programs identify some drivers who should not be driving at all or whose driving should be limited. The Maryland pilot test of the model guidelines concluded, "the analysis results ... have provided perhaps the best evidence to date that functional capacity screening, conducted quickly and efficiently, in diverse settings, can yield scientifically valid predictions about the risk of driving impairment experienced by older individuals" (Staplin et al., 2003b). In a study evaluating the use of a screening tool on Alabama drivers 18 to 87, older drivers (65 and older) performed significantly worse than drivers less than 65 years old, and older drivers with a crash history, performed worse than older drivers without crashes (Edwards et al., 2008).

A NHTSA-sponsored project conducted by Eby et al. (2008) sought to improve existing self-screening tools for older drivers by focusing on symptoms associated with medical conditions. The researchers created a self-screening survey to provide feedback to older drivers to increase general awareness of issues associated with driving and the aging process, and to provide recommendations for behavioral changes and vehicle modifications they could make to maintain safe driving. Evaluation results found the self-screening instrument had a positive value, but primarily as a "screening tool to determine gross impairment rather than fitness to drive" (Eby et al., 2008, p. 19).

**Costs:** The model guideline functional screening tests can be administered for less than $5 per driver, including administrative and support service costs (Staplin et al., 2003a).

**Time to implement:** States should be able to modify their driver license screening and assessment procedures in 4 to 6 months.

## 2.2 Referring Older Drivers to Licensing Agencies

| Effectiveness: ★★★★† | Cost: $$ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† Proven for increasing physician referrals

Older drivers come to the attention of licensing agencies at regular license renewals, as discussed in Chapter 7, Section 2.1, or when they are referred to the licensing agency for reevaluation of their driving skills.

Licensing agencies in all States accept reevaluation referrals for drivers of any age. A survey of all State licensing agencies found three sources accounted for 85% of referrals: law enforcement (37%), physicians and other medical professionals (35%), and family and friends (13%) (Stutts, 2005). The remaining 15% came from crash and violation record checks, courts, self-reports, and other sources.

***Referrals by Law Enforcement:*** LEOs have the opportunity to observe drivers directly at traffic stops or crashes. With appropriate training, they can identify many drivers who should be referred to the licensing agency for assessment. NHTSA has developed and field-tested a set of cues that officers can use to identify potentially impaired drivers (NHTSA, 1998; see also Potts et al., 2004, Strategy C3, and Stutts, 2005, Chapter 7).
States can increase driver referrals by establishing and publicizing procedures for referring drivers, establishing referral policies and providing appropriate training and information to LEOs, and informing physicians and health professionals of their responsibilities. The presence of MABs and/or medical professionals providing case review of medically at-risk driver referrals may help improve licensing decisions at little extra cost to the program (Lococo et al., 2016; Lococo, Sifrit, et al., 2017; NHTSA, 2017). In 2009 NHTSA, in collaboration with the American Association of Motor Vehicle Administrators produced, "Driver Fitness Medical Guidelines" to provide guidance to licensing agencies for use in making decisions about a person's fitness for driving (NHTSA, 2009). Guidelines are provided for a variety of physical limitations and impairments as well as medical conditions. In addition, this guide provides information useful for State licensing agencies to educate medical professionals about the effects of functional impairments and medical conditions on safe driving in order to encourage them to refer drivers for additional evaluations related to driving. Many components of this product have been incorporated into the *Clinician's Guide to Counseling Older Drivers* (American Geriatrics Society & Pomidor, 2016). NHTSA plans to revise a simple pull out reference specifically for DMV personnel, and otherwise refer them to specifics in the Clinician's Guide.

***Referrals by Health Care Providers:*** Health care providers (HCPs), including physicians, nurse practitioners, and physician assistants, are in an excellent position to assess if changes in their patients' physical or cognitive abilities may increase their crash risk. In addition, varying clinicians, such as pharmacists, nurses, occupational or physical therapists, social workers or case managers, can, in the course of their work, assess for physical, cognitive, or functional limitations warranting further evaluation, counseling, or referral to the licensing agency, if appropriate. As of 2016, 6 States require physicians to report patients who have specific medical conditions, such as epilepsy or dementia (AAAFTS, 2016a). Other States require physicians to report "unsafe" drivers, with varying guidelines for defining "unsafe." In all 50 States and the

District of Columbia, physicians are permitted to report medically-at risk drivers. Physicians must balance their legal and ethical responsibilities to protect their patient's health and confidentiality with their duty to protect the general public from unsafe drivers. Physicians have been held liable for damages from crashes involving patients because they failed to report the patient to the licensing agency (Wang et al., 2003, Chapter 7).

Licensing decisions based on drivers' medical fitness to drive can be established through review by a medical advisory board (MAB) and/or with one or more medical professionals performing reviews of the referrals (NHTSA, 2017). Having medical professionals or a MAB perform case reviews provides certain advantages, including legal immunity to physicians voluntarily referring at-risk drivers (Lococo et al., 2016; NHTSA, 2017). NHTSA conducted a study of MAB structures, referrals, and outcomes in six States, and found that physician referrals resulted in changes in license status in 90% of cases studied (Lococo, Sifrit et al., 2017). In fact, physician referrals were most likely to result in changes to driver license statuses, and the presence of a MAB may serve to promote physician referrals (NHTSA, 2017). See Lococo, Stutts et al., 2017 for a summary of the medical review structures and referral processes in all States.

The *Clinician's Guide to Assessing and Counseling Older Drivers* (AGS & Pomidor, 2016) provides detailed information for physicians and medical professionals. The guide was prepared by AGS, and is an update to the *Physician's Guide to Assessing and Counseling Older Drivers* (Wang et al., 2003; Carr et al., 2010). Chapter 8 has an extensive summary of State licensing and reporting laws. Chapter 9 contains a list of medical conditions and medications that may impair driving and consensus recommendations on what action to take for each. Other chapters include information on treatment and rehabilitation options that may allow patients to continue to drive and on how to counsel patients about retiring from driving. See also Lococo (2003, Appendix C) for State-level information and Potts et al. (2004, Strategy C3) for overall discussion of different strategies. See Lococo et al., 2016 for a classification of medical review practices and Lococo, Stutts et al., 2017 for detailed information on State medical review practices and procedures.

Chapter 3 of the *Clinician's Guide to Assessing and Counseling Older Drivers* (AGS & Pomidor, 2016) discusses the assessment of functional abilities and provides physicians with the instructions and basic forms needed for them to conduct a brief in-office Clinical Assessment of Driving Related Skills (CADReS). The CADReS screening tool assesses some aspects of the key functional areas of vision, cognition, and motor/sensory functions to help physicians identify specific areas of concern as they relate to driving. An evaluation of an earlier version of CADReS (McCarthy et al., 2009) suggests that while this tool was able to identify all the study participants who failed the behind-the-wheel test included as a part of the study, the tool may need to be revised to give physicians a more effective and efficient tool for in-office assessments.

To encourage use of the *Clinician's Guide to Assessing and Counseling Older Drivers*, a five-module curriculum including slides, video case segments, and handouts was developed by the AMA and revised in 2016 by the American Geriatrics Society (3rd edition, AGS & Pomidor, 2016). The guide's goal is to heighten knowledge and skills necessary for a clinician to evaluate driver fitness in a typical care encounter, and to develop a plan for further evaluation by other specialists or licensing authorities, if needed. An evaluation of this curriculum, performed when it was launched by AMA, found continuing education training can enhance the confidence and

clinical practices of health professionals as related to driver fitness evaluations and mobility planning (Meuser et al., 2010).

NHTSA published a literature review on the effects of medication use and medical conditions on older drivers' functional driving performance and safety (Lococo et al., 2018). A range of medical conditions were reviewed in light of their potential effects on crash risk, and the researchers prioritized eight conditions as particularly concerning for older driver safety—diabetes, dementia, obstructive sleep apnea, glaucoma, hepatic encephalopathy, macular degeneration, stroke, and Parkinson's disease.

***Referrals by Families and Friends:*** Many States have established procedures for family members and friends to report drivers of any age whose abilities may be impaired (Lococo, Stutts et al., 2017). For example, fitnesstodrive.phhp.ufl.edu/us/ is a questionnaire that caregivers or friends and family can use to evaluate an older drivers' fitness to continue driving. See www.michigan.gov/sos/0,4670,7-127-1627_8665_9066-23762--,00.html for an example of information on driver referrals that can be submitted by families and friends in Michigan.

**Use:** A survey of all State licensing agencies found less than 100,000 drivers 65 and older are referred each year from all sources, or less than 0.4% of the 28.6 million older licensed drivers (Stutts, 2005, Appendix E). The number of referrals varies substantially across the States, from a few hundred to 50,000.

**Effectiveness:** Establishing and publicizing effective referral procedures will increase referrals. Potts et al., 2004, Strategy C3 provide examples. and web links. As one example, Pennsylvania increased physician referrals substantially by sending letters to all physicians (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy C3).

A recent analysis of older driver hospitalizations in 37 States from 2004 to 2009 showed no significant association between mandatory physician reporting laws and older drivers' crash-related in-patient stays. This was true even among the 27 States that provide legal immunity to referring physicians (Agimi et al., 2018). The authors note that removing barriers to physician referrals by increasing awareness of the law and requirements and providing training to identify at-risk drivers may help improve safety benefits of mandatory laws.

Mandatory physician referrals may improve other measures of older driver safety. A study of Missouri's voluntary reporting law (enacted in 1999) and the resulting licensing outcomes found crash involvement of reported drivers decreased after implementation of the law and, to a lesser degree, mortality declined as well. Though the Missouri law is not specific as to age, the mean age of reported drivers was 80 and only 3.5% of the 4,100 people (reported by a combination of LEOs, driver license office staff, physicians, family members and others) retained their drivers' licenses after the process (Meuser et al., 2009). As part of this law, reported people are required to undergo a physician evaluation. To better understand the observations and concerns of family members and to investigate why older drivers were referred to the licensing agency, Meuser et al. (2015) reviewed reporting forms submitted by family members each indicating an older individual who is potentially unfit to drive. Of the 689 older adults, 448 were reported to have a cognitive issue (e.g., confusion, memory loss, and becoming lost while driving) and 365 cases

included diagnostic labels such as Alzheimer's disease, cognitive impairment/dementia, or brain injury. When the observations of family members and physicians were compared, agreement was high for Alzheimer's disease (100%) and for acute brain injury (97%). However, agreement was lower for cognitive impairment/dementia (75%). This discrepancy for cognitive impairment/dementia suggests that family members and physicians may understand cognitive impairment differently. Overall, the researchers concluded that physicians and driver licensing authorities would do well to consider family member observations when assessing fitness-to-drive in older people.

The mandatory reporting law in Oregon was enacted in 2002 and requires primary physicians and other health care providers functioning as a primary provider, to report cognitively impaired drivers to the Department of Motor Vehicles. Reports by primary care providers result in automatic suspensions of driving privileges, but the suspended driver has the opportunity to request retesting and/or a hearing to appeal the suspension. A study of this Oregon law found over 1,600 drivers reported as being cognitively impaired from 2003 to 2006, with the majority of the reported drivers being older than 80. The most common cognitive impairments were in judgment and problem solving, but impairments in memory and reaction time were also reported about half the time. Of the 1,664 people reported who lost their licenses, less than 20% requested retesting or a hearing to contest their license suspensions and only about 10% of the total number reported and suspended (173) regained their driving privileges (Snyder & Ganzini, 2009).

**Costs:** Costs for establishing and publicizing effective referral procedures vary depending on the procedures adopted, but should not be extensive. Educational and training publications are available for use with law enforcement and medical professionals. Funds will be required to distribute this material and for general communications and outreach. If referrals increase substantially, then licensing agency administrative costs will increase.

**Time to implement:** States seeking to improve referrals will require at least 6 months to develop, implement, and publicize new policies and procedures.

### 2.3 License Restrictions

| Effectiveness: ★★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

If a State licensing agency determines through screening, assessment, medical referrals, road tests, or other means that a driver poses excessive risks only in certain situations, the driver can be issued a restricted license. This process of "graduated de-licensing" preserves the driver's mobility while protecting the driver, passengers, and others on the road. Drivers whose vision is adequate during daylight hours but not at night present an obvious example. Their licenses can be restricted to daylight driving only. Other common restrictions limit driving to a specific geographical area, such as the town or county where the driver lives, or limit driving only to low-speed roads.

The AAAFTS "Noteworthy Initiatives" database lists Iowa, Minnesota, and Utah as having noteworthy ongoing restricted licensing programs (AAAFTS, 2016b). Iowa offers tailored drive tests that allow drivers to be tested in their own community on roads they would typically drive and, if successful, these drivers are allowed to drive where they have demonstrated proficiency. Iowa license examiners conduct approximately 100 to 150 such examinations each year. In Minnesota, drivers who live in rural areas and only need driving privileges close to home may arrange for road test examiners to go to the drivers' homes. Examiners perform only about 25 of these road tests per year, and they may result in very customized licenses such as being limited to a specific route, specific hours of the day, or any combination of restrictions as appropriate. Utah has a well-established and mature restricted licensing program. In 2011 the State established the Driver Review Program to evaluate the program, including a review of the factors and processes being used to make decisions on restricted licenses. Kansas also had a Local Drive Program to enable restricted licensing for medically at-risk and older populations; however, the program was terminated in 2011 (AAAFTS, 2016b). Though the program was not evaluated formally, it was historically appreciated by the customers and program staff for having been a key safety program enabling a segment of the population to continue living independently.

**Use:** Iowa, Minnesota, and Utah are known to issue restricted licenses (AAAFTS, 2016b). The number of States currently issuing restricted licenses specifically for older drivers is not known, but the AAAFTS "Driver Licensing Policies and Practices" database shows 49 States and the District of Columbia can place at least some types of conditions or restrictions on licenses of older and medically at-risk drivers (AAAFTS, 2016a). Restrictions are generally determined using medical records or in consultation with physicians.

**Effectiveness:** Several studies show driver license restrictions lower the crash risk for older drivers, though their crash risk is still higher than for similar-age drivers with unrestricted licenses (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy C2; Vernon et al., 2001). Research conducted by Braitman et al. (2010) found license restrictions may be an effective alternative to complete driving cessation, and provide drivers with some degree of continued mobility and independence. However, they also concluded, while the overall safety benefits of license restrictions may be unknown, license restrictions tend to reduce driving exposure, especially in higher risk situations.

Langford and Koppel (2011) found imposing license restrictions were usually associated with reductions in absolute crash rates, and identified three restrictions producing lower crash rates for consideration. The three restrictions (driving in a specified distance of home, not driving at night, and driving only in specified areas) can be thought of as major components of a graduated driving reduction program.

An evaluation of the "local drive test" (LDT) option, offered to older Iowa drivers who might not otherwise be able to renew their licenses, found the overall crash rate of LDT drivers was higher than the general population of licensed drivers 65 and older, but was lower than the overall driver crash rate for Iowa drivers (Stutts & Wilkins, 2012).

NHTSA published a report on the compliance of older drivers with license restrictions (Joyce et al., 2018). The study used a combination of approaches including a literature review; a driving evaluator panel consisting of license administrators and LEOs from Florida, Iowa, and Virginia; an analysis of driver license and crash data from the three States and Maryland; and a field study of driving exposure of adults 70 and older. Restrictions included daytime driving only, maximum limit on travel speeds, and limits on geographic locations or distances traveled from home. In Maryland the restrictions on locations and distances traveled included limits on trip purpose. Crash rate analysis from the 4 States showed mixed outcomes. Drivers with restrictions had lower crash rates than when they drove without restrictions in Iowa and Maryland. In Virginia the crash rates slightly increased post-restriction. Notably, restrictions for speed and location (geographic limits) were associated with about a 25% reduction in crash rates in Iowa, whereas the daylight driving-only restriction was not associated with a crash rate reduction.

**Costs:** Once drivers have been screened and assessed, the costs of issuing a restricted license are minimal.

**Time to implement:** Restricted licenses can be implemented as soon as any needed policy or legislation changes are enacted.

### 2.4 Medical Advisory Boards

| Effectiveness: ☆† | Cost: Varies | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† Quality varies considerably

This countermeasure involves medical advisory boards assisting licensing agencies in evaluating people with medical conditions or functional limitations potentially affecting their ability to drive (AAAFTS, 2016a). MABs generally make policy recommendations on what licensing actions are appropriate for people with specific medical conditions or functional limitations.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure is widely used; however, there are no known studies evaluating the crash relevant effects of MABs.* In 2017 NHTSA published a series of reports on studies outlining the operational benefits of having MABs. A summary of the studies is available as a Traffic Tech report (NHTSA, 2017). See Appendix A, Section 2.4 for detailed discussion of the reports. Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A7, Section 2.4.

### 2.5 License Renewal Policies: In-Person Renewal, Vision Test

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |

This countermeasure involves changes to the license renewal requirements for drivers older than a specified age, typically 65 or 70. These changes may include a shorter interval between renewals, in-person renewal (no renewal by mail or electronically), or a vision test at every renewal. Requirements for older renewal applicants can also involve written or road tests.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *Some version of this countermeasure has been implemented in more than half the States. Its effectiveness has been examined in several research studies. Despite some positive research findings, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A7, Section 2.5.

## 3. Traffic Law Enforcement

### 3.1 Law Enforcement Roles

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: Varies | Use: Medium | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

Enforcement plays three overall roles in improving the safety of older drivers. Law enforcement officers:

- Enforce traffic laws. In particular, active publicized enforcement of seat belt use laws can help increase belt use for older drivers and occupants. See Chapter 2, Section 2.1, for discussion.
- Identify drivers with potential driving impairments and refer them to licensing agencies. Traffic stops and crash investigations provide officers excellent opportunities to observe and evaluate driving behavior. See Chapter 7, Section 2.2, for discussion.
- Provide information and education. Law enforcement officers have formed many partnerships with public and private organizations to give talks, teach safe driving courses, work with media on news stories and PSAs, and other communications and outreach initiatives. Stutts (2005) summarizes several examples. NHTSA (2003) lists law enforcement programs that were active in 2003. They include training for officers, training for older drivers, and community relations programs that promote safety.

**Use:** The International Association of Directors of Law Enforcement Standards and Training (IADLEST) has developed a training course for law enforcement instructors covering a range of topics related to older people and driving, (www.iadlest.org/training/older-driver-law-enforcement-training). This course aims to train instructors on how to provide LEOs the information they need to effectively interact with and evaluate older drivers. NHTSA also provides a series of video and web-based resources to help LEOs determine signs of older driver driving impairments. See *Law Enforcement: Cite and Refer Medically Impaired Drivers* (updated in 2017) at www.youtube.com/watch?v=0aShDPSbJls&feature=youtu.be and *Cues for Law Enforcement*: https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/olddrive/lawcues.html.

**Effectiveness:** LEOs provide more than one-third of all referrals to licensing agencies for driver screening and assessment (Stutts, 2005; see also Chapter 7, Section 2.2).

**Costs:** Costs vary depending on the nature and scope of activities.

**Time to implement:** Implementation time varies depending on the nature and scope of activities.

**Older Driver References**

AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. (2016a). *Driver licensing policies and practices: Driver licensing policies and practices database*.

AAAFTS. (2016b). *Driver licensing policies and practices: Noteworthy initiatives database.*

Agimi, Y., Albert, S. M., Youk, A. O., Documet, P. I., & Steiner, C. A. (2018). Dementia and motor vehicle crash hospitalizations: Role of physician reporting laws. *Neurology*, *90*(9), e808-e813.

American Geriatrics Society & A. Pomidor, Ed. (2016, January). *Clinician's guide to assessing and counseling older drivers, 3rd edition.* (Report No. DOT HS 812 228). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. The American Geriatrics Society retains the copyright. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1988

Braitman, K. A., Chaudhary, N. K., & McCartt, A. T. (2010). Restricted licensing among older drivers in Iowa. *Journal of Safety Research, 41,* 481–486.

Carr, D. B., Schwartzberg, J. G., Manning, L., & Sempek, J. (2010, June). *Physician's guide to assessing and counseling older drivers*, *2nd edition* (Report No. DOT HS 811 298). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/older_drivers/pdf/811298.pdf

Census Bureau (2014). *65+ in the United States: 2010 (P23-212)*. www.census.gov/library/-publications/2014/demo/p23-212.html

Census Bureau (2018). *American Community Survey: Age and sex*. https://data.census.gov/cedsci/table?hide-Preview=false&table=S0101&tid=ACSST1Y2017.S0101&lastDisplayed-Row=32&moe=false&y=2017.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2017). Life expectancy. www.cdc.gov/nchs/fastats/life-expectancy.htm

Cheung, I., & McCartt, A. T. (2011). Declines in fatal crashes of older drivers: Changes in crash risk and survivability. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *43*(3), 666-674.

Cicchino, J. B., & McCartt, A. T. (2014). Trends in older driver crash involvement rates and survivability in the United States: An update. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *72*, 44-54.

Cicchino, J. B., & McCartt, A. T. (2015). Critical older driver errors in a national sample of serious US crashes. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *80*, 211-219.

Eby, D. W., Molnar, L. J., Kartje, P., St. Louis, R. M., Parow, J. E., Vivoda, J. M., & Neumeyer, A. L. (2008, October). *Older driver self-screening based on health concerns, volume I: Technical report* (Report No. DOT HS 811 046A). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1870

Edwards, J. D., Leonard, K. M., Lunsman, M., Dodson, J., Bradley, S., Myers, C. A., & Hubble, B. (2008). Acceptability and validity of older driver screening with the Driving Health Inventory. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 40,* 1157-1163.

Federal Highway Administration. (1995). *Licensed drivers by sex and age group, 1963-1995*. www.fhwa.dot.gov/ohim/summary95/dl220.pdf

FHWA. (2020). *Distribution of licensed drivers – 2018 by age*, Table DL-22. www.fhwa.dot.gov/policyinformation/statistics/2018/dl22.cfm

Insurance Institute for Highway Safety. (2019). *Older drivers*. www.iihs.org/topics/older-drivers

Joyce, J., Lococo, K. H., Gish, K. W., Mastromatto, T., Stutts, J., Thomas, D., & Blomberg, R. (2018, April). *Older driver compliance with license restrictions* (Report No. DOT HS 812 486). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/36716

Kahane, C. J. (2013, May). *Injury vulnerability and effectiveness of occupant protection technologies for older occupants and women* (Report No. DOT HS 811 766). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/811766

Langford, J., & Koppel, S. (2011). License restrictions as an under-used strategy in managing older driver safety. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *43*, 487-493.

Li, G., Braver, E. R., & Chen, L. H. (2003). Fragility versus excessive crash involvement as determinants of high death rates per vehicle-mile of travel among older drivers. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *35*, 227-235.

Lococo, K. H. (2003, June 18). *Summary of medical advisory board practices in the United States*. U.S. Department of Transportation. www.vision-and-eye-health.com/support-files/us_driving_requirements.pdf

Lococo, K. H., Sifrit, K. J., Stutts, J., Joyce, J. J., & Staplin, L. (2017, March). *Medical review practices for driver licensing, Volume 2: Case studies of medical referrals and licensing outcomes in six States* (Report No. DOT HS 812 380). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2087

Lococo, K. H., & Staplin, L. (2018, April). Visual scanning training for older drivers: A literature review (Report No. DOT HS 812 514). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/35967

Lococo, K. H. Staplin, L., & Schultz, M. W. (2018, July). *The effects of medical conditions on driving performance: A literature review and synthesis* (Report No. DOT HS 812 526). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/38687

Lococo, K. H., Stutts, J., & Staplin, L. (2016, October). *Medical review practices for driver licensing, Volume 1: A case study of guidelines and processes in seven U.S. States* (Report No. DOT HS 812 331). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1974

Lococo, K. H., Stutts, J., Sifrit, K. J., & Staplin, L. (2017, April). *Medical review practices for driver licensing, Volume 3: Guidelines and processes in the United States* (Report No. DOT HS 812 402). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2094

Lombardi, D. A., Horrey, W. J., & Courtney, T. K. (2017). Age-related differences in fatal intersection crashes in the United States. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *99*, 20-29.

Mayhew, D. R., Simpson, H. M., & Ferguson, S. A. (2006). Collisions involving senior drivers: high-risk conditions and locations. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *7*(2), 117-124.

McCarthy, D. P., Mann, W. C., & Lanford, D. (2009, May). *Process and outcomes evaluation of older driver screening programs: The assessment of driving-related skills (ADReS) older-driver screening tool* (Report No. DOT HS 811 113). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1878

Meuser, T. M., Carr, D. B., Irmiter, C., Schwartzberg, J. G. & Ulfarsson, G. F. (2010). The American Medical Association older driver curriculum for health professionals: Changes in trainee confidence, attitudes, and practice behavior. *Gerontology & Geriatrics Education*, *31*, 290-309.

Meuser, T. M., Carr, D. B., & Ulfarsson, G. F. (2009). Motor-vehicle crash history and licensing outcomes for older drivers reported as medically impaired in Missouri. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *41*, 246-252.

Meuser, T.M., Carr, D.B., Unger, E.A., and Ulfarsson, G.F. (2015). Family reports of medically impaired drivers in Missouri: Cognitive concerns and licensing outcomes. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 74,* 17-23.

Molnar, L. J. & Eby, D. W. (2008). *2008 North American license policies workshop recommendations.* AAA Foundation. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/LPWorkshopRecommendationsReport.pdf

Molnar, L.J., Eby, D.W., Zhang, L., Zanier, N., St. Louis, R. & Kostyniuk, L. (2015). Self-Regulation of Driving by Older Adults: A LongROAD Study. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/12/SelfRegulationOfDrivingByOlderAdultsReport.pdf

National Center for Statistics and Analysis. (2020, April). O*lder population: 2018 data* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 928). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812928

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (1982, 2018). Fatality Analysis Reporting System (FARS) [Custom data analysis]. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

NHTSA. (1998). *Older drivers: Cues for law enforcement* (Report No. DOT HS 808 778). www.nhtsa.dot.gov/people/injury/olddrive/cuesindex.html

NHTSA. (2003). *A compendium of law enforcement older driver programs.* www.nhtsa.dot.gov/people/injury/olddrive/LawEnforcementOlderDriver03/index.htm

NHTSA. (2005). *Older driver traffic safety plan* (Unnumbered report). www.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/olddrive/OlderDriverPlan/images/OlderDriverSafetyPlan.pdf

NHTSA. (2009, September). *Driver fitness medical guidelines* (Report No. DOT HS 811 210). www.nhtsa.dot.gov/files/driver-fitness-medical-guidelines

NHTSA. (2010, December). *Older driver program five-year strategic plan 2012-2017* (Report No. DOT HS 811 432). www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811432.pdf

NHTSA. (2013, December). *Traffic safety for older people — 5-Year Plan* (Report No. DOT HS 811 837). www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/older_drivers/pdf/Older_People_811873.pdf

NHTSA. (2014, April). *Older driver safety* (Highway Safety Program Guideline No. 13. Report No. DOT HS 812 007D). https://tntrafficsafety.org/sites/default/files/11.%20NHTSA%20Guideline%2013.%20OlderDriverSafety.pdf

NHTSA. (2017, April). *Driver medical review practices across the United States* (Traffic Safety Facts Traffic Tech. Report No. DOT HS 812 403). https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2095

NHTSA. (2020). *Driver involvement rates per 100,000 licensed drivers by age, sex, and crash severity, 2018* (Table 62). https://cdan.nhtsa.gov/tsftables/tsfar.htm#

Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development. (2001). *Ageing and transport: Mobility needs and safety issues.* www.internationaltransportforum.org/Pub/pdf/01Ageing.pdf

Potts, I., Stutts, J., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L, & Hardy, K. K. (2004). *A guide for reducing collisions involving older drivers* (NCHRP Report 500, Vol. 9). Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v9.pdf

Rosenbloom, S., & Santos, R. (2014). *Understanding older drivers: An examination of medical conditions, medication use, and travel behavior*. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/01/MedicationTravelBehaviors-Report.pdf

Snyder, K. M., & Ganzini, L. (2009). Outcomes of Oregon's law mandating physician reporting of impaired drivers. *Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry and Neurology*, *22*, 161-165.

Staplin, L., & Lococo, K. H. (2003, May). *Model driver screening and evaluation program. Vol. 3: Guidelines for motor vehicle administrators* (Report No. DOT HS 809 581). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1724

Staplin, L., Lococo, K. H., Gish, K. W., & Decina, L. E. (2003a, May). *Model driver screening and evaluation program. Vol. 1: Project summary and model program recommendations* (Report No. DOT HS 809 582). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/olddrive/modeldriver/volume_i.htm

Staplin, L., Lococo, K. H., Gish, K. W., & Decina, L. E. (2003b, May). *Model driver screening and evaluation program. Vol. 2: Maryland pilot older driver study* (Report No. DOT HS 809 583). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1738

Staplin, L., Lococo, K., Mastromatto, T., Gish, K. W., Golembiewski, G., & Sifrit, K. J. (2019, January). *Mild cognitive impairment and driving performance* (Report No. DOT HS 812 577). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/38688

Stutts, J. C. (2005). *Improving the safety of older road users* (NCHRP Synthesis Project 20-5, Synthesis Topic 35-10). Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_syn_348.pdf

Stutts, J. C., Martell, C., & Staplin, L. (2009, June). *Identifying behaviors and situations associated with increased crash risk for older drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 811 093). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1880

Stutts, J. C. & Wilkins, J. (2009). *Driver licensing policies and practices: Gearing up for an aging population. Project Summary* Report. AAA Foundation. https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/350a/d8df19f51cf149f9fe45f144b3de35dd0c2e.pdf?_ga=2.185635881.1459334143.1613484610-2079465180.1610541089

Stutts, J. C., & Wilkins, J. (2012). *Keeping seniors safe and mobile: An evaluation of a local drive test option.* AAA Foundation. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/01/KeepingSeniorSafeReport.pdf

U.S. Department of Transportation. (2003, November). *Safe mobility for a maturing society: Challenges and opportunities.* https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1726

Vespa, J., Lauren M., & Armstrong, D. M. (2020). *Demographic turning points for the United States: Population projections for 2020 to 2060*. Current Population Reports, 25-1144. U.S. Census Bureau. www.census.gov/content/dam/Census/library/publications/2020/demo/p25-1144.pdf

Vernon, D. D., Diller, E., Cook, L., Reading, J., & Dean, J. M. (2001, March). *Further analysis of drivers licensed with medical conditions in Utah* (Report No. DOT HS 809 211). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1703

Wang, C. C., Kosinski, C. J., Schwartzberg, J. G., & Shanklin, A. V. (2003). *Physician's guide to assessing and counseling older drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 809 647). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/39100

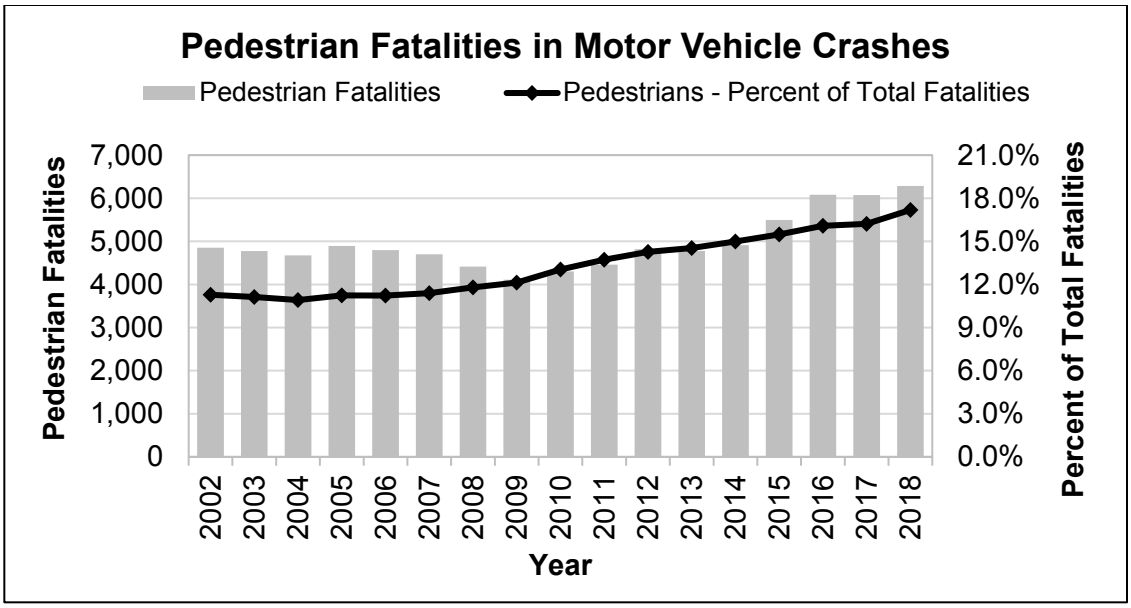
# 8.Pedestrian Safety

## Overview

In 2018 there were 6,283 pedestrians who died and approximately 75,000 were injured in traffic crashes in the United States (NCSA, 2020). Pedestrians accounted for 17% of total traffic fatalities and 3% of total people injured. Since 2003 there has been a gradual rise in the proportion of total pedestrian fatalities. Of the pedestrian fatalities in 2018 (NHTSA - CRSS, 2018; NHTSA - FARS, 2018; NCSA, 2020):

- 69% of pedestrians killed were males;
- 33% of pedestrians killed had BACs of .08 g/dL or greater;
- 81% of pedestrian fatalities occurred in urban areas;
- 74% of pedestrian fatalities occurred at non-intersection locations;
- 76% of pedestrians were killed in collisions that occurred when it was dark;
- The average age of a pedestrian killed was 48; injured was 39;
- Of all motor vehicle crash fatalities among adults, 21% of those 50-54, 21% of those 55-59, 22% of those 60-64, and 20% of those 65-69 were pedestrians. Adults 55-59 also had the highest number of pedestrian fatalities (608).
- The pedestrian fatality rate among children and teens (range of 0.29-1.08 fatalities per 100,000 population for ages 0-19) was lower than the pedestrian fatality rate for all adult age groups (range of 1.97-2.85 per 100,000 population).
- Child pedestrians 14 and younger accounted for 17% of the child motor vehicle fatalities and an estimated 11% of all pedestrians injured in traffic crashes;
- Of all the adults 65 and older killed in motor vehicle crashes, 18% were pedestrians, including 361 pedestrians 80 years and older; and
- The highest total pedestrian injury rates by age group were those 15 to 19 and 20 to 24 (31 and 32 per 100,000 population, respectively).

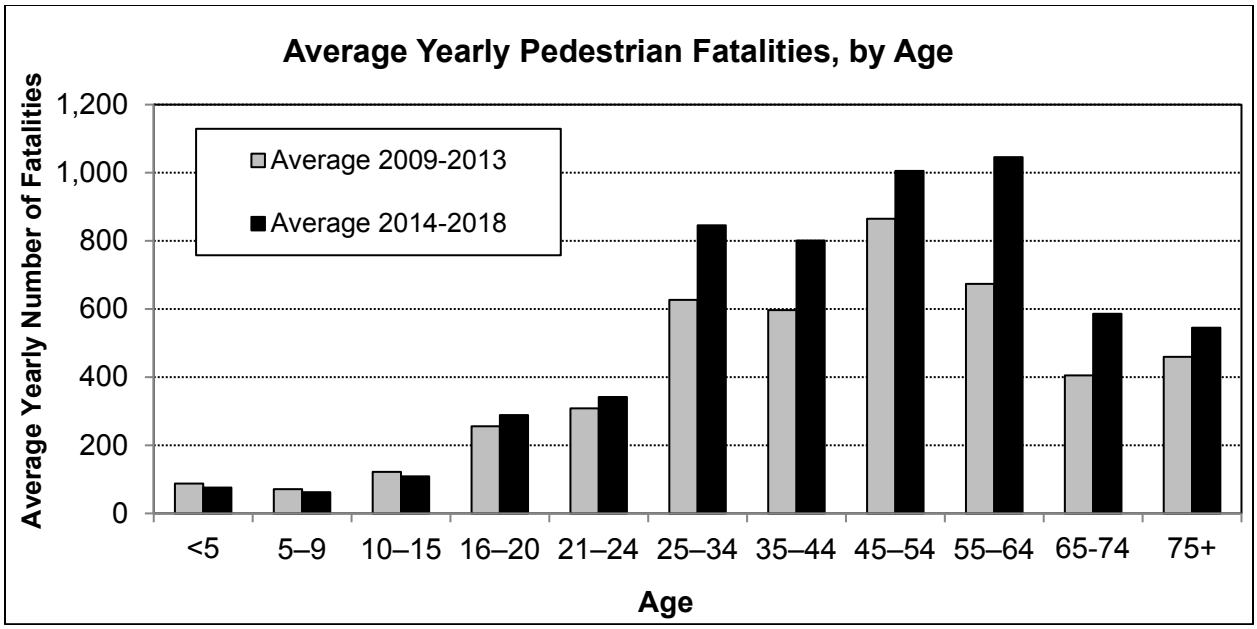
**Crash Trends.** Until the last 5 years, average pedestrian fatalities per year had dropped over the past 20 years, from an average of about 5,600 annually from 1991-1995 to an average of about 4,600 annually from 2009-2014. However, the percentage of pedestrian fatalities started increasing in 2009, leading to a new trend where the number of pedestrians killed averaged 5,768 annually during the 5 most recent years (2014-2018, see figure below). In 2018 the number of pedestrians killed was 6,283, up 3.4% from 6,075 in 2017 (NCSA, 2020), which was the highest total since 1990. Fatality rate trends—or fatalities adjusted per number of walking trips or miles traveled by walking—are unavailable because there is no systematically collected and consistent measure of walking (exposure) to estimate and compare fatality rates each year. The population-based fatality rate for pedestrians overall was 1.92 per 100,000 population, with a rate of 2.71 for males and 1.14 for females (NCSA, 2020). Males 80+ years had the highest fatality rate (4.33) among all age and gender groups. However, population-based rates do not fully account for trends in amounts of walking.




Source: NCSA, 2020

The average age of pedestrians killed has remained similar over the past 10 years, increasing from 45 to 48. As shown in the figure below, numbers of pedestrian fatalities among age groups fluctuated over the last decade. The largest decrease occurred in the age group 10 to 15, and the largest increase occurred in the age group 55 to 64. Not all fluctuations in pedestrian fatalities are explained by changes in population by age group, as the population-based rates have also varied by year. (Fatalities and fatality rates by population for age groups are available for 2018 in NHTSA's Traffic Safety Facts report, NCSA, 2020).

Comparing average fatalities for the range 2014-2018 to those from 2009-2013, pedestrian fatalities decreased for the youngest age groups - less than 5, 5 to 9, 10 to 15, while all older age groups saw increases in fatalities (see figure below). For those 55 to 64, a notable increase in pedestrian fatalities was observed from around 674 per year to around 1,046 per year. As noted earlier, this increase may reflect increases in population and walking among this age group; however, not all the changes are explained by changes in population by age group, as the population-based rates have also varied by year. (Fatalities and fatality rates by population for age groups are available for 2018 in NHTSA's Traffic Safety Facts report, NCSA, 2020). Older pedestrians (generally those over 65) are more likely to die from their injuries when struck due to the inherent fragility associated with the aging process. Factors that may increase vulnerability to *being* struck for some older pedestrians include age-related physical changes that may lead to walking more slowly; difficulty crossing the curb, difficulty judging walking speeds and oncoming vehicle speeds, and difficulty with interactions dealing with turning vehicles at intersections; and possible confusion about pedestrian signal phases (Dommes et al., 2012; Holland & Hill, 2010; Coffin & Morrall, 1995).




Source: FARS data (NHTSA, 2018)
Note that different age group spans are used. The intent of the chart is to compare general trends in different age groups, not to compare fatalities by age.

Several studies have also noted the overrepresentation of minorities, immigrants, and low-income populations in pedestrian-vehicle crashes (Anderson et al., 2010; Chakravarthy et al., 2012; Chen et al., 2011; Lin et al.; Murtha, 2005); however, the causes and contributing factors of these elevated crash rates are not well understood. Some studies attribute higher minority crashes to potential inequities in how pedestrian facilities are distributed across areas with different socioeconomic indicators (Kravetz & Noland, 2012). Other studies have found that lower income and minority populations have higher transit use and walking rates (or exposure) that may help partially explain elevated crash figures (Cottrill & Thakuriah, 2010). An analysis of pedestrian-involved traffic crashes in Florida found that among other factors, higher densities of discount grocery and convenience stores, banks, barber shops, and fast food outlets were associated with higher crash frequencies in areas with higher densities of low-income and minority populations (Lin et al., 2017). Still others have postulated that social-behavioral mechanisms and differing "safety cultures" play a role in pedestrian crashes, particularly for recent immigrants (Chen et al., 2011).

Despite the vulnerability of these groups to pedestrian crashes, the effectiveness of countermeasures in reaching these special populations is both unknown and challenging to evaluate. This is due to the lack of information about pedestrian safety programs targeted to the specific needs of low-income, minority, or immigrant populations, and because the courses or programs targeting these groups have been unsuccessful in measuring changes in behaviors. NHTSA developed and pilot-tested two English as a Second Language (ESL) courses to teach basic walking and bicycling safety concepts to adult immigrants learning the English language (see nhtsa.gov/pedestrian-safety/english-second-language-esl-teachers-and-learners). Both courses are free for use by formal programs or less formal settings with volunteer instructors. While NHTSA was able to evaluate the ease of use of these courses by ESL instructors and

found increases in pre/post knowledge for the beginning level course, it was unable to successfully evaluate behavior changes as a result of this knowledge. A separate resource, the *Resident's Guide for Creating Safer Communities for Walking and Biking,* demonstrated for use in communities, generated several case studies on inclusive approaches to outreach, community-based planning, and improving conditions for pedestrians, and was part of the update to the guide (Sandt, Thomas, et al., 2015). Finally, another challenge noted by NHTSA relates to the translation of educational material. Among some non-English speakers living in the United States, translating material is ineffective because they are not literate in their native languages. This knowledge spurred NHTSA to develop visual educational tools (motion graphics) to teach desired pedestrian behaviors, bicyclist behaviors around motorized traffic, and safe driver behavior around pedestrians and bicyclists. The motion graphics demonstrate motions visually without language to deliver safety education and are specifically designed for audiences that lack English language skills or literacy in their native languages as well as visual learners.

**Walking Trends.** Walking trends can be used to estimate exposure. The National Household Travel Survey (NHTS), conducted by the FHWA, captures walking and other travel trends in the United States. According to estimates from these surveys, the number of walking trips changed from 20.3 billion in 1995 to 33.1 billion in 2001, and to about 41 billion in 2009 (Santos et al., 2011). It is likely that at least some of the increases in 2001 and 2009 relate to more detailed questions prompting respondents to include walk trips in those 2 years, which was not done in the prior surveys. The latest 2017 NHTS was conducted from April 2016 to April 2017 by McGuckin and Fucci (2018). Major changes were made to the survey methodology including the use of address-based sampling, a web-based survey instead of a telephone survey, and the use of Google API to calculate trip length (see McGuckin & Fucci, 2018, and nhts.ornl.gov/ for more details). During the 2016-2017 survey period, an estimated 39 billion walking trips were made for all purposes (work or work-related commute, shopping and errands, school and church, social and recreational, and other trips). The 39 billion walking trips in 2017 represent approximately 10.5% of all transportation mode trips reported. About 4% of all trips to work were made by walking. Commuting to work, however, makes up only a small percentage (6.5%) of all walking trips. The largest proportion of walking trips were made for recreational and social reasons (47.5%) followed by shopping and personal errands (29.5%). McGuckin and Fucci found walking to school or church made up nearly 10.7% of walking trips (Table 9a). The percentage of students walking to school has also increased from 11.9% in 2007 to 15.2% in 2014 for morning trips and from 15.2% to 18.4% for afternoon trips (National Center for Safe Routes To School, 2016). This represents increases of 32% and 24%.

The increase in walking trips is especially significant since it represents increases in the average number of daily walking trips per person (Pucher et al., 2011), whereas total daily personal trips per person have been declining since the 1995 survey (Santos et al., 2011). The CDC's National Health Interview Survey, collected in 2005 and 2010, assessed changes in prevalence of walking for at least 10 minutes one or more times in the preceding 7 days. Walking prevalence increased significantly, from 55.7% in 2005 to 62.0% in 2010. In 2010 walkers were also significantly more likely to meet the aerobic physical activity guidelines (CDC, 2012). The 2015 National Health Interview Survey found that 63.9% of adults reported walking for at least one bout of 10 or more minutes in the preceding week (Ussery et al., 2017; NPAP, 2017). There were increases in the prevalence of walking among adults between 2005 and 2010; however, the increase

plateaued from 2010 to 2015 among adults (Ussery et al., 2017). The CDC encourages walking and bicycling to help meet physical activity guidelines. The CDC also supports building communities that provide safe and equitable opportunities to walk such as implementing Complete Streets policies and designs and lowering speed limits in urban areas, etc. For more information see www.cdc.gov/nccdphp/dch/programs/communitiesputtingpreventiontowork-/resources/physical_activity.htm. Also see Health Resources in Action's web pages on Community Speed Reduction and Public Health, www.hria.org/resources/reports/community-speed-reduction/2013-resources-speed-reduction.html. In 2015 the Surgeon Generalreleased *Step It Up! The Surgeon General's Call to Action to Promote Walking and Walkable Communities.* Visit www.surgeongeneral.gov/library/calls/walking-and-walkable-communities/call-to-action-walking-and-walkable-communites.pdf (see also CDC, 2017).

**Classifying Crash Types.** Beginning in the 1970s, pedestrian crashes were categorized into types based on pedestrian and motor vehicle pre-crash actions, and crash location. In the early 1990s, this methodology was used to categorize more than 5,000 pedestrian crashes in California, Florida, Maryland, Minnesota, North Carolina, and Utah and analyze related characteristics (Hunter et al., 1996).

Of these 5,000+ pedestrian-motor vehicle crashes:

- 32% occurred at or within 50 feet of aintersections. Of these intersection crashes:
  - 30% involved turning vehicles;
  - 22% involved pedestrians dashing into intersections;
  - 16% involved driver violations (e.g., running a red light);
  - Older pedestrians were overrepresented in collisions with turning vehicles and motorist violations;
  - Children were overrepresented in intersection dashes;
- 26% occurred at the middles of blocks (mid-block). Of these mid-block crashes:
  - 35% involved pedestrians running into the street and the drivers' view was not obscured.
  - 17% were "dart-outs" in which pedestrians walked or ran into the street from locations where the pedestrians could not be seen.
  - Children were also overrepresented in dash-and-dart-out crashes;
- 7% occurred walking along roadways, not on sidewalks. Of these crashes:
  - 73% of the pedestrians were struck from behind while walking in the same direction as traffic;
  - Darkness and rural locations were overrepresented. This association is expected since rural areas are less likely to have sidewalks and supplemental street lighting.

The Pedestrian and Bicycle Crash Analysis Tool (PBCAT) software helps jurisdictions type pedestrian crashes to develop a database for analyzing pedestrian crash problems. Crash typing methodology has been used to develop tools that communities or States may use to discover more information about pedestrian and bicycle crashes. They can use crash type information and other crash characteristics to help select appropriate countermeasures. It is important to consider on-site field review of behaviors and site-specific characteristics before determining whether specific enforcement, educational, or engineering countermeasures are appropriate (Zegeer et al., 2008). Research has begun disentangling the behavioral elements included in some of the

PBCAT crash types (Schneider & Stefanich, 2016). The study found that pedestrian crashes were more prevalent on the far side than the nearside of intersections, and were more likely fatal when the impacting vehicle had been traveling straight, if they were on roads in between intersections, and if they involved pedestrians approaching from the left of the vehicle. PBCAT may be downloaded from www.pedbikeinfo.org/pbcat_us/. Registration is requested for this free software, so the user may receive software updates or important technical information.

**Underreporting and Crash Analysis.** Another consideration when analyzing crash data is that pedestrian as well as bicycle crashes tend to be underreported. Many States may not require reporting nor collect off-road or private-road crash records. Non-roadway crashes may, however, constitute a significant portion of pedestrian-related crashes with motor vehicles. In several studies, parking lot and driveway-related crashes represented up to 15% to 25% or more of all *reported* pedestrian crashes (Stutts & Hunter, 1999a; Thomas & Levitt, 2014). Many more roadway and non-roadway crashes go unreported. Research is needed to better understand the extent and causes of non-roadway pedestrian crashes and effective countermeasures. NHTSA's Not in Traffic Surveillance (NiTS) monitors and reports on not-in-traffic-related motor vehicle deaths. Many events involve young children. See Section 1.1 for more information.

Underreporting of traffic-related crashes on road right of ways likely decreases as the crash severity increases because police are likely to be called to injury and fatal crashes, and the pedestrian is more likely to be transported or seek examination at a healthcare facility. Therefore, the FARS data presented earlier are thought to be reliable sources for estimating pedestrian fatal crash frequencies. Even so, not all fatal pedestrian crashes are included in FARS, including fatal pedestrian crashes involving bicycles, or those that did not occur on public roads, as already mentioned.

Many more pedestrian and bicyclist injuries, including those due to falls, collisions with bicycles, and others, likely go unreported to State crash databases (Stutts & Hunter, 1999a, 1999b; Sciortino et al., 2005). A study of crashes reported to police and in emergency rooms from 2003-2007 in Funen, Denmark, estimated that 44% of severe and 76% of slight pedestrian injury crashes were not captured in police reports (Janstrup et al., 2016). Injured pedestrians may only report to the emergency rooms when coming in for treatment without informing the police of the crashes (Janstrup et al., 2016); this shows the need for analyzing emergency room records in addition to police records when developing injury estimates. Research is also needed to better understand the causes of these types of injuries. Maintenance of surfaces and Americans With Disabilities Act-compliant design of sidewalks, landings, and access ramps are certainly important for maintaining smooth surfaces and safe and accessible sidewalks and ramps. Other measures, such as providing space for bicyclists to ride separated from pedestrian walkways, may also be important but are outside the scope of this document.

**Pedestrian Attributes –** Everyone is a pedestrian, though when asked a person may not think of being one until prompted. Pedestrians span the full spectrum of ages from babies pushed in strollers to older adults. This includes foreign visitors and immigrants used to different traffic conventions, who speak many languages, and who may not be literate in their native languages. Pedestrians include disabled people who may be visually impaired, hearing impaired or deaf, or may require devices like walkers, wheelchairs, or crutches. More generally, we are all

pedestrians when we walk our dogs, cross the street to talk to neighbors, go to the store, go to school, or walk to or from the bus stop.

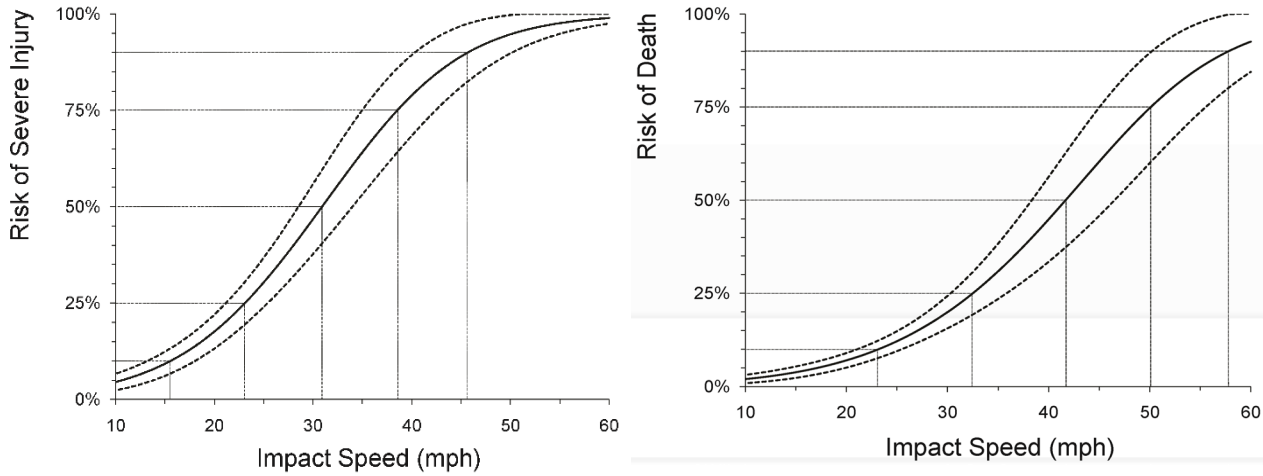
**Crash Factors –** A large body of historical research has established numerous factors associated with pedestrian crashes. Pedestrian and driver pre-crash actions and behaviors (such as distraction, driver speed, and alcohol use, and vehicle type and design) all contribute to pedestrian crashes. Crash factors are not mutually exclusive and in many ways, have compounding effects on pedestrian risk. More details about these factors are discussed below. Several studies have provided evidence of the role of the transportation environment in pedestrian safety and summarized best practices in engineering and design for pedestrian safety (FHWA, 2010; Redmon, 2011; Retting et al., 2003). Complete Streets (also known as Livable Streets) policies are one of the more low-cost and effective countermeasures, as evidenced by numerous cities and States across the United States (FHWA, 2010). For more on Complete Streets, visit www.smartgrowthamerica.org/complete-streets/. Also, search for a program in your State or city. Vision Zero is another large program that aims to reduce pedestrian fatalities through a focus on engineering changes and speed management (Kim et al., 2017).

**Distraction –** Cell phones and electronic devices are sources of distraction, not only for motorists (discussed in Chapter 4), but also for pedestrians. A literature review from NHTSA found that, based on the limited amount of research done on pedestrian distraction, distraction is associated with a small but statistically significant decrease in pedestrian safety (Scopatz & Zhou, 2016). Talking on cell phones is associated with cognitive distraction that may reduce the frequency of prudent pedestrian behaviors, particularly among college-age pedestrians who may be more engaged with such devices (Hatfield & Murphy, 2007; Nasar et al., 2008; Ortiz et al., 2017; Stavrinos et al., 2009, 2011); however, the results from real-world observational studies are mixed (Walker et al., 2012; Thompson et al., 2013). A study of road user distraction at four intersections in Washington, DC, found that of the 4,871 people observed, the primary form of distraction was engaging with other people for both pedestrians (44%) and drivers (49%) (Ortiz et al., 2017). More than a quarter (27%) of all people observed were distracted by cell phone use. The prevalence of distraction among pedestrians was higher than for drivers: pedestrians had 1.5 increased odds of being distracted. Thompson et al. (2013) sampled pedestrian behaviors at 20 high-risk intersections and reported that only pedestrians who were texting were associated with suboptimal crossing behaviors. Ortiz et al. (2017) reported that the majority of interactions (20 of 21 or 95%) between distracted pedestrians and distracted drivers resulted in some form of evasive maneuver by either.

These studies report 7% to 30% of pedestrians using varyious portable electronic devices. Nationally representative estimates on use of portable electronic devices are unavailable, but would likely only capture a snapshot in time, as device use continues to grow in popularity. FARS/GES data on pedestrian device use or involvement in pedestrian crashes are unavailable at the national level.

**Driver speed –** Driving speed is a key risk factor in severe pedestrian crashes. The study by Rosen and Sander (2009) is believed to be one of the more robust in terms of estimating the risk of pedestrian fatality based on driver impact speeds. The study estimated fatality risk curves based on driver impact speeds, ranging from 8% at 50 km/h (31 mph) and reaching 50% at 75 km/h (about 47 mph). Other studies have estimated similar relationships, although the magnitude

varies (Leaf & Preusser, 1999; Tefft, 2011). As pedestrians are particularly vulnerable to severe injury and fatality when struck by higher-speed vehicles, countermeasures aimed at reducing vehicle speeds have the potential to save lives for both pedestrians and drivers. Driving speed also appears to affect the tendency for drivers to yield to pedestrians at crosswalks, with fewer drivers yielding as speeds increase (Bertulis & Dulaski, 2014; Gårder, 2004). Speeding-related countermeasures are presented in Chapter 3.




Risk of severe injury (left) and death (right) in relation to impact speed in a sample of 422 pedestrians 15+ years struck by a single forward-moving car or light truck model year 1989–1999, United States, 1994–1998. Risks are adjusted for pedestrian age, height, weight, body mass index, and type of striking vehicle, and standardized to the distribution of pedestrian age and type of striking vehicle for pedestrians struck in the United States in years 2007–2009. Dotted lines represent pointwise 95% confidence intervals. Serious injury is defined as AIS score of 4 or greater and includes death irrespective of AIS score.

Source: Tefft (2011)

**Alcohol** – The role of alcohol in pedestrian crashes has not been well defined, based on the lack of complete and high-quality data on alcohol use or BACs of drivers and pedestrians involved in crashes. Driver or pedestrian alcohol use is estimated to be a contributing factor in 48% of pedestrian fatalities (NCSA, 2020). Thirty-three percent of pedestrians killed in crashes had BACs of .08 or higher, while 16% of fatal pedestrian crashes had drivers with BACs of .08 or higher. From 1982 to 2014 the proportion of fatally injured pedestrians with BACs of .08 or higher decreased at a lesser rate than fatally injured passenger drivers with BACs of .08 or higher (Eichelberger et al., 2018). One recent study of alcohol outlet density and pedestrian safety in Baltimore found that each additional off-premise alcohol outlet was associated with a 12.3% increase in the risk of pedestrian injuries in the neighborhood, and an attributable risk of 4.9% (Nesoff et al., 2018). Alcohol-related countermeasures that may help address certain pedestrian crashes are presented in Chapter 1.

**Vehicle Type and Design** - Previous studies have focused on the role of vehicle type, design, and warning systems in the event of crashes (Searson & Anderson, 2011), and in the ability of pedestrians and even vehicle technology to detect and prevent crashes (Fredriksson et al., 2011; Greene et al., 2011). A study of pedestrian, bicyclist, and motorcyclist collisions with reversing cars conducted in Germany found that pedestrians were seriously injured in 9.1% of all such

crashes from 1999 to 2012 (Decker et al., 2016). Of the crashes for which impact zone data were available, impact with the rear of the car was the most frequent (81%), followed by impact with the side (18%). Backup cameras in vehicles can help prevent these crashes with reversing cars. See www.nhtsa.gov/equipment/driver-assistance-technologies for descriptions of in-vehicle driver assistance technologies. Another issue in the literature, as hybrid and electric vehicles constitute larger portions of the vehicle fleet, is the consequence of "quiet" vehicles on pedestrian safety, particularly among pedestrians with visual disabilities who rely more on auditory cues to detect traffic (Garay-Vega et al., 2011).

**Engineering and Roadway Design.** While not dismissing the importance of vehicle design and the role of the built environment in preventing pedestrian crashes, the countermeasures described in this guide relate primarily to educational and enforcement measures aimed at improving the knowledge and behaviors of road users to prevent crashes. However, there is a growing recognition of the importance of road design and the built environment in fostering safer user behaviors. A comprehensive approach that uses a combination of effective engineering, enforcement, and educational measures may have the best chance of achieving desired crash reductions. U.S. DOT released a national pedestrian safety action plan summary focusing significant attention on the built environment research and countermeasures (2014). Key infrastructure resources are included in the Resources section.

**Emerging Technologies or Emerging Vehicle Technologies.** Further, emerging research is exploring whether vehicle technologies known as Pedestrian Crash Avoidance/Mitigation (PCAM) systems show promise in reducing motor vehicle-pedestrian crashes (Yanagisawa et al., 2014; Yanagisawa et al., 2017). Current testing is largely limited to a research environment involving light vehicles and measuring the systems' capabilities to detect a pedestrian in the road ahead. The systems may alert drivers, automatically brake, or take other measures to prevent crashes with pedestrians. An increasingly relevant issue is the emergence of connected and automated vehicles, and research is required to investigate their safety and equity impacts on pedestrians and walkability (Shay et al., 2018). A small-scale crowdsourced survey reported that study participants perceived higher safety for pedestrians with automated vehicles (Deb et al., 2017); however, Millard-Ball argues that pedestrians may adapt to safety benefits offered by automated vehicles and expect the same from interactions with non-automated vehicles (Millard-Ball, 2018).

**Safety in Numbers.** Finally, the idea that vulnerable road user safety may be improved by increasing the numbers of pedestrians and bicyclists is gaining traction and empirical support (Elvik & Bjørnskau, 2017; Elvik & Goel, 2019; Jacobsen et al., 2015). As numbers of pedestrians increase, drivers should expect to see more pedestrians and thus become more attentive to them. This effect has been found to be consistent when analyzing data from communities of varying sizes and population scales (Jacobsen et al., 2015). A 2009 scanning tour by U.S. transportation officials and researchers of Denmark, Sweden, Germany, Switzerland, and the United Kingdom reported that the concept of "safety in numbers" has motivated the promotion of more bicycling and walking in these countries as a safety countermeasure (Fischer et al., 2010). However, encouragement in these countries is done in the context of commitments to comprehensive planning, funding, engineering, and design and maintenance policies to provide safe and connected pedestrian networks. The scan report also documents numerous

examples of how these policies are put into practice through traffic calming, traffic and parking management, enforcement, education and other systemic approaches. Research from abroad as well as the United States finds that, although the actual number of crashes may go up with increases in walking (and bicycling) with increased exposure, individual risk of crashes with motor vehicles (crash rate) is lower as numbers of pedestrians and bicyclists increase (Alliance for Biking and Walking, 2014; Geyer et al., 2006; Jacobsen, 2003: Jacobsen et al., 2015; Leden et al., 2000). The European countries mentioned above are also committed to reducing the total numbers of pedestrian fatalities and injuries while increasing walking and bicycling. Many European countries have adopted "toward zero deaths" safety philosophies (for more information see - https://ec.europa.eu/transport/road_safety/home_en). In the United States, the "Vision Zero" initiative primarily targets local jurisdictions to get them to adopt speed-management policies and roadway design practices that encourage driving at speeds that are less likely to result in serious injuries or fatalities. As of mid-2018, more than 30 cities had adopted policies from this initiative (Vision Zero Network, 2018).

A non-linear relationship between traffic volumes (motorist, pedestrian, or bicyclist) and crashes has long been demonstrated (AASHTO, 2010; Bhatia & Wier, 2011; Elvik & Bjørnskau, 2017), but a causal mechanism for how increased volumes improve pedestrian safety has not been demonstrated (Bhatia & Wier, 2011). This means that crashes do not tend to increase in direct proportion to increases in volume, but absolute crash numbers are still likely to increase (and have increased) with increases in walking – all else being equal. Additionally, all the studies cited above, and others attempting to characterize pedestrian safety relationships, are based on cross-sectional comparisons. There are frequently safety factors such as motorist speed, congestion, or law enforcement activity that are unmeasured or have not been accounted for in such studies. However, a recent meta-analysis of motorist-pedestrian or motorist-bicyclist injury crashes accounted for some of the similarities among factors included in previous studies and estimated that there is safety in numbers for both pedestrians and bicyclists (Elvik & Bjørnskau, 2017). By their estimate, if the number of pedestrians or cyclists doubles (100% increase), the increase in accidents is expected to be 41%, which is much less than direct proportionality. A subsequent expanded meta-analysis determined that the safety in numbers effect may be much stronger for pedestrians than cyclists, and at the macro level (cities) than the micro-level, such as an individual junction (Elvik & Goel, 2019).

One issue that makes the direct application of the safety in numbers findings difficult is that the cross-sectional studies cannot demonstrate the direction of effect – that is, whether a safer environment comes before the increased number of crashes or as a result (Bhatia & Wier, 2011). Impaired pedestrians also contribute to the overall safety problem; however, more research is needed about this issue in general, in addition to a better understanding of how laws and education can mitigate risks posed by impaired pedestrians. It is clear, however, that a focus on improving the environment, both infrastructure and road users' compliance with laws and safe behaviors, is important to increasing both population-level safety (measured as a reduction in population-wide fatalities and injuries) and numbers of pedestrians or amounts of walking. As these two elements – safety improvements and increases in walking – go together, individual risk will also be reduced.

## Strategies to Increase Pedestrian Safety

Countermeasures in this chapter are primarily aimed at improving safety behaviors of pedestrians and drivers through education and enforcement measures, and are organized by pedestrian sub groups:

- Preschool-age children;
- School-age children;
- Alcohol-impaired pedestrians; and
- All pedestrians.

The final section contains countermeasures that may affect all groups of pedestrians as well as drivers. Additional information about countermeasures involving a comprehensive approach to improving pedestrian (and bicycle) safety is provided in NHTSA's *Advancing Pedestrian and Bicyclist Safety: A Primer for Highway Safety Professionals* (Brookshire et al., 2016).

Basic countermeasure principles include addressing those issues identified specifically through problem identification at the community level. Common themes include:

- Reducing vehicle speed, which allows pedestrians and drivers more time to react and reduces impact forces if crashes do occur.
- Conducting speed enforcement, especially at high risk crash locations (for pedestrian/motorist interactions).
- Reducing exposure to known risky situations through behavioral and environmental countermeasures (without necessarily discouraging walking).
- Increasing enforcement of pedestrian-friendly laws addressing behaviors of both pedestrians and motorists.
- Increasing the conspicuity of pedestrians and/or encouraging walking in areas of enhanced lighting for road crossing.
- Reducing distracted walking or driving behaviors (cell phones, headphones, etc.). See the chapter on distracted and drowsy driving for countermeasures targeting drivers.
- Decreasing walking or driving while impaired. See the chapter on strategies to reduce alcohol-impaired driving. Some of the countermeasures would be applicable to address any type of impaired roadway use.
- Educating motorists and pedestrians on required safety behaviors related to specific laws to enhance safe interaction between motorists and pedestrians on the roadway.
- Tailoring countermeasures to diverse populations, including groups such as recent immigrants who may not be familiar with U.S. traffic laws, the U.S. traffic environment, may not speak or read English, or may not be literate in their native language.

Select countermeasures to address particular problems identified in communities or common to a high-risk group in a community, such as middle aged or older adults, the homeless, or children of varying ages. Remember to base the selected groups on the data. Tailoring may be needed to address diverse populations, such as recent immigrants who may not be familiar with U.S. traffic laws, the U.S. traffic environment, may not speak or read English, or be literate in their native language.

## Resources

The agencies and organizations listed below can provide more information on comprehensive pedestrian safety issues and countermeasures, and links to numerous other resources.

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration:
  - Pedestrians – www.nhtsa.gov/road-safety/pedestrian-safety
  - Research and Evaluation – www.nhtsa.gov/research-data
  - Behavioral Safety Research Reports – https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov
- Pedestrian and Bicycle Information Center (PBIC): www.pedbikeinfo.org – a national information center funded by FHWA and NHTSA.
- Federal Highway Administration: www.fhwa.dot.gov/
  - Office of Planning, Environment, & Realty (Pedestrian and Bicycle Program) – www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/
  - Safety Office, Pedestrian and Bicycle Safety – http://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/ped_bike/
  - Federal Highway Administration Research and Technology, Coordinating, Developing, and Delivering Highway Transportation Innovations, Pedestrian and Bicyclist Safety – www.fhwa.dot.gov/research/topics/safety/pedbike/
  - Federal Highway Administration Division Office State Bicycle and Pedestrian Coordinators: www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/state_fhwa_contacts.cfm
  - State Bicycle and Pedestrian Coordinators: www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/state_contacts.cfm
- Governors Highway Safety Association: www.ghsa.org/issues/bicyclists-pedestrians
- National Center for Safe Routes to School: www.saferoutesinfo.org
- Smart Growth America – National Complete Streets Coalition: www.smartgrowthamerica.org/complete-streets
- SAFE KIDS Worldwide: www.safekids.org/
- Safe Routes to School National Partnership: www.saferoutespartnership.org
- Safe States Alliance: www.safestates.org
- United States Access Board: www.access-board.gov
- National Center for Bicycling and Walking: www.bikewalk.org
- America Walks: www.americawalks.org
- Association of Pedestrian and Bicycle Professionals: www.apbp.org
- Vision Zero Network: www.visionzeronetwork.org

Several specific resources that provide further information on engineering, enforcement, and educational strategies are:

- Pedestrian Safety Enforcement Operation: A How-to Guide: www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/812059-PedestrianSafetyEnforceOperaHowToGuide.pdf
- Uniform Guidelines for State Highway Safety Programs: Highway Safety Program Guideline No. 14: Pedestrian and Bicycle Safety: https://one.nhtsa.gov/nhtsa/whatsup/tea21/tea21programs/pages/PedBikeSafety.htm

- Pedestrian Safety Training for Law Enforcement: www.nhtsa.gov/pedestrian-safety/pedestrian-safety-training-law-enforcement
- Identifying Countermeasure Strategies to Increase Safety of Older Pedestrians: www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811799.pdf
- NHTSA Motion Graphics:
  - Walking Safety – www.nhtsa.gov/links/PedMotionGraphics/PedMotionWalkingSafely.zip
  - Driving Safely Around Pedestrians and Bicyclists - www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/pedestrian-safety/everyone-pedestrian
- Pedestrian Safer Journey: Skills for Safe Walking for Ages 5 to 18 www.pedbikeinfo.org/pedsaferjourney/
- PEDSAFE: Pedestrian Safety Guide and Countermeasure Selection System: www.pedbikesafe.org/PEDSAFE/
- How to Develop a Pedestrian and Bicycle Safety Action Plan: https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/ped_bike/ped_focus/docs/fhwasa17050.pdf
- Safer People, Safer Streets: Summary of U.S. Department of Transportation Action Plan to Increase Walking and Biking and Reduce Pedestrian and Bicyclist Fatalities: www.dot.gov/sites/dot.gov/files/docs/safer_people_safer_streets_summary_doc_acc_v1-11-9.pdf

Resources released or updated since the last *Countermeasures That Work* update:

- U.S. DOT: Safety for All Users: Report Developed by the U.S. DOT under Section 1442 of the Fixing America's Surface Transportation (FAST) Act: FHWA, 2017: www.transportation.gov/sites/dot.gov/files/docs/mission/safety/303201/safety-all-users-report.pdf
- FHWA: Accessible Shared Streets: Notable Practices and Considerations for Accommodating Pedestrians with Vision Disabilities: www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/publications/accessible_shared_streets/fhwahep17096.pdf
- FHWA: Strategic Agenda for Pedestrian and Bicycle Transportation: www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/publications/strategic_agenda/fhwahep16086.pdf
- PBIC: The Role of Law Enforcement in Supporting Pedestrian and Bicycle Safety: An Idea Book: https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/49827
- PBIC: An Overview of Automated Enforcement Systems and Their Potential for Improving Pedestrian and Bicyclist Safety: www.pedbikeinfo.org/cms/downloads/WhitePaper_AutomatedSafetyEnforcement_PBIC.pdf
- Safe Routes to School National Partnership: Engaging Students with Disabilities in Safe Routes to School: www.saferoutespartnership.org/sites/default/files/resource_files/engaging_students_with_disabilities_in_srts_final.pdf
- The League of American Bicyclists. Bicycling and Walking in the United States: 2018, Benchmarking Report: https://bikeleague.org/benchmarking-report

## Pedestrian Safety Countermeasures

Countermeasures to improve pedestrian safety are listed in the table below. The table is intended to provide a rough estimate of each countermeasure's effectiveness, use, cost, and time required for implementation. Effectiveness is shown using a five-star rating system.

- Countermeasures that receive ★★★★ or ★★★★★ have been determined to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ★★★ are considered promising, and likely to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States, communities, and other organizations are encouraged to use ★★★, and especially ★★★★ or ★★★★★, countermeasures. They should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

Further details about the symbols and terms used are included after the table. Effectiveness, cost, and time to implement can vary substantially from State to State and community to community. Costs for many countermeasures are difficult to measure, so the summary terms are very approximate.

Each pedestrian safety countermeasure is discussed individually in this chapter. Full descriptions are included for ★★★, ★★★★ and ★★★★★ countermeasures. Brief descriptions are included for ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Further details about the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures are included in Appendix A8 to this report.

### 1. Preschool-Age Children

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 Children's Safety Clubs | ☆ | Varies | Unknown | Unknown |
| 1.2 Child Supervision | ☆ | $ | Unknown | Short |

## 2. School-Age Children

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 Elementary-Age Child Pedestrian Training | ★★★ | $ | Unknown | Short |
| 2.2 Safe Routes to School | ★★★ | $ | High | Short |
| 2.3 Walking School Buses | ★★★ | $ | Low | Short |
| 2.4 Child School Bus Training | ☆☆ | $ | High | Short |

## 3. Impaired Pedestrians

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Communications and Outreach Addressing Impaired Pedestrians | ☆☆ | Varies | Low | Medium |
| 3.2 “Sweeper” Patrols of Impaired Pedestrians | ☆ | $$ | Low | Medium |

## 4. All Pedestrians

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4.1 Pedestrian Safety Zones | ★★★★ | $$$ | Low | Medium |
| 4.2 Reduce and Enforce Speed Limits | ★★★ | $ | High | Varies |
| 4.3 Conspicuity Enhancement | ★★★ | $ | Low | Medium |
| 4.4 Enforcement Strategies | ★★★ | $$ | Low | Short |
| 4.5 Driver Training | ☆ | $ | Low | Medium |
| 4.6 Pedestrian Gap Acceptance Training | ☆ | $$ | Unknown | Medium |
| 4.7 University Educational Campaign | ☆ | $ | High | Medium |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ★★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective by several high-quality evaluations with consistent results |
| ★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective in certain situations |
| ★★★ | Likely to be effective based on balance of evidence from high-quality evaluations or other sources |
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Preschool-Age Children

### 1.1 Children's Safety Clubs

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Unknown |
|---|---|---|---|

This countermeasure involves sponsoring safety clubs in which parents/caregivers can enroll their children as young as age three. Children then regularly receive books or other print or electronic media that provide instruction to both the child and parents about safe walking practices. A primary purpose of children's safety clubs is to help parents and caregivers become more involved in educating young children about safe walking practices. An equally important objective of safety clubs is for parents and other caregivers to recognize children's limits and capabilities, and to understand their obligation to provide adequate supervision and control (Gregersen & Nolen, 1994).

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has been examined in a small number of research studies. The research suggests that this countermeasure does not translate into crash and injury reductions.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A8, Section 1.1.

### 1.2 Child Supervision

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |

The primary purpose of this countermeasure is to increase caregiver supervision of children when they are exposed to traffic, or when they are nearby direct access to traffic. The State can require such training for teachers, day care workers, and others licensed to care for children. The programs can also be made available to parents, babysitters, or other caretakers through PTAs, faith-based organizations or places of worship, medical providers, or even direct mail or internet access.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A8, Section 1.2.

## 2. School-Age Children

### 2.1 Elementary-Age Child Pedestrian Training

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

Elementary school pedestrian training equips school-age children with knowledge and practice to enable them to walk safely in environments with traffic and other safety hazards. NHTSA and the States have developed elementary school pedestrian training programs over the years. NHTSA's "Willy Whistle" pedestrian safety videos were updated to "Stop and Look and Listen with Willy Whistle" (2008) for grades K-2, emphasizing to look left-right-left before crossing. "Getting There Safely" (2014) for grades 3 to 6 emphasizes critical thinking with walking around traffic. Both videos are best used in conjunction with some discussion allowing for questions/answers and clarification. The Willy Whistle video is available at www.youtube.com/watch?v=-idpfcP6bY4 and Getting There Safely at www.youtube.com/watch?v=ATyNXDMvBuE.

WalkSafe, a program adapted from many earlier resources, was implemented initially as a 5-day program in a high-risk district in Miami-Dade County, Florida, and later as a 3-day program in all 220 Miami-Dade County elementary schools as part of a comprehensive effort to address pedestrian crashes in the county (Zegeer, Blomberg, et al., 2008).

In 2011 NHTSA produced a Child Pedestrian Safety Curriculum for elementary school students along with an instructor guide (see www.nhtsa.gov/pedestrian-safety/child-pedestrian-safety-curriculum). The curriculum includes five lesson plans for each grade group, K-1, 2-3, and 4-5, with developmentally appropriate lessons and messages that also address standards of learning, caregiver tip sheets, skills practice exercises, and student tests to evaluate knowledge change. The curriculum was pilot-tested in schools when it was developed. Thomas, Blomberg, and Korbelak (2017) detail its formal evaluation.

School-based programs are useful to teach basic pedestrian concepts and safe behaviors at schools, faith-based settings, and other institutions with groups of elementary-age children. Pedestrian safety programs are especially important for children such as those from lower-income families and neighborhoods, or those who may be more likely to make risky decisions and are less able to control their behavior (Barton & Schwebel, 2007). A study from Australia identified younger ages, and attentional and developmental issues including hyperactivity and inattentiveness as factors in unsafe road-crossing decisions by children. Children who had some independent walking experience were less likely to make incorrect decisions (Congiu et al., 2008).

Other resources that may be used independently or in a group setting include an online, video-training resource, Pedestrian Safer Journey, developed for the FHWA. This resource provides video-based training modules for child pedestrians 5 to 9, 10 to 14, and 15 to 18; teachers' material including discussion guides. This information is available on the PBIC website at www.pedbikeinfo.org/pedsaferjourney/index.html. In addition, the National Center for Safe Routes to School hosts extensive educational resources including *Teaching Children to Walk*

*Safely as They Grow and Develop: A Guide for Parents and Caregivers*, with learning objectives and tips for caregivers of children 4 and older. This resource can be found at http://guide.saferoutesinfo.org/graduated_walking/index.cfm. Other resources and tips for educators, parents, drivers, children, and even neighbors are available at www.pedbikeinfo.org/resources/pbic_resources.cfm.

Resources are also available to help parents become role models and provide on-going practice and positive reinforcement. As mentioned in Section 1.1 on preschool age children, NHTSA has several brochures to educate parents and caregivers on child pedestrian safety, including Preventing Pedestrian Crashes: Parents and Caregivers of Preschool Children and Elementary School Children (www.nhtsa.gov/document/pedestrian-crashes). Safe Kids Worldwide also has tips for caregivers and links to other resources (www.safekids.org/walkingsafelytips).

**Use**: Unknown. Information has been available for years, and distributed widely, but not necessarily as part of a systematic or national program. In addition, much material and resources have been updated to new technologies and formats such as interactive internet resources and video trainings. With schools being called on for a wider variety of services and narrower set of teaching requirements, finding time to add child traffic safety modules may be difficult. Newer technologies and information formats may help expand the reach of training information. Some States are adapting existing curriculum or developing curriculum to meet their State's Standards of Learning; this allows teachers to use pedestrian (and bicycle) educational material to correlate with meeting the establish minimum expectations for what students should know and be able to do at the end of each grade or course in English, mathematics, science, history/social science and other subjects.

**Effectiveness**: Child pedestrian training programs have been shown to increase knowledge. Long-lasting behavior improvements may be harder to achieve. Evaluations of 5-day and 3-day WalkSafe programs in the Miami school district that used videos, formal curricula, workbooks, and outside simulation activities on an imaginary road on school grounds showed improvements in safety knowledge compared to before, although no control group was used in the evaluation. Improvements were more consistent for grades K-3 than for 4 and 5. Actual in-traffic behaviors were also reportedly improved in the short term, but did not hold up at 3 months after the program and no comparison group was used (Hotz et al., 2004; Hotz et al., 2009). In a study of the longer-term impacts of the WalkSafe program, knowledge and behavior of more than 1,500 students receiving a one-time per year WalkSafe instruction were evaluated over 2 years (Livingston et al., 2011). While short- and intermediate-term knowledge retention was observed among all grades, long-term (i.e., more than a year) knowledge retention of pedestrian safety behaviors were observed only among children moving from 3rd to 4th grade. Knowledge change did not appear to result in improved pedestrian behaviors. The authors concluded that repetition and reinforcement may be needed for long-term knowledge and behavior change, as well as engagement by caregivers. The North Carolina DOT adapted NHTSA's child pedestrian safety curriculum and launched the pedestrian bicycle safety program, "Let's GO NC!" An examination of the effectiveness of the program showed that the program increased students' self-reported pedestrian knowledge and supervised crossing behaviors in simulated street crossing situations (Thomas et al., 2017). Older students (Grade 3-5) showed greater improvements in knowledge and behavior compared to younger students (Grade K-2).

Another study by Gates et al. (2010) also indicates the importance of repetition in school-based trainings. In a study of 930 students in grades 2 to 7 in Detroit, pedestrian safety training was provided once and then again seven to 12 months later. Measures of safety violations gathered by observing street-crossing behaviors before and after the trainings, as well as knowledge change based on pre/post tests were collected. After the initial training, both test scores and observed behaviors improved, but were only partially sustained. Once retraining occurred, there were increases in test scores, and the cumulative difference (after initial training and retraining) was consistently larger than the impact of initial training alone for both test scores and observational behavioral measures. One trial suggested that video-based training may be an effective method for conveying knowledge and appropriate behaviors (Arbogast et al., 2014), although neither before (baseline) nor long-term behavioral observations were conducted. Another study suggested that virtual and roadside training are more effective than videos for improving behaviors (Schwebel, McClure, & Severson, 2014), but more research is needed. Reach, feasibility, and cost are also factors to consider.

Barton et al. (2007) reported that children crossed a road more safely immediately following a brief pedestrian safety training that included instruction followed by practice crossings on a pretend road. Schwebel et al. (2016) implemented street-crossing training for children 7 and 8 over a 3-week period. The training involved six sessions of 45 crossings in a virtual pedestrian environment, and subsequent evaluation showed that the training decreased unsafe crossing and departure delays, while increasing their observation of traffic compared to baseline pre-intervention performance. In the United Kingdom, a combination of adult-led training and peer discussions for children 5 to 8 led to improved roadside search skills (Tolmie et al., 2005). In a small study of mostly middle-class preschool children, Albert and Dolgin (2010) also reported that 4- and 5-year-olds trained by adults in groups of 3 or 4 using a "playmat" model retained real-world behavioral (street crossing choices) improvement 6 months later compared to peers trained using two other less interactive methods or who received no training. According to the authors, the success of this treatment may lie in the opportunities for peer collaboration and corrective feedback from the adult trainers.

Thus, numerous studies suggest that knowledge and behaviors of young children may be improved through education and training programs, but that behavior in real-world traffic situations is more likely to be modified if the program incorporates interactive training with opportunities for practice and positive reinforcement (Percer, 2009). Effectiveness of school-based child pedestrian training would also likely be enhanced if it combined child training with emphasis to teachers, parents, and other caregivers on the limits of children and the need for careful supervision, particularly for those younger than 10 years (see Section 1.2).

**Costs**: NHTSA publications are free for download, and can be distributed at low expense.

**Time to implement**: Short, once a decision is made by a school district to offer such a program. Time is needed to review the recommended material, work it into the school's existing curriculum, and train teachers. The training needs to be repeatedly implemented to sustain effectiveness.

**Other issues:**

- A consensus from reviews is that practical training—that is, learning by doing with reinforcement of correct behaviors—is the most effective way for children to learn traffic safety skills (Bruce & McGrath, 2005; Dragutinovic & Twisk, 2006; Percer, 2009). The need for experiential learning is especially key for younger children who lack the capacity to generalize concepts and need to practice in environments with real objects that are as close as possible to those they will experience (Dragutinovic & Twisk, 2006). Although it can be done with adult supervision, real-world practice may be difficult to achieve with large groups of school children and without undue exposure to traffic risks.
- Classroom education may be enhanced by using outdoor simulation, three-dimensional models, games, or other interactive learning methods such as with computer games and models, particularly in adult-led and small-group activities. These methods do not replace real-world practice but evidence from a few studies suggests that interactive training with opportunities for feedback, correction, and practice (more than one session) may lead to more lasting behavior improvements (Tolmie et al., 2005; Albert & Dolgin, 2009).
- Hammond et al. (2014) found that trainers often modified the training from recommended best practices in a program ("Kerbcraft") developed to provide roadside training for 5- to 7-year-olds in the United Kingdom. This deviation seems to have been toward conserving resources by conducting shorter trainings and introducing more classroom elements than the program recommended. It isn't clear, however, if the adaptations diminish effectiveness, but that is certainly a risk since the modifications have not been evaluated. The other possible implication is that the longer, all-roadside training may not be practical for consistent implementation (Hammond et al., 2014). It is important that whenever programs are modified, however, that the changed program is also evaluated to ensure continued effectiveness.

### 2.2 Safe Routes to School

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

From 2009 to 2018 there were 1,207 people killed in school-transportation-related crashes—an average of 1,214 fatalities per year (NHTSA - FARS, 2009-2018). During that period 100 school-age pedestrians younger than 19 died in school-transportation-related crashes.

The goal of Safe Routes to School Programs (SRTS) is to increase the amount of walking and bicycling trips to and from school while simultaneously improving safety for children walking or bicycling to school. SRTS programs are community-based and intended to be comprehensive. Programs educate children, school personnel, parents, community members, and LEOs about safe walking and bicycling behavior and safe driving behavior around pedestrians and bicyclists. In addition, programs include enforcement and engineering activities to improve traffic safety and reduce or eliminate risky elements of the traffic environment around primary and secondary schools so children can safely walk or bicycle to school. Walking or biking to school has additional benefits to students' health. Studies have found an association between active transport to school and lower BMIs as well as higher performance on standardized tests (Active Living Research, 2015).

The CDC has identified SRTS programs as one of eight non-clinical, context-based, community-wide interventions that have the potential to improve population health. See CDC's Health Impact in 5 Years (HI-5) strategies for health transformation at www.cdc.gov/policy/hst/hi5/index.html.

From 2005 to mid-2012 SAFETEA-LU required each State to have its own SRTS program, including a full-time coordinator to manage Federal funds. Each year, Federal funding was allocated on infrastructure (engineering) improvements and on non-infrastructure projects (public awareness and outreach, enforcement near schools, education, and training for volunteers) to encourage walking and bicycling to school. In June 2012 new legislation, MAP-21, was enacted that significantly altered how SRTS and other pedestrian and bicycle programs are structured and funded. Under MAP-21, SRTS was no longer a standalone program (no new funding); however, SRTS projects were still eligible to compete for funding alongside other bicycle and pedestrian-related programs, including former Transportation Enhancements and Recreational Trails projects.

Under the Fixing America's Surface Transportation (FAST) Act (signed in 2015 and authorized until 2020), as part of the Surface Transportation Program Set-Aside funds, States can determine their own funding priorities. The total available STPS funds are expected to be from $819 million to $850 million per year through 2020. Few changes were made to the funding, but most features of MAP-21 have been retained. Local communities and school systems can apply for the Federal STPS funds through the State DOTs, but local and State agencies have to provide up to 20% in matching funds for project costs. To learn more, visit www.fhwa.dot.gov/fastact/ and www.saferoutespartnership.org/healthy-communities/policy-change/federal/FAST-act-background-resources.

For a brief history of the SRTS program including funding, see www.saferoutespartnership.org/safe-routes-school/101/history.

**Use**: With the establishment of the national SRTS program, all 50 States and the District of Columbia initiated SRTS programs. From July to September 2016, four out of 37 reporting States announced $7 million in MAP-21 funding for local and statewide SRTS projects, 2 States announced $1.9 million in SAFETEA-LU funding for local and statewide SRTS projects, and 1 State announced $5.3 million in FAST Act funding. Additionally, as of January 31, 2017, $1.06 billion out of the $1.147 billion in SAFETEA-LU funds apportioned to local and statewide SRTS programs had been allocated. At that time 19,378 schools, representing an estimated 7.6 million students, had received funding or were slated to receive funds for SRTS programs. Historically, approximately 68% of award recipients were classified as Title 1 (low-income) schools, a finding that is relevant because areas with lower median income are over-represented in bicyclist- and pedestrian-related crashes (McArthur et al., 2014).

Of the projects funded, 48% included infrastructure improvements, such as sidewalk improvements (20%), pedestrian and bicyclist access (15%), and traffic calming improvements (13%). In addition, 10% of projects funded were related to law enforcement countermeasures. About 19.5% of all elementary and middle schools have had SRTS programming in the past 10 years. To learn more, visit www.fhwa.dot.gov/MAP21/. From 2005 to 2012 nearly 14,000 schools received SRTS funding (Active Living Research, 2015). See Chapter 9, Section 1.2 for more information.

**Effectiveness**: SRTS efforts include a 3E approach to pedestrian and bicycle safety addressing engineering, education, and enforcement (programs can also include encouragement, evaluation, environment, engagement, and equity considerations). SRTS programs including education and training can be effective in teaching children and their parents how to evaluate and choose the safest routes for walking or bicycling to and from school, what safe behaviors are associated with walking and biking, and instilling the need to practice and model safe behaviors when walking, biking or driving around children walking/biking to school, how to use common engineering treatments to enhance their safety (sidewalks, crosswalks), the need to adhere to crossing guard direction, and to abide by traffic laws, especially in and around school zones. See Section 2.1 (Elementary-Age Child Pedestrian Training), Section 4.2 (Reduce and Enforce Speed Limits), and 4.4 (Enforcement Strategies). Safety is a key concern in the decision to participate in SRTS and associated programs (Safe Routes to School Partnership, n.d.). Traffic speeds and volume along the route to school, safety when crossing intersections, and prevalence of crime were reported as safety-related factors influencing child participation in walking or biking to school, according to one survey conducted in Florida (Zhou et al., 2009). Improvements to the road infrastructure with traffic calming measures, improved walking and biking facilities, policies to support active transportation, and community engagement and mobilization are key to addressing safety concerns.

A growing body of evidence suggests SRTS programs are effective in reducing injuries. Overall safety improvements have been demonstrated for SRTS programs in regional studies (NCSRTS & FHWA, 2015). One study found a 60% decrease in the number of pedestrians involved in car crashes after the implementation of SRTS in Miami-Dade County. Similarly, school-aged injury

rates in New York City decreased by 44% in census tracts with SRTS interventions relative to those without interventions (NCSRTS & FHWA, 2015). Child pedestrian and bicyclist injuries in Texas decreased 43% (NCSRTS & FHWA, 2016). In Washington, DC, the effectiveness of school crossing guards was examined using data from 20 schools (Robey et al., 2018). Crash reduction and traffic safety statistics during the morning before school time period were compared before and after the deployment of crossing guards. Results showed a 25% decrease in all crash types, a 38% decrease in injuries, and a 23% decrease in pedestrian-/cyclist-involved crashes. Another study (DiMaggio et al., 2016) reported a 13% decline in pedestrian and bicyclist fatality risk in 18 U.S. States. When the effectiveness assessment of SRTS was extended to nationwide, SRTS was associated with a 14-16% decline in pedestrian and bicyclist injury risk.

Although the full SRTS program emphasizes a comprehensive education, enforcement, and engineering approach, some specific implementations have centered on site-appropriate engineering changes; results have shown behavioral improvements for pedestrians, bicyclists, and motorists (Britt et al., 1995). However, a study by the NCSRTS found that schools that were able to increase the percentage of students walking or bicycling to school were more likely to have leaders in the schools to promote SRTS, frequent events to reinforce walking or biking to school, strong parental support, and supportive policies (NCSRTS & FHWA, 2015).

Data for 130 legacy SRTS programs initiated before the national program were evaluated to ascertain safety effects (Blomberg et al., 2008). Declining trends in school-age child pedestrian and bicycle crashes during school trip times were found for both SRTS focus sites and non-SRTS sites in the same States. Either no decrease or inconsistent patterns were found for other ages. The results suggested that the programs at least did not cause any adverse safety effects on total crash numbers although exposure data were lacking to know whether the amounts of biking and walking had changed. If children were walking and biking at higher rates in SRTS locations than in other areas, or the programs resulted in positive spillover effects to other areas, the programs may have reduced crash rates, although data were insufficient to test this. A later study of 801 schools found that engineering improvements were associated with an 18% increase in the percentage of students walking or biking to school, regardless of when the improvements were made (McDonald et al., 2014).

Education and encouragement programs were associated with a 5% increase per year in the percentage of children walking or biking to school. This increase was cumulative, so a school could expect to see a 25% increase over 5 years from education and encouragement efforts. In contrast, enforcement efforts were not associated with a significant change (McDonald et al., 2014). A detailed analysis of a specific SRTS implementation in Maryland found that using a combination of education, enforcement, and engineering programs resulted in a 79% decrease in the number of collisions within a quarter mile of targeted SRTS areas over the first 5 years of the program (Dunckel et al., 2014).

A 2013 study attempted to assess the safety effects of New York City's SRTS program. Results were encouraging, but again, not conclusively so. The study compared school-aged pedestrian injury rates (by population) for traffic injuries that occurred during typical school travel times for census areas that had SRTS interventions compared to rates in areas with no such treatments

(DiMaggio & Li, 2013). Census tracts that covered 30 schools with either short-term interventions (apparently low-cost engineering measures such as signs and crosswalk markings) or completed capital infrastructure improvement projects were included in the SRTS group. Although study design limitations preclude a conclusion that SRTS treatments were responsible, the trends were encouraging. Injury rates in census tract areas with SRTS treatments fell substantially compared to non-intervention areas, where injury levels remained virtually unchanged. Since schools were chosen for treatment because of high crash rates, it is likely that some of the crash reductions observed were due to a natural tendency for crashes to return toward an "average" level (known as regression toward the mean). A separate cost analysis study found that New York City's SRTS program was cost effective when analyzed over just one cohort of intersection users (yielding an estimated savings of $224 million), and even more effective over the course of many years (Muenning et al., 2014). The authors concluded that SRTS programs can remain effective for decades, because of the engineering component.

**Costs**: Education and encouragement associated with SRTS may be low cost and may also be eligible for grant funding through the State, and perhaps other sources. Activities formerly eligible under Federal SR2S funding are now eligible under the TAP program outlined in MAP 21, but funding priorities are established by each State. State contacts may be located on the Safe Routes Partnership website (www.saferoutespartnership.org/safe-routes-school/srts-program/state-contacts), or search individual States' DOT websites for information about TAP and SR2S funding. Material and resources can be accessed at no cost. NCSRTS provides downloadable material for State and local SRTS programs.

**Time to implement**: Once the school or district has decided to implement an SRTS program, a range of material, including an on-line step-by-step guide on getting started, is available from NCSRTS. Programs funded through State DOTs typically require applications on a funding cycle and can take significantly longer to implement.

### 2.3 Walking School Buses

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

"Walking school buses" use volunteer adults, usually parents, to walk a group of students on a specific route to and from school, collecting or dropping off children on the way. Walking school buses have fixed routes, pick-up and drop-off times, and stops (CDC, 2019). The CDC recommends one adult for every six children in the group; however, twice as many adults may be needed to supervise younger children.

A recent focus group study in the United Kingdom revealed six factors that influenced parents' decision-making about walking school buses (Nikitas et al., 2019). Safety was a major concern, and included concerns about road safety (e.g., crossing intersections, speeding vehicles) and stranger danger (e.g., unfamiliar chaperones). Other concerns included uncertainties about logistics, health (e.g., air pollution), emotional needs (e.g., spending time with child when taking them to school), trust (e.g., trust in chaperone, trust in child to behave responsibly), and education (e.g., child may not be well aware of road dangers).

Active involvement from communities, schools, and State policy-makers are central to the development and maintenance of walking school bus programs (Turner et al. 2013; Pérez-Martín et al., 2018). Particularly, the presence of programs such as safe routes to school and school crossing guards, is associated with increased school-organized walking school buses (Turner et al., 2013). Promotional activities such as educational campaigns and policies supporting a comprehensive agenda towards increasing active transport to schools are prerequisites to effective walking school bus programs (Yang et al., 2014). The National Center for Safe Routes to School and PedNet released a primer and training material to help communities plan and launch a walking school bus program, identify community partners, and secure program funding. Information is available at http://apps.saferoutesinfo.org/training/walking_school_bus/-modules.cfm/. See also www.walkingschoolbus.org/resources.html for additional resources.

**Use:** One study of U.S. elementary schools found that from 2008 to 2010 the percentage of schools organizing walking school buses increased 48%, increasing from 4.2% to 6.2% (Turner et al., 2013). As of September 2019 the total extent of the use of walking school buses is unknown; but many localities have active programs, including programs in Apex, NC, Seattle, WA, and El Monte, CA (visit www.saferoutespartnership.org/blog/its-match-how-walk-us-el-monte-adapted-walking-school-bus-program-fit-their-community and www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/SDOT/SRTS/StartingASafeRoutestoSchoolCampaign.pdf for more information).

**Effectiveness**: In a study of fourth grade students from eight low-income schools in Houston, Texas, researchers examined the impact of walking school buses on several pedestrian behaviors (Mendoza et al., 2012). Researchers found these students were five times more likely to cross at the intersection or crosswalk (rather than midblock locations) as opposed to children at schools without walking school buses. An evaluation of a walking school bus program in Seattle found a modest increase in most student safety crossing behaviors after the implementation of the program, but safe crossing behaviors remained low overall (Johnston et al., 2006).

A pilot study of walking school buses was conducted in Spain (Pérez-Martín et al., 2018). Fifty-five children participated in this 13-week pilot, and were each assigned to one of three routes. Parents could monitor real-time information of the walking school bus on a mobile app. Post-pilot, more than 43% of the participants were found to have partially or completely changed their mode of school transportation from automobile to walking.

**Costs**: Walking school buses could cost as little as $500 per school year (PedNet Coalition, 2014).

**Time to implement:** Walking school buses could be improved with support from local or State policies, and promotional activities. Once these are in place, planning and implementing the program could take 3 months (Moening et al., 2016).

### 2.4 Child School Bus Training

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Short |

The purpose of school bus training for children is to teach school-age children how to safely approach, board, disembark, and walk away from school buses. Basic training for children who ride school buses is provided as part of the normal school routine. Additionally, education about safety behaviors of parents in school zones and around school buses can be reinforced as part of Back to School night, in school bulletins, or other creative means. NHTSA also has a refresher training module for school bus drivers.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *There are no evaluation studies showing reductions in crashes or injuries. These outcomes are difficult to demonstrate because minimal, basic training is very widespread and the choice to adopt a stronger curriculum would be confounded with any number of other factors.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A8, Section 2.4.

## 3. Impaired Pedestrians

### 3.1 Impaired Pedestrians: Communications and Outreach

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Low | Time: Medium |

Communications and outreach to reduce impaired-pedestrian crashes can be directed at a variety of audiences, including law enforcement, drivers, alcohol servers and vendors, civic and neighborhood leaders, faith-based communities, universities, and friends and family of likely impaired pedestrians. Impaired pedestrians are also a target audience, of course. However, they are viewed as a difficult audience for communications and outreach to have a meaningful effect on their behavior because their decision-making is compromised.

**Effectiveness Concerns***: There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective*.

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A8, Section 3.1.

### 3.2 "Sweeper" Patrols of Impaired Pedestrians

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Low | Time: Medium |

The purpose of this countermeasure is to keep alcohol-impaired pedestrians off the streets until they no longer have high BACs. This measure is intended to reduce the exposure of these at-risk pedestrians to traffic, and can also address other social issues such as public intoxication and crime. One approach involves police "sweeper" squads and "support on call" programs involving taxis and trained escorts to get intoxicated people home or to a detoxification center.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A8, Section 3.2.

## 4. All Pedestrians

### 4.1 Pedestrian Safety Zones

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ★★★★ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |

The pedestrian safety zone concept was developed in a joint effort study by NHTSA and FHWA (Blomberg & Cleven, 1998). The idea is to strive for large decreases in pedestrian crashes and injuries by more effectively targeting resources to problem areas. Specifically, the objective of pedestrian safety zones is to increase cost-effectiveness of interventions by targeting education, enforcement, and engineering measures to geographic areas and audiences where significant portions of the pedestrian crash problem exist (NHTSA, 2008). Pedestrian zone programs can target a full range of pedestrian crash problems in a limited geographic area or focus on particular types of problems that make up a large portion of the problem in a limited area.

Blomberg and Cleven (1998) implemented and analyzed an early pedestrian safety zone program in Phoenix, Arizona. Crash data were analyzed to identify areas where older pedestrian crashes occurred and "zones" were drawn around the high-incidence areas. Countermeasures were developed for the kinds of crashes that involved older pedestrians. The measures included lengthening the signal timing to allow more time for older pedestrians to cross the street, providing communications and outreach to both drivers and pedestrians living near the crash zones, and enhanced enforcement. The result was a significant reduction in crashes and injuries involving older pedestrians in the target areas.

In a Miami-Dade County comprehensive application of the safety zone strategy, high crash zones were identified, and then the characteristics of those crashes were further analyzed in the zones (Zegeer, Blomberg, et al., 2008). The four zones, comprising less than 1% of the total land area of the County, accounted for about 20% of the total number of collisions (Zegeer, Henderson, et al., 2008). Further analyses identified high child involvement in crashes in some areas, young adult involvement in others (particularly at night), and older adult involvement in certain corridors. Overall, there was an 8.5% to 13.3% reduction in pedestrian crash rates during and following the program implementation compared to control groups (Zegeer, Blomberg, et al., 2008).

Montgomery County, Maryland, reduced crashes in high incidence areas using a combination of education, enforcement, and engineering measures (Dunckel et al., 2014). After 3 years of the program, crashes in 10 high-incidence areas fell by 43% and countywide pedestrian crashes fell by 7%, with a 38% decrease in pedestrian fatalities.

*Smart Street NJ* is a pedestrian safety campaign conducted in two phases (2013 and 2016) across nine communities in New Jersey. A combination of education and enforcement were used to decrease road user violations of pedestrian safety laws. An evaluation of pre- and post- behaviors of pedestrians and drivers was conducted using three proxy measures of pedestrian compliance with crossing/crosswalk signs and signals, driver yielding/stopping at red or stop signs, and drivers yielding to pedestrians during green signals (Gonzales, 2017). While the study found mixed results across the communities' overall, compliance with pedestrian safety laws improved

in urban locations over suburban locations, and particularly at intersections. The program is still under active research.

**Use**: Pedestrian zone programs are known to have been implemented in only a handful of cities.

**Effectiveness**: Properly designed and implemented pedestrian zone programs have been shown effective in reducing crashes and injuries for older pedestrians (Blomberg & Cleven, 1998), for impaired pedestrians (Blomberg & Cleven, 2000), and for child and adult pedestrian crashes in Miami-Dade County (Zegeer, Blomberg, et al., 2008; Zegeer, Henderson, et al., 2008) and in decreasing pedestrian fatalities (Dunckel et al., 2014).

**Costs**: Pedestrian zone programs require up-front analysis and planning, countermeasure development and tailoring, and implementation.

**Time to implement**: Medium. A pedestrian zone program can take several months of concentrated activity before countermeasures can be implemented. More comprehensive programs, such as in Miami-Dade, may be years-long programs involving data analysis and on-site evaluations, lining up partners, and identifying, implementing, and evaluating countermeasures. Programs to date have included local task forces, usually assembled for the program, to take critical leadership roles.

### 4.2 Reduce and Enforce Speed Limits

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

The goal of reducing motorist travel speeds is to increase reaction time for both drivers and pedestrians to avoid crashes, as well as reduce the severity of pedestrian injuries when these crashes occur. Higher vehicle speeds produce more frequent and more serious pedestrian crashes and casualties, as evidenced by several studies (Leaf & Preusser, 1999; Rosen & Sander, 2009; Tefft, 2011). The Rosen and Sander (2009) study estimated fatality risk curves based on driver impact speeds, ranging from 8% at 50 km/h (31 mph) and reaching 50% at 75 km/h (about 47 mph).

Reducing speeds through lowering speed limits is a time-honored countermeasure. Evidence shows, though, that actual speeds are reduced by only a fraction of the reduction in speed limits – typically 1-2 mph speed reduction for every 5-mph speed limit reduction. However, even 1-2 mph reductions in average speed are estimated to yield substantial fatal and injury crash reductions over all, with higher percentage reductions on streets with lower initial speeds (AASHTO, 2010, Table 3E-2; and see Chapter 3). Speed affects pedestrian injury severity to an even greater degree, as mentioned above and earlier in the chapter, and consequently also affects pedestrians' perceptions of whether it is safe to walk. For maximum effectiveness, speed limit reductions need to be accompanied by communications and outreach that inform the public and make the case for the speed reduction, and by heightened, visible enforcement (Leaf & Preusser, 1999). Some reasons that travel speeds do not decrease by the same proportion as speed limit reductions, include drivers not noticing the new speed limit, drivers not understanding the safety reasons to reduce speed, drivers speeding out of habit, or continuing to keep up with the speeds maintained by other drivers. Speed limit reductions need to be made compelling through communications strategies (framing the problem), appropriate engineering changes such as road diets (typically modifying a four-lane roadway to three lanes, with the middle lane becoming a turn lane), traffic calming, and roundabouts, and by speed enforcement (including by automated means). On roads intended for higher speeds, measures that separate pedestrians from traffic as they travel along the road (on sidewalks), or cross the road (such as median refuges and signals like pedestrian walk signals or leading pedestrian intervals, that provide pedestrians opportunities to cross) should be provided and are also keys to safer environments (Howard et al., 2008). For more on speeding-related issues and countermeasures, see Chapter 3. Combinations of these measures can improve road safety and are increasingly used as part of the Vision Zero initiative in many cities in the United States (Kim et al., 2017; Vision Zero Network, 2018).

Speed limit reductions can be most effective when introduced to a limited area as part of a visible area-wide change, for example, identifying a downtown area as a special pedestrian-friendly zone through signs, new landscaping or "streetscaping," lighting, etc. If done cleverly, this can be accomplished with relatively modest engineering changes and expense. As mentioned above, "road diets," a proven safety measure, may be a low-cost way to reduce a "big, wide" street that suggests high speeds to drivers and also provide more space for pedestrians, bicyclists, or on-street parking. (For more information, see www.pedbikeinfo.org/cms/downloads/-WhitePaper_RoadDiets_PBIC.pdf for a review of road diets and safety effects and FHWA's *Road Diet Informational Guide*, www.safety.fhwa.dot.gov/road_diets/guidance/info_guide. As

of January 2018 many cities including Boston, New York, Seattle, and Portland, have implemented the Vision Zero framework to improve pedestrian safety and survival chances by lowering speed limits on roads with a high frequency of multimodal traffic (Vision Zero Network, 2018).

If speed limits are routinely ignored, then enforcing speed limits may be a more effective strategy than attempting to change them. Blomberg and Cleven (2006) reported on demonstration programs in two cities in which speed limit enforcement, combined with engineering changes and extensive publicity, reduced both average speeds and the number of excessive speeders in residential neighborhoods. One attempt to scale up a similar program to a large city (Philadelphia) met with challenges in garnering community involvement and increasing enforcement due to a State restriction on using radar to enforce speeds, and seemed to have limited success in reducing injuries (Blomberg et al., 2012). However, speed reductions were observed on 17 of 24 corridors, six of which had pavement treatments simulating traffic calming devices. Although no pedestrian crash reductions were observed in the police districts with the program compared to those without, pedestrian crashes were too small in number to achieve measurable effects. For more information, see Chapter 3, Sections 1.1, 2.2, and 4.1.

**Use**: High, in the sense that all public roads have a speed limit and speed limit enforcement is widely employed.

**Effectiveness**: Reduced speed limits with enforcement can reduce vehicle speeds and all types of crashes and crash severity. The association of pedestrian injury with speed trends strongly suggests that pedestrian injuries and crashes will be reduced if travel speeds are reduced. This association is currently being examined by communities that lowered citywide speed limits. In January 2017 Boston lowered speed limits on city streets to 25 mph from 30 mph. The speed reductions were heavily publicized on traditional and social media (Hu & Cicchino, 2020). An analysis of vehicle speeds during September to November 2017 found statistically significant reductions of 2.9%, 8.5%, and 29.3% in the odds of vehicles exceeding 25 mph, 30 mph, and 35 mph on the city streets. The effect of enforcement was not studied in this analysis; however, the city had installed speed limit and speed feedback signs at certain locations (Hu & Cicchino, 2020).

**Costs**: Simply changing speed limits is low-cost, only requiring updating speed limit signs or, where few signs exist, adding some new ones. Combining speed limit changes with communications and outreach, enforcement, and engineering changes can be significantly more expensive.

**Time to implement**: Depending on the scope of the program, the time can be very short, or it can take several months to a year to plan and implement a complex plan.

**Other issues**:

- Speed limit changes exist in the context of other, unchanged speed limits. The normal expectation is that there is an overall consistent approach to speed-limit setting. Where, for safety, some speed limits need to be reduced in a manner inconsistent with other speed limits, there must be clear and visible reminders that distinct conditions exist that

justify the lower limits. Also, speed limit changes can be more effective if there is citizen buy-in, which involves a clear understanding of the reasons for the change.

### 4.3 Conspicuity Enhancement

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

Enhancing conspicuity for pedestrians increases opportunity for drivers to see and avoid pedestrians, particularly when it is dark, since this is when 75% of pedestrian fatalities occur nationally (NHTSA, 2020). Pedestrians who are more visible are less likely to be struck. A comprehensive review performed by Tyrrell et al. (2016) describes research methods and findings from over 124 publications that have quantified the effect of visual factors on perceiving pedestrians at night. This review describes the aspects of night vision that limit the conspicuity of pedestrians based on twilight and nighttime settings, poor retroreflective markings, headlight beam ranges, and visual impairment. This literature summarizes visual challenges at night and provides evidence of human efficacy to detect pedestrians due to a natural visual sensitivity to perceive biological motion. Based on the research reviewed, conspicuity is greatly enhanced at night regardless of any visual clutter when pedestrians are in motion and use retroreflective clothing, especially on their extremities. This summary emphasizes the importance of enhancing educational interventions to raise awareness for pedestrians of visual risks at night due to the visual conditions, and it suggests directing future research towards promoting the use of wearing retroreflective garments.

Retroreflective materials that reflect light are built into many shoes, including children's and athletic shoes. Other accessories such as arm or leg bands, gloves, vests, and caps are available from sporting goods stores and other vendors. Light sources including strobes and other flashing lights, are also available. Many have been designed for bicyclists but are equally applicable to pedestrians. The difficulty with most of these devices is that the user must decide in advance to take and use them. Due to the extra step and the appearance of the conspicuity enhancements not looking like "normal" clothing, they are very much underused. Pedestrians also tend to overestimate their own visibility, wrongly assuming if they can see vehicles, vehicles must see them (Karsch et al., 2012). See also Chapter 9, Section 3.1 on bicyclist conspicuity measures for more information. Bright colors and fluorescent clothing may also help to improve daytime conspicuity for pedestrians in some environments, but most research has focused on bicyclists and there may be differences in effectiveness for these groups. Adding electroluminescent (EL) garments to other retroreflective clothing improves pedestrian conspicuity at night. A nighttime on-road evaluation found that the addition of EL garments resulted in vehicles reacting sooner to pedestrians farther outside the vehicle's headlight light beam (Fekety et al., 2016). Increasing pedestrian's visibility with retroreflective and EL garments provided the greatest benefits to pedestrians in situations when vehicles are approaching pedestrians from a curve or when vehicles' head lights are turned off.

Nearly 14% of pedestrian fatalities in 2018 involved pedestrians who were not visible – dark clothing, no lighting, etc. (NHTSA, 2020). There are opportunities for improving pedestrian conspicuity. NHTSA's child education program includes information about conspicuity messages targeting different age groups. (See www.nhtsa.gov/pedestrian-safety/child-pedestrian-safety-curriculum.) Other educational efforts should include a focus on being visible at night and in the daytime and making use of the conspicuity aids described in this section. Devices designed to be semi-permanently fastened to children's clothing can be provided to parents through

schools, group activities, or health care providers. Light sticks and reflective bands can be supplied with new cars, or distributed by automobile clubs or insurance companies for use during vehicle breakdowns or emergencies. In these cases, drivers become pedestrians in potentially vulnerable locations on the roadside (e.g., changing a flat tire), where other drivers may not expect them. Thus, pairing visibility devices with the vehicle provides a way for these unintentional pedestrians to remain visible regardless of their level of preparation.

**Use**: Retroreflective materials are used regularly in athletic-type shoes, occasionally in backpacks and jackets, and minimally in other clothing.

**Effectiveness**: Widespread use of retroreflective materials would increase the ability of drivers to detect pedestrians at night in time to avoid crashes. Pedestrians wearing good retroreflective materials, particularly materials that highlight a person's shape and moving extremities (i.e., wrists and ankles), or widespread use of active (flashing) lights can be detected hundreds of feet farther than can pedestrians in normal clothing, even with low-beam illumination (Koo & Huang, 2015; Karsch et al., 2012; Zegeer et al., 2004, Strategy B5). A study in a controlled (closed road) environment also validated that pedestrians are detected more readily when they wear reflective elements on their moving body parts rather than attached to the torso (Tyrrell et al., 2009).

**Costs**: The cost to provide retroreflective materials is low, if such supplementary materials are distributed in quantity and added to existing programs. Such items as reflective wrist and ankle bands are available commercially. To develop new programs promoting use of conspicuity materials would require somewhat more planning and start-up time and costs would also depend on communications strategies used.

**Time to implement**: Promoting increased conspicuity may require development of targeted messages and a publicity strategy.

### 4.4 Enforcement Strategies

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $$ | Use: Low | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

The purpose of enforcement strategies is to increase compliance with the pedestrian and motorist traffic laws that are most likely to enhance the safety of pedestrians in areas where crashes are happening or most likely to happen due to increased pedestrian and motorist exposure. Behavioral pedestrian safety initiatives require improvements in unsafe driver and pedestrian behaviors. Once pedestrians and drivers are informed of the behavior changes needed and why they are important, enforcement often is necessary to encourage compliance for the same reasons found with seatbelt use, etc. Although enforcement was implied or stated for many earlier countermeasures, enforcement strategies and targeted enforcement deserve additional discussion in relation to pedestrian safety. Many enforcement or crosswalk operations use plainclothes officers to act as pedestrians crossing the street, typically with one or two uniformed officers observing for violations and another giving warnings or writing citations (NHTSA, 2014).

Traffic enforcement is most effective when it is highly visible and publicized, to reinforce the required behavior and to raise the expectation that failure to comply may result in legal consequences. Enforcement campaigns should be aimed at drivers and pedestrians, starting with the communications and outreach that announce, describe, and publicize the traffic safety campaign through community meetings, media coverage, social media, mass emails, and signage (NHTSA, 2014).

A coordinated program of targeted enforcement should involve a range of support, such as communications and outreach to notify the public of the campaign, training LEOs on enforcement procedures and pedestrian and crosswalk laws, and educating prosecutors and judges so they understand the purposes of the campaign and are prepared for the increase in citations enforcement will produce (NHTSA, 2014). Training for prosecutors and judges can help build the case for enforcement of traffic laws and planned enforcement operations with appropriate follow-up throughout the judicial system. A pilot study in North Carolina found that once prosecution that was more stringent was publicized, the court case load did not increase as feared, because more drivers paid their citations automatically (Hunter et al., 2001).

NHTSA's web-based law enforcement training course teaches law enforcement personnel the basics of pedestrian safety and targeted enforcement techniques and is available from the International Association of Directors of Law Enforcement Standards and Training (IADLEST), an international organization of training managers and executives dedicated to the improvement of public safety personnel. IADLEST serves as the national forum of Peace Officer Standards and Training (POST) agencies, boards, and commissions as well as statewide training academies throughout the United States. Training officers or individual officers wishing to access the training, can submit a request for access: www.nhtsa.gov/pedestrian-safety/pedestrian-safety-training-law-enforcement. This resource will be updated in the coming years to include new pedestrian laws and engineering countermeasures to assist officers' understanding of how engineering, education, and enforcement play a vital role in pedestrian safety enforcement. Note this training is national in scope, so common themes and laws are addressed. Officers must look to their own States for specific laws. Some States are offering quick training and resources to

supplement the NHTSA course with a State specific focus through bulletins, on-line, group in-person, or on the job training. As part of their Alert Today, Alive Tomorrow pedestrian safety campaign in Florida, for example, officers may sign up for overtime pedestrian crosswalk enforcement. However, they first must provide documentation that they have taken NHTSA's web-based training (referenced above) and watched both their State specific Pedestrian Safety Roll Call for Law Enforcement (YouTube) and the Cycling Safety Roll Call for Law Enforcement (YouTube), each approximately 15 minutes.

A targeted North Carolina program called "Watch for Me NC" is aimed at increasing pedestrian and bicyclist safety by reducing their crash risk (Sandt et al., 2016). The campaign includes tailored safety messages directed towards pedestrian, bicyclists, and drivers, and HVE of traffic safety laws. As part of the campaign 118 police officers in North Carolina attended one-day workshops on pedestrian safety. In a pre-post test evaluation, officers who participated scored 24% higher on knowledge surveys about pedestrians and driver yielding laws after taking the workshop (Sandt, LaJeuness, et al., 2015). Only 14% of participating officers reported having taken a pedestrian and bicycle law course before. NHTSA's *Pedestrian Safety Enforcement Operations: How-To Guide* (2014) offers LEAs a resource for setting up staged crosswalk enforcement operations (see www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/812059-pedestriansafetyenforceoperahowtoguide.pdf). An FHWA report summarizes information on the Watch for Me NC campaign for consideration by other States (see www.fhwa.dot.gov/publications/publicroads/17sept/06.cfm).

**Use**: Low. Enforcement is largely a local option, and often is integrated into other police duties, so special enforcement efforts are difficult to isolate and track. However, the use of targeted pedestrian safety enforcement is on the rise. Several localities (including Chicago, Detroit, Miami, Pinellas County, Florida and Raleigh/Durham, North Carolina) and States such as New Jersey and New Mexico have, in the past few years, implemented training for LEOs and conducted targeted enforcement efforts for pedestrian safety. The Watch for Me NC campaign and another Florida enforcement program in Gainesville have been evaluated and are described below.

**Effectiveness**: Enforcement strategies and targeted enforcement can be employed for a wide range of purposes in a wide range of circumstances, so effectiveness is context-dependent. As reported above, the Watch for Me NC campaign's training course increased police officers' knowledge and capacity for enforcement operations. An evaluation of the first-year activities found that enforcement efforts were noteworthy; however, there was still room for improvement in drivers' yielding behaviors. Pre-post enforcement evaluations showed that drivers' yielding behaviors were modestly improved only in areas with the highest enforcement, while yielding behaviors in other areas did not change. Though not conclusive due to limited data, the study also found that pedestrian crossing violations may have decreased by 24% during the first year of implementation (Sandt et al., 2016).

Similarly, a before/after study with a comparison group examined the effects of sustained, enhanced HVE of motorist yielding to pedestrians, combined with publicity and other community outreach in Gainesville (e.g., flyers given to stopped drivers, information sent home with school children, roadside feedback signs, and earned and paid media) (Van Houten,

Malenfant, Blomberg, et al., 2013; Van Houten, Malenfant, Huitema, & Blomberg, 2013). Driver yielding rose throughout the 1-year study period that included four, 2-week waves of enforcement, along with the other activities. Four of the six enforcement sites observed significant increases in yielding at the end of the period with a fifth experiencing a positive trend. Only one location, on a university campus with an already high baseline rate of yielding, did not observe an increase. Yielding also increased at the comparison sites, although not by the same degree. Driver awareness of the enforcement, especially awareness of the enforcement-related feedback signs, also increased to a high level from 13% at baseline to 78% at the end of the year. A follow-up study 4 years after the HVE program ended found that yielding behavior actually increased at both the enforcement and comparison sites after the program had ceased despite there being no additional enforcement efforts (Van Houten et al., 2017). This suggests that there was a sustained change in the driving culture of the area. Earlier, Van Houten and Malenfant (2004) had found more modest increases in driver yielding to pedestrians in response to a single wave of targeted police enforcement at crosswalks on two corridors in Miami Beach. Warnings and educational flyers were handed out to most violators, while citations were issued for flagrant violations. Some publicity also resulted from the enforcement efforts. The yielding reductions are promising, but effects on crashes and injuries were undetermined as pedestrian crashes are relatively infrequent events.

In a NHTSA study by Savolainen et al. (2011), law enforcement officials in Detroit implemented two pedestrian-oriented enforcement campaigns at Wayne State University aiming to educate campus pedestrians on proper use of crosswalks and the importance of obeying signals through the issuance of warnings. The study saw pedestrian violations (walking outside the crosswalk or against the signal) reduced between 17% and 27% immediately after the campaign, with sustained reductions of between 8% and 10% several weeks after active enforcement ceased. Study authors noted that pedestrian compliance was also heavily associated with the presence, quality, and location of pedestrian facilities (including pedestrian signals, bus stops, crosswalks, and convenient crossing opportunities).

**Costs**: The cost of the enforcement is a direct function of the size of the effort, the amount of enforcement, and associated supplies, ranging from vehicle operating costs to equipment such as speed measurement devices or alcohol test machines. If overtime is used to increase enforcement, costs would be higher. Free or low-cost training of enforcement officers on data driven focused efforts at the local level, can enhance both the cost and time spent to educate and enforce those laws and pedestrian and motorist behaviors most likely to influence serious injury or fatalities to pedestrians.

**Time to implement**: Short. Law enforcement resources can be diverted to targeted enforcement very quickly. However, special training to ensure safe and consistent crosswalk enforcement operations may be needed, and periodic data analysis conducted to ensure potential high crash locations are targeted for safety behaviors that influence the safety of pedestrians, including speed and distraction. Developing a plan that coordinates law changes, environmental changes, or support communications and outreach with enforcement can take longer. Communications and outreach are keys to maximal effectiveness.

### 4.5 Driver Training

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |

The purpose of pedestrian safety-related driver training is to increase the sensitivity of drivers to the presence of pedestrians and their shared responsibility as drivers to prevent crashes and enhance the safety of all road users, including pedestrians. Specifications for driver education curricula, typically a State requirement, can be adjusted to include more specific information on pedestrians as part of the traffic environment, right-of-way laws for drivers and pedestrians in relation to one another, high-risk behaviors in relation to pedestrian/motorist crash types, and key ways drivers can avoid being involved in such crashes.

**Effectiveness Concerns*:*** *Driver training alone has not been shown to reduce overall crash rates. There is no evidence indicating that this countermeasure is effective. However, driving skill begins with knowledge education and then practicing defensive driving in relation to all other types of traffic, including pedestrians.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A8, Section 4.5.

### 4.6 Pedestrian Gap Acceptance Training

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |

The purpose of pedestrian gap acceptance training is to help pedestrians learn to make better road crossing decisions, which may reduce the incidence of crossing-related injuries and fatalities. This can include video-based training and feedback geared towards improving pedestrian judgment of speed and/or distance of oncoming traffic.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has been examined in few research studies. While there is some evidence that certain approaches may lead to limited positive outcomes, There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A8, Section 4.6.

### 4.7 University Educational Campaign

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Medium |

This countermeasure involves conducting educational campaigns targeted at new students and staff that may be unfamiliar with walking and driving in the campus environment. Potential educational messages include right-of-way rules and the importance of yielding right-of-way (pedestrians and drivers), being visible and predictable at both day and night times and during inclement weather (pedestrians and cyclists), making eye contact at conflict points (pedestrians and drivers), avoiding distractions (pedestrians and drivers), and speed control (drivers and potentially cyclists) (Zegeer, Sandt, & Scully, 2008). Partnerships may include campus public safety offices, student health and wellness programs, city/county public safety agencies, injury prevention agencies, parking and transportation services, transit agencies, and student groups.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A8, Section 4.7.

**Pedestrian Safety References**

Active Living Research. (2015). *Research review: Impact of safe routes to school programs on walking and biking.* www.activelivingresearch.org/sites/default/files/ALR_Review_SRTS_May2015.pdf

Albert, R. R, & Dolgin, K. G. (2010). Lasting effects of short-term training on preschoolers' street-crossing behavior. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *42*, 500-508.

Alliance for Biking and Walking (2014). *Biking and walking in the United States: 2014 benchmarking report*. https://bikeleague.org/sites/default/files/2014BenchmarkingReport.pdf

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials. (2010). *Highway safety manual, 1st Ed*. www.fpp.uni-lj.si/mma/HSM.pdf/2019060611143076/?m=1559812470

Anderson, C. L., Vaca, F. E., & Chakravarthy, B. (2010). Socioeconomic disparities in pedestrian injuries. *Injury Prevention*, *16*, A259.

Arbogast, H., Burke, R. V., Muller, V., Ruiz, P., Knudson, M. M., & Upperman, J. S. (2014). Randomized controlled trial to evaluate the effectiveness of a video game as a child pedestrian educational tool. *Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery, 76,* 1317-1321.

Barton, B. K., & Schwebel, D. C. (2007). The influences of demographics and individual differences on children's selection of risky pedestrian routes. *Journal of Pediatric Psychology, 32*, 343-53.

Barton, B. K., Schwebel, D. C., & Morrongiello, B. A. (2007). Brief report: Increasing children's safe pedestrian behaviors through simple skills training. *Journal of Pediatric Psychology, 32*, 475-80.

Bertulis, T. & Dulaski, D. M. (2014). Driver approach speed and its impact on driver yielding to pedestrian behavior at unsignalized crosswalks. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board, 2464*, 46-51.

Bhatia, R., & Wier, M. (2011). "Safety in Numbers" re-examined: Can we make valid or practical inferences from available evidence? *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 43,* 235-240.

Blomberg, R. D., & Cleven, A. M. (1998, February). *Development, implementation, and evaluation of a pedestrian safety zone for elderly pedestrians* (Report No. DOT HS 808 692). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://ntlrepository.blob.core.windows.net/lib/25000/25900/25984/DOT-HS-808-692.pdf

Blomberg, R. D., & Cleven, A. M. (2000, July). *Development, implementation, and evaluation of a countermeasure program for alcohol-involved pedestrian crashes* (Report No. DOT HS 809 067). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1634

Blomberg, R. D., & Cleven, A. M. (2006, August). *Pilot test of "Heed the Speed," a program to reduce speeds in residential neighborhoods* (Report No. DOT HS 810 648). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1796

Blomberg, R. D., Cleven, A. M., Thomas, D., & Peck, R. C. (2008, August). *Evaluation of the safety benefits of legacy safe routes to school programs* (Report No. DOT HS 811 013). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1850

Blomberg, R. D., Thomas, F. D., & Marziani, B. J. (2012, July). *Demonstration and evaluation of the Heed the Speed safety program* (Report No. DOT HS 811 515). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1917

Britt, J. W., Bergman, A. B., & Moffat, J. (1995). Law enforcement, pedestrian safety, and driver compliance with crosswalk laws: Evaluation of a four-year campaign in Seattle. *Transportation Research Record*, *1485*, 160-167.

Brookshire, K., Sandt, L., Sundstrom, C., Thomas, L., & Blomberg, R. (2016, April). *Advancing pedestrian and bicyclist safety: A primer for highway safety professionals* (Report No. DOT HS 812 258). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1982

Bruce, B., & McGrath, P. (2005). Group interventions for the prevention of injuries in young children: A systematic review. *Injury Prevention*, *11*, 143-147.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2012). Vital signs: Walking among adults — United States, 2005 and 2010. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report, 61,* 595-601.

CDC. (2017). *Status report for Step It Up! The surgeon general's call to action to promote walking and walkable communities.* www.cdc.gov/physicalactivity/walking/call-to-action/pdf/status-report.pdf

CDC. (2019). *Walking school buses.* CHI database.

Chakravarthy, B., Anderson, C. L., Ludlow, J., Lotfipour, S., & Vaca, F. E. (2012). A geographic analysis of collisions involving child pedestrians in a large Southern California county. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 13,* 193-198.

Chen, C., Lin, H., & Loo, B. P. Y. (2012). Exploring the impacts of safety culture on immigrants' vulnerability in non-motorized crashes: A cross-sectional study. *Journal of Urban Health*, *89*, 138-152.

Coffin, A., & Morrall, J. (1995). Walking speeds of elderly pedestrians at crosswalks. *Transportation Research Record*, (1487), 63-67.

Congiu, M., Whelan, M., Oxley, J., Charlton, J., D'Elia, A., & Muir, C. (2008). *Child pedestrians: Factors associated with ability to cross roads safely and development of a training package* (Report 283). Monash University Accident Research Centre. www.monash.edu/__data/assets/pdf_file/0006/216969/Child-Pedestrians-Factors-associated-with-ability-to-cross-roads-safely-and-development-of-a-training-package.pdf

Cottrill, C. D., & Thakuriah, P. (2010). Evaluating pedestrian crashes in areas with high low-income or minority populations. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *42*, 1718-1728.

Deb, S., Strawderman, L., Carruth, D. W., DuBien, J., Smith, B., & Garrison, T. M. (2017). Development and validation of a questionnaire to assess pedestrian receptivity toward fully autonomous vehicles. *Transportation Research Part C: Emerging Technologies*, *84*, 178-195.

Decker, S., Otte, D., Cruz, D. L., Müller, C. W., Omar, M., Krettek, C., & Brand, S. (2016). Injury severity of pedestrians, bicyclists and motorcyclists resulting from crashes with reversing cars. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *94*, 46-51.

DiMaggio, C., Frangos, S., & Li, G. (2016). National Safe Routes to School program and risk of school-age pedestrian and bicyclist injury. *Annals of Epidemiology, 26*(6), 412-417.

DiMaggio, C. & Li, G. (2013). Effectiveness of a safe routes to school program in preventing school-aged pedestrian injury. *Pediatrics, 131,* 290-296.

Dommes, A., Cavallo, V., Vienne, F., & Aillerie, I. (2012). Age-related differences in street-crossing safety before and after training of older pedestrians. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *44*(1), 42-47.

Dragutinovic, N. & Twisk, D. (2006). *The effectiveness of road safety education: A literature review*. SWOV Institute for Road Safety Research. www.swov.nl/rapport/r-2006-06.pdf

Dunckel, J., Haynes, W., Conklin, J., Sharp, S., & Cohen, A. (2014). Pedestrian Safety Initiative in Montgomery County, Maryland: Data-Driven Approach to Coordinating Engineering, Education, and Enforcement. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board, 2464,* 100-108.

Eichelberger, A. H., McCartt, A. T., & Cicchino, J. B. (2018). Fatally injured pedestrians and bicyclists in the United States with high blood alcohol concentrations. *Journal of Safety Research*, *65*, 1-9.

Elvik, R., & Bjørnskau, T. (2017). Safety-in-numbers: A systematic review and meta-analysis of evidence. *Safety Science*, *92*, 274-282.

Elvik, R., & Goel, R. (2019). Safety-in-numbers: An updated meta-analysis of estimates. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *129*, 136-147.

Federal Highway Administration. (2010). *Review – Public policies for pedestrian and bicyclist safety and mobility: An implementation project of the pedestrian and bicyclist safety and mobility international Scan* (Report No. FHWA-PL-10-028). www.pedbikeinfo.org/cms/downloads/PBSPolicyReview.pdf

Fekety, D. K., Edewaard, D. E., Stafford Sewall, A. A., & Tyrrell, R. A. (2016). Electroluminescent materials can further enhance the nighttime conspicuity of pedestrians wearing retroreflective materials. *Human Factors*, *58*(7), 976-985.

Fischer, E. L., Rousseau, G. K., Turner, S. M., Blais, E. J., Engelhart, C. L., Henderson, D. R., Kaplan, J. A., Keller, V. M., Mackay, J. D., Tobias, P. A., Wigle, D. E., & Zegeer, C. V. (2010). *Pedestrian and bicyclist safety and mobility in Europe* (Report No. FHWA-PL-10-010). Federal Highway Administration. www.bv.transports.gouv.qc.ca/mono/1023711.pdf

Fredriksson, R., Shin, J., & Untaroiu, C. D. (2011). Potential of pedestrian protection systems - A parameter study using finite element models of pedestrian dummy and generic passenger vehicles. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *12*, 398-411.

Garay-Vega, L., Pollard, J. K., Guthy, C., & Hastings, A. (2011). Auditory detectability of hybrid electric vehicles by blind pedestrians. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board*, *2248*, 68-73.

Gårder, P. E. (2004). The impact of speed and other variables on pedestrian safety in Maine. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 36*, 533-542.

Gates, T. J., Savolainen, P. T., Datta, T. K., & Buck, N. (2010). Effect of pedestrian safety retraining for elementary and middle school students. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board*, *2198*, 145-151.

Geyer, J., Raford, N., Ragland, D., & Pham, T. (2006). *The continuing debate about safety in numbers—Data from Oakland,* CA. Safe Transportation Research & Education Center. https://escholarship.org/uc/item/5498x882

Gonzales, E. J. (2017, January 8-12). *Evaluation of a pedestrian safety outreach campaign in New Jersey using surrogate safety measures* (No. 17-03647). Transportation Research Board 96th Annual Meeting, Washington, DC.

Greene, D., Liu, J., Reich, J., Hirokawa, Y., Shinagawa, A, Ito, H., & Mikami, T. (2011). An efficient computational architecture for a collision early-warning system for vehicles, pedestrians, and bicyclists. *Intelligent Transportation Systems*, *12*, 942-953.

Gregersen, N. P., & Nolen S. (1994). Children's road safety and the strategy of voluntary traffic safety clubs. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 26*, 463-470.

Hammond, J., Cherrett, T., & Waterson, B. (2014). The development of child pedestrian training in the United Kingdom 2002 – 2011: A national survey of local authorities. *Journal of Transportation Safety & Security, 6,* 117-129.

Hatfield, J., & Murphy, S. (2007) The effects of mobile phone use on pedestrian crossing behaviour at signalised and unsignalised intersections. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 39*, 197-205.

Holland, C., & Hill, R. (2010). Gender differences in factors predicting unsafe crossing decisions in adult pedestrians across the lifespan: a simulation study. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *42*(4), 1097-1106.

Hotz, G., Cohn, S., Castelblanco, A., Colston, S., Thomas, M., Weiss, A., Nelson, J., & Duncan, R. (2004). WalkSafe: A school-based pedestrian safety intervention program. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 5*, 382-389.

Hotz, G., Garces de Marcilla, A., Lutfi, K., Kennedy, A., Castellon, P., & Duncan, R. (2009). The WalkSafe program: Developing and evaluating the educational component. *Journal of Trauma, Injury, Infection, and Critical Care* 66, S3 – S9.

Howard, E., Mooren, L., Nilsson, G., Quimby, A., & Vadeby, A. (2008). *Speed management: Road safety manual for decision-makers and practitioners.* Global Road Safety Partnership and the World Health Organization. http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/43915/1/9782940395040_eng.pdf

Hu, W., & Cicchino, J. B. (2020). Lowering the speed limit from 30 to 25 mph in Boston: Effects on vehicle speeds. *Injury Prevention*, *26*, 99-102.

Hunter, W. H., Stutts, J. C., Pein, W. E., & Cox, C. L. (1996). *Pedestrian and bicycle crash types of the early 1990's* (Report No. FHWA-RD-95-163). Federal Highway Administration. www.pedbikeinfo.org/cms/downloads/PedBikeCrashTypes.pdf

Hunter, W. W., Thomas, L. J., & Stewart, J. R. (2001). *Kill your speed: An evaluation of a rural speed enforcement program*. UNC Highway Safety Research Center.

Jacobsen, P. L. (2003). Safety in numbers: More walkers and bicyclists, safer walking and bicycling. *Injury Prevention 9,* 205-209. (See also Correction, *Injury Prevention* (2004), *10*, 127.)

Jacobsen, P. L., Ragland, D. R., & Komanoff, C. (2015). Safety in numbers for walkers and bicyclists: Exploring the mechanisms. *Injury Prevention*, *21*(4), 217-220.

Janstrup, K. H., Kaplan, S., Hels, T., Lauritsen, J., & Prato, C. G. (2016). Understanding traffic crash under-reporting: Linking police and medical records to individual and crash characteristics. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *17*(6), 580-584.

Johnston, B. D., Mendoza, J., Rafton, S., Gonzalez-Walker, D., & Levinger, D. (2006). Promoting physical activity and reducing child pedestrian risk: Early evaluation of a walking school bus program in central Seattle. *Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery*, *60*(6), 1388-1389.

Karsch, H. M., Hedlund, J. H., Tison, J., & Leaf, W. A. (2012, June). *Review of studies on pedestrian and bicyclist safety, 1991-2007* (Report No. DOT HS 811 614). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811614.pdf

Kim, E., Muennig, P., & Rosen, Z. (2017). Vision Zero: A toolkit for road safety in the modern era. *Injury Epidemiology*, *4*(1), 1.

Koo, H. S., & Huang, X. (2015). Visibility aid cycling clothing: flashing light-emitting diode (FLED) configurations. *International Journal of Clothing Science and Technology*, *27*(3), 460-471. doi 10.1108/IJCST-09-2014-0104

Kravetz, D., & Noland, R. B. (2012). *A spatial analysis of income disparities in pedestrian safety in northern New Jersey: Is there an environmental justice issue?* TRB 91st Annual Meeting Compendium of Papers DVD. Transportation Research Board.

Leaf, W.A., & Preusser, D.F. (1999, October). *Literature review on vehicle travel speeds and pedestrian injuries* (Report No. DOT HS 809 021). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/pub/HS809012.html

Leden, L., Garder, P., & Pulkkinen, U., (2000). An expert judgment model applied to estimating the safety effect of a bicycle facility. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 32,* 589-599.

Lin, P. S., Kourtellis, A., Zhang, Y., Guo, R., & Bialkowska-Jelinska, E. (2017). *Application of demographic analysis to pedestrian safety*. https://trid.trb.org/view/1468235

Livingston, D. H., Suber, I., Snyder, D., Clancy, S. F., Passannante, M. R. & Lavery, R. F. (2011). Annual pediatric pedestrian education does not improve pedestrian behavior. *Journal of Trauma-Injury Infection & Critical Care*, *71*, 1120-1125.

McArthur, A., Savolainen, P., & Gates, T. (2014). Spatial analysis of child pedestrian and bicycle crashes: Development of safety performance function for areas adjacent to schools. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board, 2465*, 57-63.

McDonald, N. C., Steiner, R. L., Lee, C., Rhoulac Smith, T., Zhu, X., & Yang, Y. (2014). Impact of the safe routes to school program on walking and bicycling. *Journal of the American Planning Association*, *80*(2), 153-167. doi: 10.1080/01944363.2014.956654.

McGuckin, N., & Fucci, A. (2018). *Summary of travel trends: 2017 National Household Travel Survey*. Federal Highways Administration. https://nhts.ornl.gov/assets/2017_nhts_summary_travel_trends.pdf

Mendoza, J. A., Watson, K., Chen, T-A., Baranowski, T., Nicklas, T. A., Uscanga, D. K., & Hanfling, M. J. (2012). Impact of a pilot walking school bus intervention on children's pedestrian safety behaviors: A pilot study. *Health & Place*, *18*, 24-30.

Millard-Ball, A. (2018). Pedestrians, autonomous vehicles, and cities. *Journal of Planning Education and Research*, *38*(1), 6-12.

Moening, Lieberman, & Zimmerman. (2016). *How to start a walking school bus at your school.* Safe Routes to School National Partnership. www.saferoutespartnership.org/sites/default/files/resource_files/step-by-step-walking-school-bus-2017.pdf

Muennig, P. A., Epstein, M., Li, G., & DiMaggio, C. (2014). The cost-effectiveness of New York City's Safe Routes to School program. *American Journal of Public Health, 104(7),* 1294-1299.

Murtha, T. (2005). *Pedestrian and bicycle safety data in Northeastern Illinois*. Presentation to Association of Pedestrian and Bicycle Professionals, October 2005.

Nasar, J., Hecht, P., & Wener, R. (2008). Mobile telephones, distracted attention, and pedestrian safety. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *40*, 69–75.

National Center for Safe Routes to School. (2016). *Trends in walking and bicycling to school from 2007-2014.* www.pedbikeinfo.org/pdf/SRTSlocal_Trends2007-2012.pdf

NCSRTS & Federal Highway Administration. (2015). *Creating healthier generations: A look at 10 years of the Federal Safe Routes to School program.* Chapel Hill, NC.

NCSRTS & FHWA. (2016). *Advancing safe walking and bicycling for youth: Approaches from the Federal Safe Routes to School Program that support broad safety benefits for youth.* www.pedbikeinfo.org/pdf/SRTSfederal_AdvancingSafeWalkingandBiking.pdf

National Center for Statistics and Analysis. (2020, March). *Pedestrians: 2018 data* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 580). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812850

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (1998, July). *Zone guide for pedestrian safety* (Report No. DOT HS 808 742). https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/PED_BIKE/docs/zoneguide.pdf

NHTSA. (2009-2018). *Fatality Analysis Reporting System (FARS)* [Custom data set analysis]. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

NHTSA. (2014, November). *Pedestrian safety enforcement operations: A how-to guide.* https://nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/812059-pedestriansafetyenforceoperahowtoguide.pdf

NHTSA. (2018). *Crash Report Sampling System (CRSS)* [Custom data set analysis]. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

NHTSA. (2020). *Pedestrians killed – by related factors – State: USA, year: 2018* [Table 100]. https://cdan.nhtsa.gov/tsftables/tsfar.htm#

National Physical Activity Plan Alliance. (2017). *The 2017 United States report card on walking and walkable communities*. http://physicalactivityplan.org/projects/walking/Walking-report-card-FINAL.pdf

Nesoff, E. D., Milam, A. J., Branas, C. C., Martins, S. S., Knowlton, A. R., & Furr-Holden , D. M. (2018). Alcohol outlets, neighborhood retail environments, and pedestrian injury risk. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *42*(10), 1979-1987.

Nikitas, A., Wang, J. Y., & Knamiller, C. (2019). Exploring parental perceptions about school travel and walking school buses: A thematic analysis approach. *Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice*, *124*, 468-487.

Ortiz, N. C., Ramnarayan, M., & Mizenko, K. (2017). Distraction and road user behavior: an observational pilot study across intersections in Washington, DC. *Journal of Transport & Health*, *7*, 13-22.

PedNet Coalition. (2019). *PedNet Coalition's experience with walking school buses.* www.countyhealthrankings.org/communities-in-action/pednet-coalition%E2%80%99s-experience-with-walking-school-buses

Percer, J. (2009, September). *Child pedestrian safety education: Applying learning and developmental theories to develop safe street crossing behaviors* (Report No. DOT HS 811 190). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/40199

Pérez-Martín, P., Pedrós, G., Martínez-Jiménez, P., & Varo-Martínez, M. (2018). Evaluation of a walking school bus service as an intervention for a modal shift at a primary school in Spain. *Transport Policy*, *64*, 1-9.

Pucher, J., Buehler, R., Merom, D., & Bauman, A. (2011). Walking and cycling in the United States, 2001-2009: Evidence from the NHTS. *American Journal of Public Health*, *101*, S310- S317.

Redmon, T. (2011). *Pedestrian countermeasure policy best practice report: FHWA safety program*. Federal Highway Administration. www.safety.fhwa.dot.gov/ped_bike/tools_solve/fhwasa11017/fhwasa11017.pdf

Retting, R. A., Ferguson, S. A, & McCartt, A T. (2003). A review of evidence-based traffic engineering measures designed to reduce pedestrian–motor vehicle crashes. *American Journal of Public Health*, *93*, 1456–1463.

Robey, T., Perez, B. O., Jain, R., Dey, S. S., Thweatt, D., & Koch, D. (2018). Meet me at the crosswalk on the way to school: A Data, driven analysis on school crossing guard deployment and program effectiveness in Washington, DC (No. 18-03513). *Transportation Research Board 97th Annual Meeting*. https://trid.trb.org/view/1495830

Rosén, E., & Sander, U. (2009). Pedestrian fatality risk as a function of car impact speed. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *41*(3), 536-542.

Sandt, L., LaJeunesse, S., Cohn, J., Pullen-Seufert, N., & Gallagher, J. (2015). *Watch for Me NC: Bicycle and Pedestrian Safety, Education, and Enforcement Campaign: 2014 Program Summary* (No. NCDOT Contract# 2014-45).

Sandt, L., Gallagher, J., & Gelinne, D. (2016, June). *Advancing pedestrian safety using education and enforcement efforts in pedestrian focus cities and States: North Carolina* (Report No. DOT HS 812 286). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/812286-PromotingPedSafetyEdu-NC.pdf

Sandt, L., Thomas, L., Langford, K., & Nabors, D. (2015). *A resident's guide for creating safer communities for walking and biking* (Report No. FHWA-SA-14-099). Federal Highway Administration. http://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/PED_BIKE/ped_cmnity/-ped_walkguide/index.cfm

Santos, A., McGuckin, N., Nakamoto, H. Y., Gray, D., & Liss, S. (2011). *Summary of travel trends: 2009 National Household Travel Survey* (Report No. FHWA-PL-11-011). Federal Highway Administration. http://nhts.ornl.gov/2009/pub/stt.pdf

Savolainen, P. T., Gates, T. J., & Datta, T. K. (2011). Implementation of targeted pedestrian traffic enforcement programs in an urban environment. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board*, *2265*, 137-145.

Schneider, R. J., & Stefanich, J. (2016). Application of the location–movement classification method for pedestrian and bicycle crash typing. *Transportation Research Record*, *2601*(1), 72–83.

Schwebel, D. C., McClure, L. A., & Severson, J. (2014). Teaching children to cross streets safely: A randomized, controlled trial. *Health Psychology, 33*, 628-638.

Schwebel, D. C., Shen, J., & McClure, L. A. (2016). How do children learn to cross the street? The process of pedestrian safety training. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 17*(6), 573-579.

Sciortino, S., Vassar, M., Radetsky, M., & Knudson, M. M. (2005). San Francisco pedestrian injury surveillance: Mapping, under-reporting, and injury severity in police and hospital records. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *37*(6), 1102-1113.

Scopatz, R. A. & Zhou, Y. (2016, April). *Effect of electronic device use on pedestrian safety: A literature review* (Report No. DOT HS 812 256). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1984

Searson, D. J., & Anderson, R. W. (2011). *The global technical regulation on pedestrian safety: Likely effects on vehicle design*. Presentation at the Australasian Road Safety Research, Policing and Education Conference, Perth, Australia. http://acrs.org.au/files/arsrpe/The%20Global%20Technical%20Regulation%20on%20pedestrian%20safety%20Likely%20effects.pdf

Shay, E., Khattak, A. J., & Wali, B. (2018). Walkability in the connected and automated vehicle era: A US perspective on research needs. *Transportation Research Record*, *2672*(35), 118-128.

Stavrinos, D., Byington, K. W., & Schwebel, D. C. (2009). Effect of cell phone distraction on pediatric pedestrian injury risk. *Pediatrics, 123*, e179-e185.

Stavrinos, D., Byington, K. W., & Schwebel, D. C. (2011). Distracted walking: Cell phones increase injury risk for college pedestrians. *Journal of Safety Research*, *42*, 101–107.

Stutts, J, C., & Hunter, W. W. (1999a). *Injuries to pedestrians and bicyclists: An analysis based on hospital emergency department data*. Federal Highway Administration. www.fhwa.dot.gov/publications/research/safety/pedbike/99078/

Stutts, J. C. & Hunter, W. W. (1999b). Motor vehicle and roadway factors in pedestrian and bicyclist injuries: An examination based on emergency department data. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 31,* 505-514.

Tefft, B.C. (2011). *Impact speed and a pedestrian's risk of severe injury or death*. AAA Foundation. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/2011PedestrianRiskVsSpeedReport.pdf

Thomas, F. D., Blomberg, R. D., & Korbelak, K. T. (2017). Evaluation of North Carolina adaptation of NHTSA's Child Pedestrian Safety Curriculum. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board*, *2661*, 69–75. https://trid.trb.org/view/1437593

Thomas, L. & Levitt, D. (2014). *North Carolina pedestrian crash types, 2008-2012.* UNC Highway Safety Research Center. www.pedbikeinfo.org/pbcat_nc/pdf/summary_ped_types08-12.pdf

Thompson, L. L., Rivara, F. P., Ayyagari, R. C., & Ebel, B. E. (2013). Impact of social and technological distraction on pedestrian crossing behaviour: An observational study. *Injury Prevention, 19,* 232-237.

Tolmie, A., Thomson, J. A., Foot, H. C., Whelan, K., Morrison, S., & McLaren, B. (2005). The effects of adult guidance and peer discussion on the development of children's representations: Evidence from the training of pedestrian skills. *British Journal of Psychology, 96*, 181-204.

Turner, L., Chriqui, J. F., & Chaloupka, F. J. (2013). Walking school bus programs in US public elementary schools. *Journal of Physical Activity and Health*, *10*(5), 641-645.

Tyrrell, R. A., Wood, J. M., Chaparro, A., Carberry, T. P., Chub, B-S., & Marszalek, R. P. (2009). Seeing pedestrians at night: Visual clutter does not mask biological motion. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *41*, 506-512.

Tyrrell, R. A., Wood, J. M., Owens, D. A., Whetsel Borzendowski, S., & Stafford Sewall, A. (2016). The conspicuity of pedestrians at night: A review. *Clinical and Experimental Optometry*, *99*(5), 425-434.

U.S. Department of Transportation. (2014). *Safer people, safer streets: Summary of U.S. Department of Transportation action plan to increase walking and biking and reduce pedestrian and bicyclist fatalities*. www.transportation.gov/sites/dot.gov/files/docs/safer_people_safer_streets_summary_doc_acc_v1-11-9.pdf

Ussery, E. N., Carlson, S. A., Whitfield, G. P., Watson, K. B., Berrigan, D., & Fulton, J. E. (2017). Walking for transportation or leisure among U.S. women and men — National

Health Interview Survey, 2005–2015. *MMWR Morbity Mortality Weekly Report, 66,* 657–662. http://dx.doi.org/10.15585/mmwr.mm6625a1

Van Houten, R., & Malenfant, J. E. L. (2004). Effects of a driver enforcement program on yielding to pedestrians. *Journal of Applied Behavior Analysis, 37,* 351-363.

Van Houten, R., Malenfant, L., Blomberg, R. D., Huitema, B. E., & Casella, S. (2013, August). *High-visibility enforcement on driver compliance with pedestrian right-of-way law* (Report No. DOT HS 811 786). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811786.pdf

Van Houten, R., Malenfant, L., Blomberg, R. D., & Huitema, B. E. (2017, January). *The effect of high-visibility enforcement on driver compliance with pedestrian right-of-way laws: 4-year follow-up* (Report No. DOT HS 812 364). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1972

Van Houten, R., Malenfant, L., Huitema, B., & Blomberg, R. (2013). Effects of high-visibility enforcement on driver compliance with pedestrian yield right-of-way laws. *Transportation Research Record, 2393, 41*-49.

Vision Zero Network. (2018). *What is the Vision Zero network?* https://visionzeronetwork.org/about/vision-zero-network/

Walker, E. J., Lanthier, S. N., Risko, E. F., & Kingstone, A. (2012). The effects of personal music devices on pedestrian behavior. *Safety Science, 50,* 123-128.

Yanagisawa, M., Swanson, E., Azeredo, P., & Najm, W. (2017, April). *Estimation of potential safety benefits for pedestrian crash avoidance/mitigation systems* (Report No. DOT HS 812 400). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/812400_pcambenefitsreport.pdf

Yanagisawa, M., Swanson, E., & Najm, W. G. (2014, April). *Target crashes and safety benefits estimation methodology for pedestrian crash avoidance/mitigation systems* (Report No. DOT HS 811 998). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811998-targcrashsafbenest-methpedcrashavmitsys.pdf

Yang, Y., Diez-Roux, A., Evenson, K. R., & Colabianchi, N. (2014). Examining the impact of the walking school bus with an agent-based model. *American Journal of Public Health*, *104*(7), 1196-1203.

Zegeer, C. V., Blomberg, R. D., Henderson, D., Masten, S. V., Marchetti, L., Levy, M. M., Fan, Y., Sandt, L., Brown, A., Stutts, J., & Thomas, L. J. (2008, January 1). Evaluation of Miami-Dade pedestrian safety demonstration project. *Transportation Research Record, 2073*, 1-10.

Zegeer, C., Henderson, D., Blomberg, R., Marchetti, L., Masten, S., Fan, Y., Sandt, L., Brown, A., Stutts, J. & Thomas, L. (2008, June). *Evaluation of the Miami-Dade pedestrian safety demonstration project* (Report No. DOT HS 810 964). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1872

Zegeer, C., Sandt, L., & Scully, M. (2008, March). *How to develop a pedestrian safety action plan.* Federal Highway Administration. http://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/ped_bike/ped_focus/docs/fhwasa0512.pdf

Zegeer, C. V., Stutts, J., Huang, H., Cynecki, M. J., Van Houten, R., Alberson, B., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L. & Hardy, K. K. (2004). Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, Volume 10: *A guide for reducing collisions involving pedestrians*. Transportation Research Board. http://download.nap.edu/cart/download.cgi?record_id=23425

Zhou, H., Zhao, J., Hsu, P., & Rouse, J. (2009). Identify factors affecting number of students walking or biking to school. In *Logistics: The Emerging Frontiers of Transportation and Development in China* (pp. 1730-1735). American Society of Civil Engineers.

# 9. Bicycle Safety

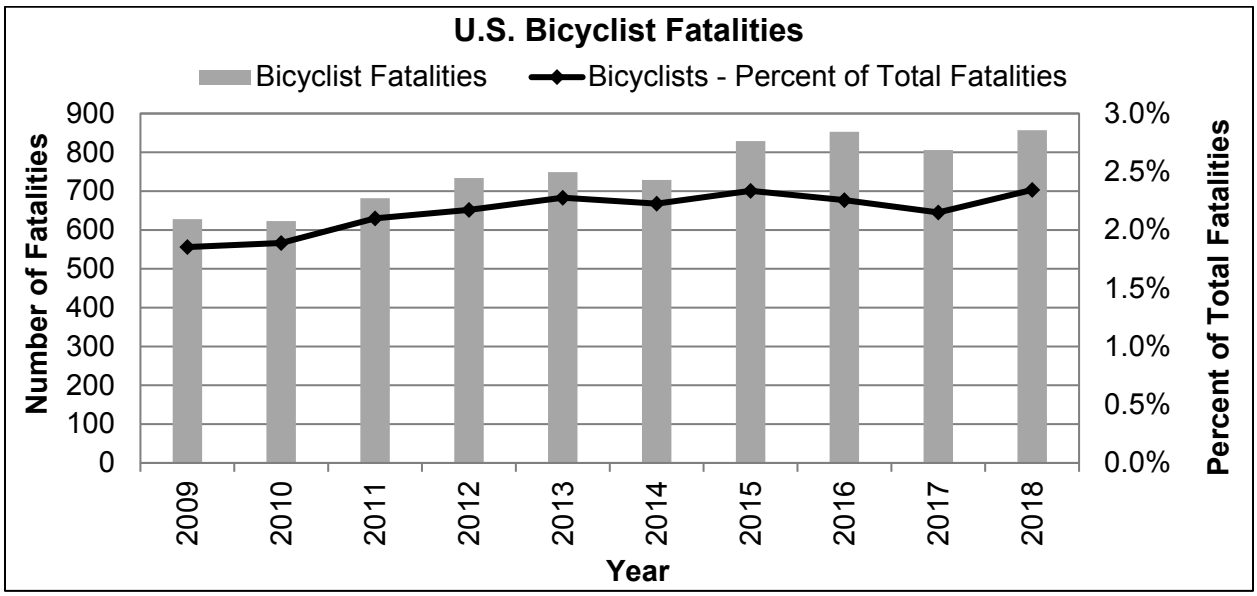
## Overview

In 2018 there were 857 bicyclists and other pedalcyclists who died in traffic crashes nationwide, an increase of 6.3% from the 806 in 2017 (NCSA, 2020). In addition, approximately 47,000 bicyclists were injured. Bicyclists accounted for 2.3% of total traffic fatalities and 1.7% of total people injured. Of the bicyclist fatalities during 2018:

- Teens 15 to 19 years old had the highest fatality rates among those under 20 years old (2.51 fatalities per hundred thousand population), followed by 10- to 14-year-olds (0.91 fatalities per hundred thousand population);
- The average age of cyclists killed was 47, and 35 for cyclists injured;
- Cyclists 25 to 64 represented 65% of all bicycle fatalities;
- 86% of the bicyclists killed and 81% of those injured were male; and
- 20% of bicyclists killed had BACs of .08 g/dL or higher, with alcohol use by either bicyclist, driver, or both reported in 37% of fatal crashes.

The majority of bicyclist fatalities occurred in urban areas (79% in 2018), and at non-intersection locations (60% in 2018) (NCSA, 2020). The proportion of urban bicyclists fatalities in the last 10 years has increased from 69% in 2009 to 75% in 2018.

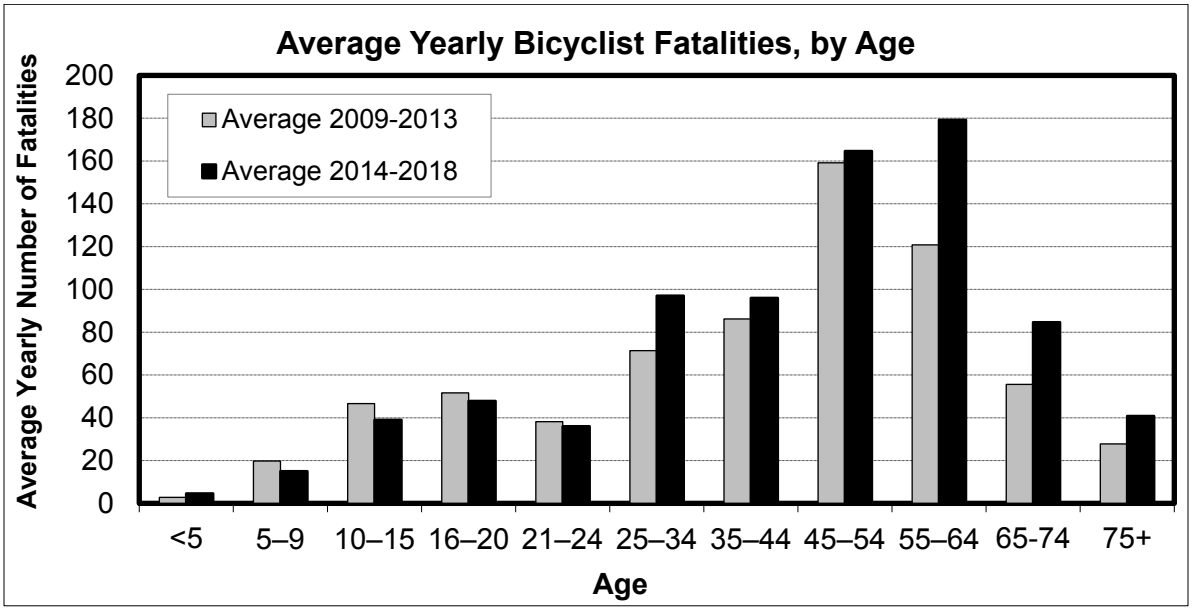
**Crash Trends**. From 1998 to 2014, bicyclist fatalities fluctuated from 600 to 800 per year. The most recent upward trend in fatalities pushed the number of fatalities over 800 in 2015, where it has remained (see figure below). The increased number of fatalities may reflect increases in riding. (See trends in riding below.) There are, however, substantial fluctuations in fatalities year-to-year that may not be explained only by exposure.




Source: NCSA (2020)

A study assessed the burden of injured bicyclists admitted to hospitals in terms of length of hospital stay in days, total hospital charges, and non-routine discharge (Hamann et al., 2013). Non-routine discharges included death, transfer to a nursing or other short-term hospital, or home health care. The data came from the Nationwide Inpatient Sample (NIS) database. In total, more than $1 billion of hospital charges, $425 million for motor-vehicle crashes, and $588 million for non-motor vehicle crashes, per year resulted from bicycle crash injuries. Despite non-motor vehicle collisions (18,457) accounting for nearly 2.7 times as many admissions as collisions with motor vehicles (6,877) from 2002 to 2009, the total economic costs of longer hospital stays for those involved in motor vehicle collisions was 72% higher than the same costs for the non-motor vehicle collisions, not including further care associated with non-routine discharges.

There has been a slight rise in the average age of bicyclists killed over the past decade, from an average of 41 in 2009 to 47 in 2018 (NCSA, 2020). Comparing the 5-year period from 2014 to 2018 with the period from 2009 to 2013, fatalities increased most among bicyclists 25 to 34 years old and those 45 and older, particularly for bicyclists 55 to 64 (48% higher) and bicyclists 65 to 74 (52% higher) (see figure below). It is likely that much of these differences relate to changes in population age distributions over this time period, including the rapid expansion of older age groups since 2000. It is unclear whether increases in amounts or types of riding or other changes in exposure among these age groups may also play a part in the increases in fatalities among those in the 45-and-older age groups. Fatalities decreased among those younger than 20, and the greatest decrease was seen for those 5 to 9 (24% lower).




Sources: NHTSA - FARS 2009-2018, NCSA, 2020
Note that different age group spans are used; the intent of the chart is to compare change in fatalities by age group, not to compare fatalities by age.

It is also worth noting that older adult bicyclists are more vulnerable when involved in crashes. Data from Sweden found that older adult bicyclists were twice as likely to be hospitalized when injured, and spent three times as long in the hospital as cyclists under 65 (Scheiman et al., 2010).

**Bicycling Trends.** Estimates from the Census Bureau's American Community Survey suggest that U.S. workers (of all ages) who travel to work by bicycle increased from 0.4% of workers in 2000 to an average of 0.6% of workers for the 2008-to-2012 period (McKenzie, 2014). The share of workers who "usually traveled to work" by bicycle increased at a faster rate than any other mode of travel (McKenzie, 2014). In 2016 the number of workers who biked to work remained at 0.6% of all surveyed workers (McKenzie et al., 2017). Fatality rate trends, fatalities adjusted per different measures of exposure such as time spent bicycling, number of bicycling trips, or total miles traveled by bicycle are currently unavailable because there is no consistent measure of bicycling (exposure) to estimate and compare such fatality rates. According to the National Household Travel Survey (NHTS), which aims to capture all kinds of bicycling trips, not just commuting trips, the annual number of bicycling trips has also increased from 1.7 billion in 1990 (FHWA, 1990) to 3.3 billion in both 1995 (FHWA, 1995) and 2001 (FHWA, 2001), to 4.1 billion in 2009 (Pucher et al., 2011), then dropping to 3.8 billion in 2017 (Buehler, 2018). The surveys used somewhat different methodologies. For example, the use of prompts beginning with the 2001 survey has resulted in capturing more bicycle trips in the 2001 and later surveys (Hu & Reuscher, 2004).

Cycling trends increased from 2001 to 2009, and then decreased. An analysis by Pucher et al. (2011) found the average number of cycle trips, and the average miles of cycling per capita per year, each rose a few percentage points from 2001 to 2009. Both the annual per capita average number of cycle trips and the annual per capita average duration of trips decreased slightly from 2009 to 2017 (Buehler, 2018). On average, each person made 12 cycling trips and spent 4.3 hours cycling in 2017 compared to 14 trips and 4.5 hours in 2009. Bike-share operations have also been growing in popularity in the United States and have a strong safety record so far, with just two fatalities in over 88 million bike share trips between 2010 to 2016 (Fischer, 2017).

In addition to number of trips, exposure to traffic and crashes is affected by where, when, and for how long a cyclist rides; the skill, knowledge and application of safe behaviors by the cyclist; and the application of safe behaviors by drivers around the cyclist. The risk of a crash may also be increased due to inattention, distraction, or impairment by either the cyclist or driver. The severity of a crash also increases with higher impact speeds (AASHTO, 2010). While impaired driving and riding have been an ongoing challenge, emerging problems include the use of cell phones, media players, or other electronic devices while riding or driving.

**Classifying Crash Types.** Bicycle crashes can be classified into types based on bicyclist and motor vehicle pre-crash actions and the location of the crash. In the early 1990s this methodology was used to classify more than 3,000 bicycle-motor vehicle crashes in California, Florida, Maryland, Minnesota, North Carolina, and Utah (Hunter et al., 1996). The sample was approximately evenly divided among small/rural communities, medium-sized cities, and large cities (as opposed to representing the proportion of crashes that occurred in each of those area types).

Of the more than 3,000 bicycle-motor vehicle crashes:

- Half (51%) occurred at intersections or were related to intersections.
    - The most common type of crash involved bicyclists riding out or through intersections and into the path of a motorist.

  - The second most common type of crash involved motorists failing to yield at intersections.
  - Another common type included motorists turning or merging into the path of a parallel moving bicyclist (same or opposite direction).
  - Child bicyclists were overrepresented when the bicyclist failed to yield at an intersection
  - Adult bicyclists were overrepresented in crashes at intersections where motorists turned across their path.
- Twenty-two percent occurred at junctions with commercial and private driveways or alleys.
  - Children were highly overrepresented in these crashes.
- Twenty-seven percent occurred at roadway sections with no special features (meaning no intersections or driveways at the segment near the crash); fatal and serious injuries occurred at a higher rate at such non-junction locations.
  - Adult cyclists were over-involved in crashes with overtaking motor vehicles at midblock locations.

Bicyclist Factors.

- In the Hunter et al. (1996) study, bicyclist factors contributing to crashes, especially at intersections or other junctions, included bicyclists riding the wrong-way (facing traffic rather than riding with traffic).
- Thirty-two percent of all bicyclists in the study were riding against traffic; for intersection collisions, the proportion was 42%.
- Fifteen percent of crashes were coded with bicyclist riding wrong-way as a contributing factor to the crash.
- Twenty-one percent of crashes were coded as bicyclist failure to yield
- Eight percent of crashes were coded as stop sign violations.
- Children were overrepresented in stop sign and yield violations and crashes on local and two-lane streets, whereas adult bicyclists were more likely to contribute to their crashes through alcohol or drug use and lane position and lane change errors.

Driver Factors.

- The Hunter et al. (1996) study also found that most common driver contributing factor was a yield violation at either an intersection or midblock location (a factor in 24% of crashes). However, as mentioned the bicyclist riding the wrong-way may have been a contributing factor in such crashes.

Different crash types can be targeted by different countermeasures. The Pedestrian and Bicycle Crash Analysis Tool software (www.pedbikeinfo.org/pbcat_us/) is available to assist jurisdictions in typing bicycle-motor vehicle crashes and developing a database that contains information on pre-crash maneuvers as well as other crash factors. States and communities can then analyze their own bicycle crashes and can also use PBCAT and PedSafe (www.pedbikesafe.org) to help select appropriate countermeasures. Thomas et al. (2019) used the PBCAT system to type bicycle crashes in the United States, North Carolina, and Boulder, Colorado, finding similar crash types but differing in prevalence of crash type by locality. FHWA is currently updating PBCAT.

**Underreporting and Crash Analysis.** Another consideration when analyzing crash data is that bicycle crashes as well as pedestrian crashes tend to be underreported. A recent online analysis from a survey of more than 7,000 bicyclists from 17 countries found that, on average, only 9% of bicycle crashes were reported to the police (Shinar et al., 2018). Bicycle-motor vehicle and bicycle-bicycle crashes were among the most likely crashes to be reported, and crashes with pedestrians, fixed objects, or falls from the bike were the least likely. Even among the 157 bicyclists who reported being admitted to a hospital due to a crash, only 37% filed police reports of the crash.

Many States may neither require reporting nor collect off-road or private-road crash records. Non-roadway crashes may, however, constitute a significant portion of bicycle-related crashes with motor vehicles. In one study, parking lot, sidewalk, and driveway-related crashes represented 31% of all *reported* bicyclist crashes (Stutts & Hunter, 1999a). Many more roadway and non-roadway crashes go unreported. Research is needed to better understand the extent and causes of non-roadway bicycle crashes and effective countermeasures. NHTSA's Not in Traffic Surveillance (NiTS) monitors and reports on not-in-traffic-related motor vehicle deaths. Many events involve young children. See Section 1.1 for more information.

Underreporting of traffic-related crashes on road right of ways likely decreases as the crash severity increases because police are likely to be called to injury and fatal crashes, and the bicyclist is more likely to be transported or seek examination at a health care facility. Therefore, the FARS data presented earlier are thought to be reliable sources for estimating bicyclist fatal crash frequencies. Even so, not all fatal bicycle crashes are included in FARS, including fatal bicycle crashes involving another bicycle or a pedestrian, or those that did not occur on public roads, as already mentioned.

Many more bicyclist and pedestrian injuries, including those due to falls, collisions with bicycles, and others, likely go unreported to State crash databases (Stutts & Hunter, 1999a, 1999b). However, up-to-date information is lacking, and research is also needed to better understand the causes of these types of injuries. Maintenance of (roadway and sidewalk) surfaces and Americans With Disabilities Act-compliant design of sidewalks, landings, and access ramps are certainly important for maintaining smooth surfaces, which bicycles are more sensitive to and which puts bicyclists at higher risks than motorists if not maintained due to their lighter weight and tire size. Other measures, such as providing space for bicyclists to ride separated from motorists and pedestrian walkways may also be important, but are outside the scope of this document.

**Bicyclist Attributes.** As with pedestrians, bicyclists come in all ages with many levels of knowledge, skill, perception, and judgment. Thus, educational and enforcement programs must take these factors into account and be designed to target age-specific concerns and the knowledge, skills and behavioral attributes of these different groups of riders. Several studies have also identified demographic differences in injury risk, amounts of bicycle riding, and helmet use. In Washington State, an analysis of bicycle collisions along main street highways (State routes that also function as main streets for local residents) found that low income areas and communities with large minority populations have a higher probability of crashes, most

likely due to lower vehicle ownership leading to higher exposure (Moudon & Kang, 2017). Davison et al. (2013) found being male and being a recent immigrant were both associated with increased bicycling injury risk among Canadian youth. Lower socioeconomic class was associated with lower helmet use. Richard et al. (2013) found helmet use to be lower among females, younger and older riders, lower income people, and urban dwellers than among rural and suburban residents in France, although some of the gaps were lessening over time. At a minimum, programs should be inclusive, or incorporate extra focus on groups at higher risk of injury.

Bicycles have an even smaller profile than motorcycles, and while they have white front reflectors and red rear reflectors, headlights and rear active lights typically must be purchased and attached separately. Bicyclists are more difficult for many motorists to notice than four-wheeled vehicles, especially at night. Because they are human powered, there may be substantial speed differentials between bicycles and motorized traffic, though this certainly varies in high traffic areas and with avid bicyclists. Bicyclists also lack the protective body of a motorized vehicle in the event of a crash and some riders feel uncomfortable mingling with traffic, especially in high speed, high-volume situations.

**Other Bike Types.** Powered bikes and scooters are gaining popularity, particularly in urban and suburban communities and through shared ride programs. Electric bikes (e-bikes) or pedelecs (bikes that must be pedaled to activate motorized pedaling assistance) provide greater speeds, terrain fitness, and hill-climb assistance that can enable bicyclists to commute farther. Motorized or electric scooters are often used in dense urban communities for short rides. While many behavioral safety issues between traditional bicycles and these alternative bikes are common, there are differences that may require additional laws and targeted countermeasures. Using e-bikes may subtly change bicyclist perceptions of the risks, as these bikes provide better hard braking capabilities than traditional bicycles (Huertas-Leyva et al., 2018). One survey in Australia reported that a majority of e-bike users are males 50 and older. Few female users of e-bikes in that survey had experience riding a traditional bike (Johnson & Rose, 2016). Cyclists also choose higher travel speeds on e-bikes than traditional bicycles (Huertas-Leyva et al., 2018). Quantifying safety issues is also challenging with these forms of transportation, since underreporting may be common. Specifically, incident and crash reporting is seldom specific enough to indicate these bike types, with e-bike crashes often recorded as bicycle crashes, and e-scooters often recorded as pedestrian crashes. Note that e-scooter safety falls under the purview of the Consumer Product Safety Commission.

**Crash Factors.** As with all crashes, bicycle crashes often result from contributing factors. Bicyclist and driver pre-crash actions and behaviors (such as distraction, driver speed, and alcohol/drug use), vehicle type and design, cyclist and vehicle volumes/exposure, and elements of the built environment (including roadway design, presence of bicycle facilities) all contribute to cycle crashes. Several resources have provided evidence of the role of the transportation environment in bicycle safety and summarized best practices in planning, engineering, and design for bicycle safety (AASHTO, 2012; FHWA, 2010; NACTO, 2014). Adopting and implementing Complete Streets policies has been identified as one of the lower cost and more effective strategies to improve conditions for bicyclists. (For more on Complete Streets, visit www.completestreets.org/.)

**Other.** Some studies have focused on the role of vehicle type and design in the event of a crash. Ackery et al. (2012) found that larger motor vehicles—especially freight trucks and SUVs—were overrepresented in bicycle crashes compared to other vehicle types. While not dismissing the importance of vehicle design and the role of the built environment in preventing bicycle crashes, the countermeasures described in this report relate primarily to educational and enforcement measures aimed at improving the knowledge and behaviors of road users to prevent or mitigate the severity of a crash. For more discussion, see Chapter 8, page 6-7 related to distraction, driver speed, alcohol, and vehicle type and design.

## Strategies to Increase Bicyclist Safety

Many same principles discussed in Chapter 8: Pedestrians (pages 8-10) also apply for bicyclists. Countermeasures in this chapter are primarily aimed at improving safety behaviors of bicyclists and drivers through education and enforcement measures, and are organized by bicyclist subgroups:

- Children;
- Adult bicyclists;
- All bicyclists;
- Drivers and bicyclists.

A combination of strategies can be used to develop more focused programs to decrease bicycle crashes and injuries. (For examples of combining strategies, see Brookshire et al., 2016.)

- Increase the use of properly fitted bicycle helmets by all bicyclists, including children and adults, to mitigate head/brain injury in the event of a crash.
- Increase enforcement of helmet laws to increase compliance.
- Increase the conspicuity of bicyclists.
- Reduce vehicle speeds, which allows bicyclists and drivers more time to react and reduces impact forces if crashes do occur.
- Reduce exposure to known risky situations through behavioral and environmental countermeasures (without necessarily discouraging bicycling).
- Reduce distracted riding or driving behaviors (cell phones, headphones, etc.). See the chapter on distracted and drowsy driving for countermeasures targeting drivers.
- Decrease riding or driving while impaired. See the chapter on strategies to reduce alcohol-impaired driving. Some of the countermeasures would be applicable to address any type of impaired roadway use.
- Enact and enforce bicycle friendly laws that facilitate safe, predictable, and efficient bicycling in traffic, and safe driving around bicyclists, to update and fill gaps in existing laws.
- Educate LEOs on enforcement of bicycle-specific laws. Educate the public on any new laws, such as safe passing of bicyclists.
- Increase traffic law compliance by both motorists and bicyclists. Train LEOs in appropriate enforcement strategies. In particular, decrease wrong-way riding, sidewalk riding, and traffic control violations by bicyclists (and motorists); proper nighttime

lighting; decrease speeding, cutting off bicyclists, passing too closely, or blocking or driving in a designated bicycle lane by motorists; and decrease distraction and impairment that affects the safety of all road users including bicyclists.
- Educate motorists and bicyclists on required safety behaviors related to specific laws to enhance safe interaction between motorists and bicyclists on the roadway.
- Improve bicycle handling skills for bicyclists of all ages.
- Tailor countermeasures to diverse populations, including groups such as recent immigrants who may not be familiar with U.S. traffic laws, the U.S. traffic environment, may not speak or read English, or may not be literate in their native language.

Additional information about countermeasures involving a comprehensive approach to improving pedestrian safety is provided in NHTSA's *Advancing Pedestrian and Bicyclist Safety: A Primer for Highway Safety Professionals* (Brookshire et al., 2016).

Most of the above strategies are covered in this chapter under various descriptions. A few, such as "*reduce distracted riding or driving"* are not described, because as yet, literature searches do not detect any studies that have evaluated laws or programs aiming to reduce distracted riding. A survey of bicyclist attitudes and behaviors indicates that 21% of bicyclists use an electronic device on at least some of their bicycle trips with 9% indicating they use a device during nearly all their trips (Schroeder & Wilbur, 2013). An observational study of 1,974 bicyclists in Boston found that 31.2% of riders were distracted: 17.7% of the riders were wearing earbuds or headphones and 13.5% had objects or cell phones in their hands or on the handlebars (Wolfe et al., 2016). Currently, there is a lack of information about the impact of distracted bicycling on bicyclist safety (Mwakalonge et al., 2014). Organizations with existing or new training or educational programs might consider including these topics in outreach and educational programs and evaluating how well target audiences respond. Trying new strategies and evaluating them is the only way to gain new knowledge of what works. In addition, emerging technologies may help to combat distractions associated with those technologies. Cell phone applications are now available that have the ability to block incoming calls and texts while the cyclist (or other driver) is in motion.

**Engineering and Roadway Design.** While not dismissing the importance of vehicle design and the role of the built environment in preventing pedestrian crashes, the countermeasures described in this report relate primarily to educational and enforcement measures aimed at improving the knowledge and behaviors of road users to prevent a crash. However, there is a growing recognition of the importance of road design and the built environment in fostering safer user behaviors. A comprehensive approach that uses a combination of effective engineering, enforcement, and educational measures may have the best chance of achieving desired crash reductions.

**Safety in Numbers.** Finally, the idea that vulnerable road users' safety may be improved by increasing the numbers of pedestrians and bicyclists is gaining traction and some empirical support. Research from abroad as well as the United States finds that, although actual numbers of crashes may go up, individual risk of crashes with motor vehicles are often lower as numbers of bicyclists and pedestrians increase (Fyhri et al., 2016; Elvik & Bjørnskau, 2017; Geyer et al., 2006; Jacobsen, 2003; Leden et al., 2000). This relationship may not always be linear. An

analysis of bicycle crash data from Minneapolis – St. Paul intersections from 2000 to 2013 found that the probability of a crash increased with greater daily bicyclist traffic volume, until the daily volume through the intersection reached 1,532 bicycles. Crash probability then decreased as daily traffic volume exceeded 1,532 bicycles (Carlson et al., 2018).

In 2009 U.S. transportation officials and researchers took a "scanning tour" (assessing innovative technologies and practices in other countries that could significantly improve highways and highway transportation services in the United States) of Denmark, Sweden, Germany, Switzerland, and the United Kingdom. It reported the concept of "safety in numbers" motivated promotion of increased bicycling and walking in these countries as a safety countermeasure (Fischer et al., 2010). These European countries are committed to driving down the total numbers of bicyclist fatalities and injuries while increasing amounts of bicycling. Encouragement in these countries is done in the context of commitments to comprehensive planning, funding, engineering and design improvements, and maintenance policies to provide safe and connected bicycle networks. The report also documents numerous examples of how these policies are put into practice.

A non-linear relationship between traffic volumes (motorist, pedestrian, or bicyclist) and crashes has been demonstrated (AASHTO, 2010; Bhatia & Wier, 2011; Carlson et al., 2018; Elvik & Bjørnskau, 2017), but a causal mechanism for how increased volumes improve bicyclist safety has not been demonstrated (Bhatia & Wier, 2011; Elvik & Bjørnskau, 2017). This means that crashes do not tend to increase in direct proportion to increases in volume, but absolute crash numbers are still likely to increase (and have increased) with increases in cycling – all else being equal. Additionally, all the studies cited above, and others attempting to characterize volume and safety relationships, are based on cross-sectional comparisons. Other safety factors such as motorist speed, congestion, or law enforcement activity that are unmeasured or have not been accounted for in such studies are likely to influence crashes, making it a challenge to isolate the influence of safety and crashes based on increases in cycling alone. Also, cross-sectional studies cannot easily demonstrate the direction of effect – that is, whether a safer environment comes before the greater numbers of bicyclists or is a result of that increase (Bhatia & Wier, 2011). The underreporting of bicycle crashes undermines the estimates of safety effects, particularly for crashes that led to minor or no injuries (Elvik & Bjørnskau, 2017). It is clear, however, that a focus on improving the environment, both the infrastructure and road users' compliance with laws and safe behaviors, are important to increasing both population-level safety (measured as a reduction in population-wide fatalities and injuries) and numbers of bicyclists or amounts of cycling. As these two elements – safety improvements and increases in bicycling – occur collectively (or in combination), individual risk, or crash rates, may also be reduced.

## Resources

The agencies and organizations listed below can provide more information on bicycle safety issues and countermeasures and links to numerous other resources.

- Pedestrian and Bicycle Information Center: www.pedbikeinfo.org/
- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration:
  - Bicycles – www.nhtsa.gov/road-safety/bicyclists

  - Research and Evaluation – www.nhtsa.gov/research-data
  - Behavioral Safety Research Reports – https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/
- Federal Highway Administration:
  - Office of Planning, Environment, & Realty (Pedestrian and Bicycle Program) – www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/
  - Office of Safety – https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/
- League of American Bicyclists: www.bikeleague.org/
  - Smart Cycling Videos – www.bikeleague.org/ridesmartvideos
- Governors Highway Safety Association: www.ghsa.org/issues/bicyclists-pedestrians
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: www.cdc.gov/
- National Center for Safe Routes to School: www.saferoutesinfo.org/
- SAFE KIDS Worldwide: www.safekids.org
- Consumer Product Safety Commission: www.cpsc.gov
- Bicycle Helmet Safety Institute: www.helmets.org
- Association of Pedestrian and Bicycle Professionals: www.apbp.org
- Complete Streets Coalition: www.completestreets.org
- National Center for Bicycling and Walking: www.bikewalk.org
- Safe Routes to School National Partnership: www.saferoutespartnership.org
- Bicycle Safer Journey: Skills for Safe Bicycling for Ages 5 to 18: www.ped-bikeinfo.org/bicyclesaferjourney/
- A Resident's Guide for Creating a Safer Communities for Walking and Biking: www.safety.fhwa.dot.gov/ped_bike/ped_cmnity/ped_walkguide/

Specific resources that provide further information on engineering, enforcement, and educational strategies are:

- NHTSA Advancing Pedestrian and Bicyclist Safety: A Primer for Highway Safety Professionals: www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/812258-Peds_Bike_Primer.pdf
- NHTSA Motion Graphics - Fitting a Bicycle Helmet, Rules of the Road, Driving Safely Around Pedestrians and Bicyclists, and Bike Riding Safety: www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/bicycle-safety/evergreen-campaign-material
- FHWA A Resident's Guide for Creating Safer Communities for Walking and Biking: http://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/ped_bike/ped_cmnity/ped_walkguide/
- AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities, 4th Edition, American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials:
  - https://njdotlocalaidrc.com/perch/resources/aashto-gbf-4-2012-bicycle.pdf
  - Updated version, to be released soon: https://tooledesign.com/project/update-to-the-aashto-guide-for-the-design-of-bicycle-facilities-2019/
- NACTO Urban Bikeway Design Guide, National Association of City Transportation Officials: www.nacto.org/cities-for-cycling/design-guide/
- Public Policies for Pedestrian and Bicycle Safety and Mobility: An Implementation Project of the Pedestrian and Bicyclist Safety and Mobility International Scan: www.pedbikeinfo.org/cms/downloads/PBSPolicyReview.pdf
- Uniform Guidelines for State Highway Safety Programs: Highway Safety Program Guideline No. 14: Pedestrian and Bicycle Safety:

https://one.nhtsa.gov/nhtsa/whatsup/tea21/tea21programs/pages/PedBikeSafety.htm
- National Cooperative Highway Safety Research Program, NCHRP Report 500, Volume 18, A Guide for Reducing Collisions Involving Bicycles: https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v18.pdf
- BIKESAFE: Bicycle Countermeasure Selection System: www.ped-bikesafe.org/BIKESAFE/
- National Center for Safe Routes to School, Enforcement: Role for Law Enforcement in SRTS: http://apps.saferoutesinfo.org/lawenforcement/
- AAA Bicycle Safety Exchange: https://exchange.aaa.com/safety/bicycle-safety/#.XV2Rd5XfOpo

Resources released or updated since the last *Countermeasures That Work* update:
- The League of American Bicyclists: Bicycling and Walking in the United States - 2018, Benchmarking Report: https://bikeleague.org/benchmarking-report
- FHWA Strategic Agenda for Pedestrian and Bicycle Transportation: www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/publications/strategic_agenda/fhwahep16086.pdf

For more information on education, engineering, vehicular, and legislative practices and recommended strategies from International resources, refer to PBIC's Compendium of International Resources - www.pedbikeinfo.org/resources/resources_details.cfm?id=5080.

# Bicycle Safety Countermeasures

Countermeasures to improve bicycle safety are listed in the table below and discussed individually in the remainder of this chapter. The table is intended to provide a rough estimate of each countermeasure's effectiveness, use, cost, and time required for implementation. Effectiveness is shown using a five-star rating system.

- Countermeasures that receive ★★★★ or ★★★★★ have been determined to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ★★★ are considered promising, and likely to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States, communities, and other organizations are encouraged to use ★★★, and especially ★★★★ or ★★★★★, countermeasures. They should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

Further details about the symbols and terms used are included after the table. Effectiveness, cost, and time to implement can vary substantially from State to State and community to community. Costs for many countermeasures are difficult to measure, so the summary terms are very approximate. See each countermeasure discussion for more information.

Each countermeasure to improve bicycle safety is discussed individually in this chapter. Full descriptions are included for ★★★, ★★★★ and ★★★★★ countermeasures. Brief descriptions are included for ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Further details about the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures are included in Appendix A9 to this report.

### 1. Children

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 Bicycle Helmet Laws for Children | ★★★★★ | $$ | Medium | Short |
| 1.2 Safe Routes to School | ★★★ | $ | High | Short |
| 1.3 Bicycle Safety Education for Children | ☆☆ | $ | Unknown | Short |
| 1.4 Cycling Skills Clinics, Bike Fairs, Bike Rodeos | ☆ | $ | Unknown | Short |

## 2. Adults

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 Bicycle Helmet Laws for Adults | ★★★★ | $ | Low | Short |
| 2.2 Bicycle Safety Education for Adult Cyclists | ☆ | $$ | Low | Medium |

## 3. All Bicyclists

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Active Lighting and Rider Conspicuity | ★★★ | $ | High† | Varies |
| 3.2 Promote Bicycle Helmet Use with Education | ☆☆ | $$$ | Medium | Medium |
| 3.3 Enforcement Strategies | ☆ | $$ | Unknown | Varies |
| 3.4 Motorist Passing Bicyclist Laws | ☆ | $ | Medium | Short |

†High for active lighting laws; unknown for promoting other conspicuity measures.

## 4. Drivers and Bicyclists

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4.1 Driver Training | ☆ | $ | Low | Medium |
| 4.2 *Share the Road* Awareness Programs | ☆☆ | $$ | Unknown | Medium |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ★★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective by several high-quality evaluations with consistent results |
| ★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective in certain situations |
| ★★★ | Likely to be effective based on balance of evidence from high-quality evaluations or other sources |
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Children

### 1.1 Bicycle Helmet Laws for Children

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★ | Cost: $$ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

The purpose of bicycle helmet laws for children is to increase bicycle helmet use, thereby reducing the number of severe and fatal head injuries to children involved in bicycle crashes. Earlier crash-trend analyses using FARS data suggested that State helmet-use laws for children reduce child bicycle fatalities by about 15% in the long run (Grant & Rutner, 2004). Several meta-analyses discuss the effectiveness of bicycle helmets in reducing head injuries and fatalities in all types of crashes including bike-only falls (Attewell et al., 2001; Thompson et al., 2006). Elvik (2011) focused on all riders, not just children, estimating that bicycle helmet use results in about a 42% reduction in the risk of a non-fatal head injury. In another case control study, Bambach et al. (2013) found protective effects of helmet use to be 50% for moderate injury, 62% for serious injury, and 75% for severe head injury. Another study that examined emergency room visits of children who had bicycle-related injuries found that unhelmeted children were more likely to sustain injuries (40% versus 25.7%), meet the trauma activation criteria (45.5% versus 16.8%), and be admitted to the hospital (42.4% versus 14.9%). Overall, injury severity was worse with unhelmeted children, and these children were significantly more likely to have brain injuries, skull fractures, and facial fractures (Michael et al., 2017). Additional recent studies have reported increased risk of severe injury or death for non-use of helmets among riders involved in crashes. For more information, see Section 2.1 Bicycle Helmet Laws for Adults.

A helmet law is a significant tool in increasing helmet use, but as with all laws, effectiveness is related to implementation. Legislation effectiveness is enhanced when combined with supportive publicity and education campaigns or programs. See, for example, Rivara et al. (1998), Kanny et al. (2001), Rodgers (2002), and Sandt et al. (2015). The practical effect of bicycle helmet laws is to encourage parents to require their children to use helmets (and educate parents to serve as role models to wear a helmet despite the lack of a law).

Law enforcement and other safety officials can reinforce the need to wear a helmet through positive interactions, free, or discounted helmet distribution programs (combined with proper helmet fitting), or other positive incentives for helmet use. Publicizing helmet laws and child/parent education on helmet fitting and the importance of wearing a helmet every ride may enhance effectiveness. Educational programs have been shown to increase knowledge about proper use of helmets. See Chapter 9, Sections 1.3 and 3.2 for more information.

**Use**: As of March 30, 2019, there were 22 States, the District of Columbia, and at least 201 municipalities or counties that have child helmet laws (BHSI, 2019a). Most U.S. laws cover child bicyclists younger than 18. Only 13 States have no State or local bicycle helmet laws.

**Effectiveness**: Two systematic reviews found that legislation may be effective at increasing helmet use (Karkhaneh et al., 2006; Macpherson & Spinks, 2007). Two of three controlled studies reported reductions in head or traumatic brain injury following legislation (Macpherson & Spinks, 2007). The degree of improvement varied but there was a lack of evidence to determine whether enforcement, supporting publicity, and helmet distribution efforts explain

some of the variation (Karkhaneh et al., 2006; Macpherson & Spinks, 2007). There was a non-significant trend toward a greater overall increase in helmet use in communities with laws covering all cyclists compared to those covering only children, and effects were larger among children (Karkhaneh et al., 2006). Dennis et al. (2010) also found self-reported helmet use was highest in a province with a law covering all ages, next highest in a province with a law covering children up to 18, and lowest in a province with no law.

A survey study of adults across the United States conducted by the CDC found that children who lived in States with child helmet legislation were more likely to wear a helmet (51% of respondents reported that their child always wears a helmet, and 21% self-reported their child never wears a helmet) than those in States that did not have a child helmet law (40% always and 35% never) (Jewett et al., 2016). In addition, the strongest predictor of child helmet use was adult helmet use. Parents who reported always wearing helmets were 40% more likely to report that their youngest child always wore a helmet than parents who did not always wear helmets. In Australia an observational study of helmet-law compliance was performed at 17 sites in Queensland, 24 years after mandatory helmet legislation was introduced in 1991 (Debnath et al., 2016). Video data of bicyclists (n = 27,057) showed overall high compliance rates, although children had a lower helmet wearing rate (94.2%) than adults (98.6%). Along roadways, children were more likely to be non-compliant than adults (5.1 times higher odds) and boys were less likely to be compliant than girls. Another study reported a clear and systematic increase in helmet use rates across Australian states following the introduction of bicycle helmet legislation (Olivier et al., 2019). The post-law rates increased from a range of 12% to 46% to a range of 71% to 85% for children (depending on the state), with the rates generally being lower than the rate increases for adult bicyclists.

Effectiveness of legislation in reducing head injuries is challenging to assess because of the difficulty of controlling for other safety measures that may differ across jurisdictions, and for exposure to crashes of different severities across people in case control studies. Two studies from Canada have found somewhat mixed results. Karkaneh et al. (2013) found that legislation targeting those less than 18 had a beneficial effect on child, adolescent, and adult bicyclists hospitalized for head injury in the province of Alberta, Canada. Helmet use increased from 75% to 92% among children, from 30% to 63% among adolescents, and from 52% to 55% among adults (Karkaneh et al., 2011). A national study compared trends in provinces with and without legislation. Despite lower injury rates in provinces with helmet laws than in those without, the effect could not be attributed to the introduction of the laws (Dennis et al., 2013). However, the study also found that one province that implemented a law covering all ages, not just children, did have a significantly lower injury rate trend for the period covered by the law.

Enactment of a helmet law can be effective even if the law is difficult to enforce. Bonander et al. (2014) found that the proportion of juvenile head injury hospitalizations in Sweden decreased by 7.8% for males younger than 14 after the enactment of a law requiring children to wear a helmet when riding a bicycle. Importantly, Swedish law prohibits law enforcement from issuing fines to children under 15, effectively preventing police from enforcing the law; however, the law may have been successful because it provided parents with additional leverage to persuade their children to wear a helmet.

**Costs**: A helmet law should be supported with appropriate communications and outreach to parents, children, schools, pediatric health care providers, and law enforcement. NHTSA has a wide range of material that can be used to educate and promote the use of a helmet every ride, demonstrate helmet effectiveness, and educate and demonstrate how to properly fit a helmet. Helmets that meet safety requirements can be purchased for under $20. Some States provide free or discounted helmets to some children (or parents if requested). When considering the costs of providing helmets, agencies should consider the benefits. A NHTSA summary of helmet laws reported that "every dollar spent on bicycle helmets saves society $30 in indirect medical and other costs" (NHTSA, 2008). The Bicycle Helmet Safety Institute has information on important considerations in buying a helmet, sources for low-cost helmets, and partners such as Safe Kids may be able to help with providing low-cost or free helmets (www.helmets.org/index.htm). A helmet should be replaced when it has been involved in a crash, when any part of the helmet is damaged, or the foam appears to be dry or changed in texture (brittle). According to BHSI, some manufacturers suggest replacement every 5 years, although BHSI indicates that it may depend on use and care of the helmet and that a helmet may provide good protection for longer (www.helmets.org/guide.htm).

**Time to implement**: A bicycle helmet law can be implemented as soon as the appropriate legislation is enacted. Enacting local ordinances may take less time than enacting statewide legislation. To develop custom communications and outreach, train LEOs on implementing the law, or start a helmet distribution or subsidy program in support of the law may require a medium-to longer-term effort.

### 1.2 Safe Routes to School

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

The goal of Safe Routes to School programs is to increase the amount of bicycling and walking trips to and from school while simultaneously improving safety for children bicycling or walking to school. SRTS programs are community-based and are intended to be comprehensive in nature. Programs include education of children, school personnel, parents, community members, and LEOs about safe bicycling and walking behavior and safe driving behavior around pedestrians and bicyclists. In addition, programs include enforcement and engineering activities to improve traffic safety and risky elements of the traffic environment around primary and secondary schools so children can safely bicycle or walk to school. Information on the role of law enforcement in SRTS is available on the National Center for Safe Routes to School website (http://apps.saferoutesinfo.org/lawenforcement).

The CDC has identified SRTS programs as one of eight non-clinical, context-based, community-wide intervention that has the potential to improve population health. See CDC's Health Impact in 5 Years (HI-5) strategies for health transformation: www.cdc.gov/policy/hst/hi5/index.html.

From 2005 to mid-2012, SAFETEA-LU required each State to have its own SRTS program, including a full-time coordinator to manage Federal funds. Each year, Federal funding was allocated on infrastructure (engineering) improvements and on non-infrastructure projects (public awareness and outreach, enforcement near schools, education, and training for volunteers) to encourage walking and bicycling to school. In June 2012 new legislation, MAP-21, was enacted that significantly altered how SRTS and other pedestrian and bicycle programs are structured and funded. Under the MAP-21 Act, SRTS was no longer a standalone program (no new funding); however, SRTS projects were still eligible to compete for funding alongside other bicycle and pedestrian-related programs, including former Transportation Enhancements and Recreational Trails projects.

Under the Fixing America's Surface Transportation (FAST) Act (signed in 2015 and authorized until 2020), as part of the Surface Transportation Program Setaside (STPS) funds, States can determine their own funding priorities. Few changes were made to the funding, and most features of MAP-21 have been retained. Local communities and school systems can apply for the Federal STPS funds through the State DOTs, but local and State agencies have to provide up to 20% in matching funds for project costs. To learn more, visit www.fhwa.dot.gov/fastact/ and www.saferoutespartnership.org/healthy-communities/policy-change/federal/FAST-act-background-resources.

For a brief history of the SRTS program including funding, see www.saferoutespartnership.org/safe-routes-school/101/history.

**Use**: With the establishment of the national SRTS program all 50 States and the District of Columbia initiated SRTS programs. As of 2015, more than $1.03 billion out of the $1.147 billion in SAFETEA-LU funds apportioned to local and statewide SRTS programs had been allocated (FHWA, 2015). At that time 17,400 schools representing 6.8 million students had received

funding or were slated to receive funds for SRTS programs. Importantly, 68% of award recipients were classified as Title 1 (low-income) schools, a finding that is relevant because areas with lower median income are over-represented in bicyclist- and pedestrian-related crashes (McArthur et al., 2014).

Of the projects funded 48% included infrastructure improvements, such as sidewalk improvements (20%), pedestrian and bicyclist access (15%), and traffic calming improvements (13%). In addition, 10% of projects funded were related to law enforcement countermeasures. About 19.5% of all elementary and middle schools have had SRTS programming in the past 10 years. From 2005 to 2012 nearly 14,000 schools received SRTS funding (Active Living Research, 2015). See Chapter 8, Section 2.2 for more information.

As of September 2019 the number of SRTS programs in the country is still undetermined, but a census is underway (see www.saferoutespartnership.org/safe-routes-school/local-work/census).

**Effectiveness**: SRTS efforts include, at a minimum, a 3E approach to pedestrian and bicycle safety addressing engineering, education, and enforcement (programs can also include encouragement, evaluation, and equity considerations). SRTS programs, including education and training, can be effective in teaching children and their parents how to evaluate and choose the safest routes for walking or bicycling to and from school, to practice safe behaviors when walking, biking or driving around children walking/biking to school, how to use common engineering treatments to enhance their safety (sidewalks, crosswalks), to adhere to crossing guard direction, and to abide by traffic laws, especially in and around school zones. Although the full program emphasizes broad education, some specific implementations have centered on site-appropriate engineering changes; results have shown behavioral improvements for pedestrians, bicyclists, and motorists (NHTSA, 2004, 2015).

While no bicycle-specific safety studies have been reported, overall safety improvements have been demonstrated for SRTS programs in regional studies. A study that looked at pedestrian and bicyclist injury and fatality data from 18 States over 16 years (1995 to 2010) associated SRTS with a 23% reduction in pedestrian/bicyclist injury risk and a 20% reduction in pedestrian/bicyclist fatality risk in school-age children compared to adults 30 to 64 years old (DiMaggio et al., 2016). On a State-by-State basis, only Florida, Maryland, New York, South Carolina of the 18 States showed statistically significant risk reductions in child pedestrian/bicyclist injury, while the remainder showed no effect. Another study found a 60% decrease in the number of pedestrians involved in car crashes after the implementation of SRTS in Miami-Dade County. Similarly, school-aged injury rates in New York City decreased by 44% in census tracts with SRTS interventions relative to those without interventions (NHTSA, 2015). A cost-effectiveness model estimates a savings of $224 million for one cohort of intersection users in New York City by implementing the SRTS program (Muennig et al., 2014). The authors concluded that SRTS programs can remain effective for decades because of the lasting engineering component.

Notably, one study of 44 Texas SRTS programs found that the presence of infrastructure or non-infrastructure funding alone was associated with modest sustained long-term (3-year) changes in active commuting to school (Hoelscher et al., 2016). Over time, the percentage of students who

reported walking or biking in schools with non-infrastructure SRTS funding decreased while those in comparison control schools with no SRTS or infrastructure projects increased. This trend suggests a need for sustained non-infrastructure SRTS activities. Parents' anecdotal reports of decreased bikeability due to increases in traffic and decreases in the quality of road maintenance played a role in the students' active commuting behaviors, suggesting the need to involve parents in SRTS intervention education.

Because funds are limited for SRTS programs, prioritizing the allocation of funding across the schools in a State can help improve the overall effectiveness of SRTS programs by focusing on those schools that are most likely to experience the greatest safety benefits. McArthur et al. (2014) found that frequency of pedestrian/bicycle crashes generally were greater with greater population density, larger average family sizes, lower median income, and fewer two-parent households. In addition, schools located on local roads experienced higher crash rates than those located on higher-class roads or arterials. For more information about the effectiveness of SRTS (including information on the effectiveness of SRTS on injury rates, behavioral improvements, and the percentage of students walking or biking to school, see Chapter 8, Section 2.2.

**Costs**: Activities associated with SRTS may be low cost and may also be eligible for non-infrastructure grants mentioned above. Grants are administered by each State's SRTS coordinator. Significant material and resources can be accessed at no cost. NCSRTS provides downloadable material for State and local SRTS programs.

**Time to implement:** It is short for education. Once a school or district has decided to implement an SRTS program, a range of material, including an on-line step-by-step guide on getting started, is available from the NCSRTS. Programs funded through State DOTs, including engineering/infrastructure components typically require applications on a funding cycle and can take significantly longer to implement.

### 1.3 Bicycle Safety Education for Children

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |

The purpose of bicycle education is to teach children basic bicycle handling skills, traffic signs and signals, how to ride on streets with traffic present, proper helmet use, bicycle safety checks, and bicycle maintenance. As part of a regular school curriculum, education can reach every student, but providing training outside of school settings such as through parks and recreation departments, community centers, or faith-based organizations may be more feasible in some circumstances. Community-based programs could also provide greater flexibility in tailoring a program to meet the needs of specific target groups.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *Previous studies examining the effectiveness of this countermeasure found that bicycle safety education increases children's knowledge of laws and safe behaviors (Hooshmand et al., 2016; Lachapelle et al., 2013; Thomas et al., 2005), but whether this translates into adoption of the safe behaviors is less certain. The balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A9, Section 1.3.

### 1.4 Cycling Skills Clinics, Bike Fairs, Bike Rodeos

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |

Cycling Skills Clinics, bicycle safety fairs, and rodeos are local events often run by law enforcement, school personnel, or other civic and volunteer organizations. Their purpose is to teach children on-bicycle skills and how to ride defensively in traffic conditions. The intent of these types of activities is to introduce or reinforce bicycle safety concepts learned in a classroom with actual on-bike practice and application. Events can also include discussions and examples of proper bicycle helmet fitting.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *While cycling skills clinics or rodeos can result in increases in knowledge and skills, a review of the research literature does not reveal any studies that document crash and injury reduction, at least not in isolation. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective in reducing crashes.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A9, Section 1.4.

## 2. Adults

### 2.1 Bicycle Helmet Laws for Adults

| Effectiveness: ★★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

The purpose of bicycle helmet laws is to reduce the number of severe and fatal injuries resulting from bicycle crashes. Bicycle helmets, when worn properly, are the single most effective piece of equipment to reduce head injuries in the event of a crash. A meta-analysis of 40 studies found that helmet use by bicyclists was associated with 33% to 69% reduction in the odds of facial, head, and fatal injuries (Olivier & Creighton, 2017). A meta-analysis of bicycle helmet effectiveness estimated that bicycle helmet use results in about a 42% reduction in the risk of a non-fatal head injury (Elvik, 2011). Other studies have also found increased risk for all types of severe injury for helmet non-use (Boufous et al., 2012); for head and brain injury controlling for alcohol use by the bicyclist (Crocker et al., 2012); and controlling for other risk factors such as type of crash, age, and sex of the rider (Persaud et al., 2012).

According to a nationally representative population-based survey of attitudes and behaviors about walking and biking, 63% of respondents 16 and older favored laws requiring adults to use helmets when bicycling (Schroeder & Wilbur, 2013). However, only 37% said they use helmets on all or nearly all rides. Forty-six percent reported they never use helmets.

**Use**: No States have yet enacted laws requiring adults to wear bicycle helmets. There are 49 local jurisdictions in the United States that require people of all ages to wear helmets when bicycling (BHSI, 2019b).

**Effectiveness**: A meta-analysis of 21 empirical studies from Australia, Canada, New Zealand, Sweden, and the United States found that mandatory all-age helmet laws were effective in reducing serious head injuries by 35% for cyclists of all ages (Høye, 2018). An analysis that compared bicycle fatalities before and after helmet laws were introduced in Australian states found a 46% reduction in fatalities among bicyclist of all ages (Olivier et al., 2019). The longitudinal trend in the data was best explained by increased helmet use following the introduction of the legislation.

Two studies from Canada, and one study from three New York city suburbs show helmet laws for all ages produce higher helmet wearing rates than laws covering only children (Dennis et al., 2010; Karkhaneh et al., 2006; Puder et al., 1999; Høye, 2018), See the Effectiveness section on Bicycle Helmet Laws for Children (Chapter 9, Section 1.1) for more information. A longitudinal study in Nova Scotia found that helmet legislation was associated with a sustained increase in helmet use, and that increased enforcement (through issuing summary offense tickets) along with education efforts were associated with significant increases in helmet use (Huybers et al., 2017).

Dennis et al. (2013) found suggestive trends that laws in Canadian provinces that cover all ages resulted in fewer head injuries as a ratio of all bicycle injuries than no helmet law or a law covering only youth. Walter et al. (2011) found a decrease in head injury rates over and above decreasing trends in all bicyclist injury rates associated with a comprehensive and long-term

bicycle helmet use law in New South Wales, Australia. Further, the proportion of cyclists involved in crashes who were wearing a helmet increased from 20% to more than 60% among children, and to more than 70% among adults. For adults, the increase occurred within 2 months of the law effective date, whereas the increase was more gradual among children. Olivier et al. (2013) also found the rate of bicyclist head injuries decreased in comparison to the rate of bicyclist arm injuries (used to reflect differences in the amounts of riding) since 1991, when the law was enacted, suggesting that benefits continue long term. Studies have also found that when children are accompanied by adults using helmets, the children are also more likely to be using helmets (Wesson et al., 2008). Universal (all ages) helmet requirements for motorcyclists similarly result in higher helmet use rates and the greatest reductions in fatalities and injuries (see Chapter 5, Section 1.1).

**Costs**: Minimal costs could be incurred for informing and educating the public and providing training for enforcement personnel.

**Time to implement**: A universal helmet use law can be implemented as soon as the law is enacted.

**Other issues**:

- **Encouragement to use helmets:** While helmet use is effective for preventing serious head injuries among all ages, some jurisdictions are concerned mandatory helmet use for all ages will discourage bicycling. However, some research has found that legislation is not associated with the likelihood that children will cycle (Jewett et al., 2016), and that implementing legislation is not associated with changes in the number of cyclists as a percentage of the population (Huybers et al., 2017; Radun & Olivier, 2018). Given that increased riding provides health benefits, some agencies prefer to use encouragement in lieu of a law to increase helmet use by adults. See Section 3.2 for more information.
- In cities implementing bike-share programs, complementary helmets may increase helmet use among bike-share riders. An observational study in Vancouver, Canada, where helmet legislation has been enacted since 1996 and where the bike-share system provides helmets along with their bicycles, found that a significantly lower proportion of bike-share riders wore helmets than personal-use bicycle riders (15% fewer) (Zanotto & Winters, 2017). However, the gap in helmet use is much smaller than in other cities (i.e., 30-48% gap for Toronto, Boston, New York, Washington, London, and Montreal) where bike-share companies do not provide complementary helmets.
- **Helmet standards**: All helmets sold in the United States must pass minimum testing standards for head protection ("impact attenuation"), requirements to prevent helmets coming off in a crash, peripheral vision tests and other requirements developed by the Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC). Final rules were passed in 1999. The full standards are available on the BHSI website (www.helmets.org/index.htm#standards). A folding helmet intended to be more convenient to carry that meets the CPSC standards is now available per the BHSI website (www.helmets.org/shared.htm#studies).
- **Buying, fitting, and replacing helmets**: Most importantly, helmets must fit properly, be worn properly, and be worn every time in order to offer the desired protection. NHTSA (http://one.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/bicycles/pdf/8019_Fitting-A-Helmet.pdf, www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/evergreen-campaign-material/web-

videos/web-motion-graphics-fitting-bike-helmet), the League of American Bicyclists (http://bikeleague.org/content/smart-cycling-tips-0), and SafeKids Worldwide (www.safekids.org/tip/bike-safety-tips), provide tips on helmet fitting and other guidance on riding safely in traffic. Such tips may be included on bike maps and other local resources for bicyclists. Helmets should be replaced if involved in a crash. They should also be replaced at some interval just because of natural deterioration (e.g., the foam is dented or becomes brittle, there are cracks in the outer shell, or the straps breaking or becoming loose). The Bicycle Helmet Safety Institute has more information on buying, fitting, and replacing helmets, and also reviews new helmets that come out each year and discusses costs (www.helmets.org/). BHSI suggests, from the results of impact tests they conducted, that lower-cost helmets are just as impact-resistant as more costly ones. Reflective and bright colors are recommended, and rounder helmets are also suggested by BHSI to provide a smoother, less snag-prone surface in the event of a crash.

### 2.2 Bicycle Safety Education for Adult Cyclists

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |

The goal of bicycle safety education for adult bicycle commuters is to improve knowledge of laws, risks, and cycling best practices, and to lead to safer cycling behaviors, including riding predictably and use of safety materials such as reflective clothing and helmets. This countermeasure can include educational material, tip sheets, and a pledge program for local agencies to adopt and disseminate.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A9, Section 2.2.

## 3. All Bicyclists

### 3.1 Active Lighting and Rider Conspicuity

| Effectiveness: ★★★ | Cost: $ | Use: High† | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

†High for active lighting laws; unknown for promoting other conspicuity measures

Improving bicyclist conspicuity is intended to make bicyclists more visible to motorists and to allow motorists more opportunity to see and avoid collisions with bicyclists. A common contributing factor for crashes involving bicyclists in the roadway is the failure of the driver to notice the bicyclist, particularly at night. White or light-colored clothing, long a recommended solution, does little to improve conspicuity at night (Raborn et al., 2008, Strategy F2). A study of bicyclists admitted to hospitals from bicycling injuries suggested that white upper body clothing may provide a protective effect for motor vehicle collisions during daylight hours (Hagel et al., 2014).

New bicycles must be sold with reflectors meeting the CPSC requirements. The reflectors may improve a bicycle's night-time visibility when they are illuminated by motor vehicle lights approaching from behind. Active bicycle lighting requires the user turn it on/off to activate it versus a passive light (reflector). Active bicycle lighting can also be critical for the detection of bicyclists coming toward the path of a motor vehicle, because the bicyclist is outside the vehicle's headlight beam until the last moment (Raborn et al., 2008). In most States and jurisdictions, bicycles ridden after dark are required by law to have active white front lights and most States also require red rear reflectors or active lights. White in front and red in rear is meant to replicate the lighting used in motorized vehicles. Some State laws have specific requirements for the power of the light, i.e., ability to see the light at a certain distance of feet ahead. Some laws, such as in Oregon, require bicycle lighting not only at night, but also in other less than favorable conditions. Efforts to increase enforcement of laws requiring use of lights is needed to maximize use (Raborn et al., 2008). Communications and outreach to the general public and LEOs about State and local laws regarding the use of active bicycle lighting (and other conspicuity aids) should be provided. However, a study from Australia found the use of a bicycle light alone, whether static or flashing, did not enhance the conspicuity of the bicyclist among study drivers, so additional measures to improve conspicuity (such as clothing or reflective leg straps) may be needed (Wood et al., 2012).

Most bicycles do not come equipped with permanently mounted lighting (Osberg et al., 1998). Newer mounting devices may, however, make it easy to attach or remove lights as needed. Many currently available lights may also be easily switched from continuously lit to flashing modes. Batteries also last much longer with LED lighting, increasing convenience.

Additional materials attached to bicyclists or their bikes can increase rider conspicuity day or night. For daytime, bright-colored or fluorescent clothing, including shirts, vests, caps, etc., make the bicyclist more noticeable. In low-light conditions (e.g., rain, fog) and at night, the same items can have retroreflective (reflects light back toward the original source of light) materials incorporated in them, to make the bicyclist more visible and identifiable from much greater distances. Retroreflective bicycle tires, and now frames, are also available. Another product to

increase visibility include bright neon tubes designed to be mounted on the bicycle frame, where they cast a bright, broad pattern of light onto the roadway, creating the illusion of a vehicle much wider than a bicycle. Lower cost stickers to put on rims (or cyclist extremities) and other parts of the bike are also available. Pedal reflectors are another option and may help drivers identify cyclists and estimate their speeds based on pedal rotations, though further research is needed. Lights also may be applied to helmets or backpacks to make the rider more conspicuous to other vehicles. Other emerging active lighting technologies may also enhance conspicuity of nighttime cyclists when used. Lights or retroreflective material attached to moving extremities (i.e., wrists and ankles) can create the perception of human movement and increase cyclist visibility (Koo & Huang, 2015; Karsch et al., 2012). A study of the effectiveness of different configurations of flashing lights on bicyclists' joints found that lights placed on the lower body (hips, knees, and ankles) were the most effective in increasing bicyclist visibility (Koo & Huang, 2015). See also Chapter 8 Section 4.3 on pedestrian conspicuity measures for more information.

**Use**: Most States have laws requiring use of active lights and reflectors on bikes ridden at night. There are no data on how frequently active lighting is used among those who bicycle after dark, but bicyclists involved in collisions at night appear to use lights infrequently. Use of bicycle reflectors is thought to be higher since they come pre-attached to bicycles at purchase, but these may be removed, or broken, after purchase, so use is not guaranteed. Nearly three-fourths of U.S. survey respondents who reported having ridden in the dark reported they took some measures, either using a bike headlight or reflective/fluorescent gear or clothing, to make themselves more visible (Schroeder & Wilbur, 2013).

Most, if not all, athletic shoes contain some retroreflective material. Some athletic clothing also has retroreflective material. Bicycle helmets may have retroreflective elements. Some bicyclists may be seen wearing additional retroreflective materials, such as vests, jackets, arm bands, or rear-mounted reflective triangles located under their bicycle seats.

**Effectiveness**: A Cochrane review of studies of pedestrian and bicycle conspicuity aids concluded that "fluorescent materials in yellow, red, and orange improved driver detection during the day ..." (Kwan & Mapstone, 2004). Even low-beam headlights can illuminate figures wearing florescent materials hundreds of feet away, much farther than figures wearing normal clothing (Zegeer et al., 2004, Strategy B5; Raborn et al., 2008, Strategy F2). One study among a cohort of riders who had participated in a large mass bicycle event found results suggesting that consistent use of fluorescent colors provides a protective effect against crashes and injuries (Thornley et al., 2008).

A small Australian study found that bicyclist clothing such as vests and ankle and knee reflectors significantly affected conspicuity, enabling drivers to react to bicyclists from further away than when the bicyclists wore only vests or no reflective material at all (Wood et al., 2012). Younger drivers detected and responded to bicyclists more often and from further distances than older drivers. In a year-long Danish study (Lahrmann, Madsen, & Olesen, 2018; Lahrmann, Madsen, Olesen, et al., 2018), researchers gave running lights to 1,845 bicycle riders (compared to 2,000 riders in the control group), and fluorescent yellow jackets to 3,402 riders (compared to 3,391 riders in the control group). Over the course of the trial, the treatment groups self-reported fewer multi-party personal injury events than their control groups (38% fewer for the running light

group, and 47% fewer for the yellow jacket group after accounting for response bias). The group with the yellow jackets also reported 55% fewer accidents with motor vehicles than the control group (Lahrmann, Madsen, Olesen, et al., 2018). When sorted in half based on jacket usage rate, the multi-party personal injury event rate for the higher jacket usage group was 53% lower, while there was no significant difference between the lower jacket usage group and the jacket control group.

A study of bicyclists admitted to hospital emergency departments in Edmonton and Calgary, Canada, did not find a significant protective effect for using head- or tail lights, for retroreflective upper body clothing, nor for other reflective items for nighttime crashes. However, the sample size was small, and there was no apparent control for the riding environment or type of ambient/street lighting available (Hagel et al., 2014). A set of four on-road studies performed in Italy on a closed-circuit track found that relative detection performance of bicyclists with ECE/ONU 104 reflective tape applied to left and right posterior forks, seat post, and rear reflector was significantly better than the control condition (no reflective material; Costa et al., 2017). This difference was maintained under a variety of environment conditions (darkness with street lighting, darkness with no street lighting, and darkness with rain). However, further research is still needed to assess the effects of types of conspicuity aids under different road environments and ambient and supplemental light conditions.

Another challenge is getting bicyclists to wear retro-reflective materials and use proper lighting and other conspicuity aids routinely (and appropriately). It is possible to obtain widespread use of lighting. Osberg et al. (1998) found nearly half of nighttime bicyclists in Paris used active lighting, compared to just 14% of Boston bicyclists, reflecting differences in laws, public health priorities, and perceived risk.

Evidence is unavailable about the effectiveness of conspicuity promotional measures, or of laws requiring use of active lighting at increasing use. Raborn et al. (2008) suggest that increased enforcement of laws enhanced by coordinated communications and outreach efforts could heighten awareness among cyclists of the need for using proper lighting and the benefits of retroreflective materials at enhancing conspicuity. Logic suggests that if bicyclists are more noticeable, the frequency and severity of crashes would likely be reduced. With this goal in mind, certain local LEAs are engaging in community outreach and handing out bicycle safety lights rather than ticketing bicyclists.

**Costs**: Moderate costs are involved for communications and outreach and for law enforcement training to enforce active lighting laws. Conspicuity-enhancing gear, such as retroreflective wrist and ankle straps, or small active front and back lights, are sometimes distributed for free as part of school and community educational efforts. Additional costs for such materials are modest.

**Time to implement:** Brochures and flyers for a bicycle safety education campaign highlighting conspicuity can be created quickly. Often an extra line or two about rider conspicuity can be added to existing educational material and/or reinforced at community events. Several months can be taken up by designing, producing, and implementing the communications and outreach and law enforcement training for enforcing active lighting laws. See Section 3.3 for more on enforcement and available resources.

### 3.2 Promote Bicycle Helmet Use With Education

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |

The purpose of bicycle helmet promotions is to increase the use of helmets and thereby decrease the number of severe and fatal brain injuries to bicyclists involved in crashes. This countermeasure involves conducting single events or extended campaigns to promote helmet distribution and use among children and adults. Promotions can target barriers to helmet use, including absence of a helmet, child and families' lack of understanding of the importance of helmet use, and negative attitudes or beliefs about helmet use. Programs that provide helmets can include sponsoring organizations and often involve law enforcement and schools to deliver helmets, fit the helmets, and teach proper fitting and use. Bicycle helmet promotions must include teaching adults and children the importance of and how to properly fit the bicycle helmet. Many schools and community centers are able to assist in identifying those families that due to their socioeconomic status or eligibility for lunches, are suitable for free helmets. Other times, helmets can be purchased in bulk and distributed at a lower cost.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has been examined in several research studies. There is some evidence that certain approaches may lead to increased helmet use and more favorable attitudes towards helmet use, especially among children. However, more research is needed to conclude that the countermeasure is effective when broadly targeted towards all cyclists.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A9, Section 3.2.

### 3.3 Enforcement Strategies

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Varies |

This countermeasure involves promoting traffic safety laws to enhance the safety of bicyclists, including those laws expected of bicyclists and drivers around them. This includes communications and outreach campaigns and by training LEOs about the laws, the safety benefits of obeying the laws, and how to enforce bicycle safety-related laws. The purpose of targeted enforcement is to increase compliance with appropriate traffic laws by both bicyclists and motorists through enforcement of traffic laws for all operators.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A9, Section 3.3.

### 3.4 Motorist Passing Bicyclist Laws

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |

The purpose of bicyclist passing laws is to require motor vehicle drivers to leave at least a legally defined amount of clearance space between the vehicle and the cyclist when overtaking the cyclist. This helps to minimize the likelihood of a sideswipe, and to reduce the chance of a close encounter that could potentially destabilize or divert the course of a cyclist and cause a crash.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *Although there is some research examining the effectiveness of this countermeasure, there is insufficient evidence to conclude that the countermeasure yields consistent benefits.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A9, Section 3.4.

## 4. Drivers and Bicyclists

### 4.1 Driver Training

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |

This countermeasure involves enhancing existing driver training or conducting new driver training about sharing the road with bicyclists. The purpose of addressing bicycle safety as part of driver education is to increase the sensitivity of drivers to the presence and characteristics of bicyclists and how to safely share the road with them.

**Effectiveness Concerns***: This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A9, Section 4.1.

### 4.2 *Share the Road* Awareness Programs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |

The purpose of *Share the Road* programs is to increase drivers' awareness of bicyclists' rights and the need for mutual respect of bicyclists on the roadway. Campaign education efforts are intended to improve the safety of all road users, including bicyclists and to enhance the understanding and compliance with relevant traffic laws.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has been examined in a small number of research studies. Despite some positive findings, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A9, Section 4.2.

**Bicycle Safety References**

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials. (2010). *Highway safety manual, 1st Ed*. www.highwaysafetymanual.org

AASHTO. (2012) *Guide for the development of bicycle facilities, 4*th *edition*. https://njdotlocalaidrc.com/perch/resources/aashto-gbf-4-2012-bicycle.pdfAckery, A. D., McLellan, B. A., & Redelmeier, D. A. (2012). Bicyclist deaths and striking vehicles in the USA. *Injury Prevention*, *18*, 22-26.

Active Living Research. (2015). *Research review: Impact of Safe Routes to School programs on walking and biking.* http://activelivingresearch.org/sites/default/files/ALR_Review_SRTS_May2015.pdf

Attewell, R. G., Glase, K., & McFadden, M. (2001). Bicycle helmet efficacy: A meta-analysis. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 33*, 345-352.

Bambach, M. R., Mitchella, R. J., Grzebieta, R. H., & Olivier, J. (2013). The effectiveness of helmets in bicycle collisions with motor vehicles: A case-control study. *Accident Analysis & Prevention 53,* 78-88.

Bhatia, R., & Wier, M. (2011). "Safety in Numbers" re-examined: Can we make valid or practical inferences from available evidence? *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 43*(1), 235-240.

Bicycle Helmet Safety Institute. (2019a). *All-ages helmet laws for bicycle riders.* www.helmets.org/allageshelmetlaws.htm

BHSI. (2019b). *Bicycle helmet laws.* www.helmets.org/mandator.htm

Bonander, C., Nilson, F., & Andersson, R. (2014). The effect of the Swedish bicycle helmet law for children: an interrupted time series study. *Journal of Safety Research*, 51, 15-22.

Boufous, S., de Rome, L., Senserrick, T., & Ivers, R. (2012). Risk Factors for severe injury in cyclists involved in traffic crashes in Victoria. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 49*, 404-409.

Brookshire, K., Sandt, L., Sundstrom, C., Thomas, L., & Blomberg, R. (2016, April). *Advancing pedestrian and bicyclist safety: A primer for highway safety professionals* (Report No. DOT HS 812 258). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1982

Buehler, R. (2018). A First look: Trends in walking and cycling in the United States, 2001-2017. *National Household Travel Survey Workshop 2018.* Transportation Research Board, Washington, DC

Carlson, K., Murphy, B., Ermagun, A., Levinson, D. M., & Owen, A. (2018). Safety in numbers: Pedestrian and bicyclist activity and safety in Minneapolis. https://conservancy.umn.edu/bitstream/handle/11299/194707/CTS%2018-05.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y

Costa, M., Bonetti, L., Bellelli, M., Lantieri, C., Vignali, V., & Simone, A. (2017). Reflective tape applied to bicycle frame and conspicuity enhancement at night. *Human Factors, 59*(3), 485-500.

Crocker, P., King, B., Cooper, H., & Milling, T. J. (2012). Self-reported alcohol use is an independent risk factor for head and brain injury among cyclists but does not confound helmets' protective effect. *Journal of Emergency Medicine, 43,* 244-250.

Davison, C., Torunian, M., Walsh, P., Thompson, W., McFaull, S., & Pickett, W. (2013). Bicycle helmet use and bicycling-related injury among young Canadians: An equity analysis. *International Journal for Equity in Health, 12,* 48.

Debnath, A. K., Haworth, N., Schramm, A., & Williamson, A. (2016). Observational study of compliance with Queensland bicycle helmet laws. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 97,* 146-152.

Dennis, J., Potter, B., Ramsay, T., & Zarychanski, R. (2010). The effects of provincial bicycle helmet legislation on helmet use and bicycle ridership in Canada. *Injury Prevention, 16,* 219-224.

Dennis, J., Ramsay, T., Turgeon, A. F., & Zarychanski, R. (2013). Helmet legislation and admissions to hospital for cycling related head injuries in Canadian provinces and territories: Interrupted time series analysis. *BMJ British Medical Journal Online*, *346,* 2674.

DiMaggio, C., Frangos, S., & Li, G. (2016). National Safe Routes to School program and risk of school-age pedestrian and bicyclist injury. *Annals of Epidemiology, 26*(6), 412-417.

Elvik, R. (2011). Publication bias and time-trend bias in meta-analysis of bicycle helmet efficacy: A re-analysis of Attewell, Glase and McFadden, 2001. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *43*, 1245-1251.

Elvik, R., & Bjørnskau, T. (2017). Safety-in-numbers: A systematic review and meta-analysis of evidence. *Safety Science*, *92*, 274-282.

Federal Highway Administration. (1990). *1990 Nationwide Personal Transportation Survey*.

FHWA. (1995). *1995 Nationwide Personal Transportation Survey*.

FHWA. (2001). *2001 National Household Travel Survey*.

FHWA. (2010). *Review – Public policies for pedestrian and bicyclist safety and mobility: An implementation project of the pedestrian and bicyclist safety and mobility international scan* (Report No. FHWA-PL-10-028). www.pedbikeinfo.org/cms/downloads/PBSPolicyReview.pdf

FHWA (2015). *Creating healthier generations: A look at the 10 years of Federal Safe Routes to School program.* www.pedbikeinfo.org/pdf/SRTSfederal_CreatingHealthierGenerations.pdf

Fischer, P. (2017). *A right to the road: Understanding & addressing bicyclist safety*. GHSA. www.ghsa.org/resources/bicyclist-safety2017

Fischer, E. L., Rousseau, G. K., Turner, S. M., Blais, E. J., Engelhart, C. L., Henderson, D. R., Kaplan, J. A., Keller, V. M., Mackay, J. D., Tobias, P. A., Wigle, D. E., & Zegeer, C. V. (2010). *Pedestrian and bicyclist safety and mobility in Europe* (Report No. FHWA-PL-10-010). Federal Highway Administration. www.bv.transports.gouv.qc.ca/mono/1023711.pdf

Fyhri, A., Sundfør, H. B., Bjørnskau, T., & Laureshyn, A. (2016). Safety in numbers for cyclists—Conclusions from a multidisciplinary study of seasonal change in interplay and conflicts. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 105,* 124-133.

Geyer, J., Raford, N., Ragland, D., & Pham, T. (2006). *The continuing debate about Safety in Numbers—Data from Oakland, CA*. Safe Transportation Research & Education Center, Institute of Transportation Studies.

Grant, D., & Rutner, S. M. (2004). The effect of bicycle helmet legislation on bicycling fatalities. *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management, 23*, 595-611.

Hagel, B. E., Romanow, N. T. R., Morgunov, N., Embree, T., Couperthwaite, A. B., Voaklander, D., & Rowe, B. H. (2014). The relationship between visibility aid use and motor vehicle related injuries among bicyclists presenting to emergency departments. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 65,* 85-96.

Hamann, C., Peek-Asa, C., Lynch, C. F., Ramirez, M., & Torner, J. (2013). Burden of hospitalizations for bicycling injuries by motor vehicle involvement: United States, 2002 to 2009. *Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery, 75*, 870-876.

Hoelscher, D., Ory, M., Dowdy, D., Miao, J., Atteberry, H., Nichols, D., Evans, A., Menendez, T., Lee, C., & Wang, S. (2016). Effects of funding allocation for safe routes to school programs on active commuting to school and related behavioral, knowledge, and psychosocial outcomes: Results from the Texas childhood obesity prevention policy evaluation (T-COPPE) study. *Environment and Behavior*, *48*(1), 210-229.

Hooshmand, J., Hotz, G., Neilson, V., & Chandler, L. (2014). BikeSafe: Evaluating a bicycle safety program for middle school aged children. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 66,* 182-186.

Høye, A. (2018). Recommend or mandate? A systematic review and meta-analysis of the effects of mandatory bicycle helmet legislation. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *120*, 239-249.

Hu, P. S., & Reuscher, T. R. (2004). *Summary of travel trends: 2001 National Household Travel Survey* (Report No. FHWA-PL-92-027). Federal Highway Administration. http://nhts.ornl.gov/2001/pub/STT.pdf

Huertas-Leyva, P., Dozza, M., & Baldanzini, N. (2018). Investigating cycling kinematics and braking maneuvers in the real world: E-bikes make cyclists move faster, brake harder, and experience new conflicts. *Transportation Research Part F: Traffic Psychology and Behaviour, 54*, 211-222.

Hunter, W. H., Stutts, J. C., Pein, W. E., & Cox, C. L. (1996). *Pedestrian and bicycle crash types of the early 1990's* (Report No. FHWA-RD-95-163). Federal Highway Administration. www.pedbikeinfo.org/cms/downloads/PedBikeCrashTypes.pdf

Huybers, S., Fenerty, L., Kureshi, N., Thibault-Halman, G., LeBlanc, J. C., Clarke, D. B., & Walling, S. (2017). Long-term effects of education and legislation enforcement on all-age bicycle helmet use: A longitudinal study. *Journal of Community Health, 42*(1), 83-89.

Jacobsen, P. L. (2003) Safety in numbers: more walkers and bicyclists, safer walking and bicycling. *Injury Prevention 9,* 205-209 and 2004, Correction *Injury Prevention, 10,* 127.

Jewett, A., Beck, L. F., Taylor, C., & Baldwin, G. (2016). Bicycle helmet use among persons 5 years and older in the United States, 2012. *Journal of Safety Research, 59*, 1-7.

Johnson, M., & Rose, G. (2016, January 10-14). *E-bike safety: Insights from a survey of Australian e-bike riders*. Transportation Research Board 95th Annual Meeting. Transportation Research Board.

Kanny, D., Schieber, R. A., Pryor, V., & Kresnow, M. J. (2001). Effectiveness of a State law mandating use of bicycle helmets among children: An observational evaluation. *American Journal of Epidemiology, 154*, 1072-1076.

Karkhaneh, M., Kalenga, J-C., Hagel, B. E., & Rowe, B. H. (2006). Effectiveness of bicycle helmet legislation to increase helmet use: A systematic review. *Injury Prevention*, *12,* 67-82.

Karkhaneh, M., Rowe, B. H., Saunders, L. D., Voaklander, D. C., & Hagel, B. E. (2011). Bicycle helmet use four years after the introduction of helmet legislation in Alberta, Canada. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 43*(3), 788-796.

Karkhaneh, M., Rowe, B. H., Saunders, L. D., Voaklander, D. C., & Hagel, B. E. (2013). Trends in head injuries associated with mandatory bicycle helmet legislation targeting children and adolescents. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 59*, 206-212.

Karsch, H. M., Hedlund, J. M., Tison, J., & Leaf, W. A. (2012, June). *Review of studies on pedestrian and bicyclist safety, 1991-2007* (Report No. DOT HS 811 614). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811614.pdf

Koo, H. S., & Huang, X. (2015). Visibility aid cycling clothing: Flashing light-emitting diode (FLED) configurations. *International Journal of Clothing Science and Technology*, *27*(3), 460-471. doi 10.1108/IJCST-09-2014-0104

Kwan, I. & Mapstone, J. (2004). Visibility aids for pedestrians and cyclists: A systematic review of randomised controlled trials. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 36,* 305–312

Lachapelle, U., Noland, R. B., & Von Hagen, L. A. (2013). Teaching children about bicycle safety: An evaluation of the New Jersey bike school program. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 52,* 237-249.

Lahrmann, H., Madsen, T. K., & Olesen, A. V. (2018). Randomized trials and self-reported accidents as a method to study safety-enhancing measures for cyclists—Two case studies. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 114*, 17-24.

Lahrmann, H., Madsen, T. K. O., Olesen, A. V., Madsen, J. C. O., & Hels, T. (2018). The effect of a yellow bicycle jacket on cyclist accidents. *Safety Science*, *108*, 209-217.

Leden, L., Garder, P., & Pulkkinen, U., (2000). An expert judgment model applied to estimating the safety effect of a bicycle facility. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 32,* 589-599.

Macpherson, A., & Spinks, A. (2007). Bicycle helmet legislation for the uptake of helmet use and prevention of head injuries. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, Issue 8.

McArthur, A., Savolainen, P., & Gates, T. (2014). Spatial Analysis of Child Pedestrian and Bicycle Crashes: Development of Safety Performance Function for Areas Adjacent to

Schools. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board, 2465,* 57-63.

McKenzie, B. (2014). *Modes less traveled – Bicycling and walking to work in the United States: 2008-2012*. U.S. Census Bureau. www2.census.gov/library/publications/2014/acs/acs-25.pdf

McKenzie, B., Fields, A., Risley. M., & Sawyer. C. R. (2017). *2016 American community survey content test evaluation report: Journey to work – Travel mode of commute and time of departure for work.* U.S. Census Bureau. www.census.gov/content/dam/Census/library/working-papers/2017/acs/2017_McKenzie_01.pdf

Michael, P. D., Davenport, D. L., & Draus, J. M. (2017). Bicycle helmets save more than heads: Experience from a pediatric level I trauma hospital. *The American Surgeon*, *83(9)*, 1007-1011.

Moudon, A. V., & Kang, M. (2017). Safe Main Street highways part II: Analyses of collisions involving pedestrians and bicyclists in Washington State. www.depts.washington.edu/pactrans/wp-content/uploads/2015/03/2015_S_UW-76-Moudon_Safe-Main-Street-Highways-II-PacTrans.compressed.pdf

Muennig, P. A., Epstein, M., Li, G., & DiMaggio, C. (2014). The Cost-Effectiveness of New York City's Safe Routes to School Program. *American Journal of Public Health*, *104*(7), 1294-1299.

Mwakalonge, J. L., White, J., & Siuhi, S. (2014, January 12-16). Distracted biking: A review of current state of knowledge (p. 22). 93rd Transportation Research Board Annual Meeting, Washington, DC. https://trid.trb.org/view/1287185

National Association of City Transportation Officials (NACTO). (2014). *Urban bikeway design guide.* www.nacto.org/cities-for-cycling/design-guide/

National Center for Statistics and Analysis. (2020). *Bicyclists and other cyclists: 2018 data* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 884). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812884

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (2004). *Safe Routes to School: Practice and promise*. https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/bike/safe-routes-2004/index.html

NHTSA. (2008). *Bicycle helmet use laws* (Report No. DOT HS 810 886W). www.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/TSFLaws/PDFs/810886.pdf

NHSTA. (2009-2018). *Fatality Analysis Reporting System (FARS)* [Custom data set analysis]. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

NHTSA. (2015). *Traffic safety facts 2012 data: Bicyclists and other cyclists*. (Report No. DOT HS 812 018). https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812018

Olivier, J., Boufous, S., & Grzebieta, R. (2019). The impact of bicycle helmet legislation on cycling fatalities in Australia. *International Journal of Epidemiology, 48*(4), 1197-1203.

Olivier, J., & Creighton, P. (2017). Bicycle injuries and helmet use: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, *46*(1), 278-292.

Olivier, J., Walter, S. R., & Grzebieta, R. H. (2013). Long term bicycle related head injury trends for New South Wales, Australia following mandatory helmet legislation. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 50,* 1128-1134.

Osberg, J. S., Stiles, S. C., & Asare, O. K. (1998). Bicycle safety behavior in Paris and Boston. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 30*, 679-687.

Persaud, N., Coleman, E., Zwolakowski, D., Lauwers, B., & Cass, D. (2012). Nonuse of bicycle helmets and risk of fatal head injury: A proportional mortality, case-control study. *Canadian Medical Association Journal, 184*, E921-E923.

Pucher, J., Buehler, R., Merom, D., & Bauman, A. (2011). Walking and cycling in the United States, 2001-2009: Evidence from the NHTS. *American Journal of Public Health*, *101*, S310- S317.

Puder, D. R., Visintainer, P., Spitzer, D., & Casal, D. (1999). A comparison of the effect of different bicycle helmet laws in 3 New York City suburbs. *American Journal of Public Health, 89*, 1736-1738.

Raborn, C., Torbic, D. J., Gilmore, D. K., Thomas, L. J., Hutton, J. M., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L., Bond, V., & Hardy, K. K. (2008). *A guide for reducing collisions involving bicycles*. Transportation Research Board. www.trb.org/Publications/Blurbs/156839.aspx

Radun, I., & Olivier, J. (2018). Bicycle helmet law does not deter cyclists in Finland. *Transportation Research Part F: Traffic Psychology and Behaviour*, *58*, 1087-1090.

Richard, J-B., Thélot, B., & Beck, F. (2013). Evolution of bicycle helmet use and its determinants in France: 2000-2010. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 60,* 113-120.

Rivara, F. P., Thompson, D. C., Patterson, M. Q., & Thompson, R. S. (1998). Prevention of bicycle-related injuries: helmets, education, and legislation. *Annual Review of Public Health, 19*, 293-318.

Rodgers, G. B. (2002). Effects of state helmet laws on bicycle helmet use by children and adolescents. *Injury Prevention, 8*, 42-46.

Sandt, L., LaJeunesse, S., Cohn, J., Pullen-Seufert, N., & Gallagher, J. (2015). *Watch for Me NC: Bicycle and Pedestrian Safety, Education, and Enforcement Campaign: 2014 Program Summary* (No. NCDOT Contract# 2014-45). www.watchformenc.org/wp-content/themes/WatchForMeNC_Custom/documents/WFM_FinalReport_2014.pdf

Scheiman, S., Moghaddas, H. S., Bjornstig, U., Bylundb, P.-O., & Saveman, B.-I. (2010). Bicycle injury events among older adults in Northern Sweden: A 10-year population based study. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 42,* 758-763.

Schroeder, P. & Wilbur, M. (2013, October). *2012 National survey of bicyclist and pedestrian attitudes and behavior, Volume 2: Findings report* (Report No. DOT HS 811 841 B). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1957

Shinar, D., Valero-Mora, P., van Strijp-Houtenbos, M., Haworth, N., Schramm, A., De Bruyne, G., Cavallo, V., Chliaoutakis, J., Dias, J., Ferraro, O. E., Fyhri, A., Hursa Sajatovic, A., Kuklane, K., Ledesma, R., Mascarell, O., Morandi, A., Muser, M., Otte, D., &

Tzamalouka, G. (2018). Under-reporting bicycle accidents to police in the COST TU1101 international survey: Cross-country comparisons and associated factors. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *110*, 177-186.

Stutts, J, C., & Hunter, W. W. (1999a). *Injuries to pedestrians and bicyclists: An analysis based on hospital emergency department data*. Federal Highway Administration. www.fhwa.dot.gov/publications/research/safety/pedbike/99078/

Stutts, J. C. & Hunter, W. W. (1999b). Motor vehicle and roadway factors in pedestrian and bicyclist injuries: An examination based on emergency department data. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 31,* 505-514.

Thomas, L., Masten, S., & Stutts, J. (2005). *Impact of school-based, hands-on bicycle safety education approaches for school-aged children*. University of North Carolina Highway Safety Research Center.

Thomas, L., Nordback, K., & Sanders, R. (2019). Bicyclist crash types on national, state, and local levels: A new look. *Transportation Research Record*, *2673*(6), 664–676. https://doi.org/10.1177/0361198119849056

Thompson, D. C., Rivara, F. P., & Thompson R. (2006). Helmets for preventing head and facial injuries in bicyclists. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, *Issue 2*. www.cochrane.org/reviews/en/ab001855.html

Thornley, S. J., Woodward, A., Langley, J. D., Ameratunga, S. N. & Rodgers, A. (2008). Conspicuity and bicycle crashes: Preliminary findings of the Taupo bicycle study. *Injury Prevention, 14,* 11-18.

Walter, S. R., Olivier, J., Churches, T., & Grzebieta, R. (2011). The impact of compulsory cycle helmet legislation on cyclist head injuries in New South Wales, Australia. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 43,* 2064-2071.

Wesson, D. E., Stephens, D., Lam, K., Parsons, D., Spence, L., & Parkin, P. C. (2008). Trends in pediatric and adult bicycling deaths before and after passage of a bicycle helmet law. *Pediatrics, 122*, 605-610.

Wolfe, E. S., Arabian, S. S., Breeze, J. L., & Salzler, M. J. (2016). Distracted biking: An observational study. *Journal of Trauma Nursing, 23*(2), 65-70.

Wood, J. M., Tyrrell, R. A., Marszalek, R., Lacherez, P., Carberry, T., & Chu, B. S. (2012). Using reflective clothing to enhance the conspicuity of bicyclists at night. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *45*, 726-730.

Zanotto, M., & Winters, M. L. (2017). Helmet use among personal bicycle riders and bike share users in Vancouver, BC. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 53*(4), 465-472.

Zegeer, C. V., Stutts, J., Huang, H., Cynecki, M. J., Van Houten, R., Alberson, B., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, & Hardy, K. K. (2004). *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, Volume 10: A guide for reducing collisions involving pedestrians*. Transportation Research Board. www.trb.org/Publications/Blurbs/154863.aspx

# 10. Drowsy Driving

## Overview

Drowsy driving is a prevalent safety concern that results in large part from lifestyle patterns and choices. In 2018 there were 775 fatalities involving drowsy drivers, representing 2.1% of all motor vehicle traffic crash fatalities (NCSA, 2019). Drowsy driving was reportedly involved in 2.1% to 2.5% of fatal crashes (NHTSA - FARS, 2014-2018) and 1.8% to 2.2% of overall injury crashes from 2016 to 2018 (NHTSA - CRSS, 2016-2018). Until recently, attention and research on drowsiness has primarily been concentrated on commercial truck drivers, but the problem is far more widespread. In a 2006 survey by the National Sleep Foundation, 51% of 552 young drivers (grades 10 to 12) reported driving at least once while drowsy (NSF, 2006). In 2014 more than one-third of 444,306 respondents 18 and older in the United States reported sleeping less than 7 hours a day—the minimum sleep duration recommended for optimal well-being (Liu, 2016). The 2017 AAA Traffic Safety Culture Index found that more than 40% of 2,613 drivers reported getting less than 6 hours of sleep a night in a typical week (AAAFTS, 2018).

Another study by the AAA Foundation aimed to quantify the relationship between sleep deprivation and crash risk (Tefft, 2016). A sample of 4,571 crashes that occurred from July 2005 to December 2007 in the United States was analyzed using a case-control design. Elevated crash risk was associated with fewer number of hours of sleep in the 24 hours before a crash. Drivers who reported less than 4 hours, 4-5 hours, 5-6 hours, and 6-7 hours of sleep were associated with a 11.5, 4.3, 1.9, and 1.3 times increase in crash rate than drivers who reported sleeping at least 7 of the past 24 hours. In addition, the study also estimated that changes from their normal sleep patterns can elevate drivers' crash risk. Drivers who slept 1-2 hours, 2-3 hours, 3-4 hours, or 4+ hours less than usual had crash rates that were 1.3, 3.0, 2.1, and 10.2 times greater than drivers who reported sleeping as usual. Overall, drivers who averaged 4 to 5 hours of sleep daily were estimated to have 5.4 times the crash rate of drivers who averaged seven or more hours of sleep (Tefft, 2016).

A change in the social perception of sleep and public awareness about the risks of drowsy driving are necessary to change a driver's decisions to drive when drowsy (Higgins et al., 2017). Few behavioral highway safety countermeasures have been shown to reduce drowsy driving, although new countermeasures are currently being developed and evaluated. NHTSA hosted the *Asleep at the Wheel: A Nation of Drowsy Drivers* forum in 2015 with the objective of addressing drowsy driving by bringing together the traffic safety and the sleep science communities (NHTSA, 2016a; Higgins et al., 2017). NHTSA released the *Drowsy Driving Research and Program Plan* in 2016 describing projects related to quantifying the problem, building public awareness and education, developing policy, identifying high-risk populations, and advancing vehicle technology and infrastructure (NHTSA, 2016b; Higgins et al., 2017). The National Transportation Safety Board reported that about 36 major transportation investigations from 2001 to 2012 identified fatigue as a potential cause or contributing factor; this included approximately 14 highway incident investigations (Marcus & Rosekind, 2017; GHSA, 2016). NTSB added "human fatigue" as an issue in its "Most Wanted List of Transportation Safety Improvements" in 2016 (GHSA, 2016; NTSB, 2016).

**Problem size and characteristics**

Drowsy driving can cause drivers to be less responsive to driving events in a way that potentially increases the risk of crashing (Lyznicki et al., 1998). Similar to distracted driving, most drivers acknowledge drowsy driving is potentially dangerous, but many still engage in this behavior. Several studies across the past two decades have estimated the portion of the population who have fallen asleep at the wheel through self-reporting. NHTSA surveyed 4,010 drivers in spring 2002 and found 11% reported that they had nodded off while driving during the past year (Royal, 2003). Of those who nodded off, 66% said they had 6 or fewer hours of sleep the previous night. A 2010 survey of 2,000 U.S. residents found 41% of drivers reported having ever fallen asleep or nodding off while driving (AAAFTS, 2010). Four percent of drivers reported falling asleep while driving in the past month, while 11% had done so in the past year. A similar, more recent study found that nearly all drivers (97%) believe it is unacceptable to drive while excessively drowsy, yet 32% admitted to having driven while too tired to easily keep their eyes open in the past 30 days (AAAFTS, 2016; similar results from the 2017 Traffic Safety Culture Index are reported in AAAFTS, 2018). A CDC analysis of the Behavioral Risk Factor Surveillance System phone survey across 19 States and the District of Columbia found that about 4% of 147,076 respondents reported falling asleep while driving at least once in the past 30 days (Wheaton et al., 2013). This proportion was consistent with a different sample of over 90,000 U.S. residents surveyed in 2011-2012 (Wheaton et al., 2014). A meta-analysis of seventeen international studies published between 1993 and 2014 reported that drivers who self-reported experiencing sleepiness while driving were at more than twice the risk of being involved in a motor vehicle crash compared to drivers who reported no such instances (Bioulac et al., 2017).

These surveys provide additional useful information about drowsy driving. Three of the studies found that young drivers and male drivers were more likely than older drivers and female drivers to have dozed off at the wheel (AAAFTS, 2010; Wheaton et al., 2013; Wheaton et al., 2014; Royal, 2003). Moreover, driving while drowsy does not just occur late at night. About one-quarter of those drivers who admit to nodding off say the most recent incident occurred in the afternoon (noon to 5 p.m.), which might be attributable to circadian rhythms (Royal, 2003). Drowsy driving is also not limited to long trips – roughly half of the drivers who nodded off had been driving for an hour or less. Adults who reported sleeping less than 6 hours per day, snoring, or unintentionally falling asleep during the day were more likely to fall asleep while driving (Wheaton et al., 2013). Drowsy driving was also found to be more prevalent among binge drinkers and those who seldom or never used seatbelts (Wheaton et al., 2014), which suggests that drowsy driving may be more prevalent among drivers who generally engage in riskier behaviors. A driving simulator study conducted in Australia identified another vulnerable group of fatigue-prone drivers—regular commuters (Caponecchia & Williamson, 2018). Participants with sleep deprivation were worse at lane keeping than participants with no sleep deprivation with longer durations of sleep deprivation producing greater lane deviations. The effect was increased in the morning even on short drives, and the authors suggest that sleep inertia could be a potential factor. Sleep inertia is a transitional phase between sleep and wakefulness that results in low arousal and impaired performance (Tassi & Muzet, 2000; Caponecchia & Williamson, 2018).

Even though post-hoc estimates provide a useful picture of the risk of driver drowsiness (Tefft, 2016), it is often difficult to determine whether drowsy driving contributed to a crash. Similar to distracted driving, drivers may be reluctant to admit they dozed off following a crash. Current data estimates that 2% to 20% of annual traffic deaths are attributable to driver drowsiness, according to the NHTSA Drowsy Driving Research and Program Plan (NHTSA, 2016b). According to NHTSA's Fatality Analysis Reporting System (FARS) and the Crash Report Sampling System, (CRSS) annually from 2016 to 2018, there were on average over 96,000 police-reported crashes involving drowsy drivers. These crashes injured more than 52,000 people and killed more than 800. However, researchers have inferred the existence of additional drowsy-driving crashes by looking for correlations with related factors such as the number of passengers in the vehicle, crash time and day of week, sex of the driver, and crash type. A study by the AAA Foundation, using data from 1999 to 2013, found that driver drowsiness may have contributed to 6% of all crashes and 21% of fatal crashes (Tefft, 2014). This estimate suggests that more than 6,000 people may have died in drowsy-driving-related motor vehicle crashes across the United States last year.

Naturalistic driving studies (NDSs) may help us understand the associations between driver drowsiness and crash risk. One recent study by the AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety used the Strategic Highway Research Program 2 (SHRP2) NDS data to estimate the prevalence of driver drowsiness immediately before crashes (Owens et al., 2018). Drowsiness was assessed as the percent of time a driver's eyes were closed (Wierwille et al., 1994). It examined 701 crashes. Estimates show that drowsiness may have been a contributing factor in 8.8% to 9.5% of all crashes examined and in 10.6% to 10.8% of crashes that resulted in airbag deployment, significant property damage, or injury (Owens et al., 2018).

## Strategies to Reduce Drowsy Driving

The seemingly easy way to reduce drowsy driving crashes is to convince or require drivers to get enough sleep daily or arrange alternate transportation. However, getting more sleep may be a difficult goal. Drowsy driving may result from lifestyles that include insufficient or irregular sleep (shift workers, for instance) or from medical problems – issues beyond a driver's immediate control. For example, a recent CDC study in 29 States found that people in certain occupational groups—production, healthcare support, healthcare practice, food preparation, protective services, and some transportation services—were more at risk for having short sleep duration of less than 7 hours each day (Shockey & Wheaton, 2017). Moreover, studies indicate that drivers themselves are poor judges of the performance decrements that result from drowsiness (Powell & Chau, 2011).

Behavioral strategies for drowsy driving focus on removing some of the underlying causes or promoting awareness of the risks. Currently, few studies have examined whether the standard behavioral countermeasures of laws, enforcement, and sanctions (which are used successfully for alcohol impairment, seat belt use, aggressive driving, and speeding) are effective for drowsy drivers. Additionally, standard behavioral countermeasures have been studied with young drivers. Some GDL provisions help reduce drowsy driving by prohibiting nighttime driving (see Chapter 6, Sections 1.3 to 1.5).

Drowsy driving that is related to a driver's job may be reduced through employer policies and programs. Links to employer-based resources are available from the Network of Employers for Traffic Safety through trafficsafety.org. The National Safety Council also provides resources to employers, including an online fatigue toolkit - safety.nsc.org/fatigue-risk-management-toolkit. The NTSB provides an overview of employer measures at www.ntsb.gov/safety/mwl/Documents/2017-18/2017MWL-FctSht-Fatigue-H.pdf. Drowsy driving caused by medical conditions, such as sleep apnea, or by drugs or medications may be addressed through policies, communications, and outreach. Similarly, communications and outreach may be useful in raising awareness of specific drowsiness issues among certain high-risk populations. However, it is unknown if any of these strategies have been evaluated.

There are a variety of environmental and vehicular strategies to address drowsy driving. Rumble strips, both on the shoulder and the centerline, have demonstrated their effectiveness in preventing crashes associated with inattention or drowsiness (Persaud et al., 2016). Other roadway improvements, such as wide and visible edge lines, more easily visible road signs, and better lighting at night can help drivers who are not fully alert, particularly due to sleepiness. Vehicular strategies that hold promise for reducing crashes among drivers who are drowsy or inattentive include collision avoidance technologies such as lane departure warning, crash-imminent braking, and forward collision warning, and vehicle-to-vehicle and vehicle-to-infrastructure communications technologies (IIHS, 2012; IIHS, 2014). Such technologies, once available only in luxury brands, are now offered in many new vehicles. Additionally, in-vehicle technologies are available and being further developed to detect driver drowsiness by monitoring driver performance and then warning drivers (May & Baldwin, 2009; Papadelis et al., 2007; Sahayadhas et al., 2012; Brown et al., 2014). This chapter only addresses behavioral strategies. It does not include environmental, vehicular, and engineering countermeasures because State Highway Safety Offices generally do not have authority or responsibility in these areas.

Driver drowsiness is a critical issue for commercial drivers. About 14% of truck drivers reported a near-crash due to drowsiness according to a 2012 survey by the National Sleep Foundation (NSF, 2012). The Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration, in partnership with Transport Canada and several Canadian Provinces, created the North American Fatigue Management Program (NAFMP) to research and educate against fatigued driving (FMCSA, 2016). FMCSA regulates drowsiness in commercial drivers through Hours of Service regulations, driver logs and inspections; starting December 2017, the use of electronic logging devices (ELDs) were made mandatory for commercial bus and truck drivers (80 Fed. Reg. 78292, 2015). NHTSA has also developed a prototype Drowsy Driver Warning System that appears promising in reducing drowsiness among drivers of heavy vehicles (Blanco et al., 2009; see also Brown et al., 2014). As with the environmental and vehicular countermeasures mentioned above, commercial driver countermeasures are not discussed in this guide because they generally do not fall under SHSO jurisdiction.

## Resources

The agencies and organizations listed below can provide more information on drowsy driving and links to numerous other resources.

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration:
  - Asleep at the Wheel: A Nation of Drowsy Drivers Forum (NHTSA, 2016a).
  - Drowsy Driving Research and Program Plan – DOT HS 812 252 (NHTSA, 2016b).
  - Drowsy Driving – www.nhtsa.gov/risky-driving/drowsy-driving
  - Behavioral Safety Research Reports – https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov
- Governors Highway Safety Association: www.ghsa.org
  - Wake Up Call! Understanding Drowsy Driving and What States Can Do (GHSA, 2016).
- National Transportation Safety Board: www.ntsb.gov/safety/mwl/Documents/2017-18/2017MWL-FctSht-Fatigue-H.pdf (overview) and www.ntsb.gov/safety/safety-alerts/Documents/SA_061.pdf (drowsy driving risks for teen drivers)
- National Safety Council: www.nsc.org/road-safety/safety-topics/fatigued-driving
- National Conference of State Legislatures: www.ncsl.org/research/transportation/summaries-of-current-drowsy-driving-laws.aspx
- National Sleep Foundation: www.sleepfoundation.org and www.sleep.org
- Insurance Institute for Highway Safety: www.iihs.org
- AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety: www.aaafoundation.org
- Network of Employers for Traffic Safety: www.trafficsafety.org

## Key terms

- GDL: Graduated driver licensing, a three-phase system for beginning drivers consisting of a learner's permit, a provisional license, and a full license. A learner's permit allows driving only while supervised by a fully licensed driver. A provisional license allows unsupervised driving under certain restrictions.
- NCSDR: National Center for Sleep Disorders Research.
- NSF: National Sleep Foundation.

# Drowsy Driving Countermeasures

Countermeasures to reduce drowsy driving are listed in the table below. The table is intended to provide a rough estimate of each countermeasure's effectiveness, use, cost, and time required for implementation. Effectiveness is shown using a five-star rating system.

- Countermeasures that receive ★★★★ or ★★★★★ have been determined to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ★★★ are considered promising, and likely to be effective.
- Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States, communities, and other organizations are encouraged to use ★★★, and especially ★★★★ or ★★★★★, countermeasures. They should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

Further details about the symbols and terms used are included after the table. Effectiveness, cost, and time to implement can vary substantially from State to State and community to community. Costs for many countermeasures are difficult to measure, so the summary terms are very approximate.

Each countermeasure to reduce drowsy driving is discussed individually in this chapter. Full descriptions are included for ★★★, ★★★★ and ★★★★★ countermeasures. Brief descriptions are included for ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Further details about the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures are included in Appendix A4 to this report.

### 1. Laws and Enforcement

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 GDL Requirements for Beginning Drivers | ★★★★★† | $ | High | Medium |
| 1.2 General Drowsiness Laws | ☆ | Varies | High†† | Short |

† Effectiveness demonstrated for nighttime restrictions
†† Included under reckless driving; use of explicit drowsiness laws is low

## 2. Communications and Outreach

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 Communications and Outreach on Drowsy Driving | ☆ | $$ | Unknown | Medium |

## 3. Other Countermeasures

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Employer Programs | ☆☆ | $ | Unknown | Short |
| 3.2 Education Regarding Medical Conditions and Medications | ☆ | Variable | Unknown | Medium |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ★★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective by several high-quality evaluations with consistent results |
| ★★★★ | Demonstrated to be effective in certain situations |
| ★★★ | Likely to be effective based on balance of evidence from high-quality evaluations or other sources |
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Laws and Enforcement

### 1.1 Graduated Driver Licensing Requirements for Beginning Drivers

| Effectiveness: ★★★★★† | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† Effectiveness demonstrated for nighttime restrictions

Teens are less experienced at the task of driving, so driving requires more of their deliberate attention than is the case for experienced drivers (Lansdown, 2002). Some studies suggest that drivers 16 to 24 are somewhat more likely than other age groups to drive while drowsy (Royal, 2003; Wheaton et al., 2014).

The nighttime driving restriction of GDL reduces the likelihood of drowsiness for newly licensed drivers. Driving at night is associated with higher fatal crash risk than during the day for teen drivers (McCartt & Teoh, 2015), and also may pose greater risks of drowsy driving. The NCHRP guide for reducing crashes involving young drivers describes the key provisions of GDL laws (Goodwin et al., 2007). The Insurance Institute for Highway Safety (IIHS, 2019) and the Governors Highway Safety Association (2019) summarize State GDL laws. These summaries are updated monthly. See Chapter 6, Sections 1.1 and Appendix A6, Section 1.7, for a complete discussion of GDL for beginning young drivers.

**Use:** As of November 2016, all 50 States and the District of Columbia had some GDL components in place. The laws in 49 States and the District of Columbia do not allow driving during certain nighttime hours during the intermediate license stage. (This stage limits unsupervised driving during high risk situations.)

**Effectiveness:** Several studies document that nighttime GDL restrictions reduce teenage driver crashes and injuries (Hedlund & Compton, 2005; Goodwin et al., 2007; Williams, 2007; Williams, 2017). Young drivers are involved in a disproportionately high number fatal crashes that occur between 9 p.m. and 6 a.m. compared to the number of miles driven during that time frame (Williams & Preusser, 1997). When a GDL system with appropriate restrictions (including earlier nighttime restrictions) is implemented, crash rates for 16-year-old drivers are reduced 25 to 35% and for 17-year-old drivers by 15 to 20% (Goodwin et al., 2007). In North Carolina following the introduction of a 9 p.m. nighttime restriction, Foss et al. (2001) reported a 43% decrease in crashes between 9 p.m. and 5 a.m. compared to a 20% reduction in daytime crashes. After a nighttime restriction beginning at midnight was implemented in Michigan, there was a 53% decrease in crashes among 16-year-old drivers between midnight and 4:59 a.m. compared to a 24% decrease during the day (5 a.m. to 8:59 p.m.) and a 21% decrease from 9 p.m. to 11:59 p.m. (Shope et al., 2001). Goodwin et al. (2007) recommend nighttime GDL restrictions start earlier (i.e., 9 p.m.) rather than later.

One factor that may undermine the effectiveness of GDL restrictions in teen drivers is the perception that the risk of penalty from not complying with the law is low. In particular, a study of GDL violations in Washington State and North Carolina found low overall enforcement of the GDL requirement laws (AAAFTS, 2014). The AAA Foundation also found that a high proportion of GDL citations, including those requiring nighttime supervision (27%), were

dismissed by the courts, which "may very well be detrimental to the overall effectiveness of GDL programs."

**Costs:** Publicity for GDL restriction changes can be delivered directly by the Department of Motor Vehicles to young drivers as they apply for their learner's permits and provisional licenses, so costs can be minimal. Information about GDL restrictions can also be provided through driver education courses.

**Time to implement:** GDL nighttime restriction changes require several months to implement for drivers receiving a provisional license. They then will take 1 or 2 years before all provisionally licensed drivers are subject to the new restrictions.

### 1.2 General Driver Drowsiness Laws

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: High† | Time: Short |

† Included under reckless driving; use of explicit drowsiness laws is low.

This countermeasure involves laws that specifically target the issue of drowsy drivers. With regard to drowsy driving, this type of law would permit drivers to be prosecuted for vehicular homicide if they have not slept in 24 hours and they cause a crash in which someone is killed.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *Laws that specifically target drowsy drivers are not widely used, and this countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A10, Section 1.2.

## 2. Communications and Outreach

### 2.1 Communications and Outreach on Drowsy Driving

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |

This countermeasure involves drowsy driving communications and outreach campaigns directed to the general public (Stutts et al., 2005, Strategy C1; NSF, 2004). Campaign goals usually include:

- raising awareness of the dangers of drowsy driving;
- motivating drivers to take action to reduce drowsy driving; and
- providing information on what drivers can do, either before they start out on a trip or if they become drowsy while driving.

These campaigns are conducted by States and national organizations such as the National Sleep Foundation.

**Effectiveness Concerns**: *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A10, Section 2.1.

## 3. Other Countermeasures

### 3.1 Employer Programs

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

This countermeasure involves employer-based programs targeting workers that are at higher risk of drowsy-driving crashes. These groups include shift workers who work long or irregular hours or who work at night, including many LEOs (Stutts et al., 2005, Strategy D6). Another at-risk group for drowsy driving crashes is medical interns and emergency responders (such as EMS), who frequently work extended shifts of 24 hours or more. Education program for shift workers can include information on sleep habits in general and drowsy driving in particular. Employer programs can also include medical condition testing/education.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A10, Section 3.1.

### 3.2 Education Regarding Medical Conditions and Medications

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Variable | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

This countermeasure involves providing education about chronic medical conditions and sleep disorders that may compromise sleep and lead to drowsy driving or falling asleep at the wheel. These conditions include insomnia, sleep apnea, and narcolepsy.

The principal countermeasures to address these conditions are:

- Communications and outreach on sleep disorders to increase overall awareness of their symptoms, consequences, and treatment.
- Efforts with driver licensing medical advisory boards to increase their awareness of these conditions as they review driver fitness for licensing.
- Efforts with physicians to increase their awareness of these conditions and their potential effects on driving, to treatment for these conditions as appropriate, and to counsel their patients to take steps to reduce the risk of drowsy driving.

**Effectiveness Concerns:** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Further information about the known research, potential effectiveness, costs, use, and time to implement is available in Appendix A10, Section 3.2.

**Drowsy Driving References**

80 Fed. Reg. 78292 (December 16, 2015), Electronic logging devices and hours of service supporting documents; Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration, Final rule. www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/FR-2015-12-16/pdf/2015-31336.pdf

AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety . (2010). *Asleep at the wheel: The prevalence and impact of drowsy driving*. www.aaafoundation.org/pdf/2010DrowsyDrivingReport.pdf

AAAFTS. (2014). *Violations and enforcement of graduated driver licensing restrictions in North Carolina and Washington State*.

AAAFTS. (2016). *2015 traffic safety culture index.* https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/02/2015TrafficSafetyCultureIndexReport.pdf

AAAFTS. (2018). *2017 traffic safety culture index.* https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/03/TSCI-2017-Report.pdf

Bioulac, S., Franchi, J. A. M., Arnaud, M., Sagaspe, P., Moore, N., Salvo, F., & Philip, P. (2017). Risk of motor vehicle accidents related to sleepiness at the wheel: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Sleep*, *40*(10), zsx134.

Blanco, M., Bocanegra, J. L., Morgan, J. F., Fitch, G. M, Medina, A., Olson, R. L., Hanowski, R., J., Daily, B. &Zimmermann, R. P. [Part I], Howarth, H. D., Domenico, T., E., Barr, L. C., Popkin, S., M., & Green, K. [Part II] (2009, April). *Assessment of a drowsy driver warning system for heavy-vehicle drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 811 117). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.dot.gov/DOT/NHTSA/-NRD/Multimedia/PDFs/Crash%20Avoidance/2009/811117.pdf

Brown, T., Lee, J., Schwarz, C., Fiorentino, D., & McDonald, A. (2014, February). *Assessing the feasibility of vehicle-based sensors to detect drowsy driving* (Report No. DOT HS 811 886). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/NVS/Crash%20Avoidance/Technical%20Publications/2014/811886-Assess_veh-based_sensors_4_drowsy-driving_detection.pdf

Caponecchia, C., & Williamson, A. (2018). Drowsiness and driving performance on commuter trips. *Journal of Safety Research*, *66*, 179-186.

FMCSA. (2016). *Strategic plan, Fiscal years 2015-2018*. www.fmcsa.dot.gov/sites/fmcsa.dot.gov/files/docs/FMCSA_FY2015_FY2018_Strategic_Plan_082618.pdf

Foss, R. D., Feaganes, J. R., & Rodgman, E. A. (2001). Initial effects of graduated driver licensing on 16-year-old driver crashes in North Carolina. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 286*(13), 1588-1592.

Governors Highway Safety Association. (2016). *Wake up call! Understanding drowsy driving and what States can do.* www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2017-02/Drowsy%202016-U.pdf

GHSA. (2019). *Teen and novice drivers.* www.ghsa.org/taxonomy/term/331

Goodwin, A., Foss, R., Sohn, J., & Mayhew, D. (2007). *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, Volume 19: A guide for reducing collisions*

*involving young drivers*. Transportation Research Board. www.trb.org/Publications/Blurbs/159494.aspx

Hedlund, J., & Compton, R. (2005). Graduated driver licensing research in 2004 and 2005. *Journal of Safety Research*, *36*, 109-119.

Higgins, J. S., Michael, J., Austin, R., Åkerstedt, T., Van Dongen, H., Watson, N., Czeisler, C., Pack, A. I., & Rosekind, M. R. (2017). Asleep at the wheel—The road to addressing drowsy driving. *Sleep*, *40*(2), zsx001.

Insurance Institute for Highway Safety. (2012). They're working: Insurance collision claims data show which new technologies are preventing crashes. *Status Report*, Special Issue: Crash Avoidance, *47*(5). http://multivu.prnewswire.com/broadcast/56874/56874sr.pdf

IIHS. (2014, October 24). Technology that pays attention to the road when drivers don't. In *Status Report, Eyes on the road, Searching for answers to the problem of distracted driving, 49*(8). www.iihs.org/api/datastoredocument/status-report/pdf/49/8

IIHS. (2019). *Teenagers*. www.iihs.org/topics/teenagers#graduated-licensing

Lansdown, T. C. (2002). Individual differences during driver secondary task performance: Verbal protocol and visual allocation findings. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *34*(5), 655-662.

Liu, Y. (2016). Prevalence of healthy sleep duration among adults—United States, 2014. *MMWR. Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, *65*, 137-141.

Lyznicki, J. M., Doege, T. C., Davis, R. M., & Williams, M. A. (1998). Sleepiness, driving, and motor vehicle crashes. *JAMA*, *279*(23), 1908-1913.

Marcus, J. H., & Rosekind, M. R. (2017). Fatigue in transportation: NTSB investigations and safety recommendations. *Injury Prevention*, *23*(4), 232-238.

May, J. F., & Baldwin, C. L. (2009). Driver fatigue: The importance of identifying causal factors of fatigue when considering detection and countermeasure technologies. *Transportation Research Part F*, *12*, 218-224.

McCartt, A. T., & Teoh, E. R. (2015). Tracking progress in teenage driver crash risk in the United States since the advent of graduated driver licensing programs. *Journal of Safety Research*, 53, 1–9

National Center for Statistics and Analysis. (2019, October). *2018 fatal motor vehicle crashes: Overview* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 812 826). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812826

NHTSA. (2014-2018). *Fatality Analysis Reporting System (FARS)* [Custom data set analysis]. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

NHTSA. (2016-2018). *Crash Report Sampling System (CRSS)* [Custom data set analysis]. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (2016a). *Asleep at the wheel: A nation of drowsy drivers* [Web page meeting agenda]. www.nhtsa.gov/nhtsa/symposiums/november2015/index.html

NHTSA. (2016b). *NHTSA drowsy driving research and program plan* (Report No. DOT HS 812 252). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/drowsydriving_strategicplan_030316.pdf

National Sleep Foundation (NSF). (2004). Drive Alert – Arrive Alive *national campaign.*

NSF. (2006). *Teens and sleep: Sleep in America poll*. www.sleepfoundation.org/professionals/sleep-america-polls/2006-teens-and-sleep

NSF. (2012). *Transportation workers' sleep: Sleep in America poll*. www.sleepfoundation.org/professionals/sleep-america-polls/2012-transportation-workers-sleep

National Transportation Safety Board. (2016). *Most wanted list of transportation safety improvements*. www.ntsb.gov/safety/mwl/Documents/MWL2016_Brochure_web.pdf

Owens, J. M., Dingus, T. A., Guo, F., Fang, Y., Perez, M., McClafferty, J., & Tefft, B. (2018). *Prevalence of drowsy-driving crashes: Estimates from a large-scale naturalistic driving study.* AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. http://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/FINAL_AAAFTS-Drowsy-Driving-Research-Brief-1.pdf

Papadelis, C., Chen, Z., Kourtidou-Papadeli, C., Bamidis, P. D., Chouvarda, I., Bekiaris, E., & Maglaveras, N. (2007). Monitoring sleepiness with on-board electrophysiological recordings for preventing sleep-deprived traffic accidents. *Clinical Neurophysiology*, *118*, 1906-1922.

Persaud, B., Lyon, C., Eccles, K., & Soika, J. (2016). Safety effectiveness of centerline plus shoulder rumble strips on two-lane rural roads. *Journal of Transportation Engineering*, *142*(5). dx.doi.org/10.1061/(ASCE)TE.1943-5436.0000821#sthash.g02qiq31.dpuf

Powell, N. B., & Chau, J. K. (2011). Sleepy driving. *Sleep Medicine Clinics*, *6*(1), 117-124.

Royal, D. (2003, April). *National survey of distracted and drowsy driving attitudes and behavior: 2002 volume I: Findings* (Report No. DOT HS 809 566). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/hs809566v1.pdf

Sahayadhas, A., Sundaraj, K., & Murugappan, M. (2012). Detecting driver drowsiness based on sensors: A review. *Sensors*, *12*, 16937-16953.

Shockey, T. M., & Wheaton, A. G. (2017). Short sleep duration by occupation group—29 states, 2013–2014. *MMWR - Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, *66*(8), 207.

Shope, J. T., Molnar, L. J., Elliott, M. R., & Waller, P. F. (2001). Graduated driver licensing in Michigan. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 286*(13), 1593-1598.

Stutts, J., Knipling, R. R., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L., & Hardy, K. K. (2005). *A guide for addressing collisions involving distracted or fatigued drivers.* (Report 500, Vol. 14). Transportation Research Board. http://download.nap.edu/cart/download.cgi?record_id=23420

Tassi, P., & Muzet, A. (2000). Sleep inertia. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, *4*(4), 341-353.

Tefft, B. C. (2014*). Prevalence of motor vehicle crashes involving drowsy drivers, United States, 1999-2013.* AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/12/PrevalenceofMVCDrowsyDriversReport.pdf

Tefft, B. C. (2016). *Acute sleep deprivation and risk of motor vehicle crash involvement.* AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. www.aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/12/AcuteSleepDeprivationCrashRisk.pdf

Wheaton, A. G., Chapman, D. P., Presley-Cantrell, L. R., Croft, J. B., & Roehler, D. R. (2013). Drowsy driving – 19 States and the District of Columbia, 2009-2010. *Centers for Disease Control Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, *61*, Nos 51 & 52, 1033-1037. www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm6151a1.htm

Wheaton, A. G., Shults, R. A., Chapman, D. P., Ford, E. S., & Croft, J. B. (2014). Drowsy driving and risk behaviors-10 States and Puerto Rico, 2011-2012. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, *63*, 557-562.

Wierwille, W. W., Wreggit, S. S., Kirn, C. L., Ellsworth, L. A., & Fairbanks, R. J. (1994). *Research on vehicle-based driver status/performance monitoring; Development, validation, and refinement of algorithms for detection of driver drowsiness* (Report No. DOT HS 808 247). http://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/34a2/46fc18a7972905eb5c8fd0ad755f4fb0c195.pdf

Williams, A. F. (2007). Contribution of the components of graduated licensing to crash reductions. *Journal of Safety Research, 38*, 177-184.

Williams, A. F. (2017). Graduated driver licensing (GDL) in the United States in 2016: A literature review and commentary. *Journal of Safety Research*, *63*, 29-41.

Williams, A. F., & Preusser, D. F. (1997). Night driving restrictions for youthful drivers: A literature review and commentary. *Journal of Public Health Policy, 18*(3), 334-345.

# A1. Alcohol and Drug Impaired Driving

This section provides expanded discussion of the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

The ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures covered in this section of the appendix are listed below.

### 1. Deterrence: Laws

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.5 Alcohol-Impaired-Driving Law Review | ☆☆ | $$ | Unknown | Medium |

### 3. Deterrence: Prosecution and Adjudication

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.4 Sanctions | ☆☆ | Varies | Varies | Varies |

### 5. Prevention, Intervention, Communications and Outreach

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5.3 Responsible Beverage Service | ☆☆ | $$ | Medium | Medium |
| 5.5 Designated Drivers | ☆☆ | $ | Medium | Short |

### 6. Underage Drinking and Drinking and Driving

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6.5 Youth Programs | ☆☆ | Varies | High | Medium |

### 7. Drug-Impaired Driving

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7.2 Drug-Impaired Driving Laws | ☆ | Unknown | Medium† | Short |
| 7.3 Education Regarding Medication | ☆ | Unknown | Unknown | Long |

† Use for drug per se laws

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Deterrence: Laws

### 1.5 Alcohol-Impaired-Driving Law Review

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Alcohol-impaired-driving laws in many States are extremely complex. They may be difficult to understand, enforce, prosecute, and adjudicate, with many inconsistencies and unintended consequences. In many States, a thorough review and revision would produce a system of laws that would be far simpler and more understandable, efficient, and effective.

DWI laws have evolved over the past 30 years to incorporate new definitions of the offense of driving while impaired (illegal per se laws), new technology and methods for determining impairment (e.g., BAC tests, SFSTs), and new sentencing and monitoring alternatives (e.g., electronic monitoring, alcohol ignition interlocks). Many States modified their laws to incorporate these new ideas without reviewing their effect on the overall DWI control system. The result is often an inconsistent patchwork. Robertson and Simpson (2002) summarized the opinions of hundreds of LEOs, prosecutors, judges, and probation officials across the country: "Professionals unanimously support the simplification and streamlining of existing DWI statutes" (p. 18). See also Hedlund and McCartt (2002).

About a year before it disbanded, the National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances prepared a model DWI law, which has been incorporated into the Uniform Vehicle Code (NCUTLO, 2000). It addressed BAC testing, BAC test refusals, higher penalties for high-BAC drivers, ALR hearing procedures, and many other issues of current interest. States can use the NCUTLO model as a reference point in reviewing their own laws. In addition, the Traffic Injury Research Foundation has a guidebook to assist policymakers in leading a strategic review of DWI systems, with the goal of streamlining systems and closing loopholes that can be exploited by offenders (Robertson, Vanlaar, & Simpson, 2007). NHTSA also has created several guidebooks, including one to assist States in establishing impaired-driving statewide task forces to review key legislation and improve current DWI systems (Fell & Langston, 2009), and another to assist officials and the general public in establishing task forces at local or regional levels (Fell et al., 2011).

At a State's request, NHTSA will facilitate an Impaired Driving Program Assessment to evaluate the State's impaired-driving system and to make recommendations for strengthening its programs, policies, and practices. NHTSA and the SHSO assemble an assessment team comprised of national and State experts in impaired driving. The team reviews and documents the strengths and weaknesses of the State's existing impaired-driving system and provides the State recommendations on actions that can be taken to improve the impaired driving system.

**Use:** No data are available on which States have reviewed and revised their DWI laws.

**Effectiveness:** To date no studies have examined the effectiveness of law reviews in reducing alcohol-impaired crashes. The effect of a law review will depend on the extent of inconsistencies and inefficiencies in a State's current laws. A law review can be an important action a State takes to address its alcohol-impaired-driving problem, because a thorough law review will examine the function of the entire DWI control system and will identify problem areas. The immediate effect of a law review should be a more efficient and effective DWI control system.

Some States that have incorporated assessments into their programs have experienced declines in impaired driving fatality rates (Coleman & Mizenko, 2018). Based on the results of an assessment, each of three States developed an impaired-driving strategic plan and formed a leadership team comprised of both government and non-government stakeholders to develop and implement policies and procedures for reducing impaired fatalities. Impaired-fatality rates per 100 million VMT improved in each State (0.66 to 0.36 from 2004 to 2015 in New Mexico, 0.42 to 0.23 from 2000 to 2009 in Washington State, and 0.44 to 0.36 from 2012 to 2015 in Oklahoma) after adopting the model. However, these outcomes do not suggest a causal relationship between the specifics of the impaired-driving strategic plan and improvements in fatality rates. More research is needed to determine what factors influenced the improvements.

**Costs:** The review will require substantial staff time. Implementation costs of course will depend on the extent to which the laws are changed.

**Time to implement:** It can take considerable time to identify qualified stakeholders and establish a task force to conduct the law review.

## 3. Deterrence: Prosecution and Adjudication

### 3.4 Sanctions

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Varies | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *Most of these measures are widely used. Their respective effectiveness has been examined in research studies. Despite some positive research findings, the balance of evidence regarding the effectiveness of these countermeasures remains inconclusive.*

The standard court sanctions for DWI offenses are driver's license suspension or revocation, fines, jail, and community service. All States use some combination of these sanctions. Details of each State's laws may be found in NHTSA's *Digest of Impaired Driving and Selected Beverage Control Laws* (NHTSA, 2017a). Some States set mandatory minimum levels for some sanctions, which often increase for second and subsequent offenders.

DWI offenders also may have their driver's licenses revoked or suspended administratively and may have sanctions imposed on their vehicles or license plates. See Chapter 1, Section 1.1, Administrative License Revocation or Suspension, and Chapter 1, Section 4.3, Vehicle and License Plate Sanctions, for discussions of these sanctions. See also NHTSA's *Guide to Sentencing DWI Offenders* (NHTSA, 2006) for an overview of sanctions and sentencing practices for judges and prosecutors, with extensive references. The *Guide* also includes screening and brief intervention, alcohol treatment, and DWI courts.

**License suspension or revocation:** All States allow post-conviction license actions. As of 2015 there were 19 States and the District of Columbia that set mandatory minimum lengths for first offenders (NHTSA, 2017a). This suspension or revocation typically runs concurrently with any administrative license action. In most States, offenders may obtain an occupational or hardship license during part or all the revocation or suspension period.

Although *administrative* license actions are highly effective in reducing crashes (see Chapter 1, Section 1.1), *court-imposed* license actions appear less effective. A study of 46 States found that post-conviction license suspension had no discernible effects on alcohol-related fatal crashes (Wagenaar & Maldonado-Molina, 2007). As discussed in Chapter 1, Section 1.1, some DWI offenders continue to drive with suspended or revoked licenses, and many DWI offenders do not reinstate their licenses when they are eligible to do so. Consequently, long court-imposed license suspensions may do little to reduce recidivism. Instead, it may be important to encourage DWI offenders to reinstate their licenses, but with appropriate controls such as ignition interlocks (Section 4.2) and close monitoring (Section 4.4).

**Fines:** Most States impose fines on DWI offenders. As of 2015 there were 29 States and the District of Columbia that had mandatory minimum fines for first offenders, ranging from $200 (West Virginia; BAC ≥ .15 g/dL) to $1,500 (Alaska) (NHTSA, 2017a). In addition to fines, offenders often face substantial costs for license reinstatement, mandated alcohol education or treatment, insurance rate increases, and legal fees. Available evidence suggests that fines appear to have little effect on reducing alcohol-impaired driving. For example, Wagenaar et al. (2008)

examined alcohol-related fatal crashes across 32 States and concluded that mandatory fines "do not have clearly demonstrable general deterrent or preventive effects" (p. 992). Another study from Australia found the size of fines was unrelated to recidivism rates among DWI offenders (Weatherburn & Moffatt, 2011). Even though fines may not reduce alcohol-impaired driving, they do help support the system financially.

According to a report by the European Transport Safety Council (2016), most countries in Europe impose fines that are not income related as a sanction for alcohol offenders. Fines are preferred over jail sentences because of a higher benefit-to-cost ratio and the additional support they offer to alcohol programs through the earned money. Imprisonment is most common when alcohol-related crashes result in a fatality. In addition, the effectiveness of sanctions is enhanced with strong enforcement and when integrated into other treatment programs.

**Jail:** All States allow some DWI offenders to be sentenced to jail. The length of sentences varies by State and often depends on the number of prior convictions, the driver's BAC, whether the crash resulted in an injury or fatality, whether a child passenger was present (child endangerment laws), and several other factors. Additionally, some States allow community service in lieu of jail. Details of each State's laws may be found in NHTSA's *Digest of Impaired Driving and Selected Beverage Control Laws* (NHTSA, 2017a).

Jail is the most severe and most contentious of the DWI sanctions. Jail is expensive. In 2015 the average annual cost per inmate among 45 States was $33,274. Alabama had the lowest cost at $14,780, and the highest was in New York at $69,355 (Mai & Subramanian, 2017). Judges and prosecutors may be reluctant to use limited jail space for DWI offenders rather than "real" criminals. Offenses with mandatory jail terms may be pled down, or judges simply may ignore the mandatory jail requirement (Robertson & Simpson, 2002).

Research on the effectiveness of jail is equivocal at best (Voas & Lacey, 2011, pp. 215-216; NTSB, 2000). Very short (48-hour) jail sentences for first offenders may be effective (NTSB, 2000) and the threat of jail may be effective as a deterrent (as is done in DWI and drug courts), but other jail policies appear to have little effect. Wagenaar et al. (2000) reviewed 18 studies and concluded: "The balance of the evidence clearly suggests the ineffectiveness of mandatory jail sentence policies" (p. 12). In fact, they find "numerous studies that indicate that [mandatory jail] might be a counterproductive policy" (p. 12) that increases alcohol-related crashes.

**Community service:** Many States allow community service as part of DWI offenders' sentences and 9 States allow community service in lieu of mandatory jail for first-time offenders (NHTSA, 2017a). Community service can provide benefits to society if offenders perform useful work, but even if appropriate jobs can be found there are costs for program operation, offender supervision, and liability. The effects of community service programs on alcohol-impaired driving have not been evaluated (Century Council, 2008).

**Victim Impact Panels:** DWI offenders are often required to attend victim impact panels, in which offenders hear from people whose lives have been permanently altered by impaired drivers. An estimated 400,000 offenders each year attend victim impact panels conducted by more than 200 MADD chapters across the United States (Voas & Lacey, 2011). Although victim

impact panels are intuitively appealing, most studies suggest they do not reduce recidivism (Crew & Johnson, 2011; deBaca et al., 2001; Shinar & Compton, 1995; Wheeler et al., 2004).

**Vehicle Impoundment:** A 7-day vehicle impoundment program implemented as an additional penalty in Ontario, Canada, in 2010 has been associated with decreases in alcohol-related driving offenses. The program targets alcohol convictions specific to driving with a BAC> .08 g/dL, refusal to comply to roadside screening, and violations of license suspension or ignition interlock conditions. One study found a 29% decrease in which recidivism in the 3 months following a suspension was attributed to the 7-day vehicle impound program (Byrne et al., 2016).

## 5. Prevention, Intervention, Communications and Outreach

### 5.3 Responsible Beverage Service

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure's effectiveness has been examined in several research studies; however, server training programs are the only segment of responsible beverage service for adults that has been adequately documented and evaluated. Research suggests that server training programs can be effective if they involve intensive, high-quality, face-to-face server training accompanied by strong and active management support (Shults et al., 2001). When server training programs are not intensive and are not supported, they are unlikely to result in greater refusals of service to intoxicated patrons. Despite these positive research findings, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

Responsible beverage service covers a range of alcohol sales policies and practices that prevent or discourage restaurant and bar patrons from drinking to excess or from driving while impaired by alcohol. Server training programs teach servers how to recognize the signs of intoxication and how to prevent intoxicated patrons from further drinking and from driving. Management policies and programs include limits on cheap drinks and other promotions, support for designated driver programs, strong commitment to server training, and strong support for servers who refuse alcohol to intoxicated patrons. NCHRP (2005, Strategy A2) provides an overview of responsible beverage service. See also Wagenaar and Tobler (2007) and Voas and Lacey (2011; pp. 131-137) for reviews and discussion of the research literature on this issue.

Beginning in the early 1980s a major effort was undertaken to encourage alcohol servers to comply with laws prohibiting the sale of alcoholic beverages to visibly intoxicated patrons. Since that time, many "server intervention" programs have been developed as a means of securing more responsible behavior on the part of servers. Some States have mandatory programs that require at least some alcohol retail employees to attend a server training course. Other States have voluntary programs that provide incentives for retailers to participate (e.g., liability protection or insurance discounts). The quality of server training programs can vary considerably. Wagenaar and Tobler (2007) note that many server training laws "are not optimally designed, do not ensure quality training, and do not ensure all servers are consistently trained, or retrained periodically" (p. 158).

Server training programs are the only segment of responsible beverage service for adults that has been documented and evaluated well. Activities directed at people under 21 are discussed separately in Chapter 1, Sections 6.1 through 6.4.

**Use:** As of January 1, 2018, there were 23 States that had some form of mandatory server training program in place; another 26 States had voluntary programs (NIAAA, 2018).

**Effectiveness:** The findings on the effectiveness of server training have been mixed. In their systematic review, Shults et al. (2001) found five high-quality evaluations of server training

programs. They concluded that "intensive, high-quality, face-to-face server training, when accompanied by strong and active management support, is effective in reducing the level of intoxication in patrons" (p. 80). When server training programs are not intensive and are not supported, they are unlikely to result in greater refusals of service to intoxicated patrons.

Few studies have examined the effect of server training on alcohol-impaired crashes. An evaluation of a statewide server training program in Oregon found a 23% reduction in single-vehicle nighttime injury crashes following the program (Holder & Wagenaar, 1994). However, Molof and Kimball (1994) reviewed the same Oregon program and observed no decline in alcohol-related fatalities. A recent evaluation of a responsible beverage service program in two US communities examined outcome measures (Fell, Fisher, Yao, & McKnight, 2017; Fell, Fisher, Yao, McKnight, et al., 2017; NHTSA, 2017b). Outcomes were collected in stages at 10 intervention bars (pre-intervention, 6 months after intervention startup, and 1 year after intervention startup). The methods included bar patron breath tests at each bar to determine the proportion of patrons at high BACs and police-reported alcohol-crash involvement in the two treatment and two control communities. There was no significant impact of responsible beverage service on impaired driving related crashes or single vehicle nighttime crashes. However, patrons had lower average BACs, and a smaller proportion of patrons were intoxicated (BACs of .08 g/dL or higher). This effect was sustained when servers were properly trained in responsible beverage service and bar managers and owners were onboard with the program and aware of its enforcement. Another outcome of the study was the recommendation to target training programs toward problem establishments identified by "place of last drink" responses from DWI arrests (Fell, Fisher, Yao, & McKnight, 2017; Fell, Fisher, Yao, McKnight, et al., 2017; NHTSA, 2017b).

**Costs:** A typical alcohol server course takes about 4 to 8 hours. Course costs can be borne by the servers themselves, their employers, or the State.

**Time to implement:** Server training courses are offered by several private vendors and can be implemented in a few weeks. A statewide requirement for server training or more general responsible beverage service policies would require time to enact any necessary legislation, establish policies, and provide for program administration.

**Other issues:**

- **Program quality:** The quality of responsible beverage service programs can vary enormously, from excellent to abysmal. Management support can vary from enthusiastic to nonexistent. Shults et al. (2001) clearly limit their conclusions to high-quality programs with strong management support. The Alcohol Epidemiology Program (2000) cites several server training program evaluation studies that found no effect and notes that these programs may have been poorly supported or implemented. Grube and Stewart (2004) emphasize that management policy and its implementation may be at least as important as server training in determining responsible beverage service program effectiveness.
- **Dram shop laws:** As of 2015 there were 41 States that allow people injured by intoxicated drivers to recover damages from the licensed establishment that served or sold the alcohol in at least some situations (so-called "dram shop" laws) (NHTSA,

2017a). The potential threat of legal liability can provide strong encouragement to retailers to adopt responsible beverage service policies and practices. Research shows the implementation of dram shop laws is associated with reductions in alcohol-related crashes and fatalities (Voas & Lacey, 2011; Scherer et al., 2015).

- **Enforcement of responsible beverage service:** Enforcement of alcohol service laws is key, but largely lacking. Mosher et al. (2009) identified three main reasons for this: (1) a lack of societal and political will to address violations; (2) limited resources for enforcement operations; and (3) statutory provisions that make collection of evidence overly burdensome. As a result, action against licensed establishments ("dram shops") has historically been limited to case law action involving serious crashes. Although alcohol enforcement by police is almost exclusively directed toward drivers, research has demonstrated that enforcement of alcohol service laws can help ensure alcohol retailers follow responsible serving practices. For example, an enforcement program in Michigan resulted in a three-fold increase in refusals of service to "pseudo-patrons" who simulated intoxication (McKnight & Streff, 1994).
- **"Last Drink" programs:** The goal of "Last Drink" programs is to determine where someone who was apprehended for impaired driving consumed the last drink prior to the arrest. This information is then provided to licensing authorities who may issue a warning letter to the retail establishment or take disciplinary action. An evaluation of a last drink program in Washington State found mixed results. No change was observed in retail establishment practices, but there were reductions in impaired-driving arrests and lower BACs among arrested drivers in the intervention community (Ramirez et al., 2008). Similar pilot programs have been tried in Australia, Canada, and New Zealand, although effectiveness data are lacking.

### 5.5 Designated Drivers

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *The countermeasure effectiveness has been examined in a few research studies. There have been some positive research findings in terms of driver awareness of the countermeasure. However, the balance of evidence regarding the effectiveness of this countermeasure in reducing crashes remains inconclusive.*

Designated drivers are people who agree not to drink so they can drive their friends who have been drinking. Formal designated driver programs in drinking establishments provide incentives such as free soft drinks for people who agree to be designated drivers. Usually, though, designated driver arrangements are completely informal. Designated driver programs focus on specific actions taken at drinking establishments, which contrast with designated driver mass media campaigns that seek to raise awareness of this countermeasure and promote its informal use among the general driving population (see Section 5.2)

The designated driver concept has been questioned on two grounds: (1) designated drivers may still drink, though perhaps less than the passengers; and (2) it may encourage passengers to drink to excess. Previous national roadside surveys found self-identified designated drivers were more likely to have positive BACs in comparison to all drivers on the road (Fell et al., 1997; Lacey et al., 2009). Also, some designated drivers had very high BACs, especially those coming from bars. Apparently, some groups of drinkers had selected the designated drivers near the *end* of a night of drinking. To be effective, Voas and Lacey (2011) argue the designated driver must be chosen before the drinking begins, and must be willing to abstain (or substantially limit) his or her drinking.

**Use:** The designated driver concept is widely understood and accepted. Surveys show that designated driver use is common. In NHTSA's general population survey of 7,000 people, some 44% said they had served as designated drivers during the past year, and 33% reported riding with designated drivers (Moulton et al., 2010). In a multi-year survey by the Traffic Injury Research Foundation of a random representative sample of American drivers 21 and older, 98% of respondents agreed that having a designated driver was important (Vanlaar et al., 2017). Using the 2016 survey results of these drivers, 71% stated they had served as designated drivers and 64% reported nearly always using designated drivers. On the other hand, around 19% reported never using designated drivers, and 8% reported they had been passengers with impaired drivers in the past 30 days.

**Effectiveness:** Because designated drivers are informally determined and somewhat imprecisely defined, it's no surprise there are little data on the impact of designated drivers on crashes. CDC's systematic review found insufficient evidence to determine the effectiveness of designated driver programs (Ditter et al., 2005). A review from Australia concluded that designated driver programs can successfully increase awareness and use of designated drivers, but evidence for changes in alcohol-related crashes is inconclusive (Nielson & Watson, 2009). However, the authors note the lack of supporting evidence "does not necessarily mean that such

programs should be discouraged. On the contrary, it highlights the need for them to be better implemented and evaluated" (Nielson & Watson, 2009, p.36).

The "Skipper" designated driver program in Queensland, Australia, is a good example of a partially successful program. The program provides free soft drinks to people who agree to stay sober and serve as designated drivers. The program was pilot-tested in 41 venues, and was heavily advertised through radio, earned media, and on-premise promotions. Self-report surveys showed awareness for the program was very high, and the proportion of respondents who reported acting as, or using, designated drivers increased after the program was implemented (Watson & Watson, 2014). However, roadside surveys found no change in the proportion of drivers who had been drinking, and there were no changes in alcohol-related crashes.

**Costs:** The only cost associated with informal designated driver programs is for publicity. Designated drivers can be promoted independently or can be included with other impaired-driving publicity. Establishments that operate formal designated driver programs have minimal costs for the drinks provided and for publicity.

**Time to implement:** Designated driver promotion can be implemented in a few weeks and formal programs can be established equally quickly.

## 6. Underage Drinking and Drinking and Driving

### 6.5 Youth Programs

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has been examined in several research studies. Despite some positive research findings, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

States, communities, nonprofit organizations, and schools have conducted extensive youth drinking-and-driving-prevention programs over the past 25 years. These programs seek to motivate youth not to drink, not to drink and drive, and not to ride with drivers who have been drinking. Although some programs use scare tactics, many employ positive messages and methods: providing positive role models that discourage alcohol use, promoting positive norms that do not involve alcohol, and encouraging youth activities that do not involve or lead to alcohol use.

Research has shown that teens' behavior is influenced by their parents first and foremost, but also by their peers. As a result, peer-to-peer programs have been widely used. Students Against Destructive Decisions (SADD), founded in 1981 as Students Against Driving Drunk, employs a peer-to-peer education model in chapters across the country to raise awareness about the dangers of underage drinking and driving. Some States conduct similar activities under different names, such as Students Taking a New Direction (STAND) in Colorado and Teens in the Driver Seat in Texas. Many programs are targeted at celebratory times of the year, including prom and graduation season; the summer, when young people are out of school and more likely to be involved in a crash; and the winter holiday season. One specific activity, operated either by a youth program or independently, is Project Graduation, which provides alcohol-free prom and graduation parties for high school students. See Fisher (2019) and Hedlund et al. (2001) for brief examples of State programs.

A recent study found that young adults who are convicted of DWI 1 year post high school may have been influenced by prevalent substance-use norms among their five closest high-school friends (Li et al., 2016). NHTSA and the Ad Council published an online and social media campaign, "Ultimate Party Foul," about the dangers and consequences of underage drinking and driving (www.multivu.com/players/English/7662551-ad-council-ultimate-party-foul/). The campaign also provided tips on how young adults can resist peer and social pressure related to drunk driving.

Another type of approach focuses on "social norms" or "normative feedback." Social norms programs are based on studies showing that students often overestimate alcohol use among their peers. By providing students with accurate information about drinking, social norms programs reduce the pressure that light- or non-drinkers feel to drink, and help heavier drinkers realize their drinking is atypical (Perkins, 2002, 2003). Although many social norms programs focus on alcohol or other substance use, a few have addressed drinking and driving. Examples of social norms programs can be found at the National Social Norms Institute (www.socialnorms.org).

Other initiatives focus on brief interventions that involve the use of therapeutic components for a short duration to potentially reduce DWI, or driving after drinking in young adults and adolescents. An example intervention might include a discussion of the perceived costs and assumed benefits of alcohol consumption, a review of the legal consequences of drinking alcohol underage and driving or riding in a car with someone who has been drinking, providing opportunities to discuss options for moderating alcohol consumption, and providing personalized BAC charts based on the participant's height and weight. For more information on brief interventions, see Chapter 1, Section 5.1.

**Use:** Youth programs of some type are conducted in most, if not all, States.

**Effectiveness:** CDC's systematic review found there was insufficient evidence to determine the effectiveness of youth programs (Elder et al., 2005). Two studies have attempted to evaluate SADD's activities and effects. One study in two schools in California and New Mexico, found that neither school implemented the model SADD program well and found no evidence of effects on any drinking and driving measure (Klitzner et al., 1994). The second study in 6 schools with strong SADD programs located in Arizona, Ohio, and Wisconsin were matched with similar schools without programs (Leaf & Preusser, 1995). Results reported that students in schools with SADD programs were more likely to hold attitudes opposed to drinking and driving and self-reported drinking and driving was slightly lower.

Goodwin (2004) examined the long-term effects of a social norms program on drinking and driving. Breath samples were taken from students at a large public university as they returned home late at night. Following the social norms program, there was a marginally significant decrease in drivers who registered positive BACs, from 15.3% to 10.8%. Among drivers who had been drinking, self-reported number of drinks consumed and measured BACs decreased, as did the number of drinking drivers who reported having five or more drinks at one sitting on the night of the survey. Reducing this type of binge drinking may have safety benefits. Evans-Polce et al. (2017) examined the relationship between 12th grade drinking intensity and driving-related consequences at 19 and 20 years old and found that 12th grade binge drinkers were more likely to experience negative driving-related consequences at 19 and 20, compared to 12th grade non-binge drinkers. Overall, education programs that train young adults on how to resist peer pressure and enhance informed decision-making skills may be the most successful approaches (Kelly-Weeder et al., 2011; Botvin & Griffin, 2007).

**Costs:** Youth program costs can vary substantially depending on the size and nature of the individual activities. States have spent substantial funds, both Federal and non-Federal, on youth drinking-and-driving programs. These funds have been used for a variety of youth education, enforcement, and programs.

**Time to implement:** With model programs available from organizations such as SADD and MADD, youth programs can be started easily in 3 to 6 months.

**Other Issues:**

- **Other programs aimed at youths:** A variety of programs are directed at youth. To increase the perceived risks of drinking and driving, many schools have employed "fatal vision goggles," peer-to-peer programs, role plays, or drunk-driving crash reenactments (e.g., "Every 15 Minutes"). Although popular, the vast majority of these programs have not been evaluated. The few existing studies suggest these types of programs may produce changes in knowledge or attitudes, but have little or no effect on behaviors (Hover et al., 2000; Jewell & Hupp, 2005). Broader community-based programs have had much greater success at reducing drinking and driving among youth than standard education programs (see Chapter 1, Section 6.4).
- **Mandatory education for young offenders:** Young people who violate zero-tolerance or MLDA-21 laws are often required to attend alcohol or traffic safety education programs. Unfortunately, these programs often fail to produce positive outcomes. For example, Rhode Island's *Reducing Youthful Dangerous Driving* program was mandated for youths 16- to 20 years old who received driving citations or who had substance-related offenses. The 20-hour program consisted of four group sessions and two emergency department visits. Twelve months following the program, there was no difference between program participants and a comparison group in terms of high-risk driving behaviors and traffic citation recidivism (Baird et al., 2013).

## 7. Drug-Impaired Driving

### 7.2 Drug-Impaired-Driving Laws

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Unknown | Use: Medium† | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

†Use for drug per se laws

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *To date there have been no evaluations of the effect of drug-impaired-driving laws on the prevalence of drug-impaired driving or crashes.*

It is illegal to drive under the influence of drugs or controlled substances in all 50 States, Puerto Rico, and the District of Columbia (Boddie & O'Brien, 2018). However, there is a great deal of variability in how States approach this issue. In some States impairment-based statutes stipulate that prosecution must prove the driver was impaired (for example, by driving recklessly or erratically). Some States have per se laws in which it is illegal to operate motor vehicles if there are specific detectable levels of the prohibited drug in drivers' systems. Other States make it illegal to drive if there is a positive drug test. This is equivalent to "zero tolerance." Some of these laws exclude prescription drugs or marijuana (Compton, 2017).

Lacey et al. (2010) conducted interviews with LEOs, prosecutors, and other traffic safety professionals in States with per se laws. Most were supportive of such laws. Although they did not believe per se laws made enforcement easier, they reported these laws had positive effects on the prosecution and conviction of drug-impaired drivers. Moreover, discussions with officers and prosecutors in States *without* per se laws also revealed relatively high conviction rates, with few cases reaching trial.

NHTSA's 2009 *Report to Congress* included a model drug-impaired-driving law (Compton et al., 2009). Because the relationship between blood levels of drugs and driving impairment has not been established for drugs other than alcohol, the model law does not include a per se provision. However, NHTSA recommends States include enhanced penalties for drivers who are under the influence of drugs (including alcohol). In addition, NHTSA recommends State statutes provide separate and distinct offenses and sanctions for alcohol- and drug-impaired-driving (Compton et al., 2009; Compton, 2017). NHTSA's 2017 *Report to Congress* also recommended measures for improved data and records maintenance at the State level, including the distinction between alcohol-use, drug-use, or both in impaired driving cases, and the distinction between the types of drugs. See Compton (2017) for a detailed list of recommendations.

For a detailed discussion of issues related to drug-impaired-driving laws, see DuPont et al. (2012). The authors make recommendations including improvement of drug testing technology, enactment of laws requiring drug testing of all drivers in injury crashes, and addition of drug use to underage zero-tolerance laws. See also Reisfeld et al. (2012) for arguments in favor of per se laws for drug-impaired driving and a discussion of the challenges of establishing impaired drug thresholds equivalent to .08 g/dL BAC. Finally, see NHTSA (2007) for recommendations to improve the prosecution of drug-impaired-driving cases.

**Use:** Twelve States (Arizona, Delaware, Georgia, Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Michigan, Minnesota, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Utah, and Wisconsin) forbid the presence of any prohibited drug or its metabolites while drivers are in control of vehicles (NCSL, 2017). Six States (Kentucky, Nevada, North Carolina, Ohio, Oklahoma, and Virginia) allow drivers to be charged with impaired driving if any amount of specified drugs are found in them. Drivers under 21 may not drive with any amount of specified drugs (NCSL, 2017). In 18 States it is illegal for drivers to have any presence of marijuana in body fluid samples, and this includes 5 States (Montana, Nevada, Ohio, Pennsylvania, and Washington) with specific per se limits for THC ranging from 1 to 5 ng (GHSA, 2018). As of March 2019 there were 34 States and the District of Columbia that legalized marijuana use for medical purposes, and 12 States permitted the use low THC products that had high cannabidiol (CBD) for medical use (NCSL, 2019). More information about the drug-impaired-driving laws in each State can be found in NCSL (2019), Boddie & O'Brien (2018), NHTSA (2018), Lacey et al. (2010), and Walsh (2009).

**Effectiveness:** Lacey et al. (2010) tried to determine whether drug per se laws increased drug-impaired-driving arrests and convictions. However, they were hampered by the fact that many States do not record drug-impaired offenses separately from alcohol-impaired offenses. To date there have been no evaluations of the effect of drug-impaired-driving laws on the prevalence of drug-impaired driving or crashes. The GHSA recommends zero-tolerance laws over per se laws for illegal drug-, marijuana-, or opioid-impaired driving (Hedlund, 2018). Zero tolerance laws may be easier for drivers to understand over per se laws because, unlike standards for alcohol drinks, there are no standard measures of drug doses that can be consumed to stay below the per se levels (Hedlund, 2018).

**Costs:** The costs of drug-impaired-driving laws will depend on the number of offenders detected and the penalties applied to them.

**Time to implement:** Drug-impaired-driving laws can be implemented as soon as appropriate legislation is enacted, although time will be needed to train LEOs, prosecutors, and judges about the new legislation and to inform the general public.

**Other issues:**

- **Per se laws and prescription medications:** Some States with per se laws for drug-impaired driving exclude prescription medications from the list of prohibited drugs. Others require drivers to provide valid prescriptions to avoid being charged or convicted for drug-impaired driving. Using a medication as prescribed, however, can still lead to impairments in driving ability. For that reason, it is important that warning labels include information about the risks of using medications while driving. Also, physicians and pharmacists should counsel patients about driving risks, as appropriate. See Chapter 1, Section 7.3 for more information about patient education regarding medications. See also Smith et al. (2018) and Voas et al. (2013) for a discussion of issues related to per se laws and prescription medications.
- **Drug testing of fatally injured drivers:** Driver drug use is not reported in many fatal crashes. Moreover, there is inconsistent testing of drugs by laboratories, threshold differences for determining a positive test result, and variation in how results are reported. To better understand and track the drug-impaired-driving problem in the United

States, improved data and data collection on drug-impaired drivers are needed, see Berning and Smither (2014). Logan et al. (2013) describe minimum recommendations for toxicological investigation of fatal motor vehicle crashes.

- **Public support:** There is strong approval among the general public for laws that prohibit drug-impaired driving. A 2013 survey by the AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety found that 80% of drivers support per se laws for marijuana (AAAFTS, 2014).

### 7.3 Education Regarding Medications

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Unknown | Use: Unknown | Time: Long |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has only been examined in a few studies. Although some of the studies report increased awareness by pharmacists of the effects of medication, there is no evidence of increased awareness among drivers. Overall, there are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Some medications prescribed by doctors can pose a risk for drivers. Prescription or OTC medication use was found in about 13.0% (daytime) and 9.4% (nighttime) of all drivers in a nationally representative roadside survey conducted in 2013 and 2014 (Kelley-Baker et al., 2017). It is important that physicians, pharmacists, and patients receive information about the potential risk of motor vehicle crashes associated with certain medications. Medscape offers continuing medical education on medication-related driving impairments. NHTSA and the American Geriatrics Society provide guidance for clinicians on counseling patients, particularly older adults, on the potential for medication-related driving impairments. The report lists common impairing classes of medication and their symptoms (see section 13 of Chapter 9 in AGS & Pomidor, 2016). Clinicians are recommended to select non-impairing alternative medication (if possible) and to consider the patients' medication regime (e.g., other drugs, substances) to avoid drug-additive driving impairment effects (AGS & Pomidor, 2016). The AAA Foundation provides a free online tool that patients can use to check which of their medications may potentially impair driving (www.roadwiserx.com).

The International Council on Alcohol, Drugs, and Traffic Safety has developed a categorization system for medicinal drugs that can affect driving performance (Alvarez et al., 2007). The list was intended for physicians and pharmacists, so they could better identify medications that could impair driving skills and look for safer alternatives when possible. In 2008 and 2009 NHTSA convened an expert panel to develop a list of medications or classes of medications that may be "safe" for driving; however, the panel found inadequate information about specific medications to develop such a list (Kay & Logan, 2011). The FDA published guidance for evaluating the effects of psychoactive drugs on drivers' ability to operate motor vehicles, *Evaluating Drug Effects on the Ability to Operate a Motor Vehicle: Guidance for Industry* (82 Fed. Reg. 52052, November 9, 2017). The FDA recommends a tiered approach consisting of pharmacology/toxicology testing, epidemiology, and standardized behavioral/clinical assessments of functional driving ability (e.g., executive functions, psychomotor performance). The FDA also recommends the inclusion of driving impairment effects in the product labeling.

The effects of medications on driving are a particular concern with older drivers. Nearly 70% of people 55 and older each use at least one prescription medication that could potentially impair driving (MacLennan et al., 2009). In addition, research shows that older drivers taking three or more impairing medications are 87% more likely to be involved in crashes (LeRoy & Morse, 2008). For reviews on medications and road safety, see De Gier (2006), Vandrevala et al. (2010), and Smith et al. (2018).

The AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety conducted a study of countermeasures for driving impairments due to prescription and OTC drugs (Smith et al., 2018). The study included literature reviews, panel and individual interviews with experts, and reviews of existing data. The author summary noted that patient counseling, prescription labeling, placing impairing OTC drugs behind the pharmacy counter, and implementation of new technologies such as electronic pharmacy prompts show promise in preventing impaired driving. Other recommendations included the push for States and localities to develop their own material targeting education around specific medications or populations (see Colorado DOT's campaign material at www.codot.gov/safety/alcohol-and-impaired-driving/druggeddriving/assets/2016-campaign-materials/dui-poster-espanol.pdf). Challenges to implementation of these measures included the lack of deterministic research on drug-specific driving impairments and sparse availability of patient counseling time across healthcare units.

**Use and Effectiveness:** There is little information available on how frequently this countermeasure is used in the United States, or how effective it has been in raising awareness, increasing knowledge, or changing behavior. NHTSA worked with Walgreens, the country's largest drugstore chain, to develop a curriculum for pharmacists on medication-impaired driving. The curriculum modules covered potentially driver-impairing prescription drugs, laws relating to medication use and DWI, and the role of pharmacists in counseling patients regarding medications and driving risk. A pilot test with 640 pharmacists showed that the curriculum was effective in increasing pharmacists' knowledge of medication-related impaired driving (Lococo & Tyree, 2007). The complete curriculum has not yet been evaluated.

Legrand et al. (2012) tested several methods of training and administering the DRUID[9] system with pharmacists in Belgium. Following training, more pharmacists reported being aware of the effects of medications on driving, and more pharmacists talked with their patients about driving-related risks. The results were strongest among pharmacists who had the DRUID system integrated into their existing computer software for dispensing medications.

Studies with patients have been less encouraging. Smyth et al. (2013) conducted interviews with patients who were using medications that could influence their driving. Half (49%) did not recall seeing the warning label on the medication. Instead, there was a high level of confidence among patients that they could determine themselves whether it was safe to drive. Monteiro et al. (2013) investigated the effectiveness of pictograms in communicating the degree of driving risk associated with certain medications. It was apparent that many patients failed to fully understand what was being conveyed by pictograms, and often misjudged how risky it would be to drive while taking the medication. Smith et al. (2018) also arrived at similar findings from expert interviews, including the insight that many Americans do not associate the warning to "not operate heavy machinery" to driving their vehicles. The experts in their study suggested adding

[9] The forward to a report on the DRUID project says, "[T]he European Union's research project on Driving Under the Influence of Drugs, Alcohol and Medicines, [is] known as the DRUID project. The project was set up by the European Commission's Directorate-General for Energy and Transport and comprised seven work packages: experimental studies, epidemiological studies, enforcement, classification (of medicines), rehabilitation, withdrawal (of driving licence), and dissemination and guidelines. Over 5 years of work across 18 countries, the project has produced some 50 reports, each one contributing key evidence to road safety policy" (Schulze et al., 2012).

visual indicators such as changes to the color of the driving-specific warning label, color of the prescription bottle, and increasing the minimum font size to accommodate older drivers.

Part of the 2013-2014 National Roadside Survey of Alcohol and Drug Use surveyed drivers and collected data on prescription drug use. Questions on the frequency of use of potentially impairing prescription drugs, types of medication warnings, and perceptions of risk were included in the survey. Of the 7,405 drivers who completed the survey, 19.7% reported taking at least one potentially impairing drug in the past 2 days, and of these, 78.2% reported that the drug was prescribed for use. Sedatives (8.0%), antidepressants (7.7%), and narcotics (7.5%) were the most commonly prescribed drugs, followed by stimulants (3.9%). Most of the drivers taking sedatives (85.8%) and narcotics (85.1%) reported receiving warnings from their health care provider or the medication label; however, fewer people reported the same for antidepressants (62.6%) and stimulants (57.7%). Drivers perceived sleep aids, morphine/codeine, amphetamines, and relaxants as most likely to affect safe driving, whereas, ADHD medications were perceived least likely to affect safety. These results provide direction on specific medications and patient populations that may be chosen to receive increased education from healthcare providers (and warning labels) (Pollini et al., 2017).

**Costs:** Targeted education to physicians and pharmacists through drug categorization systems and to drivers through warning labels would be needed. The former would likely be costlier.

**Time to implement:** Targeted communications could require a year or more to plan, produce, and distribute.

**Alcohol- and Drug-Impaired-Driving References**

82 Fed. Reg. 52052 (November 9, 2017), Evaluating Drug Effects on the Ability to Operate a Motor Vehicle: Guidance for Industry: Food and Drug Administration. www.federalregister.gov/documents/2017/11/09/2017-24367/evaluating-drug-effects-on-the-ability-to-operate-a-motor-vehicle-guidance-for-industry-availability

AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. (2014). *2013 Traffic Safety Culture Index*. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/01/2013TrafficSafetyCultureIndexReport.pdf

Alcohol Epidemiology Program. (2000). *Alcohol policies in the United States: Highlights from the 50 States*. Minneapolis, MI: University of Minnesota, School of Public Health. www.impacteen.org/generalarea_PDFs/Alcohol%20Policies%20in%20the%20United%20States.PDF

Alvarez, J., de Gier, H., Mercier-Guyon, C., & Verstraete, A. (2007, June 26). *Categorization system for medicinal drugs affecting driving performance* [Report of the ICADTS Working Group]. International Council on Alcohol, Drugs and Traffic Safety www.icadts.nl/reports/medicinaldrugs1.pdf

American Geriatrics Society & A. Pomidor, Ed. (2016, January). *Clinician's guide to assessing and counseling older drivers, 3rd edition* (Report No. DOT HS 812 228). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1988

Baird, J., Nirenberg, T. D., Longabaugh, R., & Mello, M. J. (2013). The effect of group-adapted motivational interviewing on traffic convictions and driving behaviors of court-adjudicated youth. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *14*, 572-577.

Berning, A., & Smither, D. D. (2014, November). *Understanding the limitations of drug test information, reporting, and testing practices in fatal crashes* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. DOT HS 812 072). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812072

Boddie, A., & O'Brien, A. (2018, March). *2016 digest of State laws: Driving under the influence of drugs. First edition* (Report No. DOT HS 812 468). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/40782

Botvin, G. J., & Griffin, K. W. (2007). School-based programmes to prevent alcohol, tobacco and other drug use. *International Review of Psychiatry*, *19*(6), 607-615.

Byrne, P. A., Ma, T., & Elzohairy, Y. (2016). Vehicle impoundments improve drinking and driving licence suspension outcomes: Large-scale evidence from Ontario. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *95*, 125–131.

Century Council. (2008). *Hardcore drunk driving: A sourcebook of promising strategies, laws & programs*. The National Hardcore Drunk Driver Project.

Coleman, H., & Mizenko, K. (2018, October). *Impaired-driving leadership model–Findings based on three State case studies* (Report No. DOT HS 812 516). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/36877

Compton, R. (2017, July). *Marijuana-impaired driving - A Report to Congress* (DOT HS 812 440). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/34995

Compton, R., Vegega, M., & Smither, D. (2009). *Drug-impaired driving: Understanding the problem and ways to reduce it: A Report to Congress* (Report No. DOT HS 811 268). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811268.pdf

Crew, B. K., & Johnson, S. E. (2011). Do victim impact programs reduce recidivism for operating a motor vehicle while intoxicated? Findings from an outcomes evaluation. *Criminal Justice Studies*, *24*, 153-163.

deBaca, J. C., Lapham, S. C., Liang, H. C., & Skipper, B. J. (2001). Victim impact panels: Do they impact drunk drivers? A follow-up of female and male first-time and repeat offenders. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *62*, 615-620.

De Gier, H. (2006). Medicinal drugs: Critical review of present knowledge and statements for discussion. In *Drugs and traffic: A symposium*. Transportation Research Circular, Number E- C096, pp. 68-77. Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/circulars/ec096.pdf

Ditter, S. M., Elder, R. W., Shults, R. A., Sleet, D. A., Compton, R., & Nichols, J. L. (2005). Effectiveness of designated driver programs for reducing drinking and driving and alcohol- involved crashes: A systematic review. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 28(5S),* 280-287.

DuPont, R. L., Voas, R. B., Walsh, J. M., Shea, C., Talpins, S. K., & Neil, M. M. (2012). The need for drugged driving per se laws: A commentary. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *13*, 31-42.

Elder, R. W., Nichols, J. L., Shults, R.A., Sleet, D. A., Barrios, L. C., Compton, R., & the Task Force on Community Preventive Services. (2005). Effectiveness of school-based programs for reducing drinking and driving and riding with drinking drivers. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 28*(5S), 288-297.

European Traffic Safety Council. (2016). *Alcohol interlocks and drink driving rehabilitation in the EU – Guidelines for Member States*. www.etsc.eu/wp-content/uploads/2016_12_alcohol_interlock_guidelines_final.pdf

Evans-Polce, R. J., Patrick, M. E., & O'Malley, P. M. (2017). Prospective associations of 12th-grade drinking intensity and age 19/20 driving-related consequences. *Journal of Adolescent Health, 61*(3), 389-391.

Fell, J. C., Fisher, D. A., & McKnight, A. S. (2011, October). *A guide for local impaired-driving task forces - Volume I* (Report No. DOT HS 811 460A). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811460a.pdf

Fell, J. C., Fisher, D. A., Yao, J., & McKnight, A. S. (2017). Evaluation of a responsible beverage service and enforcement program: Effects on bar patron intoxication and potential impaired driving by young adults. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 18*(6), 557-565.

Fell, J. C., Fisher, D. A., Yao, J., McKnight, A. S., Blackman, K. O., & Coleman, H. L. (2017, April). *Evaluation of responsible beverage service to reduce impaired driving by 21- to 34-year-old drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 812 398). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2092

Fell, J. C., & Langston, E. A. (2009). *A guide for statewide impaired-driving task forces* (Report No. DOT HS 811 103). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811203.pdf

Fell, J., Voas, R. B., & Lange, J. E. (1997). Designated driver concept: Extent of use in the USA. *Journal of Traffic Medicine, 25*(3–4), 109-114.

Fischer, P. (2019, March). *Peer-to-peer teen traffic safety program guide* (Report No. DOT HS 812 631). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/13905_peer2peerbrochure_031519_v4-blankpages-tag.pdf

Governors Highway Safety Association. (2018). *Drug impaired driving laws*. www.ghsa.org/taxonomy/term/1

Goodwin, A. H. (2004). A social norms approach to reduce drinking-driving among university students. In *Proceedings of the 17th International Conference on Alcohol, Drugs and Traffic Safety. Glasgow, Scotland.*

Grube, J., & Stewart, K. (2004). Preventing impaired driving using alcohol policy. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *5*, 199-207.

Hedlund, J. (2018). *Drug-impaired driving: Marijuana and opioids raise critical issues for States*. Governors Highway Safety Association. www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2018-05/GHSA_DrugImpairedDriving_FINAL.pdf

Hedlund, H., & McCartt, A. T. (2002). Drunk driving in the United States. A roadmap for progress. In *Proceedings of the 16th International Conference on Alcohol, Drugs and Traffic Safety*.

Hedlund, J. H., Ulmer, R. G., & Preusser, D. F. (2001, September). *Determine why there are fewer young alcohol-impaired drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 809 348). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/FewerYoungDrivers/

Holder, H. D., & Wagenaar, A. C. (1994). Mandated server training and reduced alcohol-involved traffic crashes: A time series analysis of the Oregon experience. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 26*, 89-97.

Hover, A. R., Hover, B. A., & Young, J. C. (2000). Measuring the effectiveness of a community-sponsored DWI intervention for teens. *American Journal of Health Studies*, *16*, 171-176.

Jewell, J., & Hupp, S. D. A. (2005). Examining the effects of fatal vision goggles on changing attitudes and behaviors related to drinking and driving. *The Journal of Primary Prevention*, *26*, 553-565.

Kay, G. G., & Logan, B. K. (2011, March). *Drugged driving expert panel report: A consensus protocol for assessing the potential of drugs to impair driving* (Report No. DOT HS 808

493). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811438.pdf

Kelley-Baker, T., Berning, A., Ramirez, A., Lacey, J. H., Carr, K., Waehrer, G., & Compton, R. (2017, May). *2013-2014 National Roadside Study of alcohol and drug use by drivers: Drug results* (Report No. DOT HS 812 411). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2097

Kelly-Weeder, S., Phillips, K., & Rounseville, S. (2011). Effectiveness of public health programs for decreasing alcohol consumption. *Patient Intelligence*, *2011*(3), 29.

Klitzner, M., Gruenewald, P.H., Bamberger, E. & Rossiter, C. (1994). *A quasi-experimental evaluation of Students Against Driving Drunk. American Journal of Drug and Alcohol Abuse,* 20, 57-74.

Lacey, J., Brainard, K., & Snitow, S. (2010, July). *Drug* per se *laws: A review of their use in states* (Report No. DOT HS 811 317). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/impaired_driving/pdf/811317.pdf

Lacey, J. H., Kelley-Baker, T., Furr-Holden, D., Voas, R.B., Romano, E., Torres, P., Tippetts, A. S., Ramirez, A., Brainard, K., & Berning, A. (2009, December). *2007 national roadside survey of alcohol and drug use by drivers: Alcohol results* (Report No. DOT HS 811 248). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/-Associated%20Files/811248.pdf

Leaf, W. A., & Preusser, D. F. (1995, August). *Evaluation of youth peer-to-peer impaired driving programs* (Report No. DOT HS 808 309). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1557

Legrand, S-A., Boets, S., Meesman, U., & Verstraete, A. G. (2012). Medicines and driving: Evaluation of training and software support for patient counseling by pharmacists. *International Journal of Clinical Pharmacy*, *34*, 633-643.

LeRoy, A. A., & Morse, M. L. (2008, May). *Multiple medications and vehicle crashes: Analysis of databases* (Report No. DOT HS 810 858). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/810858.pdf

Li, K., Simons-Morton, B., Gee, B., & Hingson, R. (2016). Marijuana-, alcohol-, and drug-impaired driving among emerging adults: Changes from high school to one-year post-high school. *Journal of Safety Research*, *58*, 15-20.

Lococo, K., & Tyree, R. (2007). *Medication related impaired driving*. MedScape Education.

Logan, B. K., Lowrie, K. J., Turri, J. L., Yeakel, J. K., Limoges, J. F., Miles, A. K., Scarneo, C. E., Kerrigan, S., & Farrell, L. J. (2013). Recommendations for toxicological investigation of drug-impaired driving and motor vehicle fatalities. *Journal of Analytical Toxicology*, *37*, 552-558.

MacLennan, P. A., Owsley, C., Rue, L. W., & McGwin, G. (2009). *Older adults' knowledge about medications that can impact driving*. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety.

https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/KnowledgeAboutMedications-AndDrivingReport.pdf

Mai, C., & Subramanian, R. (2017). *The price of prisons: Examining State spending trends, 2010-2015*. Vera Institute of Justice. www.vera.org/publications/price-of-prisons-2015-state-spending-trends.

McKnight, A. J., & Streff, F. M. (1994). The effect of enforcement upon service of alcohol to intoxicated patrons of bars and restaurants. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 26*, 79-88.

Molof, M. J., & Kimball, C. (1994). A study of the implementation and effects of Oregon's mandatory alcohol server training program. *Eugene, OR: Oregon Research Services Inc*.

Monteiro, S. P., Huiskes, R., Van Dijk, L., Van Weert, J., & De Gier, J. J. (2013). How effective are pictograms in communicating risk about driving-impairing medicines? *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *14*, 299-308.

Mosher, J., Hauck, A., Carmona, M., Treffers, R., Reitz, D., Curtis, C., Ramirez, R., Moore, A., & Saetta, S. (2009, June). *Legal research report: Laws prohibiting alcohol sales to intoxicated persons* (Report No. DOT HS 811 142). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811142.pdf

Moulton, B. E., Peterson, A., Haddix, D., & Drew, L. (2010, August). *National survey of drinking and driving attitudes and behaviors: 2008. Volume II: Findings report* (Report No. DOT HS 811 343). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811343.pdf

National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances. (2000). *Uniform vehicle code*. https://iamtraffic.org/wp-content/uploads/2013/01/UVC2000.pdf

National Conference of State Legislatures. (2017). *Drugged driving per se laws.* www.ncsl.org-/Portals/1/Documents/transportation/DD_per_se_chart_Feb_2017_27135.pdf

NCSL. (2019). *State medical marijuana laws*. www.ncsl.org/research/health/state-medical-marijuana-laws.aspx

National Cooperative Highway Research Program. (2005). *A guide for reducing alcohol-related collisions*. Transportation Research Board. https://trb.org/publications/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v16.pdf

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (2006, January). *A guide to sentencing DWI offenders. Second edition, 2005* (Report No. DOT HS 810 555). www.nhtsa.gov/people/-injury/alcohol/dwioffenders/A%20Guide2.pdf

NHTSA. (2007, January). *Traffic safety resource prosecutor's manual* (Report No. DOT HS 810 706). www.ems.gov/pdf/TSRPManual.pdf

NHTSA. (2017a, June). *Digest of impaired driving and selected beverage control laws, 30th edition* (Report No. DOT HS 812 394). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/-documents/812394-digest-of-impaired-driving-and-selected-beverage-control-laws.pdf

NHTSA. (2017b, May). *Evaluation of responsible beverage service to reduce impaired driving by 21- to 34-year-old drivers* (Traffic Tech Technology Transfer Series. Report No. DOT HS 812 416). https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2098

National Institute of Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. (2018). *Beverage service training and related practices.* https://alcoholpolicy.niaaa.nih.gov/apis-policy-topics/beverage-service-training-and-related-practices/26/maps-and-charts

National Transportation Safety Board. (2000). *Actions to reduce fatalities, injuries, and crashes involving the hard core drinking driver* (NTSB/SR-00/01). https://ntlrepository.blob.core.windows.net/lib/17000/17100/17173/PB2000917003.pdf

Nielson, A. L., & Watson, B. (2009). The effectiveness of designated driver programs. *Journal of the Australasian College of Road Safety*, *20*(2), 32-37.

Perkins, H. W. (2002). Social norms and the prevention of alcohol misuse in collegiate contexts. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 14*(S), 164-172.

Perkins, H. W. (Ed.). (2003). *The emergence and evolution of the social norms approach to substance abuse prevention*. Jossey-Bass.

Pollini, R. A., Waehrer, G., & Kelley-Baker, T. (2017). Receipt of warnings regarding potentially impairing prescription medications and associated risk perceptions in a national sample of US drivers. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs*, *78*(6), 805-813.

Ramirez, R., Nguyen, D., Cannon, C., Carmona, M, & Freisthler, B. (2008, April). *A campaign to reduce impaired driving through retail-oriented enforcement in Washington state* (Report No. DOT HS 810 913). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/16482

Reisfeld, G. M., Goldberger, B. A., Gold, M. S., & DuPont, R. L. (2012). The mirage of impairing drug concentration thresholds: A rationale for zero tolerance per se driving under the influence of drugs laws. *Journal of Analytical Toxicology*, *36*, 353-356.

Robertson, R. D., & Simpson, H. M. (2002). *DWI system improvements for dealing with hard core drinking drivers: Prosecution*. Traffic Injury Research Foundation. https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/688c/111bf6414779a89060c18448bccbac840cf8.pdf?_ga=2.234903367.75762146.1570474381-1703944869.1510587726

Robertson, R., Vanlaar, W., & Simpson, H. (2007). *A criminal justice perspective on ignition interlocks: Proceedings of the 3rd annual meeting of the working group on DWI system improvements*. www.tirf.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/01/A_Criminal_Justice_Perspective.pdf

Scherer, M., Fell, J. C., Thomas, S., & Voas, R. B. (2015). Effects of dram shop, responsible beverage service training, and state alcohol control laws on underage drinking driver fatal crash ratios. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *16*(sup2), S59-S65.

Shinar, D., & Compton, R. P. (1995). Victim impact panels: Their impact on DWI recidivism. *Alcohol, Drugs and Driving*, *11*, 73-87.

Shults, R. A., Elder, R. W., Sleet, D. A., Nichols, J. L., Alao, M. O., Carande-Kulis, V. G., . . . Thompson, R. S. (2001). Review of evidence regarding interventions to reduce alcohol-impaired driving. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 21(4S*), 66-84.

Schulze, H., Schumacher, M., Urmeew, R., Auerbach, K., Alvarez, J., Bernhoft, I. M., de Gier, H., Hagenzieker, M., Houwing, S., Knoche, A., Pilgerstorfer, M., & Zlender, B. (2012).

*Driving under the influence of drugs, alcohol and medicines in Europe — Findings from the DRUID project*. Publications Office of the European Union.

Smith, R. C., Turturici, M., & Camden, M. C. (2018). *Countermeasures against prescription and over-the-counter drug-impaired driving*. AAA Foundation. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/10/VTTI_Rx_OTC_FinalReport_VTTI-FINAL-complete-9.20.pdf

Smyth, T., Sheehan, M., & Siskind, V. (2013). Hospital outpatients' responses to taking medications with driving warnings. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *14*, 18-25.

Vandrevala, T., Helman, S., Turner, C., & Stone, B. (2010). *Medication and road safety: A scoping study* (Road Safety Research Report No. 116). https://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/20101007192647/www.dft.gov.uk/pgr/roadsafety/research/rsrr/theme3/report16review.pdf

Vanlaar, W. G. M., Hing, M. M., Powell, T. C., & Robertson, R. D. (2017b). *Alternatives to alcohol-impaired driving: Results from the 2016 TIRF USA road safety monitor*. http://tirf.us/wp-content/uploads/2017/08/RSM-TIRF-USA-Alternatives-to-Alcohol-Impaired-Driving-2016-Data-6.pdf

Voas, R. B., DuPont, R. L., Shea, C. L., & Talpins, S. K. (2013). Prescription drugs, drugged driving and per se laws. *Injury Prevention*, *19*(3), 218-221.

Voas, R. B., & Lacey, J. H. (2011, March). *Alcohol and highway safety 2006: A review of the state of knowledge* (Report No. DOT HS 811 374). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811374.pdf

Wagenaar, A. C., & Maldonado-Molina, M. M. (2007). Effects of drivers' license suspension policies on alcohol-related crash involvement: Long-term follow-up in forty-six states. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *31*, 1399-1406.

Wagenaar, A. C., Maldonado-Molina, M. M., Erickson, D. J. Ma, L., Tobler, A. L., & Komro, K. A. (2008). General deterrence effects of U.S. statutory DUI fine and jail penalties: Long-term follow-up in 32 states. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *39*, 982-994.

Wagenaar, A. C., & Tobler, A. L. (2007). Alcohol sales and service to underage youth and intoxicated patrons. Effects of responsible beverage service training and enforcement interventions. In *Traffic Safety and Alcohol Regulation: A Symposium, June 5-6, 2006, Irvine, CA.* (Transportation Research Circular, No. E-C123, pp. 141-163). Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/circulars/ec123.pdf

Wagenaar, A. C., Zobek, T. S., Williams, G. D., & Hingson, R. (2000). *Effects of DWI control efforts: A systematic review of the literature from 1960-1991.* University of Minnesota School of Public Health.

Walsh, J. M. (2009, December). *A state-by-state analysis of laws dealing with driving under the influence of drugs* (Report No. DOT HS 811 236). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811236.pdf

Watson, A., & Watson, B. (2014). An outcome evaluation of the 'Skipper' designated driver program. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *66*, 27-35.

Weatherburn, D., & Moffatt, S. (2011). The specific deterrent effect of higher fines on drink-driving offenders. *British Journal of Criminology*, *51*, 789-803.

Wheeler, D. R., Rogers, E. M., Tonigan, J. S., & Woodall, W. G. (2004). Effectiveness of customized victim impact panels on first-time DWI offender inmates. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *36*, 29-35.

# A2. Seat Belts and Child Restraints

There are no ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures in this program area.

# A3. Speeding and Speed Management

This section provides expanded discussion of the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

The ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures covered in this section of the appendix are listed below.

### 1. Laws

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.2 Aggressive Driving and Other Laws | ☆ | $ | Low | Short |

### 2. Enforcement

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.2 High-Visibility Enforcement | ☆☆ | $$$ | Low† | Medium |
| 2.3 Other Enforcement Methods | ☆☆ | Varies | Unknown | Varies |

† For aggressive driving, but use of short-term, HVE campaigns for speeding is more widespread

### 3. Penalties and Adjudication

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Penalty Types and Levels | ☆☆ | Varies | High | Low |
| 3.2 Diversion and Plea Agreement Restrictions; Traffic Violator School | ☆ | Varies | Unknown | Varies |

**Effectiveness:**

☆☆ Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results

☆ Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

$$$ Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources

$$ Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity

$ Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Laws

### 1.2 Aggressive Driving and Other Laws

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *There is currently no evidence that aggressive driving laws in general, or increased penalties in particular, affect aggressive driving and related crashes.*

Aggressive driving actions are covered by specific traffic laws, such as the laws regarding speeding, improper lane changes, and following too closely, or by general laws, such as those that target reckless driving. Most existing reckless driving statues carry relatively minor penalties and may be difficult to prosecute according to NHTSA (2001a). Aggressive drivers, as distinct from aggressive driving, often can be identified as those who violate traffic laws repeatedly or whose violations lead to crashes producing serious injury or death. Therefore, the primary traffic law strategy to address aggressive driving is to assure that more severe penalties are available for repeat offenders and for violations causing death or serious injuries. Existing statutes, including reckless driving laws, may be strengthened or aggressive driving laws may be enacted.

NHTSA's 1999 Symposium on Aggressive Driving and the Law recommended that States implement laws targeting aggressive drivers by providing for:

- enhanced penalties for repeat offenders, including increased driver's license points, license suspension or revocation, higher fines, and jail or probation; and
- felony charges for violations resulting in serious injury or death (NHTSA, 2001a).

NHTSA also developed a model statute that defines aggressive driving as three moving violations in a single driving incident and some States have adopted similar laws; however, aggressive driving violations may be difficult to enforce and prosecute (Flango & Keith, 2004). The NCHRP *Aggressive Driving Guide* also suggests a strategy of applying increased sanctions and treatment for repeat offenders and serious offenses (Neuman, Pfefer, Slack, Hardy, Raub, et al., 2003, Strategy A3).

**Use:** In general, States provide for increased penalties for repeat offenders and for violations with serious consequences. As of May 2018 some 11 States have aggressive driving laws—Arizona, Delaware, Florida, Georgia, Indiana, Maryland, Nevada, North Carolina, Rhode Island, Vermont, and Virginia (Essex et al., 2018). Some other States that do not have aggressive driving laws per se, still include behaviors similar to aggressive driving in other laws, such as reckless driving (California, New Jersey, and Utah). In 2006 Pennsylvania passed a resolution to support practices that promote safe driving and to encourage drivers to not drive aggressively.

**Effectiveness:** There is as yet no evidence for whether aggressive driving laws in general, or increased penalties in particular, affect aggressive driving and related crashes. See Chapter 3, Section 3.1 for a discussion of the effects of driver improvement actions in general.

**Costs:** The only immediate costs of the recommended law changes are to publicize the new or altered laws. Additional costs may result as drivers are sentenced to more costly sanctions.

**Time to implement:** Law changes can be implemented quickly, once legislation is passed and publicized.

**Other issues:**

- **Public acceptance, enforcement, and publicity:** Without the use of enforcement and/or publicity, law changes by themselves cannot reduce aggressive driving. As noted previously, highly publicized enforcement has proven effective in increasing compliance with many traffic safety laws and reducing crashes and injuries: see for example sobriety checkpoints (Chapter 1, Section 2.1) and seat belt use mobilizations (Chapter 2, Section 2.1). Traffic laws in general and aggressive driving laws in particular are essential to, but only a part of, a system that includes broad public acceptance, active enforcement, effective adjudication, and publicity (NHTSA, 2001a).
- **Record-keeping:** Information on prior convictions of offenders must be up-to-date and available to prosecutors and court officials so that repeat and flagrant violators may be prosecuted in keeping with the strategy to increase sanctions for these offenders. Providing the technology and ability for patrol officers to obtain up-to-date driver history information at the time of traffic stops is another strategy recommended to deal with drivers with suspended or revoked licenses who continue to violate traffic laws (Neuman, Pfefer, Slack, Hardy, & Waller, 2003).

## 2. Enforcement

### 2.2 High-Visibility Enforcement

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Low-Medium† | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† Use is low for aggressive driving, but use of short-term, HVE campaigns for speeding is more widespread

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has been examined in several research studies. Overall, the findings regarding countermeasure effectiveness are inconclusive. While some studies suggest that high-visibility, anti-speeding and aggressive driving enforcement campaigns produce some safety-related benefits, other comparable studies show no benefits or even negative outcomes.*

High-visibility enforcement campaigns have been used to deter speeding and aggressive driving through both specific and general deterrence. In the HVE model, law enforcement targets selected high-crash or high-violation geographical areas using either expanded regular patrols or designated aggressive driving patrols. This model is based on the same principles as high-visibility seat belt and alcohol-impaired-driving enforcement: to convince the public that speeding and aggressive driving actions are likely to be detected and that offenders will be arrested and punished (see Chapter 1, Alcohol-Impaired Driving, Sections 2.1 and 2.2, and Chapter 2, Seat Belt Use, Section 2.1).

In the HVE model, officers focus on drivers who commit common aggressive driving actions such as speeding, following too closely, and running red lights. Enforcement is publicized widely. The strategy is very similar to saturation patrols directed at alcohol-impaired drivers (Chapter 1, Section 2.2). Because speeding and aggressive driving are moving violations, officers cannot use checkpoints. Rather, they must observe driving behavior on the road.

NHTSA's *Aggressive Driving Enforcement: Strategies for Implementing Best Practices* (NHTSA, 2000) provides brief descriptions of 12 aggressive driving enforcement programs from around the country. A few examples:

- The Albuquerque, New Mexico, Safe Streets program used saturation patrols in four high-crash and high-crime areas, writing tickets when infractions were observed. At about the midpoint of the program, traffic enforcement focus was shifted from the high crime neighborhoods to high crash corridors and intersections. On freeways, they observed speeding and aggressive driving from a "cherry picker" platform and radioed to patrol officers. See Stuster (2001) for more information including some measures of program effects.
- The greater Washington, DC, area multi-agency Smooth Operator program used shared publicity and coordinated enforcement waves with marked and unmarked patrol vehicles as well as nontraditional vehicles. See this program brochure for more specifics. https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/ref_mats/fhwasa09028/resources/-Smooth%20Operator%20Brochure.pdf
- The Washington State Patrol's Enforcement Target Zero Program involves State troopers, county sheriff's deputies, and city and tribal police officers collaborating to focus on

those violations proven to cause fatal or serious injury collisions. The program uses mapping to target resources and experienced officers and training on completing investigations and arrest reports to assist with prosecution. See Thomas et al. (2015) for more information.

See a few other examples of high-visibility speed and aggressive driving enforcement programs in GHSA's *Survey of the States: Speeding and Aggressive Driving* (Sprattler, 2012), and NHTSA's *Aggressive Driving Programs* (NHTSA, 2001b).

**Use:** High-visibility speed enforcement campaigns are common, with most States providing some funding for speed equipment (47 States and Guam), overtime enforcement (42 States and Guam), or speed public information campaigns (31 States and Guam) (Sprattler, 2012). Relatively few States fund aggressive driving-related equipment or enforcement (6 States; Sprattler, 2012) and it is likely that high-visibility aggressive driving enforcement campaigns are not common. Neuman, Pfefer, Slack, Hardy, Raub, et al. (2003, Strategy A1) provide a few examples of aggressive driving enforcement programs.

**Effectiveness:** Moon and Hummer (2010) estimated that 8 to 9% of the total and injury crash reduction effects of around 25% associated with an automated mobile, speed enforcement program in Charlotte, North Carolina, were attributable to media coverage of the program. In addition to results from automated camera enforcement programs (see Section 2.1), which typically incorporate a significant amount of publicity and media coverage (see section 4.1), some crash-based effectiveness evidence comes from NHTSA demonstrations in three communities. All three demonstrations lasted 6 months and included extensive publicity but differed in other respects. Milwaukee was the most successful. Red-light running decreased at targeted intersections. Crashes in the city dropped by 12% in targeted corridors and by 2% in comparison corridors (McCartt et al., 2001). The Indianapolis demonstration was not a success. Average speeds dropped slightly. Total crashes *increased* 32% over the previous year. Crashes increased *more* in the demonstration area than in other areas, and the proportion of crashes involving aggressive driving behaviors also increased in the demonstration areas (Stuster, 2004). Tucson had mixed results. Average speeds dropped moderately. Total crashes *increased* 10% in the demonstration areas and *decreased* in comparison areas. However, the proportion of crashes involving aggressive driving behaviors decreased by 8% in the demonstration areas.

Several studies have reported reductions in crashes or reductions in speeding or other violations attributed to both general and targeted high-visibility speed enforcement campaigns. Although the evidence is not conclusive, the trends are promising. These efforts have included a substantial increase in general traffic enforcement in Fresno, California (Davis et al., 2006), and a community-based, high-visibility speed enforcement campaign, entitled *Heed the Speed*, in the Phoenix, Arizona, area that aimed to reduce pedestrian crashes and injuries (Blomberg & Cleven, 2006). No particular publicity measures were noted for the Fresno campaign, but it is likely that the increase from 20 to 84 traffic patrol officers, the addition of 20 new police motorcycles and radar guns, and more than 3-fold increase in citations in 2 years generated some publicity. Publicity measures for the *Heed the Speed* campaign included street and yard signs, educational material and active participation of neighborhood groups. Speed reductions were greatest in

neighborhoods where new vertical traffic calming measures were also installed (Blomberg & Cleven, 2006; also see a *Traffic Tech* summary, NHTSA, 2006).

An effort to scale-up the Heed the Speed program to 6 (out of 25 total) police districts in Philadelphia, met with limited success and some challenges. There were both unique challenges, including State legal restrictions on the use of radar for issuing citations, and other challenges, which the planned use of a new speed enforcement technology was unable to overcome. These other challenges such as competing law enforcement priorities, equipment loss, funding limitations, difficulty engaging public involvement, and gaining message penetration that were experienced in Philadelphia may also be challenges in other large cities. Even without increases in speeding citations, however, there were decreasing trends in percentages of speeders on 17 of 24 streets over the 3 years of the program, especially on the streets that received a type of engineering treatment– three-dimensional painted markings that simulate traffic calming devices. Other treatments included ensuring appropriate posting of limits, message-oriented signs with and without speed limit reminders along the roadways, and flyers and other outreach. See also Section 4.1 Communications and Outreach in Support of Enforcement for more information.

A 2008 test of a 4-week, HVE campaign along a 6-mile corridor with a significant crash history in London, England, found significant reductions in driver speeding in the enforced area. There was also a halo effect up to two weeks following the end of the campaign (Walter et al., 2011). A crash-based analysis was not conducted. The campaign was covered by print media as well as by billboards and active messaging along the enforced corridor.

High-visibility model programs to target specific aggressive driving actions around large trucks have also been undertaken in several States. The program, known as TACT (Ticketing Aggressive Cars and Trucks) is modeled on the *Click It or Ticket* belt use campaigns. An evaluation found promising results in reducing the number of targeted violations as the program was implemented in Washington State; effects on crashes or injuries were not determined (Nerup et al., 2006; Thomas et al., 2008). The TACT program was also used in Michigan. The evaluation of this program by Kostyniuk et al. (2014) indicates that TACT messages reminding drivers of the slogan “Leave More Space for Trucks” were successfully received with 40% of drivers being aware of the slogan. However, given the awareness of this slogan, behaviors of both light vehicle drivers did not change when driving around trucks. An unusual part of this implementation of the TACT program was the visibility of two of four police vehicles at one time in a relatively small geographical location. From a specific deterrence perspective, because drivers generally revert back to the “old behaviors” once a police car passes by, having a second police car available to follow up once drivers think they can revert back to unsafe behavior increases the likelihood that these violators can be apprehended.

In summary, the evaluation evidence suggests that high-visibility, anti-speeding and aggressive driving enforcement campaigns have promise, but safety benefits are far from guaranteed. Given challenges in administering police enforcement resources, one approach to develop a sustainable and effective campaign may be to randomly target low levels of conspicuous enforcement on an unpredictable basis to a larger share of network roads that account for a significant majority of injury crashes on the entire network (Newstead et al., 2001). Such a program may warrant expanding enforcement coverage to many more roads in a jurisdiction to increase network-wide

deterrence. In Queensland, Australia, the Random Road Watch enforcement program aims explicitly to cover a large portion of the road network where serious crashes occur, not just crash black spots, by randomly targeting police enforcement for two hour periods from 6 a.m. to midnight using marked, parked police vehicles. Significant reductions in fatal and all crashes were estimated for the enforced zones that translated into statewide reductions of 12% in all severity of crashes and 15% of the State's fatal road crashes (including non-metro areas). No additional publicity was undertaken; it is unknown how much free publicity the program generated.

Other methods making use of enforcement time halos such as enforcing a corridor or other area for up to 4 weeks as described earlier, and then rotating the enforcement to another zone could also be used to maximize enforcement's deterrent effects.

**Costs:** As with alcohol-impaired driving and seat belt use enforcement campaigns, the main costs are for law enforcement time and for publicity. The Minnesota Speed Management Program cost approximately $3 million, with $2.5 million for increased enforcement, $350 thousand for paid media (primarily radio), and $150 thousand for data collection and evaluation. The Minnesota DOT and State Patrol also made significant in-kind contributions toward project management, sign installation, speed detection equipment, engineering reviews, and fuel and vehicle costs (Harder & Bloomfield, 2007). The Milwaukee demonstration received a $650,000 grant and the other two demonstrations each received a $200,000 grant. Public-private partners (such as those in interests in injury prevention and public health) may be able to assist with publicity.

**Time to implement:** HVE campaigns may require 4 to 6 months to plan, publicize, and implement.

## 2.3 Other Enforcement Methods

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *In general, these technological measures have not been adequately studied to reliably determine their effectiveness.*

Many traffic enforcement operations help to deter speeding and aggressive driving as well as other traffic offenses. In addition to HVE campaigns (Chapter 3, Section 2.2) and automated enforcement (Section 2.1), new technologies have been recommended to address speeding and aggressive driving (NHTSA, 2001a). LEAs around the country have also conducted innovative and effective aggressive driving enforcement programs (NHTSA, 2000).

**Technology:** Both external and in-vehicle technologies may help in several ways.

- In-car video equipment in patrol cars allows law enforcement to record aggressive driving actions and can enhance the ability to prosecute and convict offenders (NHTSA, 2001a).
- Laser speed measuring equipment can provide more accurate and reliable evidence of speeding (NHTSA, 2001a).
- Unstaffed speed display devices, also known as speed trailers, can show drivers that they are speeding and may encourage some drivers to slow down, but effects may last only as long as the devices are in place (Donnell & Cruzado, 2008). They may also suggest to drivers that speeds are being monitored or enforcement is nearby. Signs that provided either an implication that speeds were being monitored or a social norms message (average speed at the site; your speed) were effective at reducing speeds in a 50 km/h zone although not as much as in earlier studies (Wrapson et al., 2006). Other studies have shown that speed trailers or portable changeable message signs, which may include speed feedback plus other messages such as “Slow Down Now” can be effective in reducing speeds in work zones (Brewer et al., 2006; Mattox et al., 2007) and school zones (Lee et al., 2006). Automated speed display monitors also provide a method to collect location-specific travel speed data. Speed feedback devices are likely to be more effective on two-lane highways than multi-lane ones. In addition, they may not provide accurate speed indications if traffic volumes are too high (Ullman et al., 2013). Speeds seem to rebound quickly downstream and as soon as the devices are removed (Walter & Broughton, 2011; Hajbabaie et al., 2011).
- In work zones, a combination of a parked police vehicle and speed feedback trailer reduced average and 85th percentile traffic stream speeds and free flow speeds to a similar degree as automated camera enforcement, whereas the effect of speed trailers alone was the same as no treatment. Parked police alone was also effective, but to a lesser extent than the combination of police + trailer or the camera system. The number of speeders above 10 mph over the limit was essentially reduced to zero by both the automated enforcement and police + trailer combination. However, the treatment effects on speeds in work zones disappeared in 40 – 50 minutes of removal (Hajbabaie et al., 2011). See the Ullman et al. (2013) Report 746 for in-depth discussion of advantages, disadvantages and deployment considerations for methods of traffic enforcement in work zones. According to this report, which provides state of the knowledge for work zone

enforcement, there have been insufficient controlled trials to identify the optimal mix of enforcement types and other treatments for different highway types, geometries, and work zone situations. The report reiterates the importance of work zone speed limits that reflect the situation, including the presence of workers or alignment changes.

- Drone radar – A study of the use of this technology in work zones suggests that it may be effective at reducing overall speed of the traffic stream, with particularly large speed reductions among vehicles equipped with radar detectors (Eckenrode et al., 2007). Both in-vehicle driver warning systems, as well as traditional cruise control, are widely available technologies that may be well-accepted by drivers to help govern their own speeds (Sivak et al., 2007; Young & Regan, 2007).
- Intelligent speed adaptation (ISA) involves in-vehicle devices that "know" the speed limit through accurate digital maps of speed limits and GPS data of the vehicle location. ISA systems can either warn when the speed limit is being exceeded (i.e., open ISA) or apply active controls to slow the vehicle (i.e., closed ISA) (more details about levels of ISA can be found from European Commission, 2015). A pilot study was conducted in the United States among a group of repeat violators. (See section 3.1 for information about this study.) The devices have been widely studied in European countries for acceptability and effects on driver behavior with more widespread on-road trials currently underway. (See www.ec.europa.eu/transport/road_safety/specialist/knowledge/speed/new_technologies_new_opportunities/intelligent_speed_adaptation_isa_en for more information.) In Europe, the effects on speeding have been fairly dramatic for both warning and control type ISA systems, decreasing the amount of speeding and narrowing the speed distributions (Carsten, 2012; Lai & Carsten, 2012; van der Pas et al., 2014). These are very promising results for potential crash and injury reductions. However, a widespread implementation and trial have yet to be documented. While there remain issues to be resolved, including the extent to which behaviors in international trials are generalizable to the United States, the main roadblock to implementation may be political (Carsten, 2012) rather than safety or technological reasons. Some issues uncovered in trials include that serious offenders were more likely to disable or over-ride the devices than other drivers (van der Pas et al., 2014), and may be less likely to adopt ISA use, even with incentives (Chorlton et al., 2012; De Leonardis et al., 2014). It is not clear if drivers' behavior may change after the devices are inactivated, or when they are disabled. Drivers' intentions to speed and actual behaviors were assessed following driving with an Intelligent Speed Adaptation in-vehicle system that provided direct resistance to speeding (Chorlton & Connor, 2012). While measured intentions to speed and impressions of time-savings that could be gained by speeding were decreased among the participants, actual speeding behavior after the system was inactivated returned to pre-exposure levels within 4 weeks.
- According to researchers from the United Kingdom, the devices may potentially be over-ridden where they may be most needed (Lai & Carsten, 2012). Other uncertainties also still exist about driver behaviors or adaptations, and even external forces that may potentially affect the costs and benefits of ISA (van der Pas et al., 2012). Finally, there is a need to provide current and accurate maps of speed limits (Carsten, 2012).
- A study of the effects of in-vehicle warning and monitoring systems was disappointing with respect to speed control by young teens (Farmer et al., 2010). Even with parental notification (immediate or delayed) and with or without in-vehicle alerts, there was either no reduction in instances of teens exceeding the limit by more than 10 mph or initial

declining trends reversed after a few weeks.

- Alerts or speed monitoring combined with rewards may work better than alerts and monitoring alone. Several field tests from Europe have found that drivers exceeded limits less when offered economic incentives such as reduced insurance premiums or discounts (for lease vehicles). Results were positive for lease car drivers in the Netherlands (Mazureck & van Hattem, 2006), young drivers in the Netherlands (Bolderdijk et al., 2011), and members of a large motor club in Sweden (Stigson et al., 2014).
- In the United States, several vehicles with intelligent speed adapation (ISA) capabilities (open ISA level) are currently available (see NTSB, 2017). A study (Blomberg et al., 2015) tested a half-open ISA system with young drivers (18-24 years old, $N = 44$) to examine its effectiveness in speed reduction. The results showed that the ISA significantly reduced the incidence of speeding episodes that exceed 5+ mph over the posted speed limit.

Many jurisdictions use some of the above technologies. Each has costs for new equipment, maintenance, and training, and perhaps other costs. In the case of ISA, accurate digital maps of speed limits are needed.

## 3. Penalties and Adjudication

### 3.1 Penalty Types and Levels

| Effectiveness: ☆☆† | Cost: Varies | Use: High | Time: Low |
|---|---|---|---|

† For general traffic offenses

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure's effectiveness has been examined in several research studies. The balance of the evidence suggests that these types of countermeasures are ineffective in the long term.*

Penalty types and levels for speeding and the traffic offenses included under aggressive driving are part of each State's overall driver control system. Penalties typically are low for first offenses that do not produce serious crashes and casualties and include small fines and perhaps a few demerit points assessed against the driver's license. When violations cause a crash producing serious injury or death, the offense may carry criminal charges and sanctions may be more severe. As discussed in Chapter 3, Section 1.2, NHTSA's Aggressive Driving Symposium and NCHRP's *Aggressive Driving Guide* recommend enhanced penalties for repeat aggressive driving offenders and felony charges for offenses resulting in serious injury or death (Neuman, Pfefer, Slack, Hardy, Raub, et al., 2003, Strategy A3; NHTSA, 2001a).

States use the demerit point system in an attempt to prevent drivers from committing repeated traffic offenses. As drivers accumulate demerit points, States use actions and penalties such as warning letters, educational brochures, group counseling meetings, individual counseling, administrative hearings, and driver's license suspension or revocation (Masten & Peck, 2004). Penalty levels and types for speeding and aggressive driving offenses should be considered in the context of a State's overall driver control and problem driver remediation system.

**Use:** Each State has a system of penalties for traffic offenses. Each system includes more severe penalties for significant individual offenses, such as those producing serious injury or death, and for repeated offenses, often determined through accumulated driver's license demerit points.

**Effectiveness:** Generally, for penalties to be effective, perceived risk of getting caught must be high. Evidence is mixed about effectiveness of varying severity of penalties. Masten and Peck (2004) reviewed the effectiveness evidence for different driver improvement and driver control actions, including penalty levels and types, from 35 high-quality studies of 106 individual actions and penalties. They found that, taken together, all actions and penalties reduced subsequent crashes by 6% and violations by 8%. Even simple warning letters had some effect on both violations and crashes. The effect increased as the "obtrusiveness" of the action increased, with license suspension or revocation the most effective by far. The authors noted that the threat of license suspension probably is responsible for the effectiveness of the weaker actions such as warning letters. Educational brochures by themselves had no effect. However, administrative penalties imposed by the driver licensing agency were more effective than penalties imposed by the courts.

Elvik and Christensen (2007) reported there was a weak tendency for speeding violations in Norway to decrease near camera-enforced sites in response to increasing fixed penalties over time. However, there was no general effect of increasing fixed penalties over the road system at large. The researchers thought this was likely due to the overall low risk of detection.

Evaluations of the introduction of penalty point systems in European and Middle-Eastern countries, including Kuwait in 2006, suggest that the introduction of penalty points, including for speeding, have significantly reduced road traffic injuries (Akhtar & Ziyab, 2014). Although the time series analysis may not have been able to control for all confounders, including driver education weeks and the volume of citations, the results of this and other studies suggest that introduction of a penalty system can be an effective safety measure, in conjunction with enforcement and education. However, the long-term effects of penalty systems are somewhat uncertain and likely depend on how they continue to be implemented.

For example, research in Maryland found that legal consequences for speeding had little impact on future citations for individual drivers (Lawpoolsri et al., 2007). Drivers who received legal consequences had the same likelihood of receiving another speeding citation as drivers who escaped legal consequences. Only fines coupled with probation before judgment was associated with a reduced risk of receiving a subsequent speeding ticket. A follow-on longitudinal study found that the 54% of cited drivers who opted for court appearance to contest their speeding citations were more likely to be involved in future crashes and receive future speeding citations than drivers who accepted a guilty verdict and paid fines by mail (Li et al., 2011). In addition, whether drivers who opted for court appearance received guilty or not-guilty verdicts, or had charges dismissed had little effect on deterrence of future speeding *or* prevention of crashes, even controlling for prior driver histories and other potential confounders. Only suspended types of prosecutions (e.g., probation before judgment or other suspension) were associated with somewhat decreased risk of speeding recidivism and future crashes, but a still higher risk compared to those who paid fines by mail. The two types of suspended prosecutions associated with somewhat reduced future speeding and crash risk both provide some incentive to avoid additional citations that would result in a reinstatement of charges and potential loss of license. Also, many drivers receiving suspended judgments may have had reduced exposure owing to having prior alcohol traffic violations and license restriction/suspension.

Similar to the results from Maryland, a British study that examined survey and conviction data found that the immediate threat of being disqualified from driving deterred those with points on their license from further speeding. However, for a subset of drivers, the threat of this sanction did not appear to affect their choice to speed (Corbett et al., 2008).

Most evidence suggests there is at least a subset of drivers for whom sanctions and increasing penalties do not seem to have the desired deterrent effect. Many studies and NHTSA statistics verify the prevalence of young, male driver involvement in speeding crashes. A review of the literature by Fuller et al. (2008) suggests that young males may simply be immature, with incomplete development of self-knowledge, self-control, social responsibility, and independence of judgment. Drivers with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) may be particularly at risk because of self-control challenges. In addition, there is evidence of socially deviant speeders for whom speeding is associated with other forms of risk-taking. These groups are distinguished from those who speed unintentionally due to failure to perceive risks and adjust accordingly.

**Repeat offenders:** Repeat speeding and aggressive driving offenders may be especially difficult to deter. Recommended methods to address these offenders include:

- Enhanced penalties, including increased driver's license points, immediate license suspension or revocation, higher fines, and jail or probation, but research described in this section makes clear that the availability of such penalties alone is unlikely to lead to individual deterrence of speeding. See Chapter 3, Sections 1.2 and 3.1, for more information. The certainty of punishment may be more important than the level of penalty (Li et al., 2011; Shinar, 2007). Furthermore, courts may be reluctant to impose the most serious penalties, such as license suspension, for speeding violations, or simply unable to effectively prosecute speeders as charged.
- Improved traffic record systems, to better identify repeat offenders and to allow patrol officers to immediately access a driver's complete driving record (Neuman, Pfefer, Slack, Hardy, & Waller, 2003; NHTSA, 2001a). There are no studies of the effects of improved record systems on repeat offenders. Costs and implementation time will vary.
- Providing alternate modes of transportation, electronic monitoring, enforced restrictions or limits on mobility through license plate "striping" or vehicle impoundment are other recommendations to address unlicensed drivers, including those who have already received the maximum penalties but continue to drive (Neuman, Pfefer, Slack, Hardy, & Waller, 2003).

In the future, there may be potential to use ISA (vehicle-based speed monitoring and warning or control of speed) systems for repeat offenders. A Maryland pilot study assessed the effects of an ISA warning type system on speeding behavior among 78 volunteer drivers who had at least three speeding violations in the prior 3 years (De Leonardis et al., 2014). Both verbal and red LED light alerts were provided in real time to the drivers when their speed exceeded the speed limit on a given road by more than 8 mph. Subjects' speeding behavior was monitored for 2 weeks prior to the systems being activated, for 4 weeks with the warning systems activated, and for a 2-week follow-up period with the alert systems deactivated. Results were promising. Drivers sped more than 8 mph over the limit a small, but significantly lower proportion of the distance driven during the alerting phase (0.43) compared to the baseline phase (0.45). Proportion of speeding also remained somewhat lower (0.44) during the two-week follow-up period when the systems were turned off except among the more habitual speeders, who immediately resumed their normal speeds. However, participants were very concerned about providing driving speed data to insurance or licensing agencies. They anticipated negative consequences, including the potential for revocation of their driver licenses and increased insurance premiums. Such concerns would need to be addressed to encourage drivers to voluntarily use such a system to help control their speed (De Leonardis et al., 2014). In general, the systems seemed to be well accepted by a majority of the drivers, except for the concerns mentioned. Two types of ISA – speed alerting and speed-controlling – were also evaluated among a group of serious speeders in the Netherlands (van der Pas et al., 2014). While the devices were active, there was much less speeding, but once inactivated, levels of speeding quickly rebounded to normal levels.

**Costs:** Costs vary by penalty type. For example, warning letters are very inexpensive once a record system has been established to identify drivers who should receive letters. Individual

counseling and administrative hearings may require substantial staff time. Some costs may be recovered through offender fees.

**Time to implement:** Most changes in penalty levels can be implemented quickly in a State's overall driver improvement system.

**Other issues:**

- **Public acceptance, enforcement, and publicity:** Changes in speeding and aggressive driving sanctions by themselves cannot reduce speeding and aggressive driving. To be effective, sanctions must be well known to violators and they must have a high probability of being imposed (Preusser et al., 2008). Traffic laws, penalty types, and penalty levels are essential to, but only a part of, a system that includes broad public acceptance, active enforcement, effective administration of penalties, and publicity (NHTSA, 2001a).

### 3.2 Diversion and Plea Agreement Restrictions; Traffic Violator School

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *Although there is some research examining the effectiveness of this countermeasure, there is insufficient evidence to conclude that the positive effects outweigh the negative effects that have also been observed.*

In many jurisdictions, drivers who have accumulated a specific number of demerit points on their driver's licenses are given the option of attending Traffic Violator School in order to reduce their punishment. In most instances, if they complete Traffic Violator School, their traffic offenses are dismissed or removed from their driving record (Masten & Peck, 2004).

Negotiated plea agreements are a necessary part of an effective and efficient court system. However, plea agreements may allow offenders to have their penalties reduced or eliminated, for example if a driver is allowed to avoid a driver's license suspension by attending Traffic Violator School.

**Use:** No data are available on the number of jurisdictions in which Traffic Violator School is available or the number of offenders who use Traffic Violator School to reduce their penalties. Similarly, no data are available on the use of other plea agreements for speeding or aggressive driving violations.

**Effectiveness:** Masten and Peck's review (2004) included high-quality studies of over 30 group meeting programs, including Traffic Violator School. Taken together, these group-meeting programs reduced subsequent crashes by 5% and violations by 8%. Masten and Peck point out that Traffic Violator School programs in California increased, rather than decreased, crashes because they allowed offenders to escape more severe penalties and start again with clean driving records. This was reaffirmed in a study in 2010, where accounting for the favorable characteristics of the Traffic Violator School participants (e.g., lower prior convictions) led to a further increase (from 5% to 10%) in crash risk in the one-year after participation in the course (as compared to a convicted group) (Gebers, 2010). Masten and Peck (2004) were not able to determine whether other Traffic Violator School programs that dismissed an offender's violation had similar negative effects. These reductions or eliminations of penalties also make it difficult to use driver histories to track and provide serious sanctions to repeat violators.

A more recent evaluation of a diversionary training course comes from the United Kingdom. The National Speed Awareness Course is a short training course provided by police departments that speeders can take as an alternative to paying penalties for low-level speeding infractions (Ipsos MORI et al., 2018). The objective of the course is to convince participants to comply with speed limits by fostering lasting changes in driver attitudes and behaviors towards speeding. The course does this by directly challenging driver existing attitudes, offering insight, awareness and understanding about their speed choices, and importantly, educating them on how they can change their behavior. The effectiveness of the training course was evaluated by comparing crash records for drivers that participated in the course with matched drivers that sited for similar levels of speeding, but whom did not take the course, or were not offered the course (Ipsos

MORI et al., 2018). The evaluation findings reported that drivers who took the course were significantly less likely to reoffend over the 3-year evaluation period, with the difference diminishing but remaining significant after the first 6 months following the course.

**Costs:** Costs for establishing diversion or Traffic Violator School programs will depend on the nature of the program. Costs include developing and maintaining a tracking system, notifying offenders, and administering the Traffic Violator School. Costs for limiting or eliminating diversion programs, plea agreements, and Traffic Violator School can be determined by comparing the per-offender costs of these programs with the costs of the penalties that would otherwise be applied.

**Time to implement:** Diversion or Traffic Violator School programs will require at least 6 months to establish and implement. They can be modified in a few months.

**Other issues:**

- **Diversion and plea agreement issues in alcohol-impaired driving:** Diversion and plea agreements have been discussed and evaluated more extensively for alcohol-impaired-driving offenses than for speeding and aggressive driving offenses. See Chapter 1, Section 3.2 for additional discussion.
- **Public acceptance, enforcement, and publicity:** Changes in the adjudication of speeding and aggressive driving infractions, such as limiting or eliminating diversion and plea agreements, by themselves cannot reduce speeding and aggressive driving. Traffic laws and adjudication are essential to, but only a part of, a system that includes broad public acceptance, active enforcement, and publicity (NHTSA, 200la).

**Speed and Speed Management References**

Akhtar, S. & Ziyab, A. H. (2013) Impact of the penalty points system on severe road traffic injuries in Kuwait. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *14*, 743-748.

Blomberg, R. D., & Cleven, A. M. (2006, August). *Pilot test of* Heed the Speed*, A program to reduce speeds in residential neighborhoods* (Report No. DOT HS 810 648). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1796

Blomberg, R. D., Van Houten, R., Thomas, F. D., Korbelak, K. T., & Hilton, B. W. (2015, December). *Automated feedback to foster safe driving in young drivers, Phase 2* (Report No. DOT HS 812 230). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1987

Bolderdijk, J., Knockaert, J., Steg E. M., & Verhoef, E. T. (2011). Effects of pay-as-you-drive vehicle insurance on young drivers' speed choice: Results of a Dutch field experiment. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 43*, 1181-1186.

Brewer, M. A., Pesti, G., & Schneider IV, W. (2006). Improving compliance with work zone speed limits. *Transportation Research Record, 1948*, 67-76.

Carsten, O. (2012). Is intelligent speed adaptation ready for deployment? *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 48*, 1–3.

Chorlton, K., & Conner, M. (2012). Can enforced behavior change attitudes: Exploring the influence of Intelligent Speed Adaptation. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *48*, 49-56.

Chorlton, K., Hess, S., Jamson, S., & Wardman, M. (2012). Deal or no deal: Can incentives encourage widespread adoption of intelligent speed adaptation devices? *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 48,* 73-82.

Corbett, C., Delmonte, E., Quimby, A., & Grayson, G. (2008). *Does the threat of disqualification deter drivers from speeding?* (Road Safety Research Report No. 96). http://citeseerx.ist.psu.edu/viewdoc/download?doi=10.1.1.425.298&rep=rep1&type=pdf

Davis, J. W., Bennink, L. D., Pepper, D. R., Parks, S. N., Lemaster, D. M., & Townsend, R. N. (2006). Aggressive traffic enforcement: a simple and effective injury prevention program. *Journal of Trauma, 60*, 972-977.

De Leonardis, D., Huey, R., & Robinson, E. (2014, May). *Investigation of the use and feasibility of speed warning systems* (Report No. DOT HS 811 996). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2002

Donnell, E. T., & Cruzado, I. (2008). *Effectiveness of speed minders in reducing driving speeds on rural highways in Pennsylvania.* Pennsylvania Transportation Institute. https://gis.penndot.gov/BPR_PDF_FILES/Documents/Research/Complete%20Projects/Operations/Effectiveness%20of%20Speed%20Minders%20in%20Reducing%20Driving%20Speeds%20on%20Rural%20Highways.pdf

Eckenrode, R. T., Sarasua, W. A., Mattox, J. H., III, Ogle, J. H., & Chowdhury, M. A. (2007). Revisiting the use of drone radar to reduce speed in work zones: South Carolina's experience. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board, 2015*, 19-27.

Elvik, R., & Christensen, P. (2007). The deterrent effect of increasing fixed penalties: The Norwegian Experience. *Journal of Safety Research, 38*, 689-695.

Essex, A., Shinkle, D., Miller, A., & Pula, K. (2018). Traffic safety trends: State legislative action 2017. National Conference of State Legislatures. www.ncsl.org/research/transportation/traffic-safety-trends-state-legislative-action-2017.aspx

European Commission. (2015). *Intelligent speed adaptation (ISA).* www.ec.europa.eu/transport/road_safety/specialist/knowledge/speed/new_technologies_new_opportunities/intelligent_speed_adaptation_isa_en

Farmer, C. M., Kirley, B. B., & McCartt, A. T. (2010). Effects of in-vehicle monitoring on the driving behavior of teenagers. *Journal of Safety Research, 41,* 39-45.

Flango, V. E., & Keith, A. L. (2004). How useful is the new aggressive driving legislation? *Court Review*, Winter 2004, 34-41.

Fuller, R., Bates, H., Gormley, M., Hannigan, B., Stradling, S., Broughton, P., Kinnear, N., & O'Dolan, C. (2008). *The conditions for inappropriate high speed: A review of the research literature from 1995 to 2006* (Road Safety Research Report 92). www.researchgate.net/publication/254419363_The_Conditions_for_Inappropriate_High_Speed_A_Review_of_the_Research_Literature_from_1995_to_2006

Gebers, M. A. (2010). A traffic safety evaluation of California's traffic violator school citation dismissal policy. *Journal of Safety Research*, *41*(4), 323-330.

Hajbabaie, A., Medina, J. C., Wang, M.-H., Rahim, F. B., & Chitturi, M. (2011). Sustained and halo effects of various speed reduction treatments in Highway Work Zones. *Transportation Research Record*, *2265*, 118-128.

Harder, K. A., & Bloomfield, J. R. (2007). *Evaluating the effectiveness of the Minnesota speed management program.* www.lrrb.org/PDF/200721.pdf

Ipsos MORI, Barrett, G., & Institute for Transport Studies. (2018, May). Impact evaluation of the National Speed Awareness Course. Ipsos MORI Social Research Institute. https://assets.publishing.service.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/706208/national-speed-awareness-course-evaluation.pdf

Kostyniuk, L. P., Blower, D., Molnar, L. J., Eby, D. W., St Louis, R. M., & Zanier, N. (2014, September). *Evaluation of the Michigan TACT program. (UMTRI Report 2014-24). University of Michigan Transportation Research Institute.* https://deepblue.lib.umich.edu/bitstream/handle/2027.42/109414/103138.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y

Lai, F., & Carsten, O. (2012). What benefit does Intelligent Speed Adaptation deliver: A close examination of its effect on vehicle speeds. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 48,* 4-9.

Lawpoolsri, S., Li, J., & Braver, E. R. (2007). Do speeding tickets reduce the likelihood of receiving subsequent speeding tickets? A longitudinal study of speeding violators in Maryland. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 8,* 26-34.

Lee, C., Lee, S., Choi, B., & Oh, Y. (2006). Effectiveness of speed-monitoring displays in speed reduction in school zones. *Transportation Research Record, 1973*, 27-35.

Li, J., Amr, S., Braver, E. R., Langenberg, P., Zhan, M., Smith, G. S., & Dischinger, P. C. (2011). Are current law enforcement strategies associated with a lower risk of repeat speeding citations and crash involvement? A longitudinal study of speeding Maryland drivers. *Annals of Epidemiology*, *21*, 641-647.

Masten, S. V., & Peck, R. C. (2004). Problem driver remediation: A meta-analysis of the driver improvement literature. *Journal of Safety Research, 35*, 403-425.

Mattox, J. H. III, Sarasua, W. A., Ogle, J. H., Eckenrode, R. T., & Dunning, A. E. (2007, January 21-25). *Development and evaluation of a speed-activated sign to reduce speeds in work zones*. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board, 2007*, 3-11. Transportation Research Board 86th Annual Meeting, Washington, DC.

Mazureck, U., & van Hattem, J. (2006). Rewards for safe driving behavior: Influence on following distance and speed. *Transportation Research Record, 1980*, 31-38.

McCartt, A. T., Leaf, W. A., Witkowski, T. L., & Solomon, M. G. (2001, May). *Evaluation of the aggression suppression program, Milwaukee, Wisconsin* (Report No. DOT HS 809 395). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/aggressionwisc/contents.htm

Moon, J-P. & Hummer, J. E. (2010). Speed enforcement cameras in Charlotte, North Carolina: Estimation of longer-term safety effects. *Transportation Research Record*, *2182*, 31-39.

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (2000). *Aggressive driving enforcement: Strategies for implementing best practices* (Report No. DOT HS 809 031). https://library.ctr.utexas.edu/digitized/govdoc/dot-hs-809-031.pdf

NHTSA. (2001a). *National aggressive driving action guide: A criminal justice approach* (Report No. DOT HS 809 351). [Copy available only by purchase from www.ncjrs.gov/App/Publications/abstract.aspx?ID=197754]

NHTSA. (2001b). *Aggressive driving programs* (Report No. DOT HS 808 730). [Not available.]

NHTSA (2006, August). *Pilot test of Heed the Speed, A program to reduce speeds in residential neighborhoods* (Traffic Safety Facts. Traffic Tech Technology Transfer Series. Report No. 316). www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Communication%20%26%-20Consumer%20Information/Traffic%20Tech%20Publications/Associated%20Files/Traffic_Tech_316.pdf

National Transportation Safety Board. (2017). *Reducing speeding-related crashes involving passenger vehicles* (Safety Study NTSB/SS-17/01). www.ntsb.gov/safety/safety-studies/Documents/SS1701.pdf

Nerup, P., Salzberg, P., VanDyk, J., Porter, L., Blomberg, R., Thomas, F. D., & Cosgrove, L. (2006, May). *Ticketing aggressive cars and trucks in Washington state: High visibility enforcement applied to share the road safety* (Report No. DOT HS 810 603). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.ems.gov/pdf/810603.pdf

Neuman, T. R., Pfefer, R., Slack, K. L., Hardy, K. K., Raub, R., Lucke, R., & Wark, R. (2003). NCHRP Report 500. *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, volume 1: A guide for addressing aggressive-driving collisions.*

Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/Onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v1.pdf

Neuman, T. R., Pfefer, R., Slack, K. L., Hardy, K. K., & Waller, P. (2003). *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, Volume 2: A guide for addressing collisions involving unlicensed drivers and drivers with suspended or revoked licenses.* Transportation Research Board. www.trb.org/publications/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v2.pdf

Newstead, S. V., Cameron, M. H., & Leggett, L. M. W. (2001). The crash reduction effectiveness of a network-wide traffic police deployment system. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 33*, 393-406.

Preusser, D. F., Williams, A. F., Nichols, J. L., Tison, J., & Chaudhary, N. K. (2008). *Effectiveness of behavioral highway safety countermeasures* (NCHRP Report No. 622). Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_622.pdf

Shinar, D. (2007). *Traffic safety and human behavior*. Emerald Publishing Group, Ltd.

Sivak, M., Luoma, J., Flannagan, M. J., Bingham, C. R., Eby, D. W., & Shope, J. T. (2007). Traffic safety in the U.S.: Re-examining major opportunities. *Journal of Safety Research*, *38*, 337-355.

Sprattler, K. (2012). *Survey of the states: Speeding and aggressive driving.* Governors Highway Safety Association. https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/speedmgt/ref_mats/fhwasa1304/resources2/21%20-%20Survey%20of%20the%20States%20-%20Speeding%20and%20Aggressive%20Driving.pdf

Stigson, H., Hagborg, J., Kullgren, A., & Krafft, M. (2014). A one year pay-as-you-speed trial with economic incentives for not speeding. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *15*, 612-618.

Stuster, J. (2001, June). Albuguerque Police Department's Safe Streets program (Report No. DOT HS 809 278). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1048

Stuster, J. (2004, March). *Aggressive driving enforcement: Evaluation of two demonstration programs* (Report No. DOT HS 809 707). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/AggDrivingEnf/images/AggresDrvngEnforce-5.0.pdf

Thomas, F. D., Blomberg. R. D., Masten, S. V., Cicchino, J., Tippets, A. S., Korbelak, K. T., Fell, J. C., & Lacey, J. H. (2015, January). *Evaluation of the Washington State Target Zero teams project* (Report No. DOT HS 812 097). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1996

Thomas, F. D., Blomberg, R. D., Peck, R. C., Cosgrove, L. A., & Salzberg, P. M. (2008). Evaluation of a high visibility enforcement project focused on passenger vehicles interacting with commercial vehicles. *Journal of Safety Research*, *39*(5), 459-468.

Ullman, G. L., Brewer, M. A., Bryden, J. E., Corkran, M. O., Hubbs, C. W., Chandra, A. K., & Jeannotte, K. L. (2013). *Traffic enforcement strategies for work zones* (Report No. 746). Transportation Research Board. https://download.nap.edu/cart/download.cgi?record_id=22576

van der Pas, J. W. G. M., Kessels, J., Veroude, B. D. G., & van Wee, B. (2014). Intelligent speed assistance for serious speeders: The results of the Dutch Speedlock trial. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 72,* 78-94.

van der Pas, J. W. G. M., Marchau, V. A. W. J., Walker, W. E., van Wee, G. P., & Vlassenroot, S. H. (2012). ISA implementation and uncertainty: A literature review and expert elicitation study. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 48,* 83-96.

Walter, L., & Broughton, J. (2011). Effectiveness of speed indicator devices: An observational study in South London. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 43*, 1355-1358.

Walter, L., Broughton, J., & Knowles, J. (2011). The effects of increased police enforcement along a route in London. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 43*, 1219–1227.

Wrapson, W., Harre, N., & Murrell, P. (2006). Reductions in driver speed using posted feedback of speeding information: Social comparison or implied surveillance? *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *38*, 1119-1126.

Young, K. L., & Regan, M. A. (2007). Use of manual speed alerting and cruise control devices by car drivers. *Safety Science, 45*, 473-485.

# A4. Distracted Driving

This section provides expanded discussion of the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

The ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures covered in this section of the appendix are listed below.

### 1. Laws and Enforcement

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.2 Cell Phone and Text Messaging Laws | ☆☆ | $ | Medium | Short |
| 1.4 General Distraction Laws | ☆ | Varies | High†† | Short |

†† Included under reckless driving; use of explicit distraction laws is low.

### 2. Communications and Outreach

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 Distracted Driving | ☆ | $$ | High | Medium |

### 3. Other Countermeasures

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Employer Programs | ☆ | $ | Unknown | Short |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Laws and Enforcement

### 1.2 Cell Phone and Text Messaging Laws

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *The effectiveness of laws banning cell phone use has been examined in several research studies. The results across types of phone use are inconsistent. Specifically, research examining prohibitions on hands-free phone use and texting have yielded mixed results in terms of reductions in phone use while driving and reduced crashes. There is some evidence that banning handheld cell phone use leads to long-term reductions in this behavior; however, many State and Local laws were only recently passed and effectiveness is still being examined. At this time, there is insufficient consensus across research findings to determine that this countermeasure is effective.*

Cell phones have become an essential feature of modern life. In a 2015 NHTSA survey of more than 6,000 U.S. residents, 42% admitted to answering phone calls while driving and 56% of these drivers continued driving while talking on the phone (Schroeder et al., 2018). NHTSA's 2018 national observation survey found 3.2% of drivers on the road at any given moment were using handheld cell phones (NCSA, 2019). The percentage of drivers who were manipulating a handheld device (e.g., texting or dialing) increased from 0.6% in 2009 to 2.1% in 2018. NHTSA currently estimates that 9.7% of drivers are using some type of phone (handheld or hands-free) in a typical daylight moment. These estimates may underrepresent cell phone use given the inherent difficulty in accurately observing these behaviors.

Many studies have investigated the effects of cell phone use on driving (see Caird et al., 2008, and McCartt et al., 2006, for reviews). Experiments on simulators or test tracks indicate that talking on cell phones has some effect on driving performance, most commonly slowed reaction times, but these experiments cannot measure the impact on crash risk. For reasons outlined in the overview, it can be difficult to determine whether cell phones contribute to individual crashes. Two studies examining cell phone billing records concluded that drivers are four times more likely to be involved in a serious crash when talking on cell phones (McEvoy et al., 2005; Redelmeier & Tibshirani, 1997). In addition, these two studies and others have found that hands-free phones offer little or no safety advantage over handheld phones (Caird et al., 2008; Ishigami & Klein, 2009). However, more recent studies have questioned the estimates of crash risk and argued the real risk may be much smaller (Farmer et al., 2010; Young, 2012). Analyses of crash events using SHRP2 NDS data found that aspects of cell phone use are associated with increased odds of crash events (Dingus et al., 2016). The table below shows the increase in odds and the baseline prevalence of the distraction in terms of the percentage of time drivers engaged in a distracting task while driving. Actions such as dialing and texting show substantially elevated odds of crash events, especially in comparison to more traditional sources of distraction, such as tuning a radio (odds ratio of 2.9) and talking to a passenger (odds ratio of 1.4), which are not shown in the table.

| Type of Cell Phone Distraction | Change in Risk (Odds Ratio) | Baseline Prevalence |
|---|---|---|
| *Total cell (handheld)* | *3.6* | *6.4%* |
| Cell dial (handheld) | 12.2 | 0.1% |
| Cell text (handheld) | 6.1 | 1.9% |
| Cell reach | 4.8 | 0.6% |
| Cell browse | 2.7 | 0.7% |
| Cell talk | 2.2 | 3.2% |

Note: All odds ratios statistically different from 1 at the 0.05 level of significance.
Source: Dingus et al. (2016).

There is less disagreement about the dangers posed by texting while driving. In a study using highly instrumented commercial motor vehicles, texting drivers were 23 times more likely to be involved in a crash, near-crash, or other safety-critical event compared to uneventful baseline driving (Olson et al., 2009). This is supported by experimental studies using driving simulations, which suggest that texting drivers spend up to 400% more time looking away from the road and are more likely to leave their lane than when not text messaging (Drews et al., 2009; Hosking et al., 2009). In the 2015 NHTSA survey, 20% of drivers admitted to sending text messages or emails while driving (Schroeder et al., 2018).

States have been very active in using legislation to address this issue. Since 2000 every State has considered legislation to curtail distracted driving or driver cell phone use. In 2015 legislators in 42 States considered approximately 150 bills related to distracted driving (Teigen et al., 2016). No State completely bans all types of cell phone use for all drivers. Bans on texting are more common than bans on handheld cell phone use. Overall, public support is high for this legislation. In surveys of the general public, between 70% and 80% favor bans on handheld cell phone use, and 88% to 97% support bans on texting while driving (AAAFTS, 2013; Guarino, 2013; Schroeder et al., 2018).

**Use:** As of February 2020 talking on handheld cell phones was prohibited in 21 States (Arizona [warning period through January 1, 2021], California, Connecticut, Delaware, Georgia, Hawaii, Illinois, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, Minnesota, Nevada, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York, Oregon, Rhode Island, Tennessee, Vermont, Washington, and West Virginia) and the District of Columbia (GHSA, 2020). The cell phone bans in these States are primary laws. In addition, several local jurisdictions such as Hampton, Virginia, and Cheyenne, Wyoming, have enacted their own restrictions on cell phones. At present, no State restricts *hands-free* phone use for all drivers.

Most States prohibit text messaging while driving. As of February 2020 there were 48 States and the District of Columbia that prohibit text messaging for all drivers (GHSA, 2020).

**Effectiveness:** Evaluations in New York, Connecticut, the District of Columbia, and in other countries consistently show that cell phone laws reduce handheld phone use by about 50% shortly after the laws take effect (McCartt et al., 2006). The long-term effects of these reductions in handheld cell phone use are unclear (McCartt & Geary, 2004; McCartt et al., 2010), and currently, the effects of these laws on use of hands-free devices is unknown.

The effectiveness of handheld cell phone bans in reducing crashes is still unclear. Nikolaev et al. (2010) examined driving injuries and fatalities in 62 counties in New York State both before and after a handheld cell phone ban took effect. Forty-six counties showed significant decreases in injury crashes following the ban, and 10 counties showed less-significant decreases in fatal crashes. Although encouraging, the study did not include a control group to account for other factors that may have decreased crashes. A study by the HLDI investigated State-level automobile insurance collision claims in California, Connecticut, New York, and the District of Columbia. When compared to neighboring States, there was no change in collision claim frequency after these jurisdictions implemented handheld cell phone bans. The data from the HLDI are proprietary, and not all crashes result in a collision claim, so collision claim rates may differ from crash rates.

Four studies have examined the effectiveness of laws prohibiting cell phone use and texting while driving. One study evaluated the effect of a texting ban in Michigan (Ehsani et al., 2014); another examined insurance collision claims in States with texting bans compared to neighboring States without such bans (HLDI, 2010). Both studies found small *increases* in types of crashes and collision claims following enactment of texting bans. One possible explanation is that texting drivers attempt to avoid detection by hiding their phones from view, which may result in more time with drivers' eyes off the roadway. Crash increases were also found in a study of crash data in New Jersey (Maher & Ott, 2013). While crashes have declined statewide, cell phone-related crashes increased after a cell phone and texting law was enacted. Additionally, the number of citations issued declined after the first year after the ban took effect, possibly because law enforcement resources are limited and issuing citations for cell phone use may be lower in priority compared with other law enforcement objectives. Finally, a review and synthesis of 11 peer-reviewed articles found that, while such bans are highly effective at reducing cell phone use while driving, the effect on crash outcomes is mixed (McCartt et al., 2014). Some studies showed no change in crash rates for both handheld cell phone use and texting, while others showed increases in crashes after the ban (although most of the studies reviewed had limitations that diminish the strength of their conclusions). These findings suggest that the impact on crash rates from cell phone bans is not clear, even though such bans are effective at reducing handheld cell phone use.

Drivers' attitudes and beliefs about the safety of using cell phones while driving are incongruous with their actions. Maher and Ott (2013) found that New Jersey drivers are knowledgeable about the law and assert that the law is necessary; however, a significant portion also admitted to having violated the law. A more recent national survey indicates that communication of the existence of State laws has generally been effective (Schroeder et al., 2018). Just over 90% of drivers in States that have laws banning cell phones believe that these laws are in place. However, driver perceptions are less accurate in States without these laws, where just over half of drivers incorrectly believe that their State has such a law. The patterns are similar, but slightly lower, when it comes to laws banning texting and emailing, where 78% of drivers correctly report their State does or probably does have a ban. Just over half of drivers in States that do not ban texting and emailing actually believe that such a ban is in place. Driver responses also suggest that communication efforts have fostered the perception that drivers are at risk of getting stopped for cell phone use. Specifically, over half of drivers think that they are very or somewhat likely to get a ticket for talking on cell phones while driving, while only 3.6% of drivers report ever having been stopped for engaging in this behavior (Schroeder et al., 2018).

**Costs:** As with any law, costs are required to publicize and enforce it. A handheld cell phone law can be enforced during regular traffic patrol because drivers who are using handheld phones can be observed relatively easily. However, some States with cell phone bans allow drivers to use phones for specific purposes while driving (e.g., navigation), which can make enforcement more challenging. As with other traffic safety laws, paid advertising supporting highly visible law enforcement may be necessary to achieve substantial effects (see Chapter Y, Section 1.3).

**Time to implement:** A cell phone law can be implemented quickly, as soon as it is publicized.

**Other issues:**

- **Cell phone blockers:** In recent years, several manufacturers have created systems that can block cell phones from making or receiving calls while people are driving. These systems detect when the phone is in motion. During that time, incoming calls are automatically diverted to voicemail and incoming texts are not shown until the driver has stopped moving. Typically, these systems allow exceptions for phone calls from pre-specified numbers, and some allow emergency calls to 911. Although these systems are potentially applicable to all drivers, they have largely been marketed to parents of teen drivers. Researchers at the Texas Transportation Institute tried to evaluate a cell phone disabling device for teens; however, they encountered difficulty recruiting families and very strong resistance by parents and teens to the device (Benden et al., 2012). NHTSA funded a study examining the effect of a filtering/blocking application on the cell phones of 44 Michigan DOT employees. When the application was active, participants placed and answered fewer calls while their vehicle was in motion. However, participants were not very accepting of the application, and the application was not completely reliable (Funkhouser & Sayer, 2013). NHTSA's 2015 National Survey on Distracted Driving Attitudes and Behaviors found that 46% of applicants would be open to using an app that would block phone calls and text messaging while driving (Schroeder et al., 2018).
- **Voice-to-text technology:** There are several applications that allow drivers to send and receive text messages using voice rather than manual entry. Although the research on these applications is limited, it appears voice-to-text technology may offer little or no safety benefit. In a study by Yager (2013), 42 participants drove instrumented vehicles on a closed course while texting manually or using one of two voice-to-text applications. In all three conditions, reaction times were slower and drivers spent more time looking away from the roadway. More research is needed, but the findings suggest texting impairs driving performance, regardless of what method of texting is used.
- **Enforcement of cell phone and text messaging laws:** Enforcement of cell phone use and text messaging laws is challenging. Fewer States ban handheld phone use compared to text messaging. It may be difficult for a LEO to determine whether a driver is messaging or performing other functions on the phone (GHSA, 2013). A NHTSA study conducted in 2013 and 2014 investigated the enforceability of texting laws in Connecticut and Massachusetts (Retting et al., 2017). A range of methods including spotter, stationary, and roving patrols, with variations in the number of patrol officers, uniformed/plainclothes officers, and the conspicuity of patrol vehicles, were used across four enforcement waves. Program evaluation revealed insights for successful enforcement, including officer training, pre-planning of operations, maximizing resources through local and State agency coordination, and the need for strong distracted driving laws. The latter is particularly important in cases where officers

may not be able to prove that drivers were texting but can cite the violation of other laws (e.g., handheld cell phone use). Twenty-six police officers from three Washington State counties participated in focus groups to determine factors that influence consistent enforcement of distracted driving legislation (Nevin et al., 2017). The factors that challenged effective enforcement included inconsistency in what corresponds to legal use of handheld devices, policies that do not extend to all drivers under all situations, and lack of clarity in what constitutes a reportable driving violation. Other factors, including officers' own beliefs and attitudes towards electronics use in their own driving, drivers' reactions and reasoning of behavior when pulled over, departmental priorities related to distracted driving enforcement, and prevalent local sociocultural norms also affected the success of enforcement practices. Establishment of dedicated traffic patrol units, changes in local public perception through campaigns, and clear delineation between prohibited activities and other electronic device use in the law were improvements that the focus group participants noted might improve the effectiveness of enforcement. In addition, some focus group participants also noted that officer education on distracted driving can bring about a cultural change. The authors developed an educational roll-call video for daily officer briefings that can help curb their own distractions while driving and motivate them to enforce distracted driving (see www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5927816/bin/NIHMS942376-supplement-Online_Appendix_B.mp4).

### 1.4 General Driver Distraction Laws

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: High† | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

† Included under reckless driving; use of explicit distraction laws is low

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *Laws that specifically target distracted drivers (including handheld and texting bans) are not widely enforced, and this countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Existing State laws allow people to be cited and prosecuted if they cause crashes due to distracted driving; however, the extent to which States pursue cases of inattentive driving is currently unknown. In 2009 Maine enacted a general distracted driving law. A driver who is involved in a crash or who commits an infraction can be cited for distracted driving if a police officer believes that to be the underlying cause. The law defines distraction as an activity not necessary to the operation of the vehicle that impairs, or could impair, the ability to drive safely. Utah has a law that prohibits "careless driving," which is defined as committing a moving violation (other than speeding) while being distracted by one or more activities unrelated to driving (GHSA, 2011). Potentially distracting activities covered by the law include talking on a handheld phone, searching for an item in the vehicle, or attending to personal hygiene or grooming.

No studies have evaluated whether general reckless driving laws or distracted driving laws have any effect (except for cell phone laws: see Chapter Y, Section 1.2). Based on extensive experience in other traffic safety areas, it is likely that these laws will have little or no effect unless they are vigorously publicized and enforced. See Chapter 1, Sections 2.1 on alcohol-impaired driving, Chapter 2, Sections 2.1, 3.1, and 3.2 on seat belt use laws, and Chapter 3, Sections 2.2 and 4.1 on aggressive driving and speeding laws. Enforcement of distracted driving laws especially difficult because distraction is often difficult to observe, measure, and document. Nevertheless, these laws may increase the impact of communications and outreach efforts to reduce distracted driving (discussed in Section 2.1) as laws help emphasize the importance of the message (see also Stutts et al., 2005, Strategy C2).

**Use:** New Jersey, Maine, and Utah have laws explicitly addressing distractions other than cell phones (GHSA, 2011). Other States include these conditions under their laws regarding reckless driving or similar offenses.

**Effectiveness:** The effect of general laws on reducing distracted driving is unknown. Part of the challenge in enforcing the laws may be the complexity in establishing proof that a driver was distracted by activities such as grooming. Officers might also face difficulties determining if a driver was performing illegal functions on the phone or using it for reasons permitted by law, such as navigation or hands-free use (GHSA, 2013). Inconsistencies in what constitutes legal use of devices, policies that may not apply to all drivers under all situations, and cognitive dissonance with officers enforcing distraction laws to which they themselves do not always comply, could add to obstacles in enforcing distracted driving (Nevin et al., 2017).

**Costs:** Costs are required for publicity and enforcement. Enforcement costs likely will be minimal, as most enforcement likely will be included under regular traffic patrols or combined with enforcement directed primarily at other offenses such as alcohol-impaired or aggressive driving. However, special patrols to enforce distracted driving laws will entail greater costs, especially if overtime is required for LEOs.

**Time to implement:** The implementation time is primarily determined by the time required to pass new distracted driving laws. Implementation can begin as soon as it is publicized and law enforcement patrol officers are trained.

## 2. Communications and Outreach

### 2.1 Communications and Outreach on Distracted Driving

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *Based on NCHRP research, there are no studies of any campaign's effects on driver knowledge, attitudes, or behavior (Stutts et al., 2005, Strategies C1 and D2).*

Distracted driving communications and outreach campaigns face challenges in how the issue of distraction is characterized and understood by drivers. Drivers "know" at some level that they should be alert. However, as discussed in the Overview, distractions come in many forms. Distractions outside the car are not under the driver's control. Many distractions inside the car also cannot be controlled easily (conversations, children), or are intentional (listening to the radio or CD player, eating). They may in fact be useful, to keep drivers alert on a long trip.

There is strong public support for communications and outreach to reduce distracted driving. For example, 80% of respondents in a Canadian survey agreed that greater awareness and education efforts are needed to alert drivers to the problem of distracted driving (Vanlaar et al., 2007). Many organizations have developed or conducted distracted driving communications and outreach campaigns directed to the general public. Some carry a general "pay attention" message, while others are directed at specific behaviors such as cell phone use. Examples of national communications and outreach campaigns over the last decade include:

- "U Drive. U Text. U Pay." A campaign program released by NHTSA in 2014 in support of texting ban enforcement during Distracted Driving Awareness Month (www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/distracted-driving/u-drive-u-text-u-pay);
- "Put It Down." A national campaign by the U.S. Department of Transportation to discourage the public from driving distracted ;
- "Faces of Distracted Driving." A national campaign created by DOT that tells the stories of families who are victims of crashes involving a distracted driver;
- "No Phone Zone" by Oprah Winfrey;
- "On the Road, Off the Phone" by the National Safety Council;
- "Decide to Drive" by the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons/Alliance of Automobile Manufacturers;
- "Texting While Driving: It Can Wait" by AT&T; and
- "Stop Texts, Stop Wrecks." by NHTSA and the Ad Council.

Driving while distracted is a particular concern for teenage drivers (Foss & Goodwin, 2014; NHTSA, 2012). GDL passenger and cell phone restrictions directly address two sources of distractions, as discussed in Chapter Y, Section 1.1. Broader communications and outreach efforts for young drivers regarding distracted driving also have been proposed. For example, a growing number of States are including distracted driving as a required component of driver education, the State's driver license test, or information provided in the driver license manual (GHSA, 2013). Some States have also developed their own education material and programs

aimed at teen drivers. See Governors Highway Safety Association (2013) for links to these materials.

A campaign at the University of Kansas combined traditional media (e.g., newspaper ads), social media (e.g., Facebook, Twitter), and "guerilla marketing" strategies to increase awareness about the dangers of texting and driving, and to foster a negative view of texting and driving among the college community (Atchley & Geana, 2013a). The campaign promotes a "TXT L8R. Drive Safer" message. A survey of University of Kansas students found 75% had seen the TXT L8R message, and a third (32%) reported talking with a friend during the last month about the risks of texting while driving (Atchley & Geana, 2013b). See Atchley and Geana (2013a) for more information about the TXT L8R campaign.

The ultimate goal of these campaigns is to change driver behavior, but they face substantial obstacles. As discussed in other chapters, communications and outreach by themselves rarely change driving behavior (Chapter 1, Section 5.2; Chapter 2, Section 3.1; Chapter 3, Section 4.1; see also Stutts et al., 2005, Strategy C1). To have any chance, stand-alone campaigns must be carefully pre-tested, communicate health information not previously known, be long-term, and have substantial funding (Williams, 2007). A broad "stay alert" message may be too general to have any impact. Also, commonly used fear appeals are generally ineffective and in some cases may actually encourage *greater* distracted driving, especially among young adults (Lennon et al., 2010, but see Bummara & Choi, 2015). This "boomerang effect" of fear appeals is thought to occur because people deny the threat or feel their personal freedom is threatened, making the undesirable behavior even more attractive (Lennon et al., 2010). Perceptions of distracted driving messages may also differ among age and gender groups, which makes necessary the involvement and input of stakeholder groups in the development and testing of distracted driving PSAs (Bummara & Choi, 2015; Solomon et al., 2010).

**Use:** A GHSA survey found that 47 States and the District of Columbia have implemented public information/education campaigns to address distracted driving (GHSA, 2013). In addition, some States have developed distracted driving PSAs.

**Effectiveness:** Based on NCHRP research, there are no studies of any campaign's effects on driver knowledge, attitudes, or behavior (Stutts et al., 2005, Strategies C1 and D2). A scan of documents through September 2019 found very few evaluations for the effectiveness of stand-alone outreach campaigns. One evaluation of a 30-second video among a small sample of university students reported that the fear-inducing messaging may deter texting and driving (Bummara & Choi, 2015). Almost 64% of the respondents reported that they strongly or somewhat agreed that they were less likely to text and drive after exposure to the PSA.

**Costs:** A high-quality campaign will be expensive to develop, test and implement.

**Time to implement:** A high-quality campaign will require at least 6 months to plan, produce and distribute.

**Other issues:**

- **Non-traditional communication channels:** At least 36 States as well as NHTSA use social networking sites to educate motorists about distracted driving (GHSA, 2013). Sites such as Facebook, Twitter, and YouTube can effectively and inexpensively reach large

numbers of people. Social networking sites are especially popular among young people, who are often a primary target of distracted driving campaigns.

## 3. Other Countermeasures

### 3.1 Employer Programs

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

This countermeasure involves State-based programs that address job-related distracted driving, which may pose a liability risk to employers. Employers can protect themselves by implementing policies that prohibit distracted driving and by monitoring compliance. There are many ways States can work with employers to address distracted driving. Some States, such as Delaware and Kentucky, have corporate outreach program staff devoted to distracted driving (GHSA, 2013). The programs usually involve dissemination of traffic safety material to employers, or sometimes directly to the employees themselves. States can also assist employers in promoting and enforcing policies to reduce distracted driving. Legally, employers can be held accountable for employees who are using cell phones (or otherwise distracted), and who are involved in a crash as part of their work (NSC, 2015).

Resources are available to employers to develop and maintain programs to prevent distracted driving. The Network of Employers for Traffic Safety program founded by NHTSA and led by private employers provides training and outreach material for member organizations. Australia's National Road Safety Partnership Program presents informational and promotional material on the program website; see www.nrspp.org.au/knowledge-centre/?resource-category=safe-users&id=17&resource-sub-category=distraction for an example of distraction related resources for employers. New Jersey has developed a sample cell phone use policy for businesses, available at www.nj.gov/lps/hts/downloads/Sample_Cell_Phone_Policy.pdf. The Texas Department of Insurance presents guidelines that employers may consider when incorporating measures to curb distracted driving by employees, including a sample agreement policy on on-the job device use that should be signed by both employer and employee at www.tdi.texas.gov/pubs/videoresource/stpcellphone.pdf.

**Effectiveness:** A systematic search in September 2019 did not result in finding any employer distracted driving program evaluations.

**Costs:** In comprehensive programs that are available at no cost, expenses will consist only of material production and employer time for training.

**Time to implement:** An employer program can be implemented within 3 months.

**Distracted Driving References**

AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety . (2013). *Distracted driving and perceptions of hands-free technologies. Findings from the 2013 Traffic Safety Culture Index*. www.cogosense.com/distracted-driving/images/research/whitepapers/2013-TSCI-Cognitive-Distraction.pdf

Atchley, P., & Geana, M. (2013a). *The texting and driving epidemic: Changing norms to change behavior*. Topeka, KS: Kansas Department of Transportation. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/26541

Atchley, P., & Geana, M. (2013b). *TXT L8R: Lessons from a targeted safety campaign*. Presentation at the 31st Annual Lifesavers Conference. Denver, Colorado.

Benden, M., Fink, R., & Stafford, J. (2012). *Teen driver cell phone blocker* (Report No. UTCM 10-15-47). Department of Transportation. http://utcm.tamu.edu/publications/final_reports/Benden_10-15-47.pdf

Bummara, V., & Choi, J. (2015). Exploring the effectiveness of distracted driving PSA (public service announcement). *Advances in Journalism and Communication*, *3*(04), 71.

Caird, J. K., Willness, C. R., Steel, P., & Scialfa, C. (2008). A meta-analysis of the effects of cell phones on driver performance. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *40*, 1282-1293.

Dingus, T. A., Guo, F., Lee, S., Antin, J. F., Perez, M., Buchanan-King, M., & Hankey, J. (2016). Driver crash risk factors and prevalence evaluation using naturalistic driving data. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, *113*(10), 2636-2641.

Drews, F. A., Yazdani, H., Godfrey, C. N., Cooper, J. M., & Strayer, D. L. (2009). Text messaging in simulated driving. *Human Factors*, *51*, 762-770.

Ehsani, J. P., Bingham, C. R., Ionides, E., & Childers, D. (2014). The impact of Michigan's text messaging restriction on motor vehicle crashes. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, *54*, S68-S74.

Farmer, C. M., Braitman, K. A., & Lund, A. K. (2010). Cell phone use while driving and attributable crash risk. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *11*, 466-470.

Foss, R. D., & Goodwin, A. H. (2014). Distracted driver behaviors and distracting conditions among adolescent drivers: Findings from a naturalistic study. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, *54*, S50-S60.

Funkhouser, D., & Sayer, J. R. (2013, December). *Cell phone filter/blocker technology field test* (Report No. DOT HS 811 863). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/NVS/Crash%20Avoidance/Technical%20Publications/2013/Cell_Phone_Filter_Blocker_Technology_Field_Test_811863.pdf

Governors Highway Safety Association. (2011). *Distracted driving: What research shows and what states can do*.

GHSA. (2013). *Distracted driving: Survey of the States.* www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2016-12/2013_distraction.pdf

GHSA. (2020). *Distracted driving laws by state*. www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2020-02/DistractedDrivingLawChart-FEB20_0.pdf

Guarino, J. (2013). *Survey reveals public open to ban on hand-held cell phone use and texting*. RITA Bureau of Transportation Statistics, Special Report. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/25511

Highway Loss Data Institute. (2009). *Hand-held cellphone laws and collision claim frequencies* (Highway Loss Data Institute Bulletin, Vol. 26, No.17). www.iihs.org/iihs/topics/t/distracted-driving/hldi-research

HLDI. (2010). *Texting laws and collision claim frequencies* (Highway Loss Data Institute Bulletin, Vol. 27, No.11). www.iihs.org/iihs/topics/t/distracted-driving/hldi-research

Hosking, S. G., Young, K. L., & Regan, M. A. (2009). The effects of text messaging on young drivers. *Human Factors*, *51*, 582-592.

Ishigami, Y., & Klein, R. M. (2009). Is a hands-free phone safer than a handheld phone? *Journal of Safety Research*, *40*, 157-164.

Lennon, R., Rentfro, R., & O'Leary, B. (2010). Social marketing and distracted driving behaviors among young adults: The effectiveness of fear appeals. *Academy of Marketing Studies*, *14*, 95–113.

Maher, A., & Ott, P. (2013). *Effects of New Jersey's Cell Phone and Text Ban* (No. CUNY-49111-19-23). www.utrc2.org/sites/default/files/pubs/Final-NJ-Cell-Phone-Text-Ban.pdf

McCartt, A. T., & Geary, L. L. (2004). Long term effects of New York State's law on drivers' handheld cell phone use. *Injury Prevention, 10*, 11–15.

McCartt, A. T., Hellinga, L. A., & Braitman, K. A. (2006). Cell phones and driving: Review of research. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 7,* 89-106.

McCartt, A. T., & Hellinga, L. A., Strouse, L. M., & Farmer, C. M. (2010). Long-term effects of handheld cell phone laws on driver handheld cell phone use. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 11*, 133-141.

McCartt, A. T., Kidd, D. G., & Teoh, E. R. (2014). Driver cellphone and texting bans in the United States: evidence of effectiveness. *Annals of Advances in Automotive Medicine, 58*, 99.

McEvoy, S. P. Stevenson, M. R., McCartt, A. T., Woodward, M., Haworth, C., Palamara, P., & Cercarelli, R. (2005). Role of mobile phones in motor vehicle crashes resulting in hospital attendance: A case-crossover study. *British Medical Journal*, *331,* 428-434.

Nevin, P. E., Blanar, L., Kirk, A. P., Freedheim, A., Kaufman, R., Hitchcock, L., Maeser, J. D., & Ebel, B. E. (2017). "I wasn't texting; I was just reading an email …": a qualitative study of distracted driving enforcement in Washington State. *Injury Prevention*, *23*(3), 165-170.

National Center for Statistics and Analysis NCSA). (2019, October). *Driver electronic device use in 2018* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 812 818). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812818

NHTSA. (2012). *Blueprint for ending distracted driving* (Report No. DOT HS 811 629). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811629.pdf

National Safety Council (NSC). (2015). *Employer liability and the case for comprehensive cell phone policies*. www.nsc.org/Portals/0/Documents/DistractedDrivingDocuments/NSC-CorpLiability-WP-lr-(1).pdf

Nikolaev, A. G., Robbins M. J., & Jacobson, S. H. (2010). Evaluating the impact of legislation prohibiting hand-held cell phone use while driving. *Transportation Research Part A*, *44*, 182-193.

Olson, R. L., Hanowski, R. J., Hickman, J. S., & Bocanegra, J. (2009). *Driver distraction in commercial vehicle operations* (Report No. FMCSA-RRR-09-042). FMCSA. www.fmcsa.dot.gov/sites/fmcsa.dot.gov/files/docs/FMCSA-RRR-09-042.pdf

Redelmeier, D. A., & Tibshirani, R. J. (1997). Association between cellular telephone calls and motor vehicle collisions. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, *336*, 453-458.

Retting, R., Sprattler, K., Rothenberg, H., & Sexton, T. (2017, March). *Evaluating the enforceability of texting laws: Strategies tested in Connecticut and Massachusetts* (Report No. DOT HS 812 367). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2085

Schroeder, P., Wilbur, M., & Pena, R. (2018, March). *National Survey on Distracted Driving Attitudes and Behaviors-2015* (Report No. DOT HS 812 461). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/35960

Solomon, B. J., Hendry, P., Kalynych, C., Taylor, P., & Tepas III, J. J. (2010). Do perceptions of effective distractive driving public service announcements differ between adults and teens? *Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery*, *69*(4), S223-S226.

Stutts, J., Knipling, R. R., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L., & Hardy, K. K. (2005). *A guide for reducing crashes involving drowsy and distracted drivers* (Report 500, Vol. 14). National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine. https://nap.edu/download/23420

Teigen, A., Shinkle, D., & Essex, A. (2016, February). *Traffic safety trends: State legislative action 2015*. National Conference of State Legislatures. www.ncsl.org/Portals/1/Documents/transportation/2015_Traffic_Safety_Trends.pdf

Vanlaar, W., Simpson, H., Mayhew, D., & Robertson, R. (2007). The road safety monitor 2006: distracted driving. https://tirf.ca/downloading/?dlm-dp-dl=4158

Williams, A. F. (2007). *Public information and education in the promotion of highway safety* (Research Results Digest 322). Transportation Research Board. http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rrd_322.pdf

Yager, C. (2013). *An evaluation of the effectiveness of voice-to-text programs at reducing incidences of distracted driving*. Texas A&M Transportation Institute. https://static.tti.tamu.edu/swutc.tamu.edu/publications/technicalreports/600451-00011-1.pdf

Young, R. A. (2012). Cell phone use and crash risk. *Epidemiology*, *23*, 116-118.

# A5. Motorcycle Safety

This section provides expanded discussion of the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

The ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures covered in this section of the appendix are listed below.

### 1. Motorcycle Helmets

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.2 Helmet Use Promotion Programs | ☆ | Varies | Low | Varies |
| 1.3 Helmet Law Enforcement; Noncompliant Helmets | ☆ | $ | Unknown | Medium |

### 2. Alcohol Impairment

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.2 Alcohol Impairment: Communications | ☆ | $$ | Medium | Medium |

### 3. Motorcycle Rider Licensing and Training

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Motorcycle Rider Licensing | ☆ | $ | High | Medium |
| 3.2 Motorcycle Rider Training | ☆☆ | $$ | High | Varies |

### 4. Communications and Outreach

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4.1 Conspicuity and Protective Clothing | ☆ | Varies | High | Medium |
| 4.2 Motorist Awareness of Motorcyclists | ☆ | Varies | High | Medium |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Motorcycle Helmets

### 1.2 Motorcycle Helmet Use Promotion Programs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Varies |

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *There appear to be no formal evaluations of the effect of helmet use promotion programs in States without universal helmet laws (NCHRP, 2008).*

Several States without universal motorcycle helmet use laws promote helmet use through communications and outreach campaigns. To date there is little evidence that these efforts to educate and promote helmet use among motorcyclists in the absence of universal helmet laws are effective, unless the publicity helps to gain enactment of such laws (NCHRP, 2008). A parallel experience is evident in the efforts to increase seat belt use through educational and promotional efforts prior to the enactment of laws requiring seat belt use. Years of educational and promotional campaigns did little to increase seat belt use. It was only after laws requiring use were enacted that seat belt use began to rise substantially.

The MSF, GHSA, NHTSA, WHO, and other groups encourage helmet use. NHTSA has developed helmet use promotion brochures, flyers and PSAs suitable for television and radio that are available online (www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/motorcycle-safety for material). NCHRP (2008) describes elements that should be included in a campaign should one be undertaken. The WHO has published a manual for policy makers and road safety practitioners to use when developing programs improving motorcycle helmet use (WHO, 2006).

**Use:** Baer et al. (2010) distributed self-report surveys to States on their motorcycle safety programs and received responses from 45 States. Thirty-three of the 43 States that responded to a question on helmet use promotion, both with and without helmet laws, reported they actively promote helmet use, but the nature and extent of these promotions is unknown. Only one State reported using paid broadcast media spots.

**Effectiveness:** There appear to be no formal evaluations of the effect of helmet use promotion programs in States without universal helmet laws (NCHRP, 2008). However, helmet use remains substantially lower in States without universal helmet laws than in States with such laws (NCSA, 2019).

**Costs:** Good communications and outreach campaigns can be expensive to develop and implement: see Chapter 2, Section 3.1. Helmet use promotion material is available from sources including MSF, NHTSA (2003), and from States that have conducted these campaigns.

**Time to implement:** A proper campaign, including market research, material development, and message placement, will require at least 6 months to plan and implement. Baseline data and post-campaign evaluation can require an additional 6 months or longer.

### 1.3 Motorcycle Helmet Law Enforcement: Noncompliant Helmets

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *The effectiveness of an enforcement program on noncompliant helmet use has not been evaluated.*

LEOs in universal helmet law States easily can observe and cite motorcycle riders not wearing helmets. This deterrent to non-use likely explains why helmet use rates are high in universal helmet law States (Chapter 5, Section 1.1). In addition, many States require motorcyclists to wear helmets that comply with FMVSS 218, and Federal regulations require all motorcycle helmets sold in the United States to meet or exceed the FMVSS 218 standards. Helmets that do not meet the FMVSS 218 performance requirements are considered noncompliant. The prioritized recommendations of the National Agenda for Motorcycle Safety lists effective strategies to increase the use of FMVSS 218-compliant helmets as a high priority item (NHTSA, 2013). Use of noncompliant helmets increased slightly from 7% in 2017 to 9% of all riders in 2018 according to a nationally representative observational survey of helmet use (NCSA, 2019). Use of compliant helmets increased from 65% in 2017 to 71% in 2018.

Motorcycle riders wearing noncompliant helmets are essentially no safer than if they wore no helmets at all. NHTSA tested non-compliant helmets and found that the energy allowed to transfer to the head by the non-compliant helmet gave a 100% probability of fatal head injuries (NHTSA, 2007a). In addition to offering no energy-absorbing materials, a noncompliant helmet often covers only a portion of the rider's head and has inadequate or unused chin straps so the helmet is not likely to stay on the rider's head in a crash. Rice et al. (2017) found that riders wearing novelty helmets had 2.26 times the risk of fatal injury compared to wearing a full-face helmet. In addition, not all compliant helmets provide the same level of protection. Brewer et al. (2013) and Rice et al. (2017) found reduced risk of injury to motorcyclists wearing full-face helmets compared to other types of DOT-compliant helmets.

The challenge of motorcycle helmet law enforcement in States requiring FMVSS 218-compliant helmets is to actively identify and cite motorcycle riders wearing noncompliant helmets. Identifying a noncompliant helmet is easier than proving that it is noncompliant. Some noncompliant helmets have spikes or other protrusions, making them fairly easy to identify as noncompliant. Compliant helmets are formally identified by a DOT label on the back of the helmet. However, counterfeit DOT stickers are easily available and are found on many noncompliant helmets (although some noncompliant helmets may have labels that say they are novelty helmets and not motorcycle helmets). As a result of these stickers, it is difficult to enforce a noncompliant helmet citation in some courts (NHCRP, 2008, Strategy E1). In May 2011 NHTSA issued a Final Rule that took effect in May 2013 to strengthen helmet labeling requirements and to make it easier to prove that a helmet is noncompliant. For helmet laws to be effective, such laws must be vigorously enforced, extensively publicized, and adequately funded. NHTSA prepared a video clip for motorcyclists and law enforcement demonstrating how to identify compliant and noncompliant helmets and how to choose a helmet that fits properly (NHTSA, 2006). NHTSA also produced a brochure on how to identify noncompliant helmets

(NHTSA, 2014) and provides further information to choose the right fit at www.nhtsa.gov/motorcycle-safety/choose-right-motorcycle-helmet.

**Use:** Sixteen of 43 States reported to Baer et al. (2010) that they conduct enforcement to identify and cite noncompliant-helmet wearers, but only States having universal helmet laws would implement such programs (19 States and the District of Columbia as of May 2019, IIHS, 2019). In 2007 the New York State Police pilot-tested a motorcycle safety checkpoint enforcement program. In the pilot effort 225 motorcycles of 280 passing through the checkpoint were inspected. Traffic citations were issued to 104 motorcyclists; the most common citation (41 issued) was for operating with a non-compliant helmet (Salmon, 2008).

**Effectiveness:** The effectiveness of an active helmet law enforcement program on noncompliant helmet use has not been evaluated.

**Costs:** Since helmet laws can be enforced during regular traffic patrols, the costs will be for training LEOs, prosecutors, and judges to identify noncompliant helmets.

**Time to implement:** An active helmet-law enforcement program requires planning an effective enforcement strategy, training LEOs to identify noncompliant helmets and to carry out the enforcement, and training for prosecutors and judges to assure that citations will be prosecuted and adjudicated. This training can require 4 to 6 months to implement**.** Publications are available to help with non-compliant helmet identification, but other program aspects and training may need to be developed or adapted. These elements may require 6 months or longer.

## 2. Alcohol Impairment

### 2.2 Alcohol-Impaired Motorcyclists: Communications and Outreach

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *A literature search found no evaluations of the safety effectiveness of any drinking and riding campaigns.*

Many States have conducted communications and outreach campaigns directed at drinking and riding. See NHTSA (2006) and NCHRP (2008, Strategy B1) for more information and links. Organizations including AMA and MSF have produced campaigns and material on drinking and riding. See NHTSA (2006) and NCHRP (2008) for strategies for implementation, examples, and links to material. There are few evaluations of the effectiveness of any of these campaigns at any level, from awareness to knowledge and attitude change to any effect on motorcyclists' drinking and riding behavior. The experience of drinking and driving campaigns directed at all drivers suggests that they are unlikely to have a positive effect unless they are carefully researched and planned, well-funded, well executed, achieve high levels of target audience exposure (perhaps using paid advertising), use high-quality messages that are pre-tested for effectiveness, and are conducted in conjunction with enforcement directed at impaired motorcyclists. See Chapter 1, Section 5.2, for further discussion.

A focus group study (Becker et al., 2003) examined motorcyclists' attitudes, beliefs, and behaviors regarding drinking and riding. It concluded that many motorcyclists have strong feelings of freedom, independence, and individual responsibility and believe that drinking motorcyclists endanger only themselves. Consequently, they believe that government efforts to discourage drinking and riding are inappropriate. These beliefs also limit some motorcyclists' willingness to take actions to prevent others from riding while impaired.

The "Riders Helping Riders" program targets the expressed willingness of some motorcycle riders to help other riders by encouraging them to intervene to prevent other motorcycle riders from riding impaired and to create a stronger safety culture among motorcyclists. This program is based on the beliefs and attitudes of riders from focus group research (McKnight & Becker, 2007a, 2007b; McKnight et al., 2008). The material was pilot-tested in Georgia. Riders' attitudes and intentions toward intervening seemed to improve based on surveys taken before and immediately after training. Longer-term evidence of attitude change, interventions actually carried out, or definitive safety effects from behavioral changes will require exposure to large numbers of riders and longer follow-up of crashes (McKnight et al., 2008).

Another program called "Green-Yellow-Red" was developed and tested in Wisconsin (Aguilar & Delehanty, 2009). The campaign sought to educate motorcycle riders about the dangers of drinking and riding, encourage them to make safer choices, and provide impaired motorcycle riders with secure storage of their motorcycles so that they could find safe transport home. A coalition was established that included motorcycle riders, tavern owners, law enforcement, and local businesses, and substantial media attention was obtained at the program kick-off. While there is evidence that riders were willing to leave their motorcycles in secure storage containers,

only small changes in rider behavior and alcohol-related motorcycle crashes were observed following the program.

Rider groups can play critical roles in planning and implementing activities to reduce drinking and riding. Some State and local rider groups sponsor alcohol-free events or adopt alcohol-free policies. As examples, the Fox Valley, Wisconsin, Harley Owners Group (H.O.G.) chapter has an alcohol-free policy for all organized rides and Illinois American Bikers Aimed Toward Education (ABATE) sponsors alcohol-free rides (NHTSA, 2006, Section 1).

**Use:** Many States have conducted anti-drinking-and-riding campaigns (NHTSA, 2006; NCHRP, 2008, Strategy C1), but the total number of States that have done so is unknown. Some examples of States campaigns include Connecticut's "Open the Throttle, Not the Bottle" and Minnesota's "Drinking and Riding: A Really Bad Idea." Many other States have brochures and other material. It also is not known how many States have included messages directed to motorcyclists in their overall alcohol-impaired driving campaigns. However, motorcycle riders are now included in the "Drunk Driving. Over the Limit. Under Arrest" paid media spots. NHTSA administers incentive grants for States that apply and meet regulatory criteria for programs that prevent impaired riding. See also NHTSA's Stop Impaired Driving (www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/motorcycle-safety/stop-impaired-riding) and other motorcycle campaigns (www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/motorcycle-safety) for marketing material.

**Effectiveness:** There are no evaluations of the safety effectiveness of any drinking and riding campaigns.

**Costs:** A good campaign will require substantial funds to conduct market research, design and test messages, and place campaign material where it will reach motorcyclists frequently.

**Time to implement:** A substantive campaign will require at least 12 months to research, design, test, and implement. A vigorous implementation will require a significant duration.

## 3. Motorcycle Rider Licensing and Training

### 3.1 Motorcycle Rider Licensing

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *Although this countermeasure is widely used, the effectiveness of current licensing and testing on crashes and safety has not been evaluated.*

All 50 States, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico require motorcycle riders to obtain motorcycle operator licenses or endorsements before they ride on public highways (MSF, 2018). The goal of licensing is to assure that motorcycle riders have a minimum skill level needed to operate motorcycles safely (NHTSA, 2000).

State motorcycle licensing practices vary substantially. Most States have learner permits requiring only vision and/or knowledge tests. A motorcycle rider with a learner's permit can ride only in restricted circumstances, typically some combination of no passengers, only during daylight hours, and only with the supervision of a fully licensed motorcyclist. A riding skills test is required for full licensure (Alabama does not require a skills test for licensure). Two-thirds of the States use one of three tests developed by the MSF and American Association of Motor Vehicle Administrators, while one-third use their own test. Most States will waive the skills test, and sometimes the knowledge test, for motorcyclists who have completed approved motorcycle rider training courses, if the student passes the knowledge and skills tests administered at the conclusion of the course. See Motorcycle Safety Foundation (2018) for a summary of each State's licensing requirements and procedures and NCHRP (2008, Strategy C1) for brief summaries of the major skills tests currently in use.

The effectiveness of motorcycle operator licensing is not known. This is perhaps not surprising given the variability of licensing tests and procedures. NAMS recommends research to "ensure that licensing tests measure skill and behaviors required for crash avoidance" (NHTSA, 2000). NCHRP (2008, Strategies C2 and C3) describes strategies to couple training and licensing to help ensure that riders are both trained and obtain the necessary endorsements. The NCHRP notes, however, that no evaluations discuss whether increasing the proportion of validly licensed motorcycle riders would reduce motorcycle crashes or injuries.

Despite State requirements many motorcycle riders are not properly licensed. In 2018 some 28% of motorcycle riders involved in fatal crashes did not have valid motorcycle licenses, compared to 13% of passenger vehicle drivers involved in fatal crashes who were not properly licensed (NCSA, 2020). Licensing systems in some States provide no incentive to become fully licensed because learner's permits may be renewed indefinitely (NCHRP, 2008, Strategy C3; MSF, 2018).

The NAMS (NHTSA, 2013) recommend the following prioritized approaches to encourage full licensure:

- Merge rider education/training and licensing into one-stop operations (medium priority)
- States issue motorcycle endorsements immediately upon course completion (medium

priority)
- Identify and remove barriers to obtaining a motorcycle endorsement (low priority)
- Enforce penalties for improperly licensed riders (low priority)
- Insurance policies should not be valid for improperly licensed riders (low priority)
- Train license examiners in motorcycle issues (medium priority)
- Develop and evaluate enhanced licensing model using graduated licensing concepts (medium priority)
- Research to assure that licensing tests measure crash avoidance skills, behaviors (low priority)

The NCHRP (2008, Strategy C3) describes how Maryland and Minnesota used some of these strategies to increase proper licensing for motorcycle riders. Maryland used the additional strategy of comparing its vehicle registration and driver licensing files. A letter was sent to each owner of a registered motorcycle who did not have a motorcycle operator's license. The letter reminded each registered owner that a motorcycle endorsement was required of anyone operating the registered motorcycle. This quick and inexpensive strategy caused 1,700 owners to become licensed within 4 months. A randomized controlled experiment of this intervention suggested that while the method did increase licensure, a large percentage remained unlicensed (Braver et al., 2007). California also tried this approach with similar licensure results (Limrick & Masten, 2013). Effective July 22, 2007, the State of Washington added authorization to impound vehicles operated by drivers without proper endorsement (including motorcycles as well as other vehicles). However, an evaluation of the effects of this law did not find a significant impact on new or total motorcycle endorsements after implementation (McKnight et al., 2013).

Maryland and Pennsylvania have "one-stop shops" that provide motorcycle endorsement immediately upon successful completion of State-approved motorcycle rider training courses or tests, without having to wait after receiving permit. For Pennsylvania's procedures, see www.pamsp.com/CourseInfo_Basic.aspx.

Baer, Cook, and Baldi (2005) reviewed and summarized each State's motorcycle education and licensing programs and practices. A companion report (Baer, Baldi, & Cook, 2005) describes training and licensing programs and actions to promote training and licensing. Under a cooperative agreement with NHTSA, AAMVA has updated its *Motorcycle Operator Licensing System* and *Integrating Motorcycle Rider Education and Licensing* manuals by publishing the *Guidelines for Motorcycle Operator Licensing*. The GMOL provides guidelines for State motorcycle licensing programs (Hanchulak & Robinson, 2009).

**Use:** All States require motorcycle riders to obtain motorcycle licenses or endorsements to ride on public highways. Less than half of responding States reported that they enforce laws relating to improperly licensed motorcyclists (Baer et al., 2010).

**Effectiveness:** The effectiveness of current licensing and testing on crashes and safety has not been evaluated. An evaluation of a California program to increase licensure among improperly licensed motorcycle owners through DMV letters found that while the letters did increase licensure, there was no identifiable causal effect on crash involvements or traffic violations (Limerick & Masten, 2013).

**Costs:** Most States charge small fees for the motorcycle licensing tests (MSF, 2018). The costs of changing the licensing tests and procedures depend on the extent of changes and the amount of retraining needed for licensing examiners as well as what portion of costs are covered by licensing fees.

**Time to implement:** Developing new policies to encourage higher rates of full motorcycle licensure would likely require 6 to 12 months to implement. These include limiting the number of times provisional licenses may be renewed, administrative practices such as adding testing times and locations, or training motorcycle license examiners, or procedures such as waiving the skills test for those who have passed approved training courses. Enforcement of motorcycle licensing requirements could occur more readily if requirements for full licensure were clear enough to enforce.

**Other issues:**

- **Graduated driver licensing:** The NAMS recommended States incorporate and evaluate GDL concepts (NHTSA, 2000) and ranked it as a medium priority (NHTSA, 2013). Additionally, the GAO recommended graduated licensing for motorcyclists as a high priority in a 2012 Report to Congress (GAO, 2012).

  Most States employ GDL for beginning automobile drivers. GDL programs for automobile drivers have been shown to be effective in reducing crashes (Hedlund et al., 2003, 2006; Williams et al., 2012). Evaluations in New Zealand and evidence from Quebec suggest that the same may be true for motorcyclists (Mayhew & Simpson, 2001). NHTSA's *GMOL* includes a model graduated licensing program for motorcycle riders (Hanchulak & Robinson, 2009).

  Many States currently restrict motorcycle riders by learner permits or age (MSF, 2018). For example, California GDL prohibits passengers, freeway riding, and nighttime riding during the learner permit stage and requires all people under 21 to complete motorcycle rider training courses offered by the California Highway Patrol. In Utah motorcycle endorsements are restricted to motorcycles no larger than the size of the motorcycle used for the skills test, or used during the approved State training course (substitute). The endorsement can be changed by testing on a larger size motorcycle.

### 3.2 Motorcycle Rider Training

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: High | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure's effectiveness has been examined in several research studies. Despite some positive research findings, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

As of 2015 all 50 States offered rider education (MSF, 2016). Sixty percent of the 44 States that responded to a survey question from Baer et al. (2010) reported they were able to accommodate all riders seeking training within a calendar year. Training is also provided by some rider organizations (some ABATE and Gold Wing groups), manufacturers (Harley-Davidson), the U.S. military, and others. Many States encourage training either by requiring it for all motorcycle operators or those under a specified age, or by waiving some testing requirements for motorcycle riders who complete and pass approved training courses (Baer, Cook, & Baldi, 2005). Most entry-level training uses the *Basic RiderCourse* curricula developed by the Motorcycle Safety Foundation. The *Experienced RiderCourse* suite (ERC) is offered to riders with some previous experience or for seasoned riders who want additional training; however, the ERC represents a very small part of total training provided.

Although training is available, it is not clear what constitutes appropriate rider education and training, or whether current training reduces crashes. Evidence suggests that in addition to teaching motorcycle control skills, programs would better prepare riders if they were trained to (1) recognize hazardous riding situations, (2) assess their own abilities and limitations, and (3) ride within those constraints (Clarke et al., 2007; Elliott et al., 2007). Crash analyses have been used to identify crash factors leading to the greatest injury severity (Pour-Rouholamin & Jalayer, 2016); results can be used to prioritize critical issues to emphasize in training. NHTSA supported the development of Model National Standards for Entry Level Rider Training released in August 2011. These recommend content for motorcycle rider training courses. States are encouraged to go beyond the standards to address State-specific crash needs (Windwalker Corporation & Highway Safety Services, LLC., 2011).

NHTSA's Motorcycle Safety 5-Year Plan recommends that States conduct frequent and timely education and rider training at sites accessible throughout the State (NHTSA, 2019). NCHRP (2008, Strategy C2) further recommends that States evaluate crash experience, compare data and crash scenarios with training and licensing practices, and adjust targeted crash problems as needed. This requires cooperation by agencies responsible for collecting and analyzing crash data and those responsible for training and licensing.

States should provide motorcycle training on a timely basis to those who wish to take it. See Baer, Baldi, and Cook (2005) and NHTSA (2006) for examples of successful methods to use training capacity more effectively, including creative scheduling, centralized on-line registration systems, and use of private providers.

**Use:** Most States offer training to both experienced and beginning motorcycle riders. For more information, see Baer et al. (2010) and MSF's overview table, available at www.msf-usa.org/downloads/Rider-Ed-Programs-CSI-2016.pdf.

**Effectiveness:** Kardamanidis et al. (2010) evaluated the results of 23 studies for a Cochrane Review and found conflicting evidence on effectiveness of motorcycle rider training in reducing crashes or offenses. Due to the poor quality of the studies (most had selection and detection bias) the authors could not draw conclusions about effectiveness. However, data suggest that mandatory pre-license training for motorcyclists may reduce crashes and offenses by discouraging motorcycle riding, thus limiting exposure.

While there are few positive studies on motorcycle rider training to date, a study conducted by Boele and de Craen (2014) investigated the possibility of training higher-order motorcycle skills with risk training. Specifically, their study investigated if the training had an effect on safe riding behavior and hazard perception in the short-term (a few months) and long-term (12 to 18 months) after training. Training participants were divided into experimental and control groups. Both took pre-tests that included questionnaires and on-road rides. They also took short-term post-tests that included the same pre-test questionnaires and on-road rides as well as hazard perception tests, followed by long-term post-tests of the same things. The experimental group received the risk training between the pre-test and the short-term post-tests. Results reported that the experimental (risk training) group demonstrated more safe riding behaviors compared to the control group. The experimental (risk training) group also identified more hazards than the control group. This result was also found for the long-term post-tests; however, it was not statistically significant indicating that the impact on hazard perception was not sustained in the long term.

Although the results of the Boele and de Craen study (2014) are positive, the authors were quick to caution the idea of implementing this training on a large scale. Specifically, they attribute retention of the training's effect to closely following the design and curriculum as well as the didactic and substantive quality of trainers, which need to be considered with implementing this training.

**Costs:** Rider training programs are funded in part by States and in part by students' fees. Many States offset some or all their costs through motorcycle license or student registration fees.

**Time to implement:** Rider training currently is conducted in all States. Training capacity is limited by the number of available training sites (a big paved area such as a school parking lot is required), qualified instructors, and motorcycles and helmets for students to use. Some measures to increase capacity can be implemented quickly while others may take 6 to 12 months.

**Other issues:**

- **Training for other motorcycle configurations (three-wheeled motorcycles and motorcycles pulling trailers**): Several motorcycle organizations offer courses that address these special motorcycle configurations. These courses have not been evaluated.

## 4. Communications and Outreach

### 4.1 Communications and Outreach: Conspicuity and Protective Clothing

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: High | Time: Medium |

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure is widely used, but it has not been extensively studied. There is some evidence that certain approaches may lead to limited positive outcomes; however, there are insufficient evaluation data to determine the extent of effectiveness.*

Motorcycle riders should wear clothing that provides both protection and visibility. FMVSS 218 helmets (Chapter 5, Sections 1.1-1.3) with face shields protect the eyes from wind and foreign objects as well as protect the head in a crash (Brewer et al., 2013). Well-constructed jackets, pants, boots, and gloves can prevent abrasions and bruises. If made of impact-resistant material, they even may prevent arm and leg fractures or serious torso and spinal cord injuries (NHTSA, 2000). The benefits of protective clothing, especially equipped with body armor, was further confirmed by studies of Australian motorcyclists involved in crashes (de Rome et al., 2011 and 2012).

While some protective gear is vented and mitigates overheating, some riders avoid wearing it in hot weather. It has been shown to elevate body core and skin temperature and produce cardiovascular stress, leading to increased reaction time, errors, perceived workload, and mood disturbances (de Rome et al., 2016; de Rome & Brown, 2016).

A common perception among riders is that a frequent cause of motorcycle crashes involving other vehicles is that other vehicle drivers do not see the motorcycles. The Hurt et al. (1981) study from the United States and a Clarke et al. study from the United Kingdom (2007) report right-of-way collisions are more frequently the fault of the other motorists rather than the motorcycle riders. Failure of vehicle drivers to perceive motorcyclists seems to occur in a significant portion of these crashes. One easy way to increase motorcycle conspicuity is through continuous headlight use. Most motorcycles manufactured since 1979 have headlights that turn on automatically when the vehicles are started (NCHRP, 2008, Strategy D2). Additionally, 24 States require daytime headlight use for all motorcycles manufactured after a certain date (all at least 20 years ago) (MSF, 2016). However, the increasing prevalence of passenger vehicles using continuous headlights may reduce the visibility and effectiveness of motorcycle headlights (Cavallo & Pinto, 2012).

A second way to increase conspicuity is to wear brightly colored clothing, use white or bright-colored helmets (for increased visibility during daylight), and incorporate retroreflective materials or devices for increased visibility at night. Research confirms that motorcyclists wearing conspicuous clothing or helmets are less likely to be involved in crashes (Wells et al., 2004; NCHRP, 2008, Strategy D1). However, many riders deliberately choose not to wear brightly colored clothing or riding gear. There are no data on how many motorcycle riders wear types of protective clothing (other than helmets) or use auxiliary devices. Helmet manufacturers

and distributors report that more than half the helmets sold for street use are black and the predominant color of motorcycle clothing is black (NCHRP, 2008, Strategy D1).

As discussed, auxiliary headlights and brake lights, flashing headlights, and other vehicle technologies enhance conspicuity, but their effects on crashes have not been studied. Adoption of these technologies may be useful to promote among the motorcycling community, may require changes in laws if visibility enhancing technologies are restricted by States, and may also involve working with manufacturers and producers of motorcycles and auxiliary devices (NCHRP, 2008).

States and motorcyclist organization communications and outreach promote protective and conspicuous clothing. Some State training programs also teach the benefits of using high-visibility clothing. The NCHRP (2008, Strategy D1) provides examples of material from Oregon and the MSF and references to additional material from the SMSA, and the Gold Wing Road Riders Association.

**Use:** Of the 44 States responding to a survey question, 33 reported encouraging conspicuity-enhancing clothing and helmets to enhance motorcyclists' visibility (Baer et al., 2010). The extent or nature of these efforts is unknown.

**Effectiveness:** High-visibility clothing and protective gear enhance safety. Some limited evidence suggests programs aimed at increasing conspicuous and protective clothing would be successful. An Australian study found that the observed proportion of riders wearing full body protection increased in the month following an enforcement/educational campaign emphasizing conspicuous and protective clothing among other safety issues. However, it is unclear whether any real safety benefits were sustained (Baldock et al., 2012).

In Puerto Rico changes to motorcycle safety laws accompanied outreach to inform motorcyclists about changes and to encourage compliance. In response, motorcyclists adopted the practice of wearing protective clothing, and LEOs reported that riders both appeared to be aware of the law and expected to be stopped and cited for infractions (Fell et al., 2017). Four years after enactment, observations of motorcyclists found that more than 80% of motorcyclists wore protective apparel, and 68% wore reflective vests after 6 pm in compliance with the law.

**Costs:** Good communications and outreach campaigns can be expensive to develop and implement: see Chapter 2, Section 3.1. Information promoting protective and conspicuous clothing is available from sources including MSF, other motorcyclist organizations, and States that have conducted these campaigns (NCHRP, 2008, Strategy D1).

**Time to implement:** A proper campaign, including market research, message development and testing, and implementation, will require at least 6 months to plan and implement.

### 4.2 Communications and Outreach: Motorist Awareness of Motorcyclists

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *Although this countermeasure is widely used, no evaluations of the effectiveness of campaigns to increase driver awareness of motorcyclists are available.*

In multi-vehicle motorcycle crashes, the other vehicle drivers are frequently cited for having violated the motorcyclists' right-of-way (Clarke et al., 2007; Elliott et al., 2007; NCHRP, 2008, Strategy F3; NHTSA, 2000). Motorcycles and motorcyclists are smaller visual targets than cars or trucks, resulting in low conspicuity (see Chapter 5, Section 4.1). Also, drivers may not expect to see motorcycles on the road (NCHRP, 2008, Strategy F3; NHTSA, 2000). Clarke et al. (2007) reported that even when motorcyclists were using headlights and high-conspicuity clothing drivers sometimes failed to notice them.

Several States have conducted communications and outreach campaigns to increase motorists' awareness of motorcyclists. Typical themes are "*Share the Road* " or "Watch for Motorcyclists." Some States build campaigns around "Motorcycle Awareness Month," often in May, early in the summer riding season. (See NHTSA's Traffic Safety Marketing website for "Motorist Awareness of Motorcycles" material - www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/motorcycle-safety/motorist-awareness-motorcycles.) Many motorcyclist organizations including MSF, SMSA, the Gold Wing Road Riders Association, and State and local rider groups, have driver awareness material available. See NHTSA (2006, Section 5) and NCHRP (2008, Strategy F3) for links and references. Some organizations also make presentations on drivers' awareness of motorcyclists to driver education classes.

NHTSA developed model language on sharing the road safely with motorcyclists. The model language is appropriate for traffic safety education courses, driver manuals, and other communication and outreach (NHTSA, 2007b). NHTSA developed a "*Share the Road*" program planner for use by States, communities, and the motorcycling community (see www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/ShareTheRoad).

**Use:** Thirty-six of 44 States that responded to a survey question reported they communicate ways for drivers to increase their awareness of motorcycles and motorcyclists (Baer et al., 2010). NHTSA (2006, Section 5) and NCHRP (2008, Strategy F3) provide examples or links to campaigns from a dozen States.

**Effectiveness:** There are no evaluations of the effectiveness of campaigns to increase driver awareness of motorcyclists (NCHRP, 2008, Strategy F3).

**Costs:** Good communications and outreach campaigns can be expensive to develop and implement: see Chapter 2, Section 3.1. Motorcyclist awareness material is available from sources including the MSF, other motorcyclist organizations, and States that have conducted these campaigns (NCHRP, 2008, Strategy F3).

**Time to implement:** A proper campaign, including market research, message development and testing, and implementation will require at least 6 months to plan and implement.

**Motorcycle Safety References**

Aguilar, M., & Delehanty, H. (2009, April). *A social marketing initiative to reduce impaired motorcycle operation* (Report No. DOT HS 811 095). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811095-gyr.pdf

Baer, J. D., Ayotte, K., & Baldi, S. (2010, February). *Evaluation of state motorcycle safety programs* (Report No. DOT HS 811 269). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/811269

Baer, J. D., Baldi, S., & Cook, A. L. (2005, July). *Promising practices in motorcycle rider education and licensing* (Report No. DOT HS 809 922). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/motorcycle/-MotorcycleRider/pages/PromisingPractices.pdf

Baer, J. D., Cook, A. L., & Baldi, S. (2005, March). *Motorcycle rider education and licensing: A review of programs and practices* (Report No. DOT HS 809 852). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury-/pedbimot/motorcycle/McycleRiderWeb/images/Motorcycle%20Rider%20Education%20and%20Licensing.pdf

Baldock, M., Kloeden, C., Lydon, M., Raftery, S., Grigo, J., & Ponte, G. (2012). *The use of protective clothing by motorcyclists in Victoria: Evaluation of the Community Policing and Education Program*. In Proceedings of the 2012 ACRS National Conference - A Safe System: Expanding the Research: 9-10 August, Sydney, New South Wales, Australia, 2012: 11 p. www.acrs.org.au/wp-content/uploads/46_Baldock-PR-.pdf

Becker, L. R., McKnight, A. S., Nelkin, V. S., & Piper, D. L. (2003, February). *Drinking, riding, and prevention: A focus group study* (Report No. DOT HS 809 490). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/motorcycle/drinkrideprevent/DrinkRidePrevention.pdf

Boele, M., & de Craen, S. (2014). Evaluation advanced training course for motorcyclists: motorcyclists ride safer after training. www.swov.nl/rapport/R-2014-22E.pdf

Braver, E. R., Kufera, J. A., Volpini, K. D., Lawpoolsri, S., Joyce, J. J., Alexander, M. T., & Ellison-Potter, P. (2007). Persuasion and licensure: A randomized controlled intervention trial to increase licensure rates among Maryland motorcycle owners. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 8*, 39-46.

Brewer, B. L., Diehl, A.H., Johnson, L.S., Salomone, J.P., Wilson, K.L., Atallah, H.Y., Feliciano, D. V., & Rozycki, G. S. (2013). Choice of motorcycle helmet makes a difference: A prospective observational study. *Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery, 75,* 88-91.

Cavallo, V., & Pinto, M. (2012). Are car daytime running lights detrimental to motorcycle conspicuity? *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *49*, 78-85.

Clarke, D. D., Ward, P., Bartle, C., & Truman, W. (2007). The role of motorcyclist and other driver behaviour in two types of serious accident in the UK. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *39,* 974-981.

de Rome, L., & Brown, J. (2016). *Motorcycle protective clothing: Impact on cognitive performance and mood when worn in hot conditions.* Paper presented at the Australasian College of Road Safety 2016 Conference.

de Rome, L., Ivers, R., Fitzharris, M., Du, W., Haworth, N., Heritier, S., & Richardson, D. (2011). Motorcycle protective clothing: Protection from injury or just the weather? *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 43*, 1893-1900.

de Rome, L., Ivers, R., Fitzharris, M., Haworth, N., Heritier, S., & Richardson, D. (2012). Effectiveness of motorcycle protective clothing: Riders' health outcomes in the six months following a crash. *Injury, 43,* 2035-2015.

de Rome, L., Troynikov, O., Taylor, Y., & Brown, J. (2016). *Motorcycle protective clothing: Heat discomfort and physiological strain*. www.roadsafetytrust.org.au/c/rtt?a=da&did=1004593

Elliott, M. A., Baughan, C. J., & Sexton, B. F. (2007). Errors and violations in relation to motorcyclists' crash risk. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 39*, 491-499.

Fell, J. C., Ramirez, A., McKnight, A. S., Yao, J., & Auld-Owens, A. (2017, April). *Changes to Puerto Rico's motorcycle rider law* (Report No. DOT HS 812 397). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2091

Government Accountability Office. (2012). *Motorcycle safety increasing Federal funding flexibility and identifying research priorities would help support states' safety efforts*. www.gao.gov/assets/660/650037.pdf

Hanchulak, D., & Robinson, B. (2009, May). *Guidelines for motorcycle operator licensing* (Report No. DOT HS 811 141). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/811141.pdf

Hedlund, J., Shults, R. A., & Compton, R. (2003). What we know, what we don't know, and what we need to know about graduated driver licensing. *Journal of Safety Research, 34*, 107-115.

Hedlund, J., Shults, R. A., & Compton, R. (2006). Graduated driver licensing and teenage driver research in 2006. *Journal of Safety Research, 37*, 107-121.

Hurt, H. H., Ouellet, J. V., & Thom, D. R. (1981). *Motorcycle accident cause factors and identification of countermeasures, Volume 1: Technical report* (Report No. DOT HS-05 63). https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/6450

Insurance Institute for Highway Safety. (2019). *Motorcycle helmet use laws, May 2019.* www.iihs.org/topics/motorcycles#helmet-laws

Kardamanidis, K., Martiniuk, A., Stevenson, M.R., & Thistlethwaite, K. (2010). Motorcycle rider training for the prevention of road traffic crashes. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 2010, Issue 10. Art. No.: CD005240. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD005240.pub2

Limrick, K.J. & Masten, S. V. (2013). *Evaluation of a contact letter to increase licensure among improperly licensed California motorcycle owners* (Report No. CAL-DMV-RSS-13-241). California Office of Traffic Safety. www.dmv.ca.gov/portal/uploads/2020/04/s6-241.pdf

Mayhew, D. R., & Simpson, H. M. (2001). *Graduated licensing for motorcyclists*. https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/8d30/35fd2713e0a39fc158056254a33d17e99d04.pdf?_ga=2.154761214.75762146.1570474381-1703944869.1510587726

McKnight, A. S., & Becker, L. R. (2007a, August 22). *Impaired motorcycle operation, volume II: Riders Helping Riders instructor's guide* (Report No. DOT HS 810 907). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/810907.pdf

McKnight, A. S., & Becker, L. R. (2007b, August 22). *Impaired motorcycle operation, volume III: Riders Helping Riders student manual* (Report No. DOT HS 810 908). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/810908.pdf

McKnight, A. S., Becker, L. R., & Tippetts, A. S. (2008, August). *Impaired motorcycle operation, volume I: Riders Helping Riders evaluation* (Report No. DOT HS 811 023). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Articles/Associated%20Files/811023.pdf

McKnight, A. S., Billheimer, J. W., & Tippetts, S. (2013, January). *An examination of Washington state's vehicle impoundment law for motorcycle endorsements* (Report No. DOT HS 811 696). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811696.pdf

Motorcycle Safety Foundation. (2016). *State motorcycle rider education programs – 2016.* www.msf-usa.org/downloads/Rider-Ed-Programs-CSI-2016.pdf

MSF. (2018). *State motorcycle operator licensing - 2018.* www.msf-usa.org/downloads/State-Motorcycle-Operator-Licensing-CSI-2018.pdf

National Center for Statistics and Analysis. (2019, July). *Motorcycle helmet use in 2018 – Overall results.* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 812 720). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812720

NCSA. (2020, November). *Motorcycles: 2018 data* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 979). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812979

National Cooperative Highway Research Program. (2008). *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, volume 22: A guide for addressing collisions involving motorcycles* (NCHRP Report 500). Transportation Research Board. http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v22.pdf

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (2000). *National Agenda for Motorcycle Safety*. (Report No. DOT HS 809 156).

NHTSA. (2003). *The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration motorcycle safety program* (Report No. DOT HS 809 539).

https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/motorcycle/motorcycle03/McycleSafetyProgram.pdf

NHTSA. (2006, December). *Implementation guide for the National Agenda for Motorcycle Safety* (Report No. DOT HS 810 680). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/implementationguide.pdf

NHTSA. (2007a, April). *Summary of novelty helmet performance testing* (Traffic Safety Facts Research Note. Report No. DOT HS 810 752). www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/novelty_helmets_tsf.pdf

NHTSA. (2007b, February). *Share the road with motorcycles* [Flyer] (Report No. DOT HS 809 713). . https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/motorcycle/ShareTheRoad/images/ShareTheRoadwithMotorcycles.pdf

NHTSA. (2013, June). *Prioritized recommendations of the National Agenda for Motorcycle Safety* (Report No. DOT HS 811 789). www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811789.pdf

NHTSA. (2014, June). *Safety in numbers-Motorcyclists* (Report No. DOT HS 812 036). https://one.nhtsa.gov/nhtsa/Safety1nNum3ers/june2014/motorcycles/SIN_June14_Motorcycle_1.html

NHTSA. (2019). *Motorcycle safety 5-year plan* (Report No. DOT HS 812 488). [Flyer]. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/documents/13507-motorcycle_safety_plan_050919_v8-tag.pdf

Pour-Rouholamin, M., & Jalayer, M. (2016). Analyzing the severity of motorcycle crashes in North Carolina using highway safety information systems data. *ITE Journal*, *86*(10), 45-49.

Rice, T. M., Troszak, L., Erhardt, T., Trent, R. B., & Zhu, M. (2017). Novelty helmet use and motorcycle rider fatality. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 103,* 123-128.

Salmon, D. A. (2008). Reducing motorcycle fatalities through checkpoints and education: The New York State experience. *The Police Chief*, vol. LXXV, no. 7.

Wells, S., Mullin, B., Norton, R., Langley, J., Connor, J., Lay-Yee, R., & Jackson, R. (2004). Motorcycle rider conspicuity and crash-related injury: case-control study. *British Medical Journal*, *328*, 857.

Williams, A. F., Tefft, B. C., & Grabowski, J. G. (2012). Graduated driver licensing research, 2010-present. *Journal of Safety Research*, *43*, 195-203.

Windwalker Corporation & Highway Safety Services, LLC. (2011, August). *Model national standards for entry-level motorcycle rider training* (Report No. DOT HS 811 503). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811503.pdf

World Health Organization. (2006). *Helmets: A road safety manual for decision-makers and practitioners.* www.who.int/roadsafety/projects/manuals/helmet_manual/en/

# A6. Young Drivers

This section provides expanded discussion of the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

The ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures covered in this section of the appendix are listed below.

### 1. Graduated Driver Licensing

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.5 Cell Phone Restrictions | ☆☆ | $ | Medium | Medium |
| 1.6 Belt Use Requirements | ☆☆ | $ | Low | Medium |
| 1.7 Intermediate – Violation Penalties | ☆ | $ | High | Medium |

### 2. Driver Education

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 Pre-Licensure Driver Education | ☆☆ | $$$ | Medium | Long |
| 2.2 Post-Licensure Driver Education | ☆ | $$$ | Low | Long |

### 3. Parents

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Parent Roles in Teaching and Managing | ☆☆ | $$ | Medium | Short |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Graduated Driver Licensing

### 1.5 GDL Cell Phone Restrictions

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *The effectiveness of this widely used countermeasure has been examined in a few research studies. Despite some positive research findings, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

As discussed in Chapter 4, Section 1.2, young drivers are at a greater risk of crashing when they engage in distracting behaviors (Ferguson, 2003; Klauer et al., 2014). Specifically, with regard to cell phone use, young drivers are at higher risk of crashing when they reach for cell phones, dial cell phones, or text while driving compared to when they do not engage in these behaviors (Klauer et al., 2014). In one study the use of cell phones was associated with significantly longer response times (including no response, measured in seconds) than when drivers were not engaged in any cell phone use (2.8 s versus 2.1 s) (Carney et al., 2016). Drivers operating or looking at cell phones had longer response times than those engaged in phone calls (3.4 s versus 2.8 s), and they were more likely to make no evasive responses before collision compared to drivers engaged in conversations with passengers. Generally, the use of cell phones was associated with significantly longer eyes-off-road duration (4.1 s versus 0.9 s) and significantly longer response times (3.4 s versus 2.1 s) than when drivers were not distracted. These results further show the need for interventions that curb cell phone use by young drivers. A growing number of States include cell phone restrictions in their GDL laws. See Chapter 4, Section 1.2 for a discussion of cell phone laws applying to all drivers.

**Use:** As of September 2019 there were 38 States and the District of Columbia that prohibit cell phone use for young drivers. These bans cover *all* cell phone use, not just handheld phones. In some States the cell phone restrictions cover teenagers holding learner permits and intermediate licenses; in other States, the restrictions cover all drivers under a certain age such as 18 or 19 (GHSA, 2019a). Twenty States and the District of Columbia prohibit handheld cell phone use for all drivers. In addition, 48 States and the District of Columbia prohibit text messaging for all drivers. One of the 2 States without cell phone bans prohibits text messaging among novice drivers (see Chapter 4, Section 1.2).

**Effectiveness:** There is conflicting evidence regarding the effectiveness of cell phone restrictions on young drivers' phone use and crash outcomes (McCartt et al., 2014; Delgado et al., 2016). See also Ehsani et al. (2016) for a review of research published in 2014 or earlier. Ehsani et al. conclude that cell phone restrictions may not result in a long-term deterrence of cell phone use by young drivers. Part of the reason for the lack of consistent evidence is the methodological differences among the studies. The authors highlight the need for future analysis to distinguish between novice (e.g., early stages of driving, 16 or 17 years old) and more experienced young drivers and to include distraction-affected crashes as an outcome measure.

Cell phone restrictions do not seem to reduce young drivers' phone use. One study examined the prevalence of distracting behaviors, including cell phone use, among drivers 16 to 19 years old

enrolled in teen driving programs and involved in 412 rear-end crashes (Carney et al., 2018). The crashes occurred from August 2007 to July 2013 in Arizona, Colorado, Illinois, Iowa, Minnesota, Missouri, Nevada, and Wisconsin. Except Missouri and Nevada, these States have some form of ban on young driver cell phone use (GHSA, 2019b). In the 6 seconds before collision, drivers were most often using cell phones (18% of all distracting behaviors before rear-end crashes). Some 95% of these behaviors were coded as "operating/looking at phone" and included actions such as texting. A 2009 study examined the short-term effects of a teenage driver cell phone restriction in North Carolina and found that 5 months after a ban on cell phones took effect, the proportion of teens using cell phones while driving was unchanged (Foss et al., 2009). A follow-up study evaluated the long-term effect of North Carolina's cell phone restriction 2 years after the law went into effect (Goodwin et al., 2011). Teenagers were observed at high schools in North Carolina and South Carolina, which did not have a cell phone restriction. In both States, there was a decrease in cell phone use. However, the decrease in cell phone use did not significantly differ between the two States, despite increased awareness of the restriction among licensed teens in North Carolina.

Some studies have examined the effects of cell phone bans on young-driver crashes. The outcomes provide inconclusive evidence of the effectiveness of cell phone restrictions. The HLDI conducted two studies to compare the collision claims of drivers 25 or younger in a few States with some form of cell phone restrictions relative to control States without these restrictions (HLDI, 2009, 2010). There were no significant differences in the collision claims of young drivers in States with handheld cell phone restrictions as compared to control States. However, collision claims of young drivers were found to increase 5% to 11.5% in States with texting restrictions relative to control States, perhaps as the result of concealing phones from view to avoid fines (HLDI, 2010). The outcomes from Ehsani et al. (2014) follow similar trends. They examined the effects of Michigan's universal texting law on crash types among 16- and 17-year-old drivers and found a slight increase in the more serious crashes including fatal/disabling injury crashes and non-disabling injury crashes. However, they found a slight decrease in less severe crashes (e.g., possible injury/property damage only crashes). A study by Lim and Chi (2013) provides contradictory findings. Lim and Chi (2013) examined the relationship between cell phone bans and fatal crashes among drivers 20 and younger. They compared States across the United States that had no cell phone restrictions, cell phone restrictions that applied only to young drivers, and cell phone restrictions that applied to all drivers regardless of age. They found that cell phone restrictions that applied to all drivers regardless of age were associated with decreases in fatal crashes among young drivers. However, States that had cell phone restrictions that only applied to young drivers had no significant effect.

Delgado et al. (2016) suggest that a multi-pronged approach consisting of legal bans, HVE, increased financial and legal penalties, and greater parental involvement will be more effective in preventing phone-related distractions of young drivers.

**Costs:** Once GDL is in place, a cell phone restriction can be implemented at very little cost.

**Time to implement:** GDL requirement changes typically require about 6 months to notify the public and implement the changes.

### 1.6 GDL Belt Use Requirements

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *To date there has been only one evaluation of the effects of explicit seat belt use requirements in GDL laws. This evaluation found no evidence the countermeasure had any effect on teen driver belt use (Freedman & Levi, 2008).*

Properly worn seat belts dramatically reduce the risk of injury or death to vehicle occupants in crashes (Kahane, 2015). Seat belts are particularly important for teenage drivers because of their elevated crash risk. Nonetheless, younger drivers and passengers have lower seat belt use rates than older drivers and passengers (Enriquez, 2019). Belt use is particularly low among teenagers who are male, drive pickup trucks, and live in rural areas (Kim et al., 2009).

Young drivers are covered by seat belt laws in all States except New Hampshire, which only requires seat belts for people under 18 (GHSA, 2019c). Some States explicitly require belt use under their GDL laws. An explicit belt use requirement in State GDL laws may have more influence on beginning drivers than States' overall belt use laws, especially in States where GDL belt use requirements are coupled with primary enforcement for young drivers and in States where seat belt violations result in delayed graduation to the next GDL stage.

**Use:** As of 2012 GDL laws in 22 States explicitly required seat belt use (AAA Public Affairs, 2012). Sanctions for violating this requirement varied across States.

**Effectiveness:** To date there has only been one evaluation of the effects of explicit seat belt use requirements in GDL laws. Tennessee and Wisconsin both have a seat belt restriction in their GDL programs. Evaluations of the restrictions in these two States found little if any effect on teen driver belt use (Freedman & Levi, 2008). One problem is that teens (and parents) may not be aware when seat belt laws are part of a State's GDL system. For example, surveys in North Carolina have shown very high awareness for the State's nighttime and passenger restrictions, but only 3% of teens and 5% of parents were aware of the special GDL provision concerning seat belts (Goodwin & Foss, 2004).

**Costs:** Once GDL is in place, a belt use requirement can be implemented at very little cost.

**Time to implement:** GDL requirement changes typically require about 6 months to notify the public and implement the changes.

### 1.7 GDL Intermediate License Violation Penalties

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *The few evaluations of early stand-alone probationary license systems generally found no substantial benefits (McKnight & Peck, 2003; Simpson, 2003). No recent evaluations have attempted to separate out the effect of penalties for GDL or other traffic law violations from the overall effects of GDL. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

A probationary feature is included in the intermediate phase of many graduated licensing systems, which is commonly referred to as contingent advancement. Typically, contingent advancement means that an intermediate license holder must maintain a violation free driving record for a specified amount of time before they can obtain a full license.

**Use:** Almost all States penalize some GDL or traffic law violations by delaying full licensure (IIHS & TIRF, 2004).

**Effectiveness:** The few evaluations of early stand-alone probationary license systems generally found no substantial benefits (McKnight & Peck, 2003; Simpson, 2003). No recent evaluations have attempted to separate out the effect of penalties for GDL or other traffic law violations from the overall effects of GDL.

An enforcement/education program dubbed *Ticket Today = License Delay* (the equal sign is not pronounced) highlighted the resulting delay in licensure for teenagers who are convicted of moving, seat belt, or GDL violations. Although teens and their parents clearly perceived the increased enforcement, the program had only minimal effects on seat belt use and compliance with GDL restrictions (Goodwin, Wells, Foss, & Williams, 2006). In general, it appears that awareness of penalties for license violations among parents and teens is relatively low, enforcement is rare, and licensing delays are not always applied even when violations are enforced (Goodwin & Foss, 2004; Steenbergen et al., 2001; Williams, 2007).

**Costs:** Once GDL is in place, penalties for violating its provisions can be changed at very little cost.

**Time to implement:** GDL requirement changes typically require about 6 months to notify the public and implement the changes.

## 2. Driver Education

### 2.1 Pre-Licensure Driver Education

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Medium | Time: Long |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure is used in many States. Its effectiveness has been examined in several research studies. The balance of the evidence suggests that these types of countermeasures are ineffective in the long term.*

Driver education has long been advocated and used to teach both driving skills and safe driving practices. Driver education in high schools grew in popularity in the 1950s and by about 1970, approximately 14,000 high schools taught driver education to about 70% of all eligible teenagers. However, State and Federal funding for driver education decreased, and by the early 1990s, less than half of all high schools offered driver education, and the majority of beginning drivers did not take driver education. See Smith (1994), Mayhew (2007), or Williams et al. (2009) for concise reviews of the history of driver education in the United States, and see Beanland et al. (2013) for a review of the effectiveness of driver training programs.

The study best known in the United States for evaluating the effect of driver education on crash rates is the extensive NHTSA-sponsored study in DeKalb County, Georgia, in the late 1970s. More than 16,000 students were randomly assigned to three groups: standard driver education; an 80-hour long course including classroom, simulation, driving range, and on-the-road components; and a control group of no formal driver education. The initial analysis found no significant difference in crashes or traffic violations among the three groups (Smith, 1994). A second analysis that tracked student driving records for a longer time found a slight crash reduction for standard course graduates during their first months of driving only, and no difference between the long course and no-course graduates. See Vernick et al. (1999) or Williams et al. (2009) for brief summaries of all DeKalb study analyses.

Roberts and Kwan (2001) concluded from three well-designed evaluations in Australia, New Zealand, and the United States that driver education may lower the age teenagers become licensed but does not affect their crash rates once they do become licensed. The net effect of driver education may actually increase crashes because it puts more young drivers on the road. Vernick et al. (1999) reached the same conclusion from a review of 9 studies, 8 from the United States and 1 from Australia. It has been suggested that crash outcomes are not appropriate or fair measures for driver education and are unrealistic to expect (Waller, 2003). A New Zealand study (after controlling for other factors) found newly licensed drivers who had received their full licenses sooner for completing defensive driving courses were more likely to receive citations for committing traffic offenses (Begg & Brookland, 2015).

In contrast, some studies have found decreases in crash risk associated with driver education. An evaluation of Oregon's driver education program showed small decreases in the risk of collisions and convictions for teens who had participated in the driver education program (Mayhew et al., 2017). Another archival study concluded there is a decrease in crash risk associated with driver education (4.3%, AAAFTS, 2014), but this reduction is modest compared with those associated

with GDL. This result is consistent with the suggestion that it may be unreasonable to expect pre-licensure driver education to produce sizable changes in crash risk given the amount of time and resources dedicated to it (Waller, 2003). Given that an effect of this size would require research that includes over 140,000 students to reliably detect differences in crash rates between students who do and do not complete driver education, it is unsurprising that most previous evaluations have failed to detect any effect of driver education.

NHTSA concluded that driver education should be integrated into State GDL programs as there was no evidence that driver education alone provided consistent effects (Compton & Ellison-Potter, 2008; Thomas, Blomberg, & Fisher, 2012). It also concluded that driver education should be distributed over time. NHTSA proposed a two-stage driver education system, both pre-licensure and post-licensure. (See Chapter 6, Section 2.2 for further discussion.) Through support from the driver education community and the Association of National Stakeholders in Traffic Safety Education (ANSTSE), NHTSA developed the Novice Teen Driver Education and Training Administrative Standards (NTDETAS) to enhance driver education delivery in the States (NHTSA, 2010, 2017). In addition to an overall revision of the 2009 NTDETAS, the new version includes updates to the instructor training and instruction delivery standards (NHTSA, 2017). The NTDETAS recommends the use of 45 hours of classroom instruction, 10 hours behind-the-wheel, and 10 hours of additional flexible instruction consisting of classroom, observation, range, simulation, or computer-based independent learning.

NHTSA offers a State Assessment Program to assist States in meeting the standards. At a State's request, NHTSA will send a team of peers with expertise in different areas of the NTDETAS to review current State practices and make recommendations for improving the program. The Oregon DOT's driver education program was the second U.S. program to participate in a Driver Education Assessment. Mayhew et al. (2017) discuss Oregon's driver education program and its initiative to integrate driver education and GDL by including specifics about how teens are encouraged to take Oregon's driver education program, which directly links to the State GDL system.

Many States offer incentives for taking driver education. Twenty-five States encourage it by allowing teens to get unrestricted licenses at an earlier age if they complete driver education, and 18 States offer other incentives such as reducing the required number of supervised driving hours, waiving portions of licensing tests, or lowering the minimum permit age (Thomas, Blomberg, & Fisher, 2012). However, research shows that driver education "discounts" may have the opposite effect of increasing crashes (Mayhew, 2007). For example, a study in British Columbia found that crash rates were 27% higher for driver education graduates who reduced their learner's permit holding period by 3 months than for non-graduates (Wiggins, 2004).

**Use:** NHTSA investigated driver education requirements in the United States and found that 23 States and the District of Columbia require some form of driver education before licensure for anyone younger than 18 (Thomas, Blomberg, & Fisher, 2012). Most commonly, this included 30 hours of classroom instruction and 6 hours of behind-the-wheel practice, although requirements vary considerably across States. For example, 15 States accepted online driver education in lieu of standard in-person classroom-based instruction (Thomas, Blomberg, Korbelak, et al., 2012).

Most States offered both commercial and high school driver education programs (Thomas, Blomberg, & Fisher, 2012).

**Effectiveness:** Driver education leads to earlier licensure in some States and does not reduce crash rates (Mayhew, 2007; Roberts & Kwan, 2001; Thomas, Blomberg, & Fisher, 2012; Vernick et al., 1999; Williams et al., 2009). At best, safety benefits of driver education have thus far been somewhat positive (Mayhew et al., 2017). Nonetheless, there has been a growing interest in improving and evaluating driver education. Potential avenues for driver education were summarized in a research circular by the Transportation Research Board (TRB, 2006). The AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety has produced a series of publications that provide practical information on how to conduct evaluations of driver education (Clinton & Lonero, 2006), and NHTSA conducted a feasibility study on evaluating driver education curriculum (Williams et al., 2009).

There have been advances in developing new training modules that can be part of driver education programs, summarized in Thomas, Blomberg, and Fisher (2012). Given that visual scanning, attention maintenance, and speed management are likely responsible for many crashes among young drivers, new programs have been developed that focus on teaching these higher-order knowledge and skills, generally using computer simulation. The Risk Awareness and Perception Training (RAPT) program is a computer-based training module designed to improve visual scanning, hazard anticipation, and hazard avoidance skills in novice drivers (Pollatsek et al., 2006; Pradhan et al., 2009). Other computer-based training programs have also been developed, including SAFE-T, which addresses similar skills as RAPT—hazard anticipation, hazard avoidance, and attention maintenance to the forward roadway (Yamani et al., 2016). Similarly, the Accelerated Curriculum to Create Effective Learning (ACCEL) is an omnibus PC-based training program targeted at building six skills in novice drivers—strategic hazard anticipation, tactical hazard anticipation, strategic attention mitigation, tactical attention mitigation, strategic attention maintenance, and tactical attention maintenance (Fisher et al., 2018). The SAFE-T and ACCEL training programs have shown positive outcomes in limited, small-scale evaluations; however, they have not yet been evaluated as integrated parts of a driver education program. See also Unverricht et al. (2018) for a review and meta-analysis of novice driver training programs.

NHTSA funded a set of studies to further enhance RAPT and evaluate its effectiveness. Participants in the first study viewed high-quality graphics of hazardous situations and were asked to click on locations in the scene that they would look at if they were driving (Thomas et al., 2016). The evaluation was conducted in California in collaboration with the California DMV. A total of 5,251 drivers 16 to 18 years old were recruited and assigned to either the RAPT or a comparison control group. Outcomes from this study showed a 23.7% lower crash risk for male drivers who received the RAPT training relative to the male drivers in the comparison group. The results for female drivers showed a statistically non-significant increase of 10.7% in crash risk compared to the comparison group. The authors propose that further research with larger and diverse samples might help identify reasons for potential gender differences in estimated crash risk. In a further enhancement of RAPT, Thomas et al. (2017) updated the graphics from the first study to high-definition videos and animations. An evaluation of this version with 205 trainees reported that the revisions were a significant improvement over previous implementation.

**Costs:** Even a minimal driver education course of 30 hours in the classroom and 6 hours on the road requires extensive funds. Driver education also requires students to find time for it in their schedules of high school classes, extracurricular and summer activities, and jobs.

**Time to implement:** A driver education course requires at least a year to plan and implement.

**Other issues:**

- **Parent involvement:** There has been a growing interest in integrating parents into driver education. For example, Connecticut, Massachusetts, and Montana and four counties in Northern Virginia require parents to attend a parent information/orientation session as a part of their teen's driver education requirements (GHSA, 2013). Virginia passed legislation in 2009 requiring a minimum of 90 minutes of parent participation in the in-classroom portion of driver education. Similarly, Massachusetts and Connecticut require parents to attend a 2-hour driver education orientation programs. In 2012 Montana revised its Traffic Education Standards to include a provision that parents of teens in driver education must attend a mandatory session and the State specified the content that must be included in the information session. Parents appear to support these requirements. In a national survey, a majority (70%) of parents reported that orientation courses should be required (Williams et al., 2011). Nonetheless, research has not yet determined the most effective way to involve parents in the driver education process (GHSA, 2013).

## 2.2 Post-Licensure or Second-Tier Driver Education

| Effectiveness: ☆† | Cost: $$$ | Use: Low | Time: Long |
|---|---|---|---|

†Effectiveness has not yet been evaluated

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

As discussed in Chapter 6, Section 2.1, standard pre-licensure driver education leads to earlier licensure but does not reduce crash rates. Based on this conclusion, driver education research has sought to develop post-licensure driver education curricula and to integrate driver education with GDL (Smith, 1994). These "second-tier" post-licensure courses teach safety-related information, building on the on-road experience that the students have acquired in their initial months of driving. They should not be confused with "advanced driving performance" courses that teach driving skills such as panic braking, skid control, and evasive lane-changing maneuvers.

Previous post-licensure driver education courses were remedial, directed at drivers who had accumulated enough violations or crashes to warrant some attention. For this audience, post-licensure driver education had no effect (Ker et al., 2005).

Initiatives in Australia and Europe may provide insight on potential approaches for post-license training for beginning drivers (Senserrick, 2007; Twisk & Stacey, 2007). Christie and colleagues have developed a model "best practice" curriculum for intermediate license drivers with at least 6 months of driving experience in Australia (Christie et al., 2004). The 8-hour curriculum consists of eight modular sessions with a mentor or coach, including one-on-one driving and discussion, group observation and discussion of driving behavior, and telephone follow-up. However, this curriculum has yet to be evaluated.

NHTSA has completed a feasibility study in anticipation of a major evaluation of the benefits of an integrated driver education and GDL program (Hedlund & Compton, 2005).

**Use:** Post-licensure driver education is still under development. Michigan is the only State that has adopted a two-stage system of driver education (Mayhew, 2007).

**Effectiveness:** Post-licensure driver education has not yet been evaluated.

**Costs:** If a post-licensure driver education program proves to be effective, it likely will require substantial funds to implement.

**Time to implement:** Any course requires at least a year to plan and implement.

## 3. Parents

### 3.1 Parental Role in Teaching and Managing Young Drivers

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has been examined in several research studies. Despite some positive research findings, particularly in terms of behavioral changes, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

Most parents are heavily involved in teaching driving skills to their beginning teenage drivers and supervising their driving while they have learner permits. Parents are often in the best position to enforce GDL restrictions for intermediate drivers and to impose additional driving restrictions on their teenagers. Parents strongly support GDL; however, many do not understand the dangers of high-risk situations for teen drivers, such as driving with teenage passengers. A review of naturalistic driving data collected from young drivers reported that most parental guidance is reactive and may not allow for the teens to practice driving in complex situations (Simons-Morton et al., 2017). Parents could use systematic guidance and assistance in supervising and training teens (Hedlund et al., 2003; Goodwin et al., 2007, Strategies C1-C3; Simons-Morton et al., 2017). For summaries of the research on parent involvement in teen driving, see Simons-Morton and Ouimet (2006) or Simons-Morton et al. (2008). For a review of promising parent programs, see GHSA (2013).

The majority of States provide some form of guidance to parents of teen drivers in the form of booklets/brochures and/or videos, much of it online. However, it has been demonstrated that passive dissemination of information to parents is not an effective method to change parents' behaviors and ultimately reduce teen driver crashes (Chaudhary et al., 2004; Goodwin et al., 2006). In hopes of better equipping parents to supervise and manage their teens' driving, there has been a growing interest in programs that involve direct interaction and engagement with parents. Although many such programs have been developed, the following programs are highlighted because they have been evaluated and shown promising results: *Checkpoints*, *Green Light for Life*, *Steering Teens Safe*, *TeenDrivingPlan,* and the *Share the Keys Program.* See Curry et al. (2015) for a review of similar programs.

*Checkpoints*: The original *Checkpoints* program developed by Simons-Morton and colleagues at the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development uses videos and periodic newsletters to reinforce the need for parents to limit their newly licensed teens' driving under risky conditions. A central feature are written agreements parents and teens review and sign. They limit teen driving under high-risk situations, such as driving at night, with other teens in the cars, or in bad weather (Simons-Morton & Hartos, 2003). The facilitated *Checkpoints* program has been adapted from the original version to include a 30-minute, in-person session to introduce teens and parents to the Checkpoints program, and to have them work in pairs to begin developing these parent-teen driving agreements (Zakrajsek et al., 2009).

*Green Light for Life* (GLL): This program has been implemented in Israel since 2005 (Taubman-Ben-Ari & Lotan, 2011; Toledo et al., 2012). From 2005 to 2008 approximately 130,000 families

participated in the program. GLL consists of an in-person, 45-minute meeting with a parent and their young driver prior to entering the accompanied driving phase, otherwise known as the learner's permit stage in the United States. During the meeting, parents and teens are encouraged to get as much supervised driving practice as possible in a variety of conditions. Parents are encouraged to share their hazard perception knowledge and skills with their teen drivers. Strategies for dealing with in-vehicle dynamics between the teen and parent are also discussed. Families are given a booklet and CD to take home.

*Steering Teens Safe*: This 45-minute, in-person program focuses on improving parental communication skills by teaching them to use motivational interviewing techniques to talk to their teens about safe driving. Parents receive DVDs and workbooks with 19 safe driving lessons to help them discuss, demonstrate, and practice safe driving behaviors and skills with their teens. *Steering Teens Safe* is intended for parents of teens who are in the learner permit phase (Peek-Asa et al., 2014; Ramirez et al., 2013).

*TeenDrivingPlan*: Parents use this web-based program in the learner permit phase to increase the quantity and quality of their supervised driving practice. It includes 53 web-based videos, a web-based planner to structure practice sessions, and a web-based log to record and rate driving practice sessions (Mirman et al., 2014). See https://injury.research.chop.edu/sites/default/files/documents/tdp_logging_tool.pdf for the logging and rating tool.

*Share the Keys program:* Previously known as the New Jersey Parent/Teen Driver Orientation Program, *Share the Keys* was developed to educate parents about New Jersey's GDL program, laws, and the importance of parental involvement in teen driver safety (Knezek et al., 2018). It lasts 60 to 90 minutes and is delivered as a 26-slide deck with 10 videos focused on parental involvement and their roles in preventing risky teen driver behaviors. Parenting styles (e.g., authoritarian) and opportunities for parents to serve as role models of ideal behavior (e.g., not texting while driving) are covered in the content. Parents and teens collaboratively develop contracts and pledges related to GDL restrictions. Companion guides and online resources give them information during the supervised training period.

**Use:** *Checkpoints* and *TeenDrivingPlan* are available on the web. *Steering Teens Safe* is being evaluated and is not yet available for the public. *Green Light for Life* is not currently available in the United States. *Share the Keys* presentations can be scheduled by schools and communities free of charge, with online resources available for the public at any time.

**Effectiveness:**
*Checkpoints*: Results from testing in several States show the original *Checkpoints* program produces modest increases in parents' restrictions on teen driving (Simons-Morton & Hartos, 2003; Simons-Morton et al., 2005). However, a study in Connecticut found no differences in violations or crashes for families who participated in the *Checkpoints* program when compared with families who did not participate in the program (Simons-Morton et al., 2006).

The facilitated *Checkpoints* program has been evaluated and has had promising results. Zakrajsek et al. (2009) evaluated the program delivered by trained health educators in driver education

classes and found that, relative to a comparison group, parents who participated in the facilitated *Checkpoints* program showed greater awareness of teen driving risks, were more likely to complete a parent-teen driving agreement, and reported setting stricter limits on their teens' driving during the intermediate license phase. Zakrajsek et al. (2013) conducted an evaluation of the facilitated *Checkpoints* program delivered by driver education instructors and also found that parents who participated in the program were more likely to report that they used a parent-teen driving agreement and had stricter limits on their teens' driving. Teens also self-reported less risky driving. However, they found no differences in crashes for teens who participated in the program compared to teens who did not participate.

*Green Light for Life:* To date it has undergone two evaluations. Taubman-Ben-Ari and Lotan (2011) examined its effectiveness by comparing self-reports of 362 teenagers who participated in the program with 376 teens who did not. They found no difference in the amount of accompanied driving teens obtained during the supervised driving phase or the level of reckless driving reported. However, teen participants reported more positive attitudes about the supervised driving phase and reported less crash involvement. A national study evaluated injury crash involvement between teens who participated in the GLL program from 2005 to 2007 compared to teens who did not participate. Based on analysis of injury crash data during the first 2 years after licensing, teen participants had 10% lower injury crash rates (Toledo et al., 2012). Nonetheless, both studies suffered from possible effects of self-selection bias. A follow-up study is underway to examine behavior and crash data of young drivers at the individual level, in an attempt to address this potential bias.

*Steering Teens Safe:* This was evaluated via randomized controlled trials (Peek-Asa et al., 2014, 2019). The 2014 study examined the effectiveness of parent communication about driving safety as perceived by the teen driver, and the teens' self-reported risky driving. Teens reported a higher quality of parent communication than control teens, and the teens in the program reported a 21% reduction in self-reported risky driving compared with control teens. The 2019 report compared teen drivers who received no feedback on their driving, drivers with electronic feedback, and drivers with combined electronic and parental feedback based on event monitoring and who had 65% and 85% fewer unsafe driving events (such as distracted driving, speeding, or driver and passenger seat belt use) respectively.

*TeenDrivingPlan*: To date one randomized controlled trial has been conducted to measure its effects. Mirman et al. (2014) found that families who used the *TeenDrivingPlan* reported more driving practice in environments and situations (i.e., night and bad weather) compared to teens not in the program. In addition, teens in the *TeenDrivingPlan* group were less likely to be terminated during on-road driving tests compared to teens not in the program (6% and 15%, respectively).

*Share the Keys program:* A longitudinal survey-based evaluation was performed on the initial implementation in New Jersey. Overall, parents reported high levels of engagement with their teens in the GDL process. In general, parents were more reluctant to take on authoritative/authoritarian roles in the process, which was associated with a lack of teen driver compliance with nighttime curfews and passenger restrictions. Some positive changes were observed, such as increases in passenger limit compliance over time. Parents also appreciated the

ability to engage with other parents and teen drivers to allow for clarification of their own roles as monitors and enforcers. *Share the Keys* can be combined with other programs such as *Checkpoints* to provide consistent benefits in the short term (Knezek et al., 2017).

Although evaluations of programs to assist parents have not yet shown reductions in young driver crashes, there is still reason to be optimistic. Programs such as *Checkpoints* have increased parent limit setting, and several studies show that teenagers whose parents impose stricter driving limits report fewer risky driving behaviors, traffic violations, and crashes (see Simons- Morton, 2007, for a review). Educational programs alone are unlikely to produce changes in behavior. However, education in combination with other strategies may deliver stronger results.

**Costs:** *Checkpoints* is available on the web; however, in order to use the facilitated version, staff time would be needed to implement in-person sessions. *Share the Keys* presentations are provided free of charge to schools and communities.

**Time to implement:** The original *Checkpoints* program and the facilitated program are available immediately. However, to implement the facilitated *Checkpoints* program on a large scale, it would likely take a year for planning, staff training, and dissemination. *Green Light for Life, Steering Teens Safe*, and the *TeenDrivingPlan* program implementation details are not available.

**Young Driver References**

AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. (2014). *Violations and enforcement of graduated driver licensing restrictions in North Carolina and Washington State.*

AAA Public Affairs. (2012). *Graduated drivers licensing laws.* www.adtsea.org/Resources%20PDF's/NEW%20Resources/AAA%20State%20GDL%20Laws%202012.pdf

Beanland, V., Goode, N., Salmon, P. M., & Lenné, M. G. (2013). Is there a case for driver training? A review of the efficacy of pre- and post-license driver training. *Safety Science, 51*, 127-137.

Begg, D. & Brookland, R. (2015). Participation in driver education/training courses during graduated driver licensing, and the effect of a time-discount on subsequent traffic offenses: Findings from the New Zealand Drivers Study. *Journal of Safety Research, 55*, 13-20.

Carney, C., Harland, K. K., & McGehee, D. V. (2016). Using event-triggered naturalistic data to examine the prevalence of teen driver distractions in rear-end crashes. *Journal of Safety Research*, *57*, 47-52.

Carney, C., Harland, K. K., & McGehee, D. V. (2018). Examining teen driver crashes and the prevalence of distraction: Recent trends, 2007–2015. *Journal of Safety Research*, *64*, 21-27.

Chaudhary, N. K., Ferguson, S. A., & Herbel, S. B. (2004). Tennessee's novice driver safety project: A program to increase parental involvement. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *5*(4), 356-361.

Christie, R., Harrison, W., & Johnston, D. (2004). *Development of a novice driver education curriculum for the ATSB* (Report CR 222). Australian Transport Safety Bureau. www.infrastructure.gov.au/roads/safety/publications/2004/Edu_Nov_Dr.aspx

Clinton, K. M., & Lonero, L. (2006). *Guidelines for evaluating driver education programs*. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. www.anstse.info/Resources%20PDF%27s/Document%-20reloads/5%20-%20AAA%20-%20%20Evaluating%20Driver%20Education%-20Programs%20Guidelines.pdf

Compton, R. P., & Ellison-Potter, P. (2008, July). *Teen driver crashes: A Report to Congress* (Report No. DOT HS 811 005). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1849

Curry, A. E., Peek-Asa, C., Hamann, C. J., & Mirman, J. H. (2015). Effectiveness of parent-focused interventions to increase teen driver safety: A critical review. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, *57*(1), S6-S14. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4483193/

Delgado, M. K., Wanner, K. J., & McDonald, C. (2016). Adolescent cellphone use while driving: An overview of the literature and promising future directions for prevention. *Media and Communication*, *4*(3), 79.

Ehsani, J. P., Bingham, C. R., Ionides, E., & Childers, D. (2014). The impact of Michigan's text messaging restriction on motor vehicle crashes. *Journal of Adolescent Health, 54*(5S), S6-S15.

Ehsani, J. P., Ionides, E., Klauer, S. G., Perlus, J. G., & Gee, B. T. (2016). Effectiveness of cell phone restrictions for young drivers: review of the evidence. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board, 2602*, 35-42.

Enriquez, J. (2019, August). *Occupant restraint use in 2018: Results from the NOPUS controlled intersection study* (Report No. DOT HS 812 781). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812781

Ferguson, S. A. (2003). Other high-risk factors for young drivers – how graduated licensing does, doesn't, or could address them. *Journal of Safety Research, 34*, 71-77.

Fisher, D. L., Young, J., Zhang, L., Knodler, M., & Samuel, S. (2017). Accelerating teen driver learning: Anywhere, anytime training. *Behavior Research Methods*, *37*, 379-384. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/11/AcceleratingTeenLearningReport.pdf

Foss, R. D., Goodwin, A. H., McCartt, A. T., & Hellinga, L. A. (2009). Short-term effects of a teenage driver cell phone restriction. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *41*(3), 419-424.

Freedman, M., & Levi, S. (2008, April 13-15). *Evaluation of a seat belt restriction in a graduated driver licensing program*. Presentation at the 2008 Lifesavers Conference. Portland, OR.

Governors Highway Safety Association. (2013). *Promoting parent involvement in teen driving*. www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2016-11/TeenDrivingParentReport%20low.pdf

GHSA. (2019a). *Teen and novice drivers*. www.ghsa.org/taxonomy/term/331

GHSA. (2019b). *Distracted driving.* www.ghsa.org/issues/distracted-driving

GHSA. (2019c). *Seat belts*. www.ghsa.org/state-laws/issues/seat%20belts

Goodwin, A. H., & Foss, R. D. (2004). Graduated driver licensing restrictions: Awareness, compliance, and enforcement in North Carolina. *Journal of Safety Research, 35*, 367-374.

Goodwin, A. H., Foss, R. D., Sohn, J., & Mayhew, D. (2007). *Guidance for implementation of the AASHTO Strategic Highway Safety Plan, Volume 19: A guide for reducing collisions involving young drivers*. Transportation Research Board. https://nap.edu/catalog/14103/a-guide-for-reducing-collisions-involving-young-drivers

Goodwin, A. H., O'Brien, N. P., & Foss, R. D. (2011). Effect of North Carolina's restriction on teenage driver cell phone use two years after implementation. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 48,* 363-367.

Goodwin, A. H., Waller, M. W., Foss, R. D., & Margolis, L. H. (2006). Parental supervision of teenage drivers in a graduated licensing system. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 7*, 224-231.

Goodwin, A. H., Wells, J. K., Foss, R. D., & Williams, A. F. (2006). Encouraging compliance with graduated driver licensing restrictions. *Journal of Safety Research, 37*, 343-351.

Hedlund, J., & Compton, R. (2005). Graduated driver licensing research in 2004 and 2005. *Journal of Safety Research, 36*, 109-114.

Hedlund, J., Shults, R. A., & Compton, R. (2003). What we know, what we don't know, and what we need to know about graduated driver licensing. *Journal of Safety Research, 34*, 107-115.

Highway Loss Data Institute. (2009). Hand-held cellphone laws and collision claim frequencies. *Highway Loss Data Institute Bulletin*, *26*(17), 1-5. www.iihs.org/media/1afa0aef-990d-4888-9039-3be5fa6ff514/ue4d5w/HLDI%20Research/Bulletins/hldi_bulletin_26.17.pdf

HLDI. (2010). Texting laws and collision claim frequencies. *Highway Loss Data Institute Bulletin*, *27*(11), 1-10. www.iihs.org/media/fc495300-6f8c-419d-84d7-c3b94d178e5a/-enPLrA/HLDI%20Research/Bulletins/hldi_bulletin_27.11.pdf

Insurance Institute for Highway Safety & Traffic Injury Research Foundation. (2004). *Graduated licensing: A blueprint for North America*. http://sciencenetlinks.com/student-teacher-sheets/graduated-licensing-blueprint-north-america/

Kahane, C. J. (2015, January). *Lives saved by vehicle safety technologies and associated Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards, 1960 to 2012 – Passenger cars and LTVs – With reviews of 26 FMVSS and the effectiveness of their associated safety technologies in reducing fatalities, injuries, and crashes* (Report No. DOT HS 812 069). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812069

Ker, K., Roberts, I., Collier, T., Beyer, F., Bunn, F., & Frost, C. (2005). Post-license driver education for the prevention of road traffic crashes: A systematic review of randomised controlled trials. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 37,* 305-313.

Kim, S., Depue, L., Spence, L., & Reine, J. (2009). Analysis of teenage seat belt use: From the 2007 Missouri high school seat belt survey. *Journal of Safety Research*, *40*, 311-316.

Klauer, S. G., Guo, F., Simons-Morton, B. G., Ouimet, M. C., Lee, S. E., & Dingus, T. A. (2014). Distracted driving and risk of road crashes among novice and experienced drivers. *The New England Journal of Medicine, 370,* 54-59

Knezek, C. M., Polirstok, S., James, R., & Poedubicky, G. (2018). Effects of Share the Keys (STK), a comprehensive, behavioral-based training program for parents and new teen drivers in New Jersey. *Transportation Research Part F: Traffic Psychology and Behaviour*, *56*, 156-166.

Lim, S. H. & Chi, J. (2013). Are cell phone laws in the U.S. effective in reducing fatal crashes involving young drivers? *Transport Policy*, *27*, 158-163.

Mayhew, D. R. (2007). Driver education and graduated licensing in North America: Past, present, and future. *Journal of Safety Research, 38*, 229-235.

Mayhew, D., Vanlaar, W., Lonero, L., Robertson, R., Marcoux, K., Wood, K., Clinton, K., & Simpson, H. (2017). Evaluation of beginner driver education in Oregon. *Safety*, *3*(1), 9.

McCartt, A. T., Kidd, D. G., & Teoh, E. R. (2014). Driver cellphone and texting bans in the United States: evidence of effectiveness. *Annals of Advances in Automotive Medicine*, *58*, 99.

McKnight, A. J., & Peck, R. C. (2003). Graduated driver licensing and safer driving. *Journal of Safety Research*, *34,* 85-89.

Mirman J. H., Curry A. E., Winston F. K., Wang W., Elliott M. R, Schultheis, M. T., Thiel, M. C. F., & Durbin, D. R. (2014). Effect of the teen driving plan on the driving performance of teenagers before licensure: A randomized clinical trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association Pediatrics, 168*, 764-71.

NHTSA. (2010). *Novice teen driver education and training administrative standards*. www.anstse.info/Images/2017%20Home/001%20-%202017%20NTDETAS.pdf

NHTSA. (2017, February). *Novice teen driver education and training administrative standards (NTDETAS) 2017 revision.* (Unnumbered publication). www.anstse.info/Images/2017%20Home/001%20-%202017%20NTDETAS.pdf

Peek-Asa, C., Cavanaugh, J. E., Yang, J. Chande, V., Young, T., & Ramierz, M. (2014). Steering teens safe: A randomized trial of a parent-based intervention to improve safe teen driving. *BMC Public Health, 14*, 777.

Peek-Asa, C., Reyes, M. L., Hamann, C. J., Butcher, B. D., & Cavanaugh, J. E. (2019). A randomized trial to test the impact of parent communication on improving in-vehicle feedback systems. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *131*, 63-69.

Pollatsek, A., Narayanaan, V., Pradhan, A., & Fisher, D. L. (2006). Using eye movements to evaluate a PC-based risk awareness and perception training program on a driving simulator. *Human Factors*, *48*(3), 447-464.

Pradhan, A. K., Pollatsek, A., Knodler, M., & Fisher, D. L. (2009). Can younger drivers be trained to scan for information that will reduce their risk in roadway traffic scenarios that are hard to identify as hazardous? *Ergonomics*, *52*(6), 657-673.

Ramirez, M., Yang, J., Young, T., Roth, L., Garinger, A., Snetselaar, L., & Peek-Asa, C. (2013). Implementation evaluation of Steering Teens Safe: Engaging parents to deliver a new parent-based teen driving intervention to their teens. *Health Education & Behavior, 40,* 426-434.

Roberts, I., & Kwan, I. (2001). School based driver education for the prevention of traffic crashes. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, Issue 2. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD003201. www.cochranelibrary.com/cdsr/doi/10.1002/14651858.CD003201/full

Senserrick, T. M. (2007). Recent developments in young driver education, training and licensing in Australia. *Journal of Safety Research, 38,* 237-244.

Simons-Morton, B. G. (2007). Parental involvement in novice teen driving: Rationale, evidence of effects, and potential for enhancing graduated driver licensing effectiveness. *Journal of Safety Research, 38*, 193-202.

Simons-Morton, B. G., Ehsani, J. P., Gershon, P., Klauer, S. G., & Dingus, T. A. (2017). Teen driving risk and prevention: Naturalistic driving research contributions and challenges. *Safety*, *3*(4), 29.

Simons-Morton, B. G., & Hartos, J. L. (2003). How well do parents manage young driver crash risks? *Journal of Safety Research, 34*, 91-97.

Simons-Morton, B. G., Hartos, J. L., Leaf, W. A., & Preusser, D. F. (2005). Persistence of effects of the Checkpoints program on parental restrictions of teen driving privileges. *American Journal of Public Health*, *95*(3), 447-452.

Simons-Morton, B. G., Hartos, J. L., Leaf, W. A., & Preusser, D. (2006). The effects of the Checkpoints program on parent-imposed driving limits and crash outcomes among Connecticut novice teen drivers at 6-months post-licensure. *Journal of Safety Research, 37*, 9-15.

Simons-Morton, B. G. & Ouimet, M. C. (2006). Parent involvement in novice teen driving: A review of the literature. *Injury Prevention, 12*, i30-i37.

Simons-Morton, B. G., Ouimet, M. C., & Catalano, R. F. (2008). Parenting and the young driver problem. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 35*(3S), S294-S303.

Simpson, H. M. (2003). The evolution and effectiveness of graduated licensing. *Journal of Safety Research, 34*, 25-34.

Smith, M. F. (1994, May 31). *Research agenda for an improved novice driver education program – A Report to the Congress.* Report to Congress, May 31, 1994 (Report No. DOT HS 808 161). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1541

Steenbergen, L. C., Kidd, P. S., Pollack, S., McCoy, C., Pigman, J. G., & Agent, K. R. (2001). Kentucky's graduated licensing program for young drivers: Barriers to effective local implementation. *Injury Prevention, 7*, 286-291.

Taubman-Ben-Ari, O. & Lotan, T. (2011). The contribution of a novel intervention to enhance safe driving among young drivers in Israel. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 43,* 352-359.

Thomas, F. D., Blomberg, R. D., & Fisher, D. L. (2012, April). *A fresh look at the state of driver education in America* (Report No. DOT HS 811 543). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811543.pdf

Thomas, F. D., Blomberg, R. D., Korbelak, K., Stutts, J., Wilkins, J., Lonero, L., Clinton, K., & Black, D. (2012b, June). *Examination of supplemental driver training and online basic driver education* (Report No. DOT HS 811 609). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1920

Thomas, F. D., Korbelak, K. T., Divekar, G. U., Blomberg, R. D, Romoser, M. R. E. & Fisher, D. L. (2017, March). *Evaluation of an updated version of the risk awareness and perception training program for young drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 812 379). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2086

Thomas, F. D., Rilea, S. L., Blomberg, R. D., Peck. R. C., & Korbelak, K. T. (2016, January). *Evaluation of the safety benefits of the risk awareness and perception training program for novice teen drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 812 235). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/812235-awarenessperceptiontrainingnoviceteendrivers.pdf

Toledo, T., Lotan, T., Taubman-Ben-Ari, O., & Grimberg, E. (2012). Evaluation of a program to enhance young drivers' safety in Israel. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 45,* 705-710.

Transportation Research Board. (2006). *Driver education: The path ahead*. (Transportation research circular Vol. E-C101). https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/circulars/ec101.pdf

Twisk, D. A. M., & Stacey, C. (2007). Trends in young driver risk and countermeasures in European countries. *Journal of Safety Research, 38*, 245-257.

Unverricht, J., Samuel, S., & Yamani, Y. (2018). Latent hazard anticipation in young drivers: Review and meta-analysis of training studies. *Transportation Research Record*, *2672*(33), 11-19.

Vernick, J. S., Li, G., Ogaitis, S., MacKenzie, E. J., Baker, S. P., & Gielen, A. C. (1999). Effects of high school driver education on motor vehicle crashes, violations, and licensure. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 16*, 40-46.

Waller, P. F. (2003). The genesis of GDL. *Journal of Safety Research*, *34*, 17-23.

Wiggins, S. (2004). *Graduated licensing program: Interim evaluation report – Year 3*. Victoria, BC: Insurance Corporation of British Columbia.

Williams, A. F. (2007). Contribution of the components of graduated licensing to crash reductions. *Journal of Safety Research, 38,* 177-184.

Williams, A. F., Braitman, K. A., & McCartt, A. T. (2011). Views of parents of teenagers about licensing policies: A national survey. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 12*, 1-8

Williams, A. F., Preusser, D. F. & Ledingham, K. A. (2009, April). *Feasibility study on evaluating driver education curriculum* (Report No. DOT HS 811 108). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1876

Yamani, Y., Samuel, S., Knodler, M. A., & Fisher, D. L. (2016). Evaluation of the effectiveness of a multi-skill program for training younger drivers on higher cognitive skills. *Applied Ergonomics*, *52*, 135-141.

Zakrajsek, J. S., Shope, J. T., Greenspan, A. I., Wang, J., Bingham, L. R., & Simons-Morton, B. G. (2013). Effectiveness of a parent-directed teen driver safety intervention (Checkpoints) delivered by driver education instructors. *Journal of Adolescent Health, 53*, 27-33.

Zakrajsek, J. S., Shope, J. T., Ouimet, M. C., Wang, J., & Simons-Morton, B. G. (2009). Efficacy of a brief group parent-teen intervention in driver education to reduce teenage driver injury risk. *Family & Community Health*, *32*, 175-188.

# A7. Older Drivers

This section provides expanded discussion of the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

The ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures covered in this section of the appendix are listed below.

**1. Communications and Outreach**

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 Formal Courses for Older Drivers | ☆☆ | $ | Low | Short |
| 1.2 General Communications and Education | ☆ | $ | Unknown | Short |

**2. Licensing**

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.4 Medical Advisory Boards | ☆ | Varies | High | Medium |
| 2.5 License Renewal Policies: In-Person Renewal, Vision Test | ☆☆ | $$$ | Medium | Medium |

**Effectiveness:**

☆☆ Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results

☆ Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Communications and Outreach

### 1.1 Formal Courses for Older Drivers

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *The effectiveness of formal courses for older drivers has been examined in several research studies. While these studies have found some positive outcomes, there is no evidence that this countermeasure reduces crashes relative to comparison groups.*

Formal courses specifically for older drivers are offered by organizations including AAA, AARP, and the National Safety Council, either independently or under accreditation by States (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy D2; Stutts, 2005, Table 12). AARP's Driver Safety Program is the largest of these courses. AARP developed the initial version in 1979 ("55 Alive") and the current version, named "AARP Smart Driver Course," is offered in the classroom and online (Moreau, 2015). The courses typically involve 6 to 10 hours of classroom training in basic safe driving practices and in how to adjust driving to accommodate age-related cognitive and physical changes. As of 2010 there were 34 States and the District of Columbia that mandated automobile insurance discounts for graduates of accredited courses (AARP, 2010). Insurance companies may choose to offer discounts to graduates of accredited courses even in States that do not mandate discounts. A relatively new AARP course, the Smart DriverTEK course, educates drivers on the safety features and technologies in their vehicles (AARP, 2018). The course is delivered as short-duration workshops and includes material on technologies including smart headlights, reverse camera systems, collision and proximity warning (e.g., blind spot, lane departure, and forward collision), and post-crash emergency (also known as automatic crash or advanced automatic crash) notification systems. Insurance discounts are not offered for participants taking this course (AARP, 2018). As an option to taking the in-person workshop, people can register online for a self-paced version of the course, see https://campaigns.aarp.org/findaworkshop/?cmp=RDRCT-ADS-SMDTEK-0-30917.

Courses combining classroom and on-the-road instruction have been offered in a few locations (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy D2).

**Use:** Courses are taught in all States but reach only a small fraction of older drivers.

**Effectiveness:** Graduates of both the AARP classroom and online courses report they changed some driving behaviors as a result of the course (Skufca, 2011). However, none of the courses has been shown to reduce crashes (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy D2). NHTSA's Older Road User Research Plan includes the high-priority research problem statement, "Do assessment and retraining programs improve driving?" (Raymond et al., 2001, Table 1). The most thorough evaluation studied approximately 200,000 course graduates and a 360,000-driver comparison group in California from 1988 to 1992. It found that course graduates had fewer citations but no fewer crashes than non-graduates (Janke, 1994; Potts et al., 2004, Strategy D2).

A study conducted in 2004 evaluated the effects of a well-designed three-hour educational course promoting safe driving strategies for older drivers with some visual defects. Course

graduates reported that they regulated their driving more following the course than a control group that did not attend the course. There was no significant difference in crash rates between course graduates and the control group (Owsley et al., 2004).

Another 2004 study involving a systematic review of studies evaluating the effectiveness of driver retraining programs (Kua et al., 2007) reached a similar conclusion as did Owsley et al. (2004). These researchers reported that while there is moderate evidence that educational interventions improve driving awareness and behavior, these interventions do not reduce crashes in older drivers. Regardless, the authors felt the evidence regarding the effectiveness of retraining aimed at older drivers is encouraging enough to warrant further research.

Several subsequent evaluations of courses for older drivers have produced mixed results related to the crash rates of drivers attending these courses. Marottoli (2007) concluded that a training program combining classroom education with on-road training improved the performance of older drivers on written and on-road tests, and may allow these drivers to retain their licenses longer, but did not attempt to assess the program's impact on subsequent crash rates. Bedard et al. (2008) concluded that an in-class education program coupled with on-road education led to improvements in the participants' knowledge of safe driving practices and improvements on some aspects of safe driving performance, but further research is required to determine if these changes will affect crash rates.

Nasvadi and Vavrik (2007) conducted research in British Columbia evaluating the crash risk of drivers after attending a safe driving class and found that these classes were associated with an increased number of crashes for certain men 75 and older. The findings reported that older men who had at least one crash before and after the study were less likely to have used "compensation and selection strategies" (avoiding difficult driving situations, driving less by ceasing to drive at all or consolidating their trips so that they spend less time on the road, etc.). The study also found that the oldest male drivers were less likely to be motivated by reasons other than spousal pressure and that they were less likely to be able to recall specific things they had learned during the course. These drivers reported higher emotional attachment to driving and higher confidence about driving. Apart from these negative outcomes, attendance in these classes had no effect on crashes for male attendees younger than 75 or female attendees of all ages. Though acknowledging several limitations of this study, the authors stress, "Recognizing and understanding characteristics and behaviors of older drivers who attend remedial driver education is essential to the design and delivery of successful driver safety programs."

Korner-Bitensky et al. (2009) conducted a review of articles published from 2004 to 2008 on the effectiveness of older driver retraining programs for improving driving skills and reducing crash rates. Four studies met the inclusion criteria for the review and provided strong evidence that education combined with on-road training improves driving performance. They also found moderate evidence that education alone is not effective in reducing crashes but combined with physical retraining, does improve driving performance. The value of physical training in addition to education is reinforced by research results by Romoser and Fisher (2009). They found that active training, such as practice with feedback, is a more effective strategy for increasing older drivers' likelihood of side-to-side scanning, looking for threats, during turns than is passive training (classroom lecture or video only) or no training.

**Costs:** Costs for making courses for older drivers available can be minimal since they have been developed and are offered by organizations such as AAA, AARP, and NSC. Courses typically charge a small fee, which may be offset by insurance discounts available to graduates.

**Time to implement:** Courses are offered regularly by AAA, AARP, NSC, and other organizations.

### 1.2 General Communications and Education

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *There are no known evaluations of the effects of this material on driving or on crashes (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy D2).*

Many organizations offer educational material for older drivers to inform them of driving risks, help them assess their driving knowledge and capabilities, suggest methods to adapt to and compensate for changing capabilities, and guide them in restricting their driving in more risky situations (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy D2).

Self-assessment tools include:

- AAA's *Roadwise Review*, a CD-ROM and instruction booklet;
- AARP's *Older Driver Skill Assessment and Resource Guide*;
- American Medical Association's *Am I a Safe Driver?* one-page checklist; and
- University of Michigan's *Driving Decisions Workbook*. See Stutts (2005) for brief descriptions and web links.

Other programs and material include:

- NHTSA's Older Driver Safety web page contains information for caregivers and older drivers, see www.nhtsa.gov/road-safety/older-drivers
- *CarFit,* a program developed by AAA, AARP, and the American Occupational Therapy Association to help older drivers find a proper fit in their personal vehicles;
- *Drive Well Toolkit*, a joint program of American Society on Aging and NHTSA;
- *Getting Around*, from Emergency Nurses CARE, on safe driving decisions, pedestrian safety, and safe medication use;
- Information from NHTSA and many State motor vehicle offices on general issues of older drivers or specific topics such as driving with glaucoma or arthritis; and
- NHTSA's *Introduction to Medically At Risk Driving* (www.youtube.com/watch?v=sMwis4jT4Fw) provides an introduction to the symptoms of medical impairments in older drivers.

See Potts et al. (2004, Strategy D2) and Stutts (2005) for examples, brief descriptions, and web links. See also AAAFTS (2009) for examples of public information and awareness material included in its "Noteworthy Initiatives" database.

Other material is available to assist drivers and family members in understanding how aging affects driving, the effects of medications and health conditions, how to assess an older driver's skills, how to use specialized vehicle equipment to adapt to certain physical limitations, how to guide older drivers into voluntarily restricting their driving, and how to report older drivers to the department of motor vehicles if necessary (Stutts, 2005). Examples include:

- NHTSA's series of fact sheets and more detailed information for older drivers and their families and friends, available from NHTSA's older driver program website: www.nhtsa.gov/road-safety/older-drivers
- Clearinghouse for Older Road User Safety: www.roadsafeseniors.org
- AAA's *How to Help an Older Driver*; https://seniordriving.aaa.com/download/how-to-help-an-older-driver-brochure/
- The Hartford's *At the Crossroads: A Guide to Alzheimer's Disease, Dementia and Driving*; https://s0.hfdstatic.com/sites/the_hartford/files/cmme-crossroads.pdf
- The Association for Driver Rehabilitation Specialists' series of fact sheets on issues such as driving after a stroke, driving with rheumatoid arthritis, and driving after a limb amputation; www.aded.net/page/510
- New York State Office for the Aging's *When You Are Concerned: A handbook for families, friends and caregivers worried about the safety of an aging driver*: https://aging.ny.gov/system/files/documents/2019/10/when-you-are-concerned-2015-03-km-ah-1opt.pdf.

**Use:** Data are not available on how frequently these programs are used.

**Effectiveness:** The limited information available suggests that some material may increase driver's knowledge. One recent study evaluated compliance of both younger and older drivers to the CarFit program criteria (McConomy et al., 2018). The study found that post-CarFit education, older drivers were five times more likely to adjust themselves to correct line of sight criterion than younger drivers. Not all older drivers positioned themselves correctly with respect to pedal access; some sat too far to reach the brake pedals. The study found that age and stature were significantly associated with compliance to CarFit criteria. Recommendations include the provision of education or equipment to enable older drivers' fit with car pedal setups. As discussed in Chapter 7, Section 1.1, none of the more structured formal courses has been shown to reduce crashes.

**Costs:** Funds are required for producing and distributing material.

**Time to implement:** Material and programs are available and ready for use.

**Other issues:**

- **Seat belt use:** Seat belts are even more effective in preventing injuries and fatalities to older than to younger occupants (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy E1). While belt use among older occupants is comparable to that of younger occupants – 91% for occupants 70 and older and 90% for occupants 25 to 69 in 2017 (Li & Pickrell, 2019) – the fact remains that nearly 1 in 8 older occupants is unbelted. Communications and outreach on the benefits of seat belt use may be more effective with older occupants than with younger because they may be more attentive to health and safety issues. For example, signs urging seat belt use increased belt use substantially in 6 senior communities compared to controls, and use remained higher after 4 years (Cox et al., 2005). No other State or local seat belt use efforts directed at older occupants have been identified (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy E1).

- **Considerations for Future Education for Older Drivers:** In a review of the five-level model of driver education, Goals for Driver Education in the Social Perspective (GDE 5 SOC), Keskinen (2014) indicates that education for older drivers could be improved if it were more focused on a process of mutual understanding where the instructor helps older drivers learn more about their own abilities and challenges while driving rather than teaching knowledge or skills.

## 2. Licensing

### 2.4 Medical Advisory Boards

| Effectiveness: ☆† | Cost: Varies | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

† Quality varies considerably

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure is widely used; however, there are no known studies evaluating the crash relevant effects of MABs.*

Thirty-two States have medical advisory boards to assist the licensing agencies in evaluating people with medical conditions or functional limitations that may affect their ability to drive (Lococo, Stutts, et al., 2017). MABs generally make policy recommendations on what licensing actions are appropriate for people with specific medical conditions or functional limitations. In 2016 and 2017, NHTSA published a series of reports on the analysis of the MAB implementation practices. These reports document the medical review structures and processes of all States and include case studies for several States. Most State MABs review individual cases, though this activity varies widely; 5 States reported that their MABs reviewed 1,000 cases or more in 2012 while another 7 reviewed 10 or fewer cases (Lococo, Stutts, et al., 2017).

MABs should play key roles as the links among health care professionals, licensing agencies, law enforcement, and the public. They should take the lead in defining how medical conditions and functional impairments affect driving; defining medical assessment and oversight standards; improving awareness and training for healthcare providers, law enforcement, and the public; advising health care professionals how drivers can compensate for certain medical conditions or functional impairments; and reviewing individual cases. AAA has developed its list of best practices and recommendations for MABs based on the NHTSA- AAMVA study findings (AAA, 2004). The National Transportation Safety Board has made similar recommendations (NTSB, 2004). In June 2005 NHTSA released a summary of recommended strategies for MABs and national medical guidelines for driving, prepared in collaboration with AAMVA (Lococo & Staplin, 2005).

As noted above, NHTSA and AAMVA produced a guide in September 2009, "Driver Fitness Medical Guidelines" designed to provide guidance to licensing agencies in making decisions about a person's fitness for driving (NHTSA, 2009). These guidelines, as well as NHTSA's *Physician's Guide to Assessing and Counseling Older Drivers* (Wang et al., 2003; Carr et al., 2010), can be used to provide guidance to MABs as they define how medical conditions and functional impairments affect driving and what steps can be taken to compensate for any limitations noted due to relevant conditions and limitations.

**Use:** Thirty-two States report having MABs or a formal liaison with other offices that functions as MABs (Lococo, Stutts, et al., 2017).

**Effectiveness:** There are no known studies evaluating the effects of MABs. Maryland's MAB reviewed over 500 individual cases in 2004 and recommended license suspension for about two-thirds of the cases.[10]

NHTSA performed a detailed examination of driver review practices across the country to identify the strengths and weaknesses of the different implementations. The 51 agencies were grouped into four categories based on two criteria:

- presence of a State MAB or similar liaison with a State health department and
- availability of in-house medical professionals to review license referral cases (Lococo et al., 2016).

Seven States were selected for detailed analysis of their MAB practice—Maine, North Carolina, Texas, Wisconsin, Ohio, Washington, and Oregon. These States were surveyed on the structure and operation of their driver review programs, which included information on sources for medical referrals, activities of the MAB, and the type of medical information collected from the drivers. States without MABs or in-house physicians were found to rely on the assessments of drivers' physicians and licensing tests. Driver appeals to licensing decisions in these States were found to be the lowest. States with MABs relied on the medical standards that were in place; these generally also had legal immunity granted to physicians, which resulted in high physician referrals.

Case studies of driver referrals from 6 of the States (all except for North Carolina) were performed in 2012. A random sample of 500 drivers referred for initial medical were selected from each State (Lococo, Sifrit, et al., 2017). Many were referrals by the driver (self-referral), physicians, licensing agency staff, or LEOs. The States varied in terms of the licensing outcomes. Overall, the majority of cases (99%) including all types of referrals in both Oregon and Texas resulted in changes in licensing status. While overall changes in licensing status were lower in the 4 remaining States (ranging from 76 to 88%), the majority of physician referrals (ranging from 90 to 97%) resulted in licensing status changes. The authors concluded that the identification of the source of referrals has implications for educational countermeasures to increase number and quality of referrals. One example discussed is the participation of LEOs in NHTSA's 4-hour Older Driver Law Enforcement Course (see www.iadlest.org/training/older-driver-law-enforcement-training) to increase identification of driving impairment signs.

**Costs:** MABs are comprised of physicians and other health care professionals together with appropriate administrative staff. Costs will be minimal for a MAB whose activities are limited to policy recommendations. Costs for a MAB that evaluates individual cases will depend on the caseload. The presence of a MAB and/or in-house medical staff may not always result in higher overall costs (Lococo et al., 2016).

**Time to implement:** States probably will need at least a year to establish and staff a MAB, depending on what duties the MAB undertakes. States likely can expand the functions of an existing MAB in 6 months.

---

[10] Personal communication, Carl A. Soderstrom, M.D., University of Maryland School of Medicine, April, 2005.

### 2.5 License Renewal Policies: In-Person Renewal, Vision Test

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *Some version of this countermeasure has been implemented in over half the States. Its effectiveness has been examined in several research studies. Despite some positive research findings, the balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

Driver's licenses in most States are valid for 4 to 6 years, longer in a few States. To renew an expiring license, drivers in many States must appear in person, pay the license fee, and have new pictures taken for their licenses. A few States require a vision test for license renewal. Some States allow all drivers to renew by mail or electronically.

More than half the States change license renewal requirements for drivers older than a specified age, typically 65 or 70. These changes may include a shorter interval between renewals, in-person renewal (no renewal by mail or electronically), or a vision test at every renewal. A very few States require written or road tests for some older renewal applicants. AAA (2017), IIHS (2018), and Stutts (2005, Chapter 5) summarize these requirements.

License examiners report that driver appearance at the motor vehicle office is the single most important criterion for identifying a person of any age whose driving skills may be impaired (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy C2). This observation is supported by Morrisey and Grabowski (2005), who found that in-person license renewal was associated with reduced Statewide traffic fatalities among the oldest drivers (85 and older). Frequent in-person renewals and vision tests may be more useful for older drivers than for younger drivers because their abilities may change more quickly. AAMVA recommends that all drivers renew licenses in-person and pass a vision test at least every 4 years (Staplin & Lococo, 2003; Stutts, 2005). Very few States meet these recommendations for all drivers. In-person renewals would be even more useful for drivers of all ages if they included functional ability tests as recommended in the NHTSA-AAMVA *Model Driver Screening and Evaluation Program Guidelines for Motor Vehicle Administrators* (Staplin & Lococo, 2003) (see Chapter 7, Section 2.1).

The value of in-person renewals and vision tests are further supported by AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety's study analyzing effects of laws and licensing policies in 46 U.S. States on the fatal crash involvement rates of older drivers from 1985 to 2011 (Tefft, 2014). Requiring in-person renewal instead of allowing online or mail-in renewals was associated with a 9% reduction in fatal crash involvement rates for drivers 55 and above. The effects of the in-person renewal requirement were greatest (25% reduction in fatal crash involvement) for the oldest age group studied, those 85 and older. There is question, however, whether the large effects of in-person renewal requirements were due to the examiners being able to remove unsafe older drivers from the driving population or to older drivers possibly ceasing to drive prematurely. Other driver license renewal policies investigated – vision test, knowledge test, on-road driving test, and mandatory reporting laws for physicians – were not found to reduce fatal crash involvement rates of older drivers.

**Use:** At least 35 States and the District of Columbia have one or more different license renewal requirements for older drivers than for younger drivers. These include 22 States with shorter intervals between renewals, 17 plus the District of Columbia that require vision tests or other vision screening at renewal more frequently, and 1 State (Illinois) that requires road tests for applicants 75 and older. Sixteen States and the District of Columbia prohibit online and/or renewals by mail; of these, Louisiana allows people 70 or older to renew online or by mail with suitable physician certifications of health. The District of Columbia mandates physician approval for all drivers 70 and older (IIHS, 2019).

**Effectiveness:** License examiners report that in-person renewals and vision tests are effective in identifying people whose driving skills may be impaired (Potts et al., 2004, Strategy C2). No known data are available on the number of potentially impaired drivers identified through these practices or on the specific effects of more frequent renewals and vision tests on crashes. Furthermore, studies regarding the effectiveness of vision screening for license renewal indicate that the value of the vision tests commonly used for licensing decisions as predictors of increased crash risk is inconclusive and that the aspects of vision currently assessed for licensing do not adequately explain unsafe driving (Bohensky et al., 2008). Nonetheless, one study found that fatalities among drivers 80 years and older in Florida decreased by 17% after the State passed a law requiring these drivers to pass a vision test before renewing their driver licenses (McGwin et al., 2008).

Thomas et al. (2013) examined driver licensing policies and procedures for drivers 65 and older. They selected 4 States for in-depth study (Kansas, Illinois, Iowa, and New Hampshire) and six comparison States (Indiana, Minnesota, Missouri, Nebraska, Vermont, and Wisconsin). The study States that were chosen had policies with the potential to reduce older driver crashes, including shorter renewal periods, in-person renewal, and vision testing for older drivers. In addition, Illinois and New Hampshire mandated a road test for every renewal. Four or 5 years of crash data were examined in all 10 States to measure population-based and per-licensed-driver crash rates for drivers of all ages. Contrary to what might be expected, the older drivers supported and accepted their States' efforts to assure the safety of older drivers. Analysis of crash data for all 10 States revealed either stable or declining crash rates per 1,000 licensed drivers with increasing age for each 5-year age group in each State. Crash rates per licensed driver for the different 5-year age groups showed a similar pattern, with declining rates with increasing age in all States other than Illinois and New Hampshire, the two States that require an on-road test at renewal for all drivers over 75. As there were more similarities than differences for licensing renewal between States, analyses based on licensing practices did not yield reliable differences. New Hampshire repealed its requirement for mandatory on-road testing for older adults effective July 2011 (IIHS, 2018).

**Costs:** More-frequent license renewals or additional testing at renewal impose direct costs on driver licensing agencies. For example, a State that reduces the renewal time from 6 years to 3 years for drivers 65 and older would approximately double the licensing agency workload associated with these drivers. If 15% of licensed drivers in the State are 65 and older, then the agency's overall workload would increase by about 15% to process the renewals. If more frequent renewals and vision tests identify more drivers who require additional screening and

assessment, then additional costs are imposed. See Chapter 7, Section 2.1, for additional discussion.

**Time to implement:** A vision test requirement for renewal or a change in the renewal interval can be implemented within months. The new requirements will not apply to all drivers for several years, until all currently valid licenses have expired and drivers appear at the driver licensing agency for licensing renewal.

**Other issues:**

- **Age discrimination:** A few States explicitly indicate that age alone is not a justification for reexamining a driver's qualifications (AAA, 2019; IIHS, 2019). These States have the same license renewal interval for all drivers and/or have specific provisions that prohibit licensing personnel from treating people differently solely due to age.
- **Road tests and medical reports:** Several Australian States require medical reports, road tests, or both for drivers over a specified age to renew their licenses. Langford et al. (2004) compared Australian States with and without these requirements. They found that Australian States with these requirements had higher older-driver crash rates than States without them. They conclude that there are "no demonstrable road safety benefits" to requiring medical reports or road tests for older drivers.

**Older Driver References**

American Automobile Association (AAA). (2004). *AAA basic best practices for medical advisory/review boards.*

AAA. (2019). *State laws.* https://seniordriving.aaa.com/states/

AAA. (2017). *Senior licensing policies and practices.* www.exchange.aaa.com/safety/senior-driver-safety/senior-licensing-policies-and-practices/#.W7--83tKjQU

AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. (2009). *Driver licensing policies and practices: Noteworthy initiatives database.*

AARP. (2010). *Auto insurance discounts.* www.aarp.org/auto/car-maintenance-safety/info-2010/auto-insurance-discounts.html

AARP. (2018). AARP driver safety program focuses on Tech: Workshops help older people take advantage of new car safety technology. www.aarp.org/auto/driver-safety/info-2018/smart-driver-course-car-technology.html

Bedard, M., Porter, M. M., Marshall, S., Isherwood, I., Riendeau, J., Weaver, B., Tuokko, H., Molnar, F., & Miller-Polgar, J. (2008, March). The combination of two training approaches to improve older adults' driving safety. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 9*, 70-76.

Bohensky, M., Charlton, J., Odell, M., & Keefe, J. (2008). Implications of vision testing for older driver licensing. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 9,* 304-313.

Carr, D. B., Schwartzberg, J. G., Manning, L., & Sempek, J. (2010, June). *Physician's guide to assessing and counseling older drivers*, *2nd edition* (Report No. DOT HS 811 298). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/older_drivers/pdf/811298.pdf

Cox, C. D., Cox, B. S., & Cox D. J. (2005). Long-term benefits of prompts to use safety belts among drivers exiting senior communities. *Journal of Applied Behavior Analysis, 38*, 533-536. www.pubmedcentral.nih.gov/articlerender.fcgi?artid=1309715

Insurance Institute for Highway Safety. (2018). *License renewal procedures for older drivers, October 2018.* www.iihs.org/topics/older-drivers/license-renewal-laws-table

IIHS. (2019). *Older drivers; State laws*. www.iihs.org/topics/older-drivers

Janke, M. K. (1994). *The mature driver improvement program in California.* California Department of Motor Vehicles.

Keskinen, E. (2014). Education for older drivers in the future. *IATSS Research, 38*(1), 14-21.

Korner-Bitensky, N., Kua, A., von Zweck, C., & Van Benthem, K. (2009). Older driver retraining: An updated systematic review of evidence of effectiveness. *Journal of Safety Research*, *40*, 105-111.

Kua, A., Korner-Bitensky, N., Desrosiers, J., Man-Son-Hing, M., & Marshall, S. (2007). Older driver retraining: A systematic review of evidence of effectiveness. *Journal of Safety Research*, *38*, 81-90.

Langford, J., Fitzharris, M., Koppell, S., & Newstead, S. (2004). Effectiveness of mandatory license testing for older drivers in reducing crash risk among urban older Australian drivers. *Traffic Injury Prevention, 5*, 326-335.

Li, R., & Pickrell, T. M. (2019, February). *Occupant restraint use in 2017: Results from the NOPUS controlled intersection study* (Report No. DOT HS 812 594). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812594

Lococo, K. H., Sifrit, K. J., Stutts, J., Joyce, J. J., & Staplin, L. (2017, March). *Medical review practices for driver licensing, Volume 2: Case studies of medical referrals and licensing outcomes in six states* (Report No. DOT HS 812 380). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2087

Lococo, K. H., & Staplin, L. (2005, July). *Strategies for medical advisory boards and licensing review* (Report No. DOT HS 809 874). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/research/MedicalAdvisory/pages/Job%201602%20-%20final%20new.pdf

Lococo, K. H., Stutts, J., Sifrit, K. J., & Staplin, L. (2017, April). *Medical review practices for driver licensing, Volume 3: Guidelines and processes in the United States* (Report No. DOT HS 812 402). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2094

Lococo, K. H., Stutts, J., & Staplin, L. (2016, October). *Medical review practices for driver licensing, Volume 1: A case study of guidelines and processes in seven U.S. States* (Report No. DOT HS 812 331). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1974

Marottoli, R. A. (2007). *Enhancement of driving performance among older Drivers.* AAA Foundation. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/EnhancingSeniorDrivingPerfReport.pdf

McConomy, S., Brooks, J., Venhovens, P., Xi, Y., Rosopa, P., DesJardins, J., Kopera, K., Drouin, N., Belle, L., Truesdail, C., Tanner, S., Hennessy, S., Lococo, K., Staplin, L., & Schold Davis, E.. (2018). *Evaluation of CarFit criteria compliance and knowledge of seat adjustment* (SAE Technical Paper No. 2018-01-1314). SAE International. www.sae.org/publications/technical-papers/content/2018-01-1314/

McGwin, G., Sarrels, S. A., Griffin, R., Owsley, C., & Rue, L. W. (2008). The impact of a vision screening law on older driver fatality rates. *Archives of Ophthalmology*, *126*, 1544-1547.

Moreau, K. (2015). *AARP Smart Driver Courses Available in Your Area!* AARP. https://states.aarp.org/aarp-driver-safety-courses-available-in-your-area-2

Morrisey, M. A. & Grabowski, D. C. (2005). State motor vehicle laws and older drivers. *Health Economics, 14*, 407-419.

Nasvadi, G. E., & Vavrik, J. (2007). Crash risk of older drivers after attending a mature driver education program. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 39*(6), 1073-1079.

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (2009, September). *Driver fitness medical guidelines* (Report No. DOT HS 811 210). www.ems.gov/pdf/811210.pdf

National Transportation Safety Board. (2004). *Highway special investigation report: Medical oversight of noncommercial drivers* (NTSB/SIR-04/01 PB2004-917002). www.carsandracingstuff.com/library/n/ntsb_hsirmedicaloversightofnoncommercialdrivers.pdf

Owsley, C., McGwin, G., Jr., Phillips, J. M., McNeal, S. F., & Stalvey, B. T. (2004). Impact of an education program on the safety of high-risk, visually impaired, older drivers. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 26*, 222-229.

Potts, I., Stutts, J., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L, & Hardy, K. K. (2004). *A guide for reducing collisions involving older drivers* (NCHRP Report 500, Vol. 9). Transportation Research Board. https://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_500v9.pdf

Raymond, P., Knoblauch, R., & Nitzburg, M. (2001, August). *Older road user research plan* (Report No. DOT HS 809 322). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/olddrive/OlderRoad/index.htm#toc

Romoser, M. R. E., & Fisher, D. L. (2009). The effect of active versus passive training strategies on improving older drivers' scanning in intersections. *Human Factors*, *51*, 652-668.

Skufca, L. (2011). *2010 driver safety program evaluation: A comparison of baseline and follow-up findings.* AARP. https://assets.aarp.org/rgcenter/general/driver-safety-program-evaluation.pdf

Staplin, L., & Lococo, K. H. (2003, May). *Model driver screening and evaluation program. Vol. 3: Guidelines for motor vehicle administrators* (Report No. DOT HS 809 581). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/olddrive/modeldriver/vol3scr.pdf

Stutts, J. C. (2005). *Improving the safety of older road users* (NCHRP Synthesis Project 20-5, Synthesis Topic 35-10). Transportation Research Board. http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_syn_348.pdf

Tefft, B. C. (2014). *Driver license renewal policies and fatal crash involvement rates of older drivers, United States, 1985–2011.* AAA Foundation. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/01/OlderDriverLicenseRenewalReport.pdf

Thomas III, F. D., Blomberg, R. D., Knodler, M., & Romoser, M. R. E. (2013, September). *Licensing procedures for older drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 811 833). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/staticfiles/nti/pdf/811833.pdf

Wang, C. C., Kosinski, C. J., Schwartzberg, J. G., & Shanklin, A. V. (2003, September). *Physician's guide to assessing and counseling older drivers* (Report No. DOT HS 809 647). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/39100

# A8. Pedestrian Safety

This section provides expanded discussion of the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

The ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures covered in this section of the appendix are listed below.

### 1. Preschool-Age Children

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 Children's Safety Clubs | ☆ | Varies | Unknown | Unknown |
| 1.2 Child Supervision | ☆ | $ | Unknown | Short |

### 2. School-Age Children

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.3 Child School Bus Training | ☆☆ | $ | High | Short |

### 3. Impaired Pedestrians

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Communications and Outreach Addressing Impaired Pedestrians | ☆☆ | Varies | Low | Medium |
| 3.2 "Sweeper" Patrols of Impaired Pedestrians | ☆ | $$ | Low | Medium |

### 4. All Pedestrians

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4.5 Driver Training | ☆ | $ | Low | Medium |
| 4.6 Pedestrian Gap Acceptance Training | ☆ | $$ | Unknown | Medium |
| 4.7 University Educational Campaign | ☆ | $ | High | Medium |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Preschool-Age Children

### 1.1 Children's Safety Clubs

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Unknown | Time: Unknown |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has been examined in a small number of research studies. The research suggests that this countermeasure does not translate into crash and injury reductions.*

Young children have limited abilities to perceive, understand, and react appropriately to traffic hazards, and they have greater difficulty finding safe places to cross along the roadway (Percer, 2009). A primary purpose of children's safety clubs is to help parents and caregivers become more involved in educating young children about safe walking practices. Related goals are to help promote ongoing, age-appropriate training, and safe attitudes towards traffic (Gregersen & Nolen, 1994). An equally important objective of safety clubs is for parents and other caregivers to recognize children's limits and capabilities, and to understand their obligation to provide adequate supervision and control (Gregersen & Nolen, 1994).

Motor vehicle crashes involving preschool children often involve slow-moving vehicles, frequently backing up in driveways and parking lots (Agran et al., 1994; Olson et al., 1993). From 2008 to 2011 there were 883 children 14 and younger killed in non-traffic-related crashes in which they were not occupants of vehicles (Singh et al., 2014). Of these fatalities, 104 involved forward moving vehicles, 95 backing vehicles, 7 driverless vehicles, and 15 involved other types, such as children struck near disabled or parked vehicles. A majority (84%) of these children were age 4 or younger. These statistics are from the most recent release of these data, and it remains important to teach children age-appropriate lessons about traffic and motor vehicles. It is even more important that parents and caregivers take direct responsibility and supervise young children carefully near roadways or in any areas where vehicles may be in use (Rivara et al., 1989). See also the following section, Section 1.2, for more information on supervision.

Parents are the primary role models and educators for their children. Research in the United Kingdom has examined the interactions and messages between parents and children with regard to road safety (Green et al., 2008). The researchers found that while parents feel competent to the task, they were inconsistent role models and lacked knowledge of best approaches and messages to train their children. Moreover, parents did not take full advantage of opportunities to teach while walking, and attention was focused more on controlling their children's behavior than teaching, particularly under higher risk situations (Green et al., 2008; see also Percer, 2009). In Israel a road-safety education program for children was conducted at select kindergartens; a survey reported it increased child-safety awareness among parents of participating children relative to parents who had children not in the program (Ben-Bassat & Avnieli, 2016).

The main development of safety clubs took place in Europe years ago, but they have not been adopted broadly in the United States. In many European programs children may be enrolled in a traffic safety club when they reach their third birthday. Books on traffic safety are then sent to the child every 6 months until they reach 5 years or older (Dragutinovic & Twisk, 2006), but other print or electronic media could be provided, bearing in mind that the intent is to engage both the parent and child. There do not appear to be any national or statewide standards, models, or curricula.

For a British traffic club source, see The Children's Traffic Club, www.childrenstrafficclub.com. The United Kingdom's Department of Transport released a set of games called *Tales of the Road* to teach children about road safety, http://talesoftheroad.direct.gov.uk.
Similar websites are available from the following

- Scotland: https://roadsafety.scot/ziggy-toolkit/
- Australia: www.det.wa.edu.au/ccm-ldn-theme-assets/__ccm__/themes-prod/sdera/flash/road_safety_games/index.html
- Renault: www.safety-mobility-for-all-the-game.com

**Use**: The extent of use of child safety clubs in the United States is unknown.

**Effectiveness**: Safety clubs are one way to teach and promote an understanding of a specific set of appropriate pedestrian behaviors for young children. However, the knowledge and skill benefits have not been found to translate into crash and injury reductions (Dragutinovic & Twisk, 2006; Gregersen & Nolen, 1994; West et al., 1993). The one study that evaluated effects on self- reported crashes found a negative result, but concluded that no impact on crashes could be inferred (Gregersen & Nolen, 1994).

**Costs**: The costs would depend on the cost of material and delivery and whether the families are charged anything for participation. In most of the clubs, enrollment is free to the participants; some charge a fee for enrollment (Dragutinovic & Twisk, 2006). If integrated into preschool programs, training for teachers may be needed.

**Time to implement**: Before a safety club program could be implemented, program material must be located and adapted as necessary. Following that, a modest time period would be needed to arrange for material, identify target recipients, disseminate information, and train teachers as needed.

**Other issues:**

- A challenge would be to garner high enrollment among families with lower socio-economic status and low-car-ownership. Participation in child safety clubs has been found to be lower among low SES groups in European countries (Dragutinovic & Twisk, 2006).
- It is up to parents and caregivers of young children to use material appropriately and a lack of control makes it difficult to monitor or assess results.

### 1.2 Child Supervision

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

This countermeasure increases caregiver supervision of children when they are exposed to traffic, or when they are nearby with direct access to traffic. Caregiver involvement is an effective means for shaping children's behaviors (Percer, 2009). Because children do not have the impulse control to make safe walking decisions, these programs can be an asset to anyone responsible for the supervision of children. The State can require such training for teachers, day care workers, and others licensed to care for children. The programs can also be made available to parents, babysitters, or other caretakers through PTAs, faith-based organizations or places of worship, medical providers, or even direct mail or internet access.

NHTSA also supports a website to reach parents, Parents Central, a gateway to keep children safe on the road (www.safercar.gov/parents/walking.htm). Parent Central includes material created through a partnership to provide preschool-aged children and their parents with pedestrian safety messages. Worth noting is NHTSA's resource, *Teaching Children to Walk Safely as They Grow and Develop: A Guide for Parents and Caregivers*, with learning objectives and tips for caregivers of children 4 to 6; 7 to 9; and 10, see www.saferoutesinfo.org/sites/-default/files/TeachingChildrentoWalkSafely.pdf.

Another NHTSA website publication is *Walking Through the Years*, *Preventing Pedestrian Crashes: Preschool/Elementary School Children.* NHTSA also has several brochures to educate parents and caregivers on child pedestrian safety (www.nhtsa.gov/road-safety/pedestrian-safety) as does Safe Kids Worldwide, including safety tips for parents of young children and links to additional resources (www.safekids.org/safetytips/field_age/little-kids-1%E2%80%934-years/field_risks/pedestrian-safety).

One of the ways to market these programs may be to demonstrate to parents the amount of supervision their child/children needs (and effective training). For example, Rivara et al. (1989) and Dunne et al. (1992) have shown that parents consistently overestimate the ability of children younger than 9 or 10 to negotiate in traffic. Adults should actively supervise children and not assume that their presence will be adequate to ensure safer behavior.

**Use**: The availability and use of programs to improve child supervision is unknown. Pedestrian safety in general may be a topic at preschools, but programs are likely to be unique, without consensus objectives, material, or curriculum. Many other outlets such as community centers, churches, and local injury prevention offices may be used to reach caregivers and parents of pre-school age children, but the extent of such outreach, and the penetration of traffic safety messages for caregivers is unknown.

**Effectiveness**: Programs or material can provide helpful training for caregivers if they point out specific risks as well as guidelines for the kind and degree of oversight that are necessary, but the

caregivers need to put the training into practice. Widespread exposure of parents and caregivers to this material and resources should be an objective of such programs with the goal to improve safety and reduce injuries.

**Costs**: Material for people is already available and quite inexpensive. Training for licensed caregivers would be inexpensive to develop and distribute.

**Time to implement**: Short, for existing material; medium, to develop and disseminate a training curriculum with material.

**Other issues:**

- Differences in cultural, social, and perceived norms for pedestrian safety should be considered in the development of programs to improve child supervision. For example, in a study by Pfeffer et al. (2010), 59% of adults held the hands of female children compared with 36% who held the hands of male children when crossing the road. In another study, children 9 and younger in one cultural group believed that more of their peers crossed roadways alone than actually did (Rosenbloom et al., 2009). Addressing discrepancies in perceived norms and actual norms may help to shift the actual norm toward safer trends.

## 2. School-Age Children

### 2.3 Child School Bus Training

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *There are no evaluation studies showing reductions in crashes or injuries. These outcomes are difficult to demonstrate because minimal, basic training is very widespread and the choice to adopt a stronger curriculum would be confounded with any number of other factors.*

The purpose of school bus training for children is to teach them how to safely approach, board, disembark, and walk away from school buses. According to NHTSA, 100 school-aged pedestrians 18 and younger died in school-transportation-related crashes from 2009 to 2018 (NCSA, 2020b). These fatalities represent 8.3% of all school-transportation-related fatalities, most of which (70%) involved occupants of non-school-bus vehicles. Of the 100 school-aged pedestrian fatalities, 47% were struck by school buses or vehicles functioning as school buses, and 52% by other vehicles (passenger cars, etc.). In 2018 eleven pedestrians of all ages were struck and killed by school buses.

Basic training for children who ride school buses should be part of the normal school routine, if it is not already. Training should include behavior on the bus as well as getting on or off the bus at bus stops or school, obeying bus drivers and bus monitors, emergency evacuation procedures, and any topics unique to the school. Additionally, education about safety behaviors of parents in school zones and around school buses should be reinforced as part of "Back to School" night, in school bulletins, or other creative means. The Safe Routes to School website has many resources (www.saferoutesinfo.org/) and the SRTS program guide includes messages for drivers and tips for neighbors living in school walk zones to help improve safety for school-aged pedestrians (guide.saferoutesinfo.org/education/index.cfm). NHTSA also has a refresher training module for school bus drivers (see www.nhtsa.gov/school-buses/school-bus-driver-service-safety-series).

Jurisdictions should use a common curriculum for school bus safety training. Targeted behaviors include boarding and exiting from the bus and crossing the street to and from the bus. The NHTSA Child Pedestrian Safety Curriculum, previously discussed, includes a module on safety around school buses.

**Use**: Most school districts have some form of school bus training in place, though the content and quality of those programs varies. Schools should be eager to provide this training, both for child safety and for legal liability.

**Effectiveness**: Burke et al. (1996) found that stenciled pavement markings, together with in-school training, led to improved behavior in waiting for, and boarding, the school bus compared to training alone for students in grades 4 to 6. Reductions in crashes and injuries are difficult to demonstrate because minimal basic training is very widespread and the choice to adopt a stronger curriculum would be confounded with other factors.

**Costs**: The primary cost for the SHSOs would be in adapting material for their States and producing, stocking, and distributing the material. Much of this could be done electronically, through school websites, newsletters, press releases, and other regular communications channels.

**Time to implement**: Basic material is available from many organizations including NTHSA, and schools could adopt curricula of their choice quickly.

## 3. Impaired Pedestrians

### 3.1 Communications and Outreach Addressing Impaired Pedestrians

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Low | Time: Medium |

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

In 2018 some 33% of all fatally injured pedestrians had BACs of .08 g/dL or higher, and 38% of all fatally injured pedestrians had positive BACs (NCSA, 2020a).

Communications and outreach to reduce impaired-pedestrian crashes can be directed at audiences such as law enforcement, drivers, alcohol servers and vendors, civic and neighborhood leaders, faith-based communities, universities, and friends and family of likely impaired pedestrians. Impaired pedestrians are also a target audience, of course. However, they are viewed as a difficult audience for communications and outreach to have a meaningful effect on their behavior because their decision-making is compromised. Reaching others who can prevent these crashes, or to alter the circumstances that lead up to such crashes, may be among the most effective ways to achieve success. Some of the countermeasures proposed for impaired drivers in Chapter 1, such as responsible beverage service training and alternative transportation, are also appropriate for impaired pedestrians.

**Use**: Low. NHTSA has successfully implemented one zone-based program in Baltimore that included PSAs, posters, flyers, and interventions aimed at alcohol-impaired pedestrians, but the program is not currently active (Blomberg & Cleven, 2000). Most impaired-roadway user programs focus on impaired drivers.

**Effectiveness**: Using 5.5 years of before data and 2 years of after data, Blomberg and Cleven (2000) found a 22% decrease in crashes among males 30 to 59 in the targeted zones where the intervention took place. Although encouraging, there have been no demonstrations of crash or injury reductions unless the communications and outreach is part of a comprehensive program that includes engineering measures and some form of law enforcement involvement, as in the case of Blomberg and Cleven (2000).

**Costs**: The costs for such a program can range from low to high, depending on the extent of the campaign that is designed and implemented.

**Time to implement**: The actual time to implement depends on the scope and ambition of the program.

### 3.2 "Sweeper" Patrols of Impaired Pedestrians

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: Low | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

The purpose of "sweeping" alcohol-impaired pedestrians from the streets until they no longer have high BACs is intended to reduce the exposure of these at-risk pedestrians to traffic, and can also address other social issues such as public intoxication and crime. Pedestrians with high BACs are at high risk of injury due to motor vehicle crashes. A program of removing alcohol-impaired pedestrians from the streets can be effective in reducing their exposure and thus the risk.

There are some important issues that need to be resolved when setting up sweeper programs, such as how to identify at-risk pedestrians (e.g., calls from bars or direct observers, observation by police or health professionals), who will pick up the targets, where will they be kept until they are sober, what friends or family need to be notified at the time of the pickup (if any), how the pedestrians are returned home after the intervention, and how the costs of the program are borne.

Huntley (1984) focused on police "sweeper" squads and "support on call" programs involving taxis and trained escorts to get intoxicated people home or to a detoxification center. Services of these types in the Boston area were surveyed. Both types of services appeared practical and effective, though the number of people who could be reached by these services was relatively small. There was a problem related to the number of available detoxification beds in the community. The sweeper squads wanted to deliver intoxicated pedestrians to the mental health community, not to police facilities, and they stopped the sweep when the beds were filled. There were also problems with the number of taxi drivers who wanted to deal with intoxicated people and the availability of volunteer escorts.

In 2005 the National Health Service of London created a program of alternative response vehicles (often called "booze buses") in response to an increasing number of alcohol related ambulance calls (Hayes, 2010). Staffed with paramedics, these buses collect intoxicated pedestrians and bring them to alcohol treatment centers or hospitals.

**Use**: Well-publicized sweep operations, which involve picking up intoxicated people from the street and letting them "sleep it off," have been conducted in Puerto Rico and in Gallup, New Mexico. Puerto Rico's program, which included a statute, communications and outreach, and law enforcement training, led to a 7% drop in alcohol-related pedestrian crashes (Stewart, 1994). Current use of this program in the United States is minimal, and appears to be limited to small-scale, local efforts.

**Effectiveness**: Such programs typically reach only a fraction of those people who need the services. The sweeps typically deal with people who are too drunk to walk or even know that they are being "swept." These same people are at risk while they are becoming intoxicated, and, in all likelihood, will be at risk again in the near future as they become sober and thus more

mobile (Huntley, 1984). As described by Huntley, many people need intensive treatment for alcoholism; and sweeper programs may be useful in identifying potential treatment candidates.

**Costs**: The program incurs ongoing costs directly related to the effectiveness, i.e., the number of people swept up. Depending on how it is set up, the program may incur costs related to the sweeper patrol (or law enforcement overtime), the use of facilities, and any subsequent treatment requirements.

**Time to implement**: Once it is decided to offer the program, the logistics for starting it up could be handled in weeks or months, depending on the extent and coordination of services.

**Other issues**:

- The legal rights of those potentially being swept need to be preserved.
- Often if law enforcement or other formal agencies are involved, their regular procedures would require some formal charge or other processing to take place. Alternatively, a sweeper program could be without subsequent consequences to those being swept, with no formal records kept. This might eliminate certain organizations or agencies from participating.

## 4. All Pedestrians

### 4.5 Driver Training

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *Driver training alone has not been shown to reduce overall crash rates. There is no evidence indicating that this countermeasure is effective. However, driving skill begins with knowledge education and then practicing defensive driving in relation to all other types of traffic, including pedestrians.*

Pedestrian-safety-related driver training increases the sensitivity of drivers to the presence and characteristics of pedestrians and their role as drivers to enhance the safety of pedestrians. Current training for new drivers typically includes relatively little information on other road users. Information on pedestrians can be significantly strengthened. Specifications for driver education curricula, typically a State requirement, can be adjusted to include more specific information on the status of the pedestrian in the traffic environment, right-of-way requirements for drivers and pedestrians, other driver and pedestrian responsibilities, categories of pedestrian crash types, and key ways drivers can avoid being involved in such crashes. Standards for curriculum and training developed by the American Driver and Traffic Safety Education Association include some of these pedestrian-related learning objectives (Driver Education Working Group, 2009).

One way driver training can incorporate pedestrian and bicyclist concerns for new and existing drivers is through "*Share the Road* " education concepts and programs, though many focus exclusively on bicycles. One of many such resources is the State of New York's highly readable *Sharing the Road Safely* (www.safeny.ny.gov/media/share-road.htm). It should be noted that "*Share the Road* " programs have not been accepted everywhere, and some States have discontinued these programs after implementing them.

**Use**: As noted, all driver education curricula include some information on other road users, but the kind of expanded information recommended here is sparse.

**Effectiveness**: Driver education alone has not been shown to reduce overall crash rates. The objective for adding more pedestrian information would be to increase knowledge and desire to share the road safely with pedestrians, of how to avoid the most common types of motor vehicle/pedestrian type crashes, and to improve drivers' anticipation of, and interactions with, pedestrians – as well as improve their behavior as pedestrians.

**Cost**: Low. The cost would be for the development of the new segments of the standard curriculum and for getting it into the material used by driver education instructors and schools.

**Time to implement**: Material would need to be developed and integrated into the standard driver education curriculum, and adjustments made elsewhere in the curriculum to reflect likely additional time required for the new pedestrian material.

The same timeframe would be appropriate for making changes to official State driving manuals, license exams, and related material and procedures.

### 4.6 Pedestrian Gap Acceptance Training

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has been examined in few research studies. While there is some evidence that certain approaches may lead to limited positive outcomes, there are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

The purpose of pedestrian gap acceptance training is to help pedestrians learn to make better road-crossing decisions, which may reduce the incidence of crossing-related injuries and fatalities. Previous studies have reported that human error, such as poor judgment in gauging the speed and/or distance of oncoming traffic, underlies a significant portion of roadway collisions (Hunt et al., 2011).

Identifying safe gaps is a task that child pedestrians and bicyclists must be taught. Although children as young as 5 can understand the concepts of speed and distance—and young children can be taught to mimic gap judgments of adults—they can still have difficulty interpreting vehicle speed and direction at 6 and 7 (Percer, 2009). Additionally, child bicyclists as old as 10 to 14 show developmental differences in learning to adjust their trajectories to match safe gaps relative to older drivers (Chihak et al., 2014; Plumert & Kearney, 2014). These trends suggest that children require training on different types of gap judgment skills than adults.

**Use**: Unknown. Preliminary studies have taken place in New Zealand and France but no adult simulator trainings on gap acceptance have been found in the United States.

**Effectiveness**: Hunt et al. (2011) used a laboratory-based video simulating the roadway environment to test three different approaches for giving feedback to pedestrians in how to better incorporate vehicle speed information to their gap estimates and crossing decisions. While the study group was small—58 people 18 to 80 years old—preliminary results indicate that video-based training with a feedback mechanism can be successful in improving the accuracy of pedestrians' estimates of driver speeds. However, improved speed estimation did not consistently translate into improved gap-acceptance judgments, and participant age played a role in training effectiveness. Older pedestrians, in particular, had significantly more conservative gap judgments after the training, which were independent of improvements in vehicle speed estimations.

Another study by Dommes and Cavallo (2012) evaluated the effectiveness of an education-based intervention aimed at training older pedestrians (60+ years) to improve crossing safety by taking into account vehicle speeds. Results showed that after simulated crossing training, the treatment group participants crossed more quickly, had larger safety margins, and had fewer close encounters than the control group, although differences were no longer significant 6 months after training. Also, in contrast to the Hunt et al. (2011) study, participants did not appear to improve in taking into account vehicle speed when making crossing decisions. The authors concluded that age-related perceptual and cognitive difficulties may exist in gauging speed and gap acceptance that cannot be remedied by educational training alone.

**Costs**: Medium. Costs would involve development of the training material (or adaptation from existing study material) and determining an applicable and appropriate venue to reach the adult and senior pedestrian population.

**Time to implement**: Medium. Training material could be developed and integrated into existing educational channels for adult and senior pedestrians.

**Other issues:**

- As mentioned earlier, environmental treatments such as allowing sufficient time for the pedestrian crossing in signal timing, median refuges, and careful attention to sidewalk accessibility issues are also important to older pedestrians who may have mobility declines. A study funded by Michigan DOT evaluated the effects of pedestrian countdown signals (PCS) on crash risk in a pre-post study of sites with and without PCS. Crash data from 3 years before and 3 years after installation of a PCS were collected from 93 sites and comparison data for the 6-year period were collected from 97 sites with a standard (non-countdown) pedestrian signal. Pedestrian countdown signals were found to be associated with a significant 32% reduction in all crashes and a 65% reduction in crashes involving people 65 and older (Kwigizile et al., 2016).

### 4.7 University Educational Campaign

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: High | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Frequently, university settings are areas of high pedestrian concentrations. This, combined with a younger age population who frequently take more risks as both pedestrians and drivers, may result in increased pedestrian crashes on roads around and through a campus setting (Zegeer et al., 2008). At the same time, a university campus may offer an opportune setting to reach a well-defined target audience of drivers and pedestrians about the risks of unsafe behaviors. A study conducted in 2013 in the urban community around the Johns Hopkins medical center campus examined knowledge of pedestrian-related laws, perceptions of pedestrian safety problems, and perceptions of the effectiveness of interventions. This survey was part of a larger campaign called "Be Alert: Don't Get Hurt" (Johns Hopkins Center for Injury Research and Policy, 2015). Study participants included students, faculty, and campus staff, as well as residents in the surrounding areas. Most were drivers, while only 19.1% were pedestrians. Less than half the respondents were aware of laws and penalties related to "jaywalking," and less than 6% were aware that pedestrians do not always have the right-of-way in a crosswalk. More pedestrians preferred longer signal crossing times, and more drivers supported structural interventions that prevented midblock pedestrian incursions (Nesoff et al., 2019). These findings point a need for more educational campaigns on pedestrian safety laws and road rules.

Fall of a new academic year may be a good time to reach new students, faculty, and staff who may be less familiar with walking and driving in the campus environment. Activities may need to be repeated several times a year for maximal effect, during higher risk times such as in the fall as day length shortens, and again in spring as the weather warms and jogging and other outdoor activities may increase. Potential educational messages may include right-of-way rules and the importance of yielding right-of-way (pedestrians, bicyclists, and drivers), being visible and predictable at both day and night times and during inclement weather (pedestrians and bicyclists), making eye contact at conflict points (pedestrians and drivers), avoiding distractions (pedestrians and drivers), and speed control (drivers and potentially bicyclists) (Zegeer et al., 2008). Partnerships may include campus public safety offices, student health and wellness programs, city/county public safety agencies, injury prevention agencies, parking and transportation services, transit agencies, and student groups. There may be academic or research units on campus that could also help with developing a campus campaign.

**Use:** Some universities conduct some form of outreach or have pedestrian safety campaigns. The University of North Carolina combines educational outreach with targeted crosswalk enforcement to remind both motorists and pedestrians of safe yielding behaviors, but the program effects have not been evaluated. The John Hopkins University Arts and Sciences campus developed a comprehensive intervention based on focus groups, university crash reports, and an environmental audit. The intervention was framed by the three Es of education, enforcement, and engineering. Based on its research, it increased enforcement at busy intersections, included pedestrian safety education as part of new student orientation, and

increased signage to remind both drivers and pedestrians of the laws and safe behaviors (Pollack et al., 2014). The effectiveness of this program has not been evaluated.

**Effectiveness:** No studies of crash effects are known. The University of South Florida at Tampa conducted a one-week campaign in the fall that began with campus administrators, local agencies, and elected officials leading a "parade" walk around campus. Over 4 days there were lectures on walking and biking safely (WalkWise and Bike Smart), and posters and booklets with walking and biking rules were distributed across campus. The campaign ended with a bicycle celebration event. Zhang et al. (2013) reported some improvement in observed safety behaviors, most notably at locations closest to a student center where many activities took place. They also noted, however, that all groups (drivers, pedestrians, and bicyclists) self-reported better behavior than was observed in the field, and that there were differences in perceptions of the interactions among the groups. For example, drivers thought they yielded more frequently to pedestrians than pedestrians thought they did, and vice versa.

Effectiveness is likely to be increased when education is combined with appropriate infrastructure to facilitate safer interactions.

**Costs:** Costs vary depending on the activities implemented, but could include costs for events and material. The well-identified campus environment and potential campus partners are characteristics that provide an opportunity to lower and/or share costs when compared to other similar types of educational campaigns in a broader community.

**Time to Implement:** The timeline may be short once problem identification and program development has occurred. Time should be allowed to gather campus community input and to develop and test material that resonates with the campus community.

**Pedestrian Safety References**

Agran, P. F., Winn, D. G., & Anderson, C. L. (1994). Differences in child pedestrian injury events by location. *Pediatrics, 93*, 84-288.

Ben-Bassat, T., & Avnieli, S. (2016). The effect of a road safety educational program for kindergarten children on their parents' behavior and knowledge. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 95*, 78-85.

Blomberg, R. D., & Cleven, A. M. (2000, July). *Development, implementation, and evaluation of a countermeasure program for alcohol-involved pedestrian crashes* (Report No. DOT HS 809 067). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1634

Burke, G. S., Lapidus, G. D., Zavoski, R. W., Wallace, L., & Banco, L. I. (1996). Evaluation of the effectiveness of a pavement stencil in promoting safe behavior among elementary school children boarding school buses. *Pediatrics, 97*, 520-523.

Chihak, B. J., Grechkin, T. Y., Kearney, J. K., Cremer F. J., & Plumert, J. M. (2014). How children and adults learn to intercept moving gaps. *Journal of Experimental Child Psychology, 122*, 134-152.

Dommes, A. & Cavallo, V. (2012). Can simulator-based training improve street-crossing safety for elderly pedestrians? *Transportation Research Part F: Traffic Psychology and Behavior*, *15*, 206-218.

Dragutinovic, N. & Twisk, D. (2006). The effectiveness of road safety education: A literature review. SWOV Institute for Road Safety Research. www.swov.nl/rapport/r-2006-06.pdf

Driver Education Working Group. (2009). *Novice teen driver education and training administrative standards. report from National Conference on Driver Education*. www.dsaa.org/files/galleries/DEStandards04-06-2009_master-0001.pdf

Dunne, R. G., Asher, K. N., & Rivara, F. P. (1992). Behavior and parental expectations of child pedestrians. *Pediatrics, 89*, 486-490.

Green, J., Ayrton, R., Woodall, J., Woodward, J., Newell, C., Cattan, M., & Cross, R. (2008). *Child–parent interaction in relation to road safety education: Part 2 – Main report.* London Department for Transport. http://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/20110509101621/www.dft.gov.uk/pgr/roadsafety/research/rsrr/theme1/no102safetyresearch.pdf

Gregersen, N. P., & Nolen S. (1994). Children's road safety and the strategy of voluntary traffic safety clubs. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 26*, 463-470.

Hayes, B. (2010). *Alternative response vehicle* (PowerPoint web page). London Ambulance Service NHS Trust. www.infodrog.ch/files/content/clubhealth2010/pl4/PL4_Hayes.Brian_Booze.Bus_Clubhealth.pdf

Hunt, M., Harper, D. N., & Lie, C. (2011). Mind the gap: Training road users to use speed and distance when making gap-acceptance decisions. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *43*, 2015-2023.

Huntley, M. S., Jr. (1984). *Pedestrian/alcohol problems: Countermeasures to consider*. Transportation Systems Center.

Johns Hopkins Center for Injury Research and Policy. (2015). *Be Alert, Don't Get Hurt: A pedestrian safety campaign on an urban, academic campus.* www.jhsph.edu/research/centers-and-institutes/johns-hopkins-center-for-injury-research-and-policy/_documents/materials/pedestrian-safety-campaign/pedestrian-safety-brochure.pdf

Kwigizile, V., Boateng, R. A., Oh, J. S., & Lariviere, K. (2016). *Evaluating the effectiveness of pedestrian countdown signals on the safety of pedestrians in Michigan.* Transportation Research Board 95th Annual Meeting, Transportation Research Board, 17.

National Center for Statistics and Analysis. (2020a, March). *Pedestrians: 2018 data.* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 850). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812850

NCSA. (2020b, July). *School transportation-related crashes: 2009-2018 data.* (Traffic Safety Facts. Report No. DOT HS 812 944). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/812944

Nesoff, E. D., Porter, K. M. P., Bailey, M., & Gielen, A. C. (2019). Knowledge and beliefs about pedestrian safety in an urban community: Implications for promoting safe walking. *Journal of Community Health, 44*(1), 103-111.

Olson, L. M., Sklar, D. P., Cobb, L., Sapien, R., & Zumwalt, R. (1993). Analysis of childhood pedestrian deaths in New Mexico, 1986-1990. *Annals of Emergency Medicine, 22*, 512-516.

Percer, J. (2009, September). *Child pedestrian safety education: Applying learning and developmental theories to develop safe street crossing behaviors* (Report No. DOT HS 811 190). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/40199

Pfeffer, K., Fagbemi, H. P., & Stennet, S. (2010). Adult pedestrian behavior when accompanying children on the route to school. *Traffic Injury Prevention*, *11*, 188-193.

Plumert, J.M. & Kearney, J.K. (2014). How do children perceive and act on dynamic affordances in crossing traffic-filled roads? *Child Development Perspectives, 8*(4*)*, 207–212.

Pollack, K. M., Gielen, A. C., Ismail, M. N. M., Mitzner, M., Wu, M., & Links, J. M. (2014). Investigating and improving pedestrian safety in an urban environment. *Injury Epidemiology*, *1*(1), 1-9. doi: 10.1186/2197-1714-1-11

Rivara, F. P., Bergman, A. B., & Drake, C. (1989). Parental attitudes and practices toward children as pedestrians. *Pediatrics, 84*, 1017-1021.

Rosenbloom, T., Sapir-Lavid, Y., & Hadari-Carmi, O. (2009). Social norms of accompanied young children and observed crossing behaviors. *Journal of Safety Research*, *40*, 33-39.

Singh, S., Stern, & Subramanian, R. (2014, April). *Not-in-traffic surveillance: Child fatality and injury in nontraffic crashes – 2008 to 2011* (Traffic Safety Facts Crash●Stat. Report No. DOT HS 811 812). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://crashstats.nhtsa.dot.gov/Api/Public/ViewPublication/811812

Stewart, K. (1994). *Report of the ICADTS working group on alcohol-involved pedestrians.* www.druglibrary.org/schaffer/misc/driving/s25p1.htm

West, R., Sammons, P., & West, A. (1993). Effects of a traffic club on road safety knowledge and self-reported behaviour of young children and their parents. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 25*, 609-618.

Zegeer, C., Sandt, L., & Scully, M. (2008). *How to develop a pedestrian safety action plan.* Federal Highway Administration. http://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/ped_bike/ped_focus/docs/fhwasa0512.pdf

Zhang, Y., Gawade, M., Lin, P. S., & McPherson, T. (2013). Educational campaign for improving pedestrian safety: A university campus study. *Procedia – Social and Behavioral Sciences, 96,* 2756-2766.

# A9. Bicycle Safety

This section provides expanded discussion of the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

The ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures covered in this section of the appendix are listed below.

**1. Children**

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.3 Bicycle Safety Education for Children | ☆☆ | $ | Unknown | Short |
| 1.4 Cycling Skills Clinics, Bike Fairs, Bike Rodeos | ☆ | $ | Unknown | Short |

**2. Adults**

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.2 Bicycle Safety Education for Adult Cyclists | ☆ | $$ | Low | Medium |

**3. All Bicyclists**

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.2 Promote Bicycle Helmet Use with Education | ☆☆ | $$$ | Medium | Medium |
| 3.3 Enforcement Strategies | ☆ | $$ | Unknown | Varies |
| 3.4 Motorist Passing Bicyclist Laws | ☆ | $ | Medium | Short |

**4. Drivers and Bicyclists**

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4.1 Driver Training | ☆ | $ | Low | Medium |
| 4.2 *Share the Road* Awareness Programs | ☆☆ | $$ | Unknown | Medium |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Children

### 1.3 Bicycle Safety Education for Children

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *Previous studies examining the effectiveness of this countermeasure found that bicycle safety education increases children's knowledge of laws and safe behaviors (Hooshmand et al., 2014; Lachapelle et al., 2013; Thomas et al., 2005), but whether this translates into adoption of the safe behaviors is less certain (Richmond et al., 2014). The balance of evidence regarding countermeasure effectiveness remains inconclusive.*

The purpose of bicycle education is to teach children basic bicycle handling skills, traffic laws, how to ride on streets with traffic present, proper helmet use, bicycle safety checks, and bicycle maintenance. As part of a regular school curriculum, education can reach every student, but providing training outside of school settings such as through parks and recreation departments, community centers or faith-based organizations may be more feasible in some circumstances. Community-based programs could also provide greater flexibility in tailoring to meet the needs of specific target groups.

Young children are just learning about traffic. They have little experience anticipating and interpreting potential traffic hazards, and limited abilities to reason and react. Their brains are still developing and they lack the maturity and judgment needed to negotiate traffic safely and to limit risk-taking behaviors. They are also less skilled at riding than older children or adults. Many children under 10 have difficulty accurately judging the speed and movements of vehicles, and may require adult supervision. Supervision is also recommended until children are able to ride in a straight line, swerve to avoid hazards in the roadway, comfortably start and stop their bicycles, and maintain balance at slow speeds.

Readers should note that safe bicycling principles can be counterintuitive, and safety skills taught to pedestrians (such as walking facing traffic) do not necessarily hold true for bicyclists. However, some actions are common to both, such as looking left-right-left for traffic, and going only when clear. Making these connections is particularly helpful when correlating walking and bicycling as precursors or stepping stones to safe driving (with older pre-driving youth). Further, bicycle safety skills for children may differ from safety skills needed by adults riding in different environments and at different speeds. For example, bicycle education programs may teach young children to ride their bikes slowly on the sidewalk or adjacent paths, and as far away from the roadway as possible. However, adult cyclists may need to be trained where to position themselves in the travel lane, riding in the same direction with traffic, and further from the curb, depending on the facility type. For more on adult bicyclist education, see Section 2.2. One common theme in bicycle education for both children and adults is the need to scan for traffic and potential hazards, ride predictably, and use correct hand signals to indicate changes in speed or direction.

Whether school or community-based, bicycle education should include, at a minimum, a demonstration and handout on how to properly fit a bicycle helmet and an emphasis on everyone, regardless of age, wearing a helmet for every ride. As noted above, the curriculum should also include information on how parents and children should decide what locations are safe places to ride, and how children can be predictable and visible to drivers. In addition, bicycle safety training should be reinforced (potentially by caregivers), with opportunities to practice new skills in appropriate settings (Ellis, 2014). Twisk et al. (2013) found that it may be very difficult to improve behaviors in real-traffic situations using educational programs that occur in a controlled school setting, even using models for the traffic situations, and even if recognition of risks (knowledge) appears to be improved.

Bicycle safety training and education may be incorporated into life-long, comprehensive traffic safety education, with components assembled from NHTSA or comparable programs. Much bicycle safety education material target children in grades K-8, though some are aimed at younger children. Bikeology, an on-bicycle skills curriculum specifically designed for professional physical education teachers and recreation specialists, is suited for teaching middle to high school students of varying abilities and with special needs (AAHPERD, 2018). This curriculum is available at www.shapeamerica.org/publications/resources/teachingtools/-qualitype/bicycle_curriculum.aspx.

NHTSA has produced publications on how to properly fit a bicycle helmet, rules of the road, presentations to generate peer to peer discussion on safe walking and bicycling, and games to educate children and parents on bicycle safety. This information is available on NHTSA's Bicycle and Traffic Safety Marketing pages. Bicycle Safer Journey is an updated series of web-based training videos and discussion guides targeted for bicyclists 5 to 9, 10 to 14, and 15 to 18 years old. The material is available on the Pedestrian and Bicycle Information Center website (www.pedbikeinfo.org/bicyclesaferjourney/).

**Use**: The use of school-based programs, which is at the discretion of local school districts, is unknown, but some localities are introducing bicycling as a physical activity class taught by experienced teachers. In-school education and training; however, is a frequent part of local SRTS programs. In addition to programs offered by teachers and school personnel, local bicycling coalitions sometimes offer age-appropriate bicycle training in a school setting. Examples are the Bicycle Transportation Alliance in Portland, and the Hawaii Bicycling League (Thomas et al., 2005). The *Let's Go NC! – Pedestrian and Bicycle Safety Curriculum* in North Carolina provides educational material for training safe road use skills in children (www.ncdot.gov/initiatives-policies/safety/lets-go-nc/Pages/default.aspx). The prevalence of community-based programs is also unknown, but there are programs active in some States such as California, New York, New Jersey, and Virginia. The *Kids on Bikes* program offers a collection of community-based resources in many localities including bike libraries, summer bike camps, and safe biking education (https://kidsonbikes.net/).

**Effectiveness**: Both short lecture-based programs and more extensive programs with on-bicycle training can increase children's knowledge of laws and safe behaviors (Ellis, 2014; Hooshmand et al., 2014; Lachapelle et al., 2013; van Lierop et al., 2016; Mandic et al., 2018; Thomas et al., 2005), bicycling confidence (van Lierop et al., 2016), or observed behaviors in an educational

context (Ducheyne et al., 2013, 2014), but whether these translate into adoption of the safe behaviors is less certain (Hatfield et al., 2017; Richmond et al., 2014). One evaluation of a pilot program in the French-speaking parts of Canada, the Certificat Cycliste Averti (CCA; English translation: Certified Aware Cyclist), showed the program was successful in increasing children's knowledge of bicycling safety and bicycle-specific street signs (van Lierop et al., 2016). The CCA program consists of theoretical off-bicycle lessons on traffic safety, practical on-bicycle training in a safe environment, on-road urban bicycling training, and individual, on-road cycling exam. Additionally, there was some evidence that parents' own cycling habits and perceptions of their child's cycling safety had been positively changed through child participation in the CCA program. A 2005 study for NHTSA described four school-based, on-bicycle training programs that each achieved sustained knowledge gains, and higher average knowledge compared to students who had never had a training course (Thomas et al., 2005). Self-reports from students and parents also suggested that safe riding behaviors and enjoyment of riding improved, more so in the courses taught on road than those taught in a closed course (on the school grounds). A European study examined the effectiveness of a classroom-based training course that used videos to teach hazard detection to young bicyclists 9 and 10 years old (Zeuwts et al., 2017). In a video-based evaluation study, children who received the training detected more hazards and reacted faster to them than a control group that did not receive any training.

A review of evaluations of 13 educational programs (without legislation enactment) among children and youth found that educational programs were effective at increasing observed helmet use. Most programs also offered discounted or free helmet distribution. Meta-analyses found the odds of observed helmet wearing to be more than 2 times higher than at baseline or among the non-intervention group, but results were quite varied across the different studies (Royal et al., 2007). The authors were unable to tease apart differences in programs that might contribute to different outcomes other than whether they were community-based or school-based, and whether or not they offered free or reduced-priced helmets. Community educational programs that provided free helmets were reported to be more effective than programs set in schools or that provided only an opportunity to purchase a discounted helmet, although the latter types also increased use. School-based programs also tended to obtain best results among the younger participants. Three of the studies found helmet use benefits persisting at 9- to 12-month follow-up, although evidence is still lacking regarding longer-term (1 year or more). Based on the evidence of effectiveness of helmets at preventing head-injuries when worn, injury-reduction benefits would be expected from programs that increase proper use of helmets. Crash reduction benefits of educational programs have not been conclusively demonstrated (Richmond et al., 2014). Evidence is also lacking as to whether programs might have any unintended effects such as reducing amounts of riding or conferring overconfidence in one's riding skills.

**Costs**: Coalitions may be paid by their associated State to provide training, or otherwise use SRTS funds if money is still available, or if SRTS funding at the State is being maintained. Activities formerly eligible under Federal SRTS funding are now eligible under the TAP program outlined in MAP-21, but funding priorities are established by each State. State contacts may be located on the PBIC website (pedbikeinfo.org/data/state.cfm) or search individual States' DOT websites for information about TAP and SRTS funding. Teachers can provide education using NHTSA's free material, but training, administration, and supervision of a comprehensive program could increase costs somewhat.

**Time to implement**: Short, for existing material; medium, to develop and disseminate a training curriculum with material.

### 1.4 Cycling Skills Clinics, Bike Fairs, Bike Rodeos

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *While cycling skills clinics or rodeos can result in increases in knowledge and skills, a review of the research literature does not reveal any studies that document crash and injury reduction, at least not in isolation. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that this countermeasure is effective.*

The purpose of cycling skills clinics, bike fairs, or bike rodeos is to teach children bicycle handling skills such as starting, stopping, weaving to avoid objects, and the meaning of traffic signs and signals and some traffic laws. The intent of these types of activities is to introduce or reinforce bicycle safety concepts learned in a classroom with actual on-bike practice and application. It should be part of a more comprehensive program of traffic safety education and training, parent education, and other efforts.

A cycling skills clinic, bike fair, or rodeo is an event that lets children learn and practice bicycling skills. A clinic typically has several stations for specific skills and also includes bicycle and helmet inspections. Parental involvement can also be a valuable component of bicycle fairs, providing reinforcement of desired safe riding behaviors and modeling appropriate bicycling behaviors. Events should also include discussions and examples of proper bicycle helmet fitting. NHTSA collected many examples of these across the country and created a guide of best practices. NHTSA's Cycling Skills Clinic Guide aids first-time or seasoned organizers in how to set-up a clinic, stations to choose based on their audience, station set-up, and teaching tools for volunteers, see www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811260.pdf

There are a number of bicycle safety courses and models for fairs, rodeos, and clinics. Using older bike rodeo as models, NHTSA developed a cycling skills clinic with the League of American Bicyclists (NHTSA, 2011) to provide a how-to guide including stations based on a basic, intermediate, or advanced skills. The League of American Bicyclists and the American Bicycling Education Association have certified instructors across the country to teach levels of courses that include a combination of classroom and on-bicycle courses to people of all ages and skills. These courses teach more about defensive riding around traffic and about traffic laws.

**Use**: Bicycle safety fairs and rodeos are local events often run by law enforcement, school personnel, or other civic and volunteer organizations. There may be permanent "neighborhood" layouts where the rodeos are conducted, and the events may be scheduled as part of the elementary and middle school curriculum. Although the extent of use is unknown, they are increasingly implemented as part of Safe Routes to School projects and as part of pedestrian and bicycle safety efforts.

**Effectiveness**: While cycling skills clinics or rodeos can result in increases in knowledge and skills, a review of the research literature does not reveal any studies that document crash and injury reduction, at least not in isolation. One program of comprehensive education for preschool children and their parents, that included a skills and safety rodeo, led to a doubling of helmet use (Britt et al., 1998; Rivara & Metrik, 1998). Some studies have found that single-event bike

rodeos did not lead to increases in knowledge or improvements in behaviors or attitudes (Macarthur et al., 1998); thus, bike rodeos need to be part of larger, more comprehensive programs. See Rivara and Metrik (1998) for a more in-depth discussion.

One study examined the effectiveness of the United Kingdom's National Cycle Proficiency Scheme (NCPS), a nationwide bicycle training program for children (Teyhan et al., 2016). Its goal is to promote safe cycling by improving skills, knowledge, attitudes, behavior, and hazard awareness. The training courses for children during the final years of primary school consist of four to eight 1-1.5 hour sessions (usually in the school playground or on road), culminating in a Cycle Proficiency Test. The results of a longitudinal analysis reported that NCPS training was associated with children being more likely to cycle to school and engage in safety-related behaviors, such as owning and wearing helmets. The differences were moderate for 14-year-olds and persisted to age 16, but the effects were much smaller at the older age.

**Costs:** A one-time clinic or rodeo can be operated with volunteers at minimal cost. A permanent rodeo facility could cost thousands of dollars. Associated costs may include bicycle and helmet rentals, but many communities have bicycle coalitions that have purchased these resources and bring them in trailers to scheduled events, or have children or community members bring their own.

**Time to implement:** A one-time clinic or rodeo can be organized in a few months. Implementing a permanent program with a facility may take up to a year or longer.

## 2. Adults

### 2.2 Bicycle Safety Education for Adult Cyclists

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that this countermeasure is effective.*

The goal of bicycle safety education for adult bicycle commuters is to improve knowledge of laws, risks, and cycling best practices, and to lead to safer cycling behaviors, including riding predictably and use of safety equipment such as reflective clothing and helmets. The Cycling Skills Clinic discussed in 1.4 of this chapter can be adopted for use by adult audiences as can a safety class prior to and part of planning for a community bike ride (like a ride to support a particular cause). Opportunities to educate adults new to or returning to bicycling can reinforce traffic safety principals and to generate more interest in additional on-bicycle classes to enhance comfort, safety, and defensive riding maneuvers in and around traffic.

A handful of communities have developed bicycle education programs, with large variation in program elements. Common elements include safety ads (radio, TV, outdoor), dissemination of safety information, bike "ambassadors" and social supports, individual skills training or workshops, and coordination with enforcement officers to reinforce safe behaviors. The League of American Cyclists provides online training videos. Case study summaries are available of programs in Tucson, Arizona, Portland, Oregon, Augusta, Maine, Chicago, Illinois, and many other cities (PBIC, 2010). A University of Texas at Austin program was designed to provide tailored education and encouragement to new or timid bicyclists in the African American community and reported improvements in perceptions of comfort and safety among those participating (McCray et al., 2013).

NHTSA's *Be a Roll Model* campaign is aimed at encouraging all road users, including bicyclists, to model safe travel behaviors for their children and others. It includes educational information, tip sheets, and a pledge program for local agencies to adopt and disseminate (https://one.nhtsa.gov/Driving-Safety/Bicycles/Be-a-Roll-Model).

Adult cyclists are trained that bicyclists fair best when riding and acting as vehicles in the roadway, following the same rules as motorists such as riding in the same direction with traffic and following the traffic signs and signals. For example, adults learning to ride safely are taught where to position themselves in the travel lane based on their intent to go straight or turn, the use of judgement to enhance their comfort and safety while riding in traffic, and when they must stay in bicycle lanes if they are present.

**Use**: Documented use is low. Adult-oriented safety education programs in the United States are not well documented and are rarely formally evaluated. Bicycle groups offer bicycle education to adults (and youth) including both classroom and on-bicycle training to help cyclists of varying levels enhance their knowledge of traffic laws and rules of the road and skills to ride safely and more comfortably in traffic. The oldest and most well-known is the League of American

Bicyclists, see http://bikeleague.org/content/take-class for more information and to find league-trained cycling instructors (called LCIs) by geographic area. LCIs typically provide group training.

**Effectiveness**: This measure is unlikely to be effective in reducing crashes without comprehensive and sustained efforts to improve the cycling environment. A high-quality evaluation conducted in Brazil by Bacchieri et al. (2010) found that "an intervention based on an educational component and the promotion of the active use of safety equipment is not capable of reducing accidents among cycling workers" (in this case, male cycling commuters). The study concluded that "isolated educational programs, attempting to only change individual behavior, are not effective in reducing accidents" and that "the number of accidents will not considerably decrease without actions that also include improved road infrastructure and the effective application of legislation (with comprehensive and systematic law enforcement)."

A recent review of the effects of bicycle training programs on adults found that only a few studies of mixed quality existed, and none of them examined the safety benefits of these programs (Sersli et al., 2019). However, most of the studies reviewed reported that these programs increased the frequency of bicycling to work and overall bicycle use among adults, which may increase bicyclist exposure to risk.

**Costs**: The estimated costs for these programs is in the medium range. Costs may vary depending on the intensity of the educational program. Costs for radio/TV ads, print material, safety equipment, workshop and training events, and personnel time could be incurred.

**Time to implement**: A comprehensive education program could require several months of start-up time to plan and develop program material.

## 3. All Bicyclists

### 3.2 Promote Bicycle Helmet Use With Education

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$$ | Use: Medium | Time: Medium |

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has been examined in several research studies. There is some evidence that certain approaches may lead to increased helmet use and more favorable attitudes towards helmet use, especially among children. However, more research is needed to conclude that the countermeasure is effective when broadly targeted towards all cyclists.*

Bicycle helmet promotions increase use of helmets and thereby decrease severe and fatal brain injuries to bicyclists involved in crashes. Bicycle helmet promotions are frequent but usually aim at child bicyclists only, often through youth health organizations and schools. Promotions can target barriers to helmet use, including absence of a helmet, child and families' lack of understanding of the importance of helmet use, cost of helmets, and negative attitudes or beliefs about helmet use. Programs that provide helmets can include sponsoring organizations and often involve law enforcement and schools to deliver helmets, fit the helmets, and teach proper fitting and use. Promotions can be conducted through single events or extended campaigns to promote helmet distribution and use. These should not be limited to just children, but should include adults requires as well because crashes are not limited to just children to those who are deemed less skilled at bike riding. Expanding helmet promotions to adults requires expansion in focus, and perhaps different sponsors. However, adding adult-oriented riding tips may increase the appeal of the program. Other adult-oriented strategies should also be included, such as peer-based interventions on a college campus (Buckley et al., 2009).

Regardless of the target audience, bicycle helmet promotions must include instruction on how to properly fit the helmet and the importance of wearing helmets on every trip. See Sections 1.1 and 2.1 for more information. The Bicycle Helmet Safety Institute has extensive information on helmets, purchasing a helmet, helmet fit, when to buy a new helmet, helmet recalls, and the difference between helmet brands, see www.helmets.org/. Programs might also need to target differences in tendency to adopt helmet use for different riding purposes (recreational versus commuting), or riders who identify as only one type of rider (Kakefuda et al., 2009). All bicyclists could benefit from using resources that demonstrate how helmets work to reduce injury. Moreover, further efforts are needed to encourage parents and authority figures (LEOs, school officials and staff, and health-care professionals) to reinforce and model desired behaviors including the use of a properly fitted bicycle helmet every ride (Maitland, 2013). Trained and skilled cyclists may also be more likely to adopt helmet use (Kakefuda et al., 2009), so adult bicycle training programs that incorporate the importance of helmet use may help increase wearing by adult riders. A survey of U.S. attitudes toward bicycling and walking indicates that about 34% of respondents who had ridden bicycles in the past year used helmets for all or nearly all their rides (Schroeder & Wilbur, 2013).

**Use**: Most States have conducted bicycle helmet promotions for children in the last few years, although only a few have ongoing or regular programs. Some States have conducted bicycle helmet promotions for general audiences.

**Effectiveness**: Bicycle helmets are proven to reduce injuries and fatalities (see Chapter 9, Sections 1.1 and 2.1). Helmet promotions are successful in getting more helmets into the hands of bicyclists. Rouzier and Alto (1995) described a comprehensive program of presentations, media coverage, messages from doctors to patients, as well as low-cost helmet availability, which significantly increased helmet purchases and use for all ages. A peer-led, social marketing program on a medium-sized college campus also raised observed helmet use, at least for the short term (Ludwig et al., 2005). A school-based injury-reduction program targeting 13- and 14-year-olds incorporating opportunities for instruction, demonstration, rehearsal, feedback, social reinforcement and practice was associated with a 20% increase in observed rate of helmet use among this challenging target age group at 6 months follow-up (Buckley et al., 2009). In France, voluntary helmet use increased from 7.3% in 2000 to 22% in 2010. During that time, national public awareness and informational campaigns were initiated and carried out promoting helmet use among youth, adults with children, and the general population (Richard et al., 2013). In Cambodia a school-based helmet distribution program "Helmet for Kids" helped achieve and sustain high helmet usage rates (Ederer et al., 2014). Prior to program implementation, helmet usage rates were less than 0.5% in 9 intervention and four control schools. Free, high-quality tropical helmets that were fitted to each student and designed for use with both bicycles and motorcycles were distributed to more than 6,700 students in 9 schools. Voluntary helmet use increased to 87.9% in the first 2 weeks after distribution, and the use rate was sustained (86.5%) 3 to 4 months after. Helmet use stayed below 1% in the control schools during this time.

A Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis of 22 studies evaluating non- legislative helmet promotion programs aimed at children under 18 found the odds of observed helmet wearing were significantly greater among those receiving the interventions (Owen et al., 2011). The study found the more effective programs were community-based rather than aimed at people, provided free rather than subsidized helmets, and were set in schools. A Canadian program, *Operation Headway*, involving enforcement of bike helmet legislation, education, rewards for wearing and economic penalties for non-wearing, and provision of helmets to low-income groups was evaluated by Lockhart et al. (2010). The researchers found the program increased wearing rates (based on observations pre- and post-intervention), increased knowledge and commitment to wearing a helmet, saw greater public awareness of the law through media tracking, and improved relationships between police and the public (based on anecdotal evidence). Another helmet-use promotion program, involving distributing helmets and information, was evaluated in France (Constant et al., 2012). This study found that the helmet promotion program was of value in increasing helmet use, but not sufficient to achieve high rates of helmet use among adult cyclists. A related theme of these studies is that population-wide, multifaceted, integrated, and repeated prevention programs are needed, which should include distribution of free helmets and safety information and strategies to increase peer and parental pressure.

Programs that increase proper use of helmets would be expected to reduce injuries in the event of a bicycle crash (see Section 1.3).

**Costs**: The cost for underwriting large numbers of helmets can be quite high, including supporting communications and outreach material. Adequate helmets can be purchased for as little as $8 each, in reach of most adult bicyclists. Purchase of large quantities of helmets by businesses, hospitals, or through partnerships with merchants for example can also lower the cost per helmet and make free or subsidized distribution of helmets to at-risk segments of the population more feasible.

**Time to implement**: A good campaign, including market research, material development, and message placement, will require at least 6 months to plan and implement.

### 3.3 Enforcement Strategies

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Varies |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

The purpose of targeted enforcement is to increase compliance with appropriate traffic laws by both bicyclists and motorists. Enforcement of traffic laws for all operators, including speed, distracted, and impaired enforcement, may help to enhance behavioral compliance and reduce the severity and frequency of collisions as well as promote bicycle safety. (See Chapter 3 for more information on strategies to reduce speeding and aggressive driving.) Targeted enforcement directed at bicyclists is rare but does occur with their failure to obey traffic signs and signals. Some college towns such as Madison, Wisconsin, have enforcement periods at the beginning of each school year.

SHSOs can help ensure correct riding and driving around bicyclists through communications and outreach campaigns, and through training LEOs about laws that impact the safety of bicyclists, and applicable enforcement. Some violations may be especially pertinent to bicyclist safety. For example, a motorist may violate a bicyclist's right-of-way following an overtaking maneuver by immediately turning right across the bicyclist's path when making a right- or left-hand turn, or by passing too close to a bicyclist (see Section 3.4 below). Similarly, bicyclists riding the wrong-way put themselves at greater risk of head-on collisions or angle collisions with motorists pulling out at side streets or driveways who are looking to the left for oncoming traffic. By enforcing and educating bicyclists and drivers about relevant laws, the motoring and bicycling public may become better-informed about the risk of these types of violations and importance of obeying all traffic laws. Law enforcement can also reinforce active lighting and helmet use laws in effect by stopping and educating offending bicyclists as well as writing citations if appropriate. (Also see Chapter 9, Section 1.1, and BIKESAFE Law Enforcement countermeasure for more information: www.pedbikesafe.org/BIKESAFE/countermeasures_detail.cfm?CM_NUM=40.)

LEOs typically receive little to no specialized training in bicycle or pedestrian safety, but such training can yield safety improvements. For instance, the *Watch for Me NC* program in North Carolina provided comprehensive officer training combined with public safety messages about pedestrian and bicycle safety (Sandt et al., 2015). After receiving the training, officer test scores increased from 77% to 90% correct, and they reported improvements in self-reported attitudes, knowledge, and perceived ability to enhance safety through their enforcement efforts. Importantly, driver yielding increased by an average of 15 to 16% after a year or more after the program began. Officers in Utah who received training in bicycle safety enforcement, including classroom and field training through a NHTSA cooperative agreement in 2012, stated they were more likely to watch and enforce high-risk motorists' behavior after having received training.

NHTSA offers free self-paced interactive training for law enforcement to enhance the safety of bicyclists (and pedestrians). Training can be found from several sources including:

- NHTSA's Law Enforcement's Roll Call Video: Enforcing Law for Bicyclists: www.nhtsa.gov/multimedia/bicycles/bicycle_safety_LE.wmv

- NHTSA's Enhancing Bicycle Safety: Law Enforcement's Role (CD-ROM training): https://one.nhtsa.gov/Driving-Safety/Bicycles/Enhancing-Bicycle-Safety:-Law-Enforcement%27s-Role
- Pedestrian and Bicycle Information Center: www.pedbikeinfo.org/resources/pbic_resources.cfm
- Safe Routes to School's *Enforcement: Role for Law Enforcement in SRTS*: http://apps.saferoutesinfo.org/lawenforcement/

Enforcement strategies can take  formats to help satisfy the needs of departments regardless of how they choose to emphasize bicycle safety.

- Training for prosecutors and judges. This helps build the case for enforcement of traffic laws and planned enforcement operations with appropriate follow-up for citations throughout the judicial system.
- Alternative programs. An example includes educational diversion programs for adjudication of citations involving bicyclists. Diversion programs may be easier to implement in settings such as universities and college campuses. For example, UC Berkeley teamed with the East Bay Bicycle Coalition to provide free bicycle safety classes as an option to reduce the fine for a bicycle ticket from the UC police department. For more, visit: www.ebbc.org/safety. Trauma Nurses Talk Tough collaborated with local Portland organizations (including the Portland Department of Transportation) to create the *Share the Road* Safety Class program (Trauma Nurses Talk Tough, 2016). The class teaches right-of-way safety to bicyclists, pedestrians, and motorists who have received citations for incorrect lane use, lack of safety equipment, or failure to yield. Pre- and post-class testing found a 20% increase in knowledge of laws and safety issues, and 97% of students who evaluated the course rated it as worthwhile. In Illinois, certain jurisdictions offer an online "Adult Bicyclist" quiz on key safety techniques and State laws as a bicyclist ticket diversion program (see www.bikesafetyquiz.com/, and http://rideillinois.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/01/PoliceChiefsArticle_Spring2014.pdf for more information). Other examples of programs can be found at the University of Wisconsin (Madison) and through Marin County (California) Bicycle Coalition.
- Targeted enforcement. One example of a publicly available plan outlining policy and enforcement practices for bicyclist and pedestrian safety is provided by Glendale, California. See www.glendaleca.gov/home/showdocument?id=14284.

A Massachusetts law included measures for enforcement of motorist violations affecting cyclist safety and enabled local jurisdictions to cite bicyclists for violating traffic laws under the same procedure for ticketing motorists. This legislation has led to increased enforcement for bicyclist laws in some jurisdictions. There was some initial confusion in implementing the law, but police in Boston are now citing bicyclists for traffic violations as well as looking out for motor vehicle violations that they may have overlooked before. Some jurisdictions see the measures as primarily an aid to outreach and education of cyclists to increase their safety.

**Use**: Unknown. Targeted enforcement of bicycle-related violations is likely a rarely used intervention.

**Effectiveness**: Gilchrist et al. (2000) described an enforcement program in Georgia that impounded bicycles of unhelmeted children and produced long-term increases in helmet wearing. This specific example seems unlikely to be broadly popular. Increasing community awareness and law enforcement through the training courses and approaches noted above could, however, yield benefits that go beyond bicycle safety, to include improved community relations and more positive interactions between law enforcement and members of the community. A Japanese study by Okinaka and Shimazaki (2011) evaluated the effects of vocal and written prompts delivered by security guards on a university campus to reinforce safe behaviors (such as dismounting and walking bicycles on a sidewalk). The intervention involved posting campus security guards at sidewalk locations. The guards wore sashes that read, "Let's not drive on campus" and provided vocal prompts, "Please get off and push [bicycles] to [bike racks] for safety on campus," and then thanked compliant riders for their cooperation. Results reported the intervention was effective at increasing safe behaviors exhibited by bicycle riders in this context. Riders walked their bicycles on the sidewalk 22% of the time at baseline, compared to 88% of the time during the intervention phases.

A Canadian study examined the effects of enforcement after a mandatory all-age bicyclist helmet law was passed in 1997 in Nova Scotia (Huybers et al., 2017). Non-compliance involved a total fine of between $129-136 CDN, which could be avoided by participation in a diversion program consisting of a 2-hour education course. The 16-year longitudinal study found that helmet use increased from around 37% before the law to 75% in the first year of implementation. Helmet use continued to rise to 94%, fourteen years after the law came into effect. Usage levels increased in years with greater enforcement; however, given the nature of this study, it is not possible to conclusively determine that the increases were attributable specifically to the enforcement efforts.

**Costs**: Training currently exists for LEOs. Roll-call videos can be implemented at essentially no cost to the departments. NHTSA's nationally focused CD-ROM trainings (bicycle and pedestrian) can be taken by officers on their work or personal computers. They were designed to enable officers to earn eligibility for in-service training hours. (NHTSA expects to revamp these trainings to include new laws and a web-based format in the next few years). Longer in-person courses take officers away from their regular duties or require overtime commitment and may incur a financial cost, which may make online courses a more cost effective option. Some States or localities have developed their own training to reflect State and local laws, some are roll-call videos, other in-person. In-person courses may offer an added value if they include observations of bicycle-motorist interactions, on-bicycle experience, and/or training of a bicycle safety enforcement operation. SHSOs may be able to provide funding for departments to participate in longer training courses, especially for those States eligible through 405 (h) State Highway. Training for prosecutors and judges would likely need to be developed, as would a supporting communications and outreach program for the public, motorists and bicyclists.

**Time to implement**: For existing law enforcement training, with ongoing presentation schedules, implementation time can be quite short. For the full effort described above, a longer time frame would be needed.

**Other issues:**

Some public interest groups have expressed concerns about selective enforcement of bicycle-related minor violations, such as mandatory bicycle helmet laws, especially against low-income people and people of color (NACTO, 2016). Officers may use issuing bicycle-related citations as an excuse to stop, question, or search people (NACTO, 2016).

### 3.4 Motorist Passing Bicyclist Laws

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Medium | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *Although there is some research examining the effectiveness of this countermeasure, there is insufficient evidence to conclude that the countermeasure yields consistent benefits.*

The purpose of bicyclist passing laws are to require motor vehicle drivers to leave at least three feet of clearance space between the vehicle and the cyclist when overtaking the cyclist, to minimize the likelihood of a sideswipe, and to reduce the chance of a close encounter that could potentially destabilize or divert the course of a cyclist and cause a crash.

**Use**: As of July 2018 there were 32 States and the District of Columbia known to have enacted bicyclist passing laws requiring drivers to leave a space of 3 feet or more when passing cyclists (NCSL, 2018). Pennsylvania requires at least 4 feet for passing, and South Dakota requires at least 3 feet for roads with a speed limit of 35 mph or less and at least 6 feet for roads with a speed limit greater than 35 mph. North Carolina requires at least 2 feet for passing, and permits passing a bicyclist in a no-passing zone if the motorist leaves a clearance of at least 4 feet. Three States—Delaware, Kentucky, and Nevada—require the motorist to change lanes to pass a cyclist on roads with lanes in the same direction. Nine other States have laws requiring motorists to pass at a safe distance and speed, but are usually not more specific.

**Effectiveness**: One analysis of 18,534 bicyclist fatalities from 1990 to 2014 in the United States reported that minimum passing laws may at best prevent approximately one fatal bicyclist crash every 20 months (Nehiba, 2018). Love et al. (2012) evaluated the effectiveness of a passing law enacted in Baltimore, Maryland. The study saw low compliance with the passing law and little to no enforcement of the law by area police. Other factors that influenced passing distance included lane width, bicycle infrastructure, cyclist identity, and street type. The authors concluded that in addition to the passage of a law, interventions such as driver education, signage, enforcement, and bicycle infrastructure changes (such as bike lanes and Complete Streets designs) are needed to influence driving behavior and to increase motorist compliance with the three-foot law. Public education should include some level of description, or say something about equipment to measure or visualize a safe distance, such as imaging the distance of an opened car door.

Bicycle passing laws can be difficult to enforce because it is a challenge to measure the exact distance between bikes and vehicles. Police in Chattanooga, Tennessee, and Austin, Texas, used a device called C3FT, a handlebar mounted ultrasonic device, to measure when a vehicle passes a police bicycle with less than 3 feet of distance (Goodyear, 2015; Davis, 2017). These devices can offer valuable, accurate information to help make passing laws enforceable.

There are some empirical data suggesting that these laws may change driver behavior. A naturalistic observational study of driver passing behavior in Michigan measured vehicle passing distance in five jurisdictions having 3 feet (1 city), 5 feet (3 cities), and no enacted (1 city) passing laws (Van Houten et al., 2018). The results showed that drivers maintained a significantly greater separation distance when they overtook bicyclists in sites with 5-feet laws,

compared to sites with 3-feet or no law. Roadway infrastructure also influenced passing behaviors. Roads with paved shoulders, wider roads, and greater number of lanes were associated with greater separations between drivers and bicyclists. Shared use lanes led to closer passing, as did passing situations with larger vehicles.

A study in Queensland, Australia, examined the factors associated with road-user non-compliance with a 2-year trial of a bicyclist passing rule (Debnath et al., 2018; Haworth et al., 2017). Motor vehicle drivers and bicyclists were observed across 15 sites. Apparent rider characteristics (age, gender, helmet use, clothing type) were not associated with compliance with the law. Roadway infrastructure, such as horizontal curves and narrow lanes, resulted in higher observed non-compliance. A concurrent online survey of motorists reported that 43% of respondents were more aware of the presence of bicyclists after the implementation of the law; however, more than 40% reported being uncertain about judging the required 3 feet passing distance. About 73% of cyclists and 60% motorists reported that motorists were leaving more passing distance after the implementation of the rule than before. Further, two focus group discussions with LEOs were conducted. Officers reported that the passing law was difficult to enforce, and that motorists were observed to sometimes allow for much greater than the required distance, leading to erratic maneuvers and increased risk of collision with oncoming vehicles. Appropriate public education with pictures of appropriate distance from the perspectives of different types of vehicles were suggested as potential solutions for enhancing gap judgments. Cyclist fatality rates were not statistically different during the 24 months before and 16 months after implementation of the law.

**Costs**: Minimal costs could be incurred for informing and educating the public and providing training for enforcement personnel.

**Time to implement**: A bicyclist passing law can be implemented as soon as the law is enacted.

## 4. Drivers and Bicyclists

### 4.1 Driver Training

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Low | Time: Medium |

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

The purpose of addressing bicycle safety as part of driver education is to increase the sensitivity of drivers to the presence and characteristics of bicyclists and how to safely share the road with them. Although driver education and most State driver manuals address sharing the road with bicyclists, many devote little attention or emphasis to the topic. NCHRP released model driver handbook material that may be adapted by States to enhance their driver handbook information on sharing the road with bicyclists (Thomas et al., 2007). This material could also be used in driver education courses. Other existing print and electronic publications from organizations such as AAA could and are being used to increase the emphasis on safe driving around bicyclists. NHTSA has developed a series of videos to reach audiences that are either not literate in their native language or do not speak the English language to educate drivers about sharing the road with cyclists, including a motion graphic called *Driving Safely Around Pedestrians and Bicyclists* (www.youtube.com/watch?v=Herby4kNVOg). Several States distribute *Share the Road* information. For example, the Utah Department of Health developed a 12-minute video to be shown in driver education classes to reinforce how drivers can safely share the road with bicyclists.

One standard approach would be to implement a *Share the Road* module, www.trafficsafety-marketing.gov/get-materials/motorcycle-safety/share-road (see Section 4.2), covering interactions with bicyclists in driver education curriculums. For complete coverage, the same messages would need to be included in State-provided material for new drivers and covered by new questions added to the license knowledge exam. Standards for driver education curriculum and training developed by the American Driver and Traffic Safety Education Association mentions sharing the road with cyclists and pedestrians as a learning objective (Driver Education Working Group, 2009).

For links to more resources and discussion of considerations in educating motorists about bicycle safety, see the Pedestrian and Bicycle Information Center, www.pedbikeinfo.org/topics/-drivertraining.cfm.

**Use**: As noted, all driver licensing handbooks have some coverage of driving safely with bicycles on the road, but the information may not be very complete and there may be little assessment or testing of the material. Information is unavailable on the extent of training material being used. States including New Mexico, Louisiana, and Washington have expanded sections on bicycle safety in their driver's education handbooks and curriculum (for New Mexico's handbook see page 25 of https://driving-tests.org/new-mexico/nm-mvd-drivers-handbook-manual/).

**Effectiveness**: Driver education has not been shown to reduce overall crash rates. The objective for adding more bicycle information would be to increase knowledge and desire to share the road safely with bicyclists, of the most common crash types and hazards and to improve new drivers' anticipation of and interactions with bicyclists – as well as improve their behavior as bicyclists. Lifelong traffic safety education that includes bicycle training might also provide motorists with a greater understanding of bicyclist characteristics and needs and how to safely share the road. Computer-based training programs, such as the Risk Awareness and Perception Training (RAPT) and SAFE-T, can be used to train bicyclist anticipation and hazard mitigation skills to young drivers (Pollatsek et al., 2006; Pradhan et al., 2009; Yamani et al., 2016; Yamani et al., 2014). These programs present potential conflict situations to drivers in safe driving simulator settings (e.g., bicyclist passing situation, passing a bicycle with no lights in low light) and help in training and evaluating safe driving skills. For more details on these programs, see Chapter 6 and Appendix 6, Section 2.1.

**Costs**: Free material like that above is available from NCHRP as well as the Transportation Research Board, American Association of Motor Vehicle Administrators, and the League of American Bicyclists. The cost would be for the adaptation or development of the new segments of the standard curriculum and for getting it into the material used by driver education instructors and schools. Changes to State driver manuals and other publications could be done in the normal material update budget.

**Time to implement:** Material would need to be adapted and integrated into the standard driver education curriculum, and adjustments made elsewhere in the curriculum to reflect likely additional time required for the new bicycle material.

The same timeframe would be expected for making changes to official State driving manuals, license exams, and related material and procedures.

### 4.2 *Share the Road* Awareness Programs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

The purpose of *Share the Road* programs is to increase drivers' awareness of bicyclists, as well as improve both bicyclist and driver compliance with relevant traffic laws. *The National Strategies for Advancing Bicycle Safety* was developed from a July 2000 conference of bicycle advocates, injury prevention specialists, and government representatives (NHTSA, CDC, & FHWA, 2001). The result was five goals, each with a series of strategies and action steps. The first goal, *Motorists Will Share the Road*, called for the creation of a "coordinated *Share the Road* public education campaign that can be adapted at the State and local levels."

For an example of communication and outreach material, see www.pedbikeinfo.org/topics/drivertraining.cfm. AAA created a series of *Share the Road* promotional videos in partnership with the *Share the Road* Cycling Coalition and the Canadian Automobile Association. These videos can be accessed at htpps://exchange.aaa.com/safety/-bicycle-safety.

**Use**: Unknown.

**Effectiveness**: *Share the Road* awareness educational information can be effective in increasing knowledge and appropriate attitudes, but as with other awareness programs, there is limited evidence of behavior change, and no evidence of reductions in crashes.

Some limited evidence suggests that *Share the Road* signs can have positive effects on drivers' lane position and speed when passing bicyclists. Kay et al. (2014) conducted field studies examining drivers' passing behavior on a rural two-lane highway before and after the installation of "*Share the Road* " signs. Although the presence of the sign did not significantly reduce crowding, fewer drivers traveled in the rightmost lane position after the signs were installed. Drivers also reduced the vehicle speed by an average of 2.5 mph when passing bicyclists in the presence of the sign. In a limited study, shared-use arrow ("sharrow") pavement markings were shown to influence bicyclist lane position toward the sharrow marking in the shared-use lane (Pole et al., 2015). Similarly, adding dashed lines on either side of the sharrow (called dooring-zone markings) led to safer bicyclist lateral positioning that was farther from parked vehicles, while also reducing motor vehicle passing (Kassim et al., 2018). On the other hand, a 3-year before-and-after analysis conducted in Chicago using dooring crash data (a crash where a cyclist collides with an open car door) found that dooring crashes increased more in blocks where sharrows were added than in blocks where bike lanes were added or where no improvements were made (Turnbull, 2017). Although these studies do not provide conclusive evidence of safety improvements, they suggest that these infrastructure interventions may have the potential for positive effects on both driver and cyclist behavior, but more research is needed.

Some cities and States are specifically changing their *Share the Road* signs to indicate that bicyclists may occupy the full lanes. This is because *Share the Road* is perceived differently by different users and not always in its intended way to encourage motorists to look out for and drive safely around bicyclists.

**Costs**: Medium, including the costs to develop new publications or tailor current ones. The material can be delivered as training for specific target audiences, such as new drivers or all high school students, or drivers as they renew their licenses, or general communications and outreach intended for mass media delivery.

**Time to implement**: A good campaign, including market research, message development and testing, and implementation, will require at least 6 months to plan and implement.

**Bicycle Safety References**

American Alliance for Health, Physical Education, Recreation and Dance. (2018). *Bikeology curriculum and parent guide.* www.shapeamerica.org/publications/resources/teachingtools/qualitype/bicycle_curriculum.aspx

Bacchieri, G., Barros, A. J. D., dos Santos, J. V., Goncalves, H., & Gigante, D. P. (2010). A community intervention to prevent traffic accidents among bicycle commuters. *Revista De Saude Publica*, *44*, 867-875.

Britt, J., Silver, I., & Rivara, F. P. (1998). Bicycle helmet promotion among low income preschool children. *Injury Prevention, 4*, 280-283.

Buckley, L., Sheehan, M., & Chapman, R. (2009). Bicycle helmet wearing among adolescents: Effectiveness of school-based injury prevention countermeasure. *Transportation Research Record, 2140*, 173-181.

Constant, A., Messiah, A., Felonneau, M., & Lagarde, E. (2012). Investigating helmet promotion for cyclists: Results from a randomised study with observation of behaviour, using a semi- automatic video system. *Plos One*, *7*, e31651.

Davis, C. (2017, July 26). *After a year of bicycle safety enforcement, APD wants to see more education*. KXAN News. www.kxan.com/news/after-a-year-of-bicycle-safety-enforcement-apd-wants-to-see-more-education/

Debnath, A. K., Haworth, N., Schramm, A., Heesch, K. C., & Somoray, K. (2018). Factors influencing noncompliance with bicycle passing distance laws. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *115*, 137-142.

Driver Education Working Group. (2009). *Novice teen driver education and training administrative standards*. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/DOT/NHTSA/Traffic%20Injury%20Control/Teen%20Driver/files/TeenDriverETAS-1.pdf

Ducheyne, F., De Bourdeaudhuij, I., Lenoir, M., & Cardon, G. (2013). Does a cycle training course improve cycling skills in children? *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 59,* 38-45.

Ducheyne, F., De Bourdeaudhuij, I., Lenoir, M., & Cardon, G. (2014). Effects of a cycle training course on children's cycling skills and levels of cycling to school. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 67,* 49-60.

Ederer, D. J., Van Bui, T., Parker, E. M., Roehler, D. R., Sidik, M., Florian, M. J., Kim, P., Sim, S., & Ballesteros, M. F. (2016). Helmets for Kids: Evaluation of a school-based helmet intervention in Cambodia. *Injury Prevention*, *22*(1), 52-58.

Ellis, J. (2014, January). *Bicycle safety education for children from a developmental and learning perspective: A literature review for NHTSA through the National Safety Council* (Report No. DOT HS 811 880). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/2008

Gilchrist, J., Schieber, R. A., Leadbetter, S., & Davidson, S. C. (2000). Police enforcement as part of a comprehensive bicycle helmet program. *Pediatrics, 106*, 6-9.

Goodyear, S. (2015). A nifty device to stop cars from driving too close to bikes. www.citylab.com/life/2015/06/a-nifty-device-to-stop-cars-from-driving-too-close-to-bikes/397055/

Hatfield, J., Dozza, M., Patton, D.A., Maharaj, P., Boufous, S., & Eveston, T. (2017). On the use of naturalistic methods to examine safety-relevant behaviours amongst children and evaluate a cycling education program. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 108*, 2017, 91-99.

Haworth, N., Schramm, A., Heesch, K. C., Watson, A., Debnath, A. K., & Kaye, S. A. (2017, January 8-12). *Evaluation of the minimum passing distance road rule trial in Queensland, Australia*. Transportation Research Board 96th Annual Meeting, Washington DC.

Hooshmand, J., Hotz, G., Neilson, V., & Chandler, L. (2014). BikeSafe: Evaluating a bicycle safety program for middle school aged children. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 66,* 182-186.

Huybers, S., Fenerty, L., Kureshi, N., Thibault-Halman, G., LeBlanc, J.C., Clarke, D.B., Walling, S. (2017). Long-term effects of education and legislation enforcement on all-age bicycle helmet use: A longitudinal study. *Journal of Community Health, 42(1)*, 83-89.

Kakefuda, I., Stallone, L., & Gibbs, J. (2009). Discrepancy in bicycle helmet use among college students between two bicycle use purposes: Commuting and recreation. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 41,* 513-521.

Kassim, A., Ismail, K., & McGuire, S. (2018). Operational evaluation of central sharrows and dooring zone treatment on road user behavior in Ottawa, Canada. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board, 2672*(36), 136-144.

Kay, J. J., Savolainen, P. T., Gates, T. J., & Datta, T. K. (2014). Driver behavior during bicycle passing maneuvers in response to a *Share the Road* sign treatment. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 70,* 92-99.

Lachapelle, U., Noland, R. B., & Von Hagen, L. A. (2013). Teaching children about bicycle safety: An evaluation of the New Jersey bike school program. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 52,* 237-249.

Lockhart, S., Fenerty, L., & Walling, S. (2010). Operation headway: A multifaceted bike helmet promotion program. *Injury Prevention, 16*, A161.

Love, D. C., Breaud, A., Burns, S., Margulies, J., Romano, M., & Lawrence, R. (2012). Is the three-foot bicycle passing law working in Baltimore, Maryland? *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *48*, 451-456.

Ludwig, T. D., Buchholz, C., & Clarke, S. W. (2005). Using social marketing to increase the use of helmets among bicyclists. *Journal of American College Health*, 54, 51-58.

Macarthur, C., Parkin, P. C., Sidky, M. & Wallace, W. (1998). Evaluation of a bicycle skills training program for young children: a randomized controlled trial. *Injury Prevention, 4*, 116-121.

Maitland, M. (2013). Bicycle helmets: Don't say something by not saying something. *Clinical Journal of Sports Medicine, 23*, 415-416.

Mandic, S., Flaherty, C., Ergler, C., Kek, C. C., Pocock, T., Lawrie, D., Chillón, P., & Bengoechea, E. G. (2018). Effects of cycle skills training on cycling-related knowledge, confidence and behaviour in adolescent girls. *Journal of Transport & Health*, *9*, 253-263.

McCray, T., Durden, T., & Schaubert, E. (2013). *Cycling in the African American community: Safety training guidelines and findings* (Report No. SWUTC/13/600451-00070-1). Texas A&M Transportation Institute. http://d2dtl5nnlpfr0r.cloudfront.net/swutc.tamu.edu/publications/technicalreports/600451-00070-1.pdf

National Association of City Transportation Officials. (2016). *Equitable bike share means building better places for people to ride.* www.nacto.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/07/NACTO_Equitable_Bikeshare_Means_Bike_Lanes.pdf

National Conference of State Legislatures. (2018). *Safely passing bicyclists chart.* Retrieved July 27, 2018. www.ncsl.org/research/transportation/safely-passing-bicyclists.aspx

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Federal Highway Administration. (2001, June). *National strategies for advancing bicycle safety* (Report No. DOT HS 809 347). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. http://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/pedbimot/bike/bicycle_safety/

NHTSA. (2011, January). Bicycling skills clinic guide (Report No. DOT HS 811 260). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/811260.pdf

Nehiba, C. (2018). Give me 3': Do minimum distance passing laws reduce bicyclist fatalities? *Economics of Transportation*, *14*, 9-20.

Okinaka, T., & Shimazaki, T. (2011). The effects of prompting and reinforcement on safe behavior of bicycle and motorcycle riders. *Journal of Applied Behavior Analysis*, *44*, 671-674.

Owen, R., Kendrick, D., Mulvaney, C., Coleman, T., & Royal, S. (2011). *Non-legislative interventions for the promotion of cycle helmet wearing by children*. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews (Online), (11) (11), CD003985.

Pedestrian and Bicycle Information Center. (2010). *Pedestrian and Bicycle Information Center Case Study Compendium*. www.pedbikeinfo.org/cms/downloads/pbic_case_study_compendium.pdf

Pol, A., Prasad, S., Costello, S., Patel, A., & Hancock, K. (2015). *Evaluation of shared-use markings for cyclists in Auckland.* Paper presented at the Institution of Professional Engineers New Zealand Transportation Conference, 2015, Christchurch, New Zealand. Transportation Research Board. http://conf.hardingconsultants.co.nz/workspace/uploads/paper-prasad-sunil-evalua-54f3939ef41da.pdf

Pollatsek, A., Narayanaan, V., Pradhan, A., & Fisher, D. L. (2006). Using eye movements to evaluate a PC-based risk awareness and perception training program on a driving simulator. *Human Factors*, *48*(3), 447-464.

Pradhan, A. K., Pollatsek, A., Knodler, M., & Fisher, D. L. (2009). Can younger drivers be trained to scan for information that will reduce their risk in roadway traffic scenarios that are hard to identify as hazardous? *Ergonomics*, *52*(6), 657-673.

Richard, J-B., Thélot, B., & Beck, F. (2013). Evolution of bicycle helmet use and its determinants in France: 2000-2010. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 60,* 113-120.

Richmond, S. A., Zhang, Y. J., Stover, A., Howard, A., & Macarthur, C. (2014). Prevention of bicycle-related injuries in children and youth: A systematic review of bicycle skills training interventions. *Injury Prevention, 20(3),* 191-195.

Rivara, F. P., & Metrik, J. (1998). *Training Programs for Bicycle Safety*. Washington Traffic Safety Commission.

Rouzier, P., & Alto, W. A. (1995). Evolution of a successful community bicycle helmet campaign. *Journal of the American Board of Family Practitioners, 8*, 283-287.

Royal, S., Kendrick, D., & Coleman, T. (2007). Promoting bicycle helmet wearing by children using non-legislative interventions: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *Injury Prevention*, *13*, 162-167.

Sandt, L., LaJeunesse, S., Cohn, J., Pullen-Seufert, N., & Gallagher, J. (2015). Watch for Me NC*: Bicycle and pedestrian safety, education, and enforcement campaign: 2014 program summary* (No. NCDOT Contract# 2014-45). www.watchformenc.org/wp-content/themes/WatchForMeNC_Custom/documents/WFM_FinalReport_2014.pdf

Schroeder, P. & Wilbur, M. (2013). 2012 National survey of bicyclist and pedestrian attitudes and behavior, volume 2: Findings report (Report No. DOT HS 811 841 B). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/1960

Sersli, S., DeVries, D., Gislason, M., Scott, N. & Winters, M. (2019). Changes in bicycling frequency in children and adults after bicycle skills training: A scoping review. *Transportation Research Part A: Policy Practice*, *123,* 170-187.

Teyhan, A., Cornish, R., Boyd A., Joshi, M.S., & Macleod, J. (2016). The impact of cycle proficiency training on cycle-related behaviours and accidents in adolescence: Findings from ALSPAC, a UK longitudinal cohort. *BMC Public Health, 16*, 469.

Thomas, L. J., Masten, S. V., & Stutts, J. C. (2005). *Impact of School-based, Hands-on Bicycle Safety Education Approaches for School-Aged Children*. University of North Carolina Highway Safety Research Center.

Thomas, L, Stutts, J., & Gillenwater, Z. (2007). *NCHRP project 20-07, task 212: Supplemental material for model driver's license handbook: Final products description and summary*. *Research for AASHTO Standing Committee on Highways.* http://webcache.googleusercontent.com/search?q=cache:K3olrXN7ApkJ:www.trb.org/NotesDocs/20-07(212)_FR.doc+&cd=2&hl=en&ct=clnk&gl=us

Trauma Nurses Talk Tough. (2016, April 3-5). *Share the Road safety class – court referred.* In "Trauma Nurses Talk Tough" Program Classes & Effectiveness, p. 5, flyer presented at Lifesavers National Conference on Highway Safety Priorities 2016, Long Beach, CA. www.lifesaversconference.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/03/TraumaNurses.pdf

Turnbull, K. F. (2017, December 1-2). *Pedestrian and bicycle safety: Summary of the 10th University Transportation Centers Spotlight Conference.* TRB Conference Proceedings on the Web. http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/conf/cpw21.pdf

Twisk, D., Vlakveld, W., Mesken, J., Shope, J. T., & Kok, G. (2013). Inexperience and risky decisions of young adolescents, as pedestrians and cyclists, in interactions with lorries, and the effects of competency versus awareness education. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 55,* 219-225.

Van Houten, R., Oh, J. S., Kwigizile, V., Feizi, A., & Mastali, M. (2018, December 31). *Effects of safe bicycle passing laws on drivers' behavior and bicyclists' safety* (Paper No. TRCLC 17-05). Transportation Research Center for Livable Communities. https://wmich.edu/sites/default/files/attachments/u883/2019/TRCLC_RR_17-05.pdf

van Lierop, D., Bebronne, M., & El-Geneidy, A. (2016). Bicycle education for children: Evaluation of a program in Montreal, Quebec, Canada. *Transportation Research Record*, *2587*(1), 23-33.

Yamani, Y., Samuel, S., Knodler, M. A., & Fisher, D. L. (2016). Evaluation of the effectiveness of a multi-skill program for training younger drivers on higher cognitive skills. *Applied Ergonomics*, *52*, 135-141.

Yamani, Y., Samuel, S., & Fisher, D. (2014). Simulator evaluation of an integrated road safety training program. In *Proceedings of the Human Factors and Ergonomics Society Annual Meeting* (Vol. 58, No. 1, pp. 1904-1908). SAGE Publications.

Zeuwts, L.H., Vansteenkiste, P., Deconinck, F.J., Cardon, G., Lenoir, M. (2017). Hazard perception training in young bicyclists improves early detection of risk: A cluster-randomized controlled trial. *Accident Analysis & Prevention, 108*, 112-121.

# A10. Drowsy Driving

This section provides expanded discussion of the ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures. Countermeasures that receive ☆ or ☆☆ have NOT been determined to be effective, either because there has been limited or no high-quality evidence (☆) or because effectiveness is still undetermined based on the available evidence (☆☆).

States should use caution in selecting ☆ or ☆☆ countermeasures, since conclusive evidence is not available to demonstrate the effectiveness of these countermeasures. If they decide to use a new or emerging countermeasure that has not yet been studied sufficiently to demonstrate that the countermeasure is effective, they are encouraged to have the countermeasure evaluated in connection with its use.

The ☆ and ☆☆ countermeasures covered in this section of the appendix are listed below.

### 1. Laws and Enforcement

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.2 General Drowsiness and Distraction Laws | ☆ | Varies | High†† | Short |

†† Included under reckless driving; use of explicit drowsiness laws is low

### 2. Communications and Outreach

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 Communications and Outreach on Drowsy Driving | ☆ | $$ | Unknown | Medium |

### 3. Other Countermeasures

| Countermeasure | Effectiveness | Cost | Use | Time |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.1 Employer Programs | ☆☆ | $ | Unknown | Short |
| 3.2 Education Regarding Medical Conditions and Medications | ☆ | Variable | Unknown | Medium |

**Effectiveness:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ☆☆ | Effectiveness still undetermined; different methods of implementing this countermeasure produce different results |
| ☆ | Limited or no high-quality evaluation evidence |

Effectiveness is measured by reductions in crashes or injuries unless noted otherwise.

See individual countermeasure descriptions for information on effectiveness size and how effectiveness is measured.

**Cost to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| $$$ | Requires extensive new facilities, staff, equipment, or publicity, or makes heavy demands on current resources |
| $$ | Requires some additional staff time, equipment, facilities, and/or publicity |
| $ | Can be implemented with current staff, perhaps with training; limited costs for equipment or facilities |

These estimates do not include the costs of enacting legislation or establishing policies.

**Use:**

| | |
|---|---|
| High | More than two-thirds of the States, or a substantial majority of communities |
| Medium | One-third to two-thirds of States or communities |
| Low | Less than one-third of the States or communities |
| Unknown | Data not available |

**Time to implement:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Long | More than 1 year |
| Medium | More than 3 months but less than 1 year |
| Short | 3 months or less |

These estimates do not include the time required to enact legislation or establish policies.

## 1. Laws and Enforcement

### 1.2 General Driver Drowsiness Laws

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Varies | Use: High† | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

† Included under reckless driving; use of explicit drowsiness laws is low.

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *Laws that specifically target drowsy drivers are not widely used, and this countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Existing State laws allow people to be cited and prosecuted if they cause crashes due to drowsy driving; however, the extent to which States pursue these cases is currently unknown. Two States have laws that specifically target the issue of drowsy drivers. In 2003 New Jersey enacted "Maggie's Law," under which a driver can be prosecuted for vehicular homicide if the driver has not slept in 24 hours and causes a crash in which someone is killed. Arkansas has a similar law – a driver can be charged with negligent homicide if the driver is involved in a fatal crash and has not slept in 24 hours. Three drivers were convicted between the time when the law was passed in 2013 and 2016 (GHSA, 2016).

No studies have evaluated whether general reckless driving laws or specific drowsy driving laws have any effect on curbing drowsy driving. Based on extensive experience in other traffic safety areas, it is likely that these laws will have little or no effect unless they are vigorously publicized and enforced. See Chapter 1, Sections 2.1 on alcohol-impaired driving, Chapter 2, Sections 2.1, 3.1, and 3.2 on seat belt use laws, and Chapter 3, Sections 2.2 and 4.1 on aggressive driving and speeding laws. Enforcement of drowsy driving laws is likely to be especially difficult because drowsiness is difficult to observe, measure, and document (see overview of issues in GHSA, 2016). One survey of 293 Australian drivers found that young drivers with higher levels of extraversion or with a more tolerant view of driving while drowsy were less likely to view drowsy driving charges as legitimate, even in cases of crashes (Watling, 2018). Nevertheless, these laws may increase the impact of communications and outreach efforts to reduce drowsy driving discussed in Chapter 4, Sections 2.1 (see also Stutts et al., 2005, Strategy C2).

**Use:** As of July 2018, New Jersey and Arkansas were the only States with laws explicitly addressing drowsy driving (NCSL, 2018). Two States (Alabama and California) designate a day for drowsy driving awareness, two States designate a week of awareness activities (Florida and Texas), and Utah has commissioned studies to determine which highways are high-risk for observed instances of driver drowsiness. See NCSL (2018) for more information on these laws and other drowsy driving related bills. The NSF's Drowsy Driving Advocacy Kit (www.sleepfoundation.org/national-sleep-foundation-drowsy-driving-advocacy-kit) is intended to help local and State drowsy driving advocates develop legislative inputs (GHSA, 2016).

**Effectiveness:** The effect of any laws on reducing drowsy driving is unknown.

**Costs:** Costs are required for publicity and enforcement. Enforcement costs likely will be minimal, as most enforcement likely will be included under regular traffic patrols or combined

with enforcement directed primarily at other offenses such as alcohol-impaired or aggressive driving. However, special patrols to enforce drowsy driving laws will entail greater costs including training (GHSA, 2016) and especially if overtime is required for LEOs.

**Time to implement:** The implementation time is primarily determined by the time required to pass new drowsy driving laws. Implementation can begin as soon as the laws are publicized, and law enforcement patrol officers are trained.

## 2. Communications and Outreach

### 2.1 Communications and Outreach on Drowsy Driving

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: $$ | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Drowsy driving typically occurs because drivers don't get enough sleep (Royal, 2003), although certain medical conditions and medications can also cause drowsiness while driving (Colvin & Collop, 2016; Watson et al., 2015). In a NHTSA telephone survey, 66% of the drivers who reported they had nodded off while driving had 6 or fewer hours of sleep the previous night (Royal, 2003). The AAA Foundation conducted a survey in 2015 and found that almost one third of respondents (31.5%) reported driving when they were so tired that they had a hard time keeping their eyes open in the past 30 days (AAAFTS, 2016). Stutts, Wilkins, and Vaughn (1999) interviewed 467 crash-involved drowsy drivers (reported as "fatigued" or "asleep" by the investigating officer) and 529 other crash-involved drivers who were not drowsy. Half of the drowsy drivers had 6 or fewer hours of sleep the previous night compared to fewer than 10% of the other drivers. Similarly, about 40% of 2,613 respondents reported sleeping 6 hours or fewer hours daily in a 2017 survey (AAAFTS, 2018); drivers who sleep fewer than 7 hours are estimated to be at elevated levels of crash risk compared to sleeping at least 7 hours (Tefft, 2016).

States and national organizations such as the National Sleep Foundation have conducted drowsy driving communications and outreach campaigns directed to the general public (Stutts et al., 2005, Strategy C1; NSF, 2004; NSF, n.d.; GHSA, 2016). Campaign goals usually include:

- raising awareness of the dangers of drowsy driving;
- motivating drivers to take action to reduce drowsy driving; and
- providing information on what drivers can do, either before they start out on a trip or if they become drowsy while driving.

The GHSA summarizes public awareness efforts by NHTSA, the AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety, and the American Academy of Sleep Medicine (AASM) in its 2016 report to States (GHSA, 2016). The focus is on the development of evidence-based messages on the risk of driver drowsiness, implementation or enhancement of employer-provided policies and education, and the development of web-accessible awareness material for the general population. Examples include the NSC's Defensive Driving Course (www.nsc.org/safety-training/defensive-driving), the North American Fatigue Management Program's free training program for commercial driver and employers (www.nafmp.com/index.php?lang=en), and the AASM online guide for children and young adults on the benefits of good sleep habits (https://aasm.org/). The report also notes the potential for SHSOs to partner with community or victim advocates and organizations (e.g., SADD) to develop and publicize information targeted at young or novice drivers and parents (GHSA, 2016).

GHSA's *Wake Up Call!* identifies three groups that are over-involved in drowsy driving crashes: drivers in their teens and 20s; shift and night workers (police and emergency medical services, health care workers, commercial motor vehicle operators); and people suffering from sleep apnea or narcolepsy (GHSA, 2016). The joint NHTSA-NCSDR Report to Congress on drowsy driving recommended that communications and outreach on drowsy driving be directed to shift workers, people with sleep disorders, and especially to young drivers (NHTSA, 1999). This information can be delivered in several ways. The new model curriculum developed by NHTSA and the American Driver and Traffic Safety Education Association includes information on drowsy driving that can be used in driver education programs (www.adtsea.org/ADTSEA%20-Curriculum%20Free%20Download.html). NHTSA's 2015 Drowsy Driver Symposium identified a short-term goal of improving messaging and developing new material (especially for high-risk groups) that covers aspects of drowsy driving, including: intensity and risk, prevention measures, danger signs, and responses to danger signs (www.nhtsa.gov/nhtsa/symposiums/-november2015/index.html). See Chapter 10 and Appendix 10, Sections 3.1 and 3.2, for additional discussion of shift workers and medical conditions, respectively.

The ultimate goal of drowsy driving communications and outreach is to change driver behavior; however, there are substantial obstacles. As discussed in other chapters, communications and outreach by themselves rarely change driving behavior (Chapter 1, Section 5.2; Chapter 2, Sections 3.1 and 3.2; Chapter 3, Section 4.1; see also Stutts et al., 2005, Strategy C1). To have any chance of success, stand-alone campaigns must be carefully pre-tested, communicate health information not previously known, be long-term, and have substantial funding (Williams, 2007).

An additional barrier is that, for many drivers, drowsy driving is a byproduct of busy lifestyles that do not include enough sleep. The only truly effective method to prevent drowsy driving crashes in these cases is to get enough sleep (Nguen et al., 1998; NHTSA, 2001). Traffic safety messages urging enough sleep may be overwhelmed by the other demands on a driver's time that are responsible for insufficient sleep. Focus group discussions with young men and shift workers, two groups at high risk of drowsy driving, supported this conclusion (Nelson et al., 2001). Most shift workers and many young men understood well the risks caused by lack of sleep. Many had crashed or almost crashed after falling asleep at the wheel or had friends who had crashed. But neither their knowledge nor their crash experience changed their sleep habits. They sacrificed sleep for the demands of their work, families, and social lives. Campaigns directed to young drivers also must overcome the higher risk-taking behavior and overall immaturity of young drivers, as discussed in Chapter 6. The Governors Highway Safety Association's report on drowsy driving for States identifies online resources developed by organizations such as AAA, National Sleep Foundation, and the American Academy of Sleep Medicine for providing information and training on drowsy driving (GHSA, 2016).

In Greece a national communication campaign was implemented in 2008 and 2009 to curb drowsy driving. Entitled "Sleep, but not at the wheel," the campaign was designed to raise awareness of the risks of driving while tired, and to increase knowledge of effective countermeasures to reduce fatigue (e.g., taking short breaks while driving). The campaign included thousands of TV and radio messages, as well as posters and leaflets distributed across the country (Adamos et al., 2013).

**Use:** States including Iowa, Texas, New York, and Utah have conducted drowsy driving campaigns for the general public (GHSA, 2016). In addition, Alabama, California, Florida, and Texas have instituted a drowsy driving awareness day/week (NCSL, 2018).

**Effectiveness:** The Greek communication campaign increased awareness for the causes and effects of fatigue on drivers, and there was a small self-reported increase in the percentage of drivers who reported stopping and resting when they got tired (Adamos et al., 2013). The effect of the program on drowsy driver crashes is unknown. Beyond this, there are no other studies of any campaign's effects on driver knowledge, attitudes, or behavior.

**Costs:** A high-quality campaign will be expensive to develop, test, and implement.

**Time to implement:** A high-quality campaign will require at least 6 months to plan, produce, and distribute.

## 3. Other Countermeasures

### 3.1 Employer Programs

| Effectiveness: ☆☆ | Cost: $ | Use: Unknown | Time: Short |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Drowsy driving is closely related to a person's employment. In 2008 the National Sleep Foundation conducted a survey of 1,000 U.S. residents who were employed full time. Those who work 50 or more hours per week were three times as likely to report driving drowsy on a weekly basis compared to those who work 30 to 40 hours per week (Swanson et al., 2012).

Shift workers are one employment group at high risk for drowsy-driving crashes. Shift workers include people who work long or irregular hours or who work at night, including many LEOs (Stutts et al., 2005, Strategy D6). Another at-risk group for drowsy driving crashes is medical interns, who frequently work extended shifts of 24 hours or more. Barger et al. (2005) collected monthly reports from 2,737 interns. Interns were 2.3 times more likely to report a crash and 5.9 times more likely to report a near miss after an extended shift than a shorter shift. Each extended shift in a month increased the monthly risk of a crash during the commute from work by 16%. In one driving simulator study, anesthesiology residents were found to have significant increases in reaction times, attention lapses, impairments in speed and lane position maintenance, and increased risk of collisions after six consecutive night shifts (Huffmyer et al., 2016).

Other shift workers such are commercial drivers and drivers in emergency medical services (EMS) are also vulnerable to drowsiness-related driving impairments. One study of 96 truck drivers found that safety critical driving events were associated with a sleep pattern of shorter sleep duration, less sleep between 1 a.m. to 5 a.m., and sleep in the early stages of the non-work period preceding the work-related driving (Chen et al., 2016).

The effect of scheduled naps on alleviating fatigue in EMS personnel was studied in a review and meta-analysis of 13 articles (Martin-Gill, Barger, et al., 2018). Though direct measures of driving were not included, general measures of acute fatigue and performance on the psychomotor vigilance test were studied. Nap durations in 12 articles varied from 15 minutes to 2 hours; one study did not include duration. Among fatigue related outcomes, naps had a moderate significant effect on both end-of-shift sleepiness and difference between start- and end-of-shift sleepiness. Effects on reaction times were not statistically significant (Martin-Gill, Barger, et al., 2018). This study of napping as a countermeasure was part of a larger *Fatigue in EMS Project* by NHTSA that was aimed at providing evidence-based guidelines to manage fatigue in EMS personnel. Other recommendations by a NHTSA expert panel in this project include the use of sleepiness survey instruments to measure and monitor fatigue, access to caffeine as a countermeasure (although they cautioned against excessive caffeine consumption), and education and training of EMS personnel to prevent and mitigate fatigue-related risks (Patterson, Higgins, et al., 2018; Martin-Gill, Higgins, et al., 2018). The authors performed a systematic review of existing survey

instruments for measuring fatigue and concluded that currently there exists limited evidence of instrument reliability and validity (Patterson, Weaver, et al., 2018).

There are many ways States can work with employers to address drowsy driving. In general, work culture, adherence to hours of service rules, and employer-provided interventions and education can help address drowsy driving. The National Sleep Foundation provides material for publicizing the Drowsy Driving Prevention Week and information on managing shift work schedules (www.sleepfoundation.org/shift-work/content/tips-help-manage-your-shift-work-schedule). NHTSA and the National Center on Sleep Disorders Research have produced a comprehensive workplace education program for shift workers. It includes information on sleep habits in general and drowsy driving in particular. Program material that includes a video, posters, brochures for workers and their families, tip cards, a PowerPoint training session, and an administrator's guide are available at https://icsw.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/drowsy_-driving1/human/drows_driving/. Employer programs can also include medical condition testing/education. See Section 3.2 for more information about medical conditions, medications, and drowsy driving.

**Use:** How many employers use the NHTSA/NCSDR program is not known.

**Effectiveness:** The NHTSA/NCSDR program was tested by more than 20 U.S. companies and was well received by workers and management. It has not been evaluated further (Stutts et al., 2005, Strategy D3). No other employer drowsy driving program has been evaluated.

**Costs:** Since a comprehensive program is available at no cost, program costs will consist only of material production and employer time for training.

**Time to implement:** An employer program can be implemented within 3 months.

### 3.2 Education Regarding Medical Conditions and Medications

| Effectiveness: ☆ | Cost: Variable | Use: Unknown | Time: Medium |
|---|---|---|---|

***Overall Effectiveness Concerns:*** *This countermeasure has not been systematically examined. There are insufficient evaluation data available to conclude that the countermeasure is effective.*

Chronic medical conditions and sleep disorders compromise sleep and elevate feelings of fatigue (Smolensky et al., 2011). Three disorders, in particular, can cause drivers to fall asleep at the wheel:

- Insomnia is the subjective experience of having difficulty falling asleep or staying asleep. It affects an estimated 11% of the U.S. population (NSF, 2008). People suffering from insomnia often report daytime sleepiness that interferes with their daily activities.
- Sleep apnea is a breathing disorder characterized by brief interruptions of breathing during sleep, perhaps as many as 20 to 60 per hour (NSF, 2009a). By fragmenting nighttime sleep, sleep apnea produces daytime sleepiness. NSF estimates that about 4% of men and 2% of women are affected by sleep apnea. It can be treated by physical or mechanical therapy or by surgery.
- Narcolepsy is a disorder of the central nervous system's sleep-wake mechanism that can cause narcoleptics to fall asleep suddenly at any time (NSF, 2009b). It is quite rare, affecting about one person in 2,000. It can be treated with medications.

Several studies suggest that people suffering from insomnia are 2 to 3 times more likely to be involved in motor vehicle crashes compared to those without insomnia (Smolensky et al., 2011). Similarly, research also shows that people with sleep apnea are up to 6 times more likely to be involved in crashes (Teran-Santos et al., 1999). It has been estimated that crashes among people with sleep apnea cost approximately 16 billion dollars each year (Sassani et al., 2004). The number of crashes resulting from narcolepsy is not known.

Most cases of sleep apnea or narcolepsy are undiagnosed and untreated (Stutts et al., 2005, Strategy D6; NHTSA, 1998). Indeed, falling asleep at the wheel may be one of the main ways to raise the possibility of a sleep disorder and motivate a driver to seek medical attention (NHTSA, 1998). Once treated, people with sleep apnea have crash rates that are no higher than the general population (George, 2001).

There are many other medical conditions that can potentially compromise sleep or increase daytime feelings of fatigue such as asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and rheumatoid or osteoarthritis. For a review of medical disorders and conditions that may affect sleep and driving risk, see Smolensky et al. (2011).

Many common prescription and over-the-counter medications can also cause drowsiness. One study of the sedative zolpidem[11] by drivers 70 and older in Alabama found increased at-fault crash rates in women and drivers 80 or older when compared with non-users (using adjusted rate ratios). Similar patterns were also observed for adjusted 5-year crash rate ratios (Booth et al.,

[11] Brand name Ambien, among others.

2016). Warning labels on the medications note this and caution users against driving or other activities that could be affected by drowsiness. For more information about how medications can impair drivers, see Chapter 1, Section 7.3.

The principal countermeasures to address sleep apnea, narcolepsy, and medication effects are (Stutts et al., 2005, Strategy D6):

- Communications and outreach on sleep disorders to increase overall awareness of their symptoms, consequences, and treatment.
- Efforts with driver licensing medical advisory boards to increase their awareness of these conditions as they review driver fitness for licensing.
- Efforts with physicians to increase their awareness of these conditions and their potential effects on driving, to treat these conditions as appropriate, and to counsel their patients to take steps to reduce the risk of drowsy driving.

Additionally, it is important that pharmacies and drug makers include patient education about the potentially impairing effects of certain medications on driving (Smith et al., 2018; see also Chapter 1, Section 7.3). Prescription labeling by drug makers as well as incorporation of electronic prompts when dispensing medication can be other promising opportunities for patient education (Smith et al., 2018). One survey study found that while pharmacists generally provide warnings on sedatives and narcotics to many patients (about 85% of 7,405 people surveyed), fewer people receive warnings on antidepressants (62.6%) and stimulants (57.7%) (Pollini et al., 2017).

**Use and Effectiveness:** There is no known information available on how frequently these countermeasures are used or on how effective they have been in raising awareness, increasing knowledge, or affecting behavior. NHTSA recently developed an OTC/prescription driving prevention initiative that is available at www.trafficsafetymarketing.gov/get-materials/drug-impaired-driving/otc-rx.

**Costs:** Targeted communications and outreach to drivers (through driver licensing handbooks or flyers in license renewal material) or to physicians (through medical associations) would be relatively inexpensive. Communications and outreach campaigns directed at all drivers are expensive to develop, test, and implement. See Chapter 1, Section 5.2 and Chapter 2, Sections 2.1 and 3.1, for additional discussion.

**Time to implement:** Either targeted or general communications and outreach will require at least 6 months to plan, produce, and distribute. Efforts with driver licensing medical advisory boards could be implemented quickly.

**Drowsy Driving References**

AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety . (2016). *2015 Traffic Safety Culture Index.* https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/02/2015TrafficSafetyCultureIndexReport.pdf

AAAFTS. (2018). *2017 Traffic Safety Culture Index.* https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/03/TSCI-2017-Report.pdf

Adamos, G., Nathanail, E. G., & Kapetanopoulou, P. (2013). Do road safety communication campaigns work? How to assess the impact of a national fatigue campaign on driver behavior. *Transportation Research Record: Journal of the Transportation Research Board*, *2364*, 62-70.

Barger, L. K., Cade, B. E., Ayas, N. T., Cronin, J. W., Rosner, B., Speizer, F. E., & Czeisler, C. A. (2005). Extended work shifts and the risk of motor vehicle crashes among interns. *New England Journal of Medicine, 352*, 125-134.

Booth III, J. N., Behring, M., Cantor, R. S., Colantonio, L. D., Davidson, S., Donnelly, J. P., Johnson, E., Jordan, K., Singleton, C., Xie, F., & McGwin Jr, G. (2016). Zolpidem use and motor vehicle collisions in older drivers. *Sleep Medicine*, *20*, 98-102.

Chen, G. X., Fang, Y., Guo, F., & Hanowski, R. J. (2016). The influence of daily sleep patterns of commercial truck drivers on driving performance. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *91*, 55-63.

Colvin, L.J., & Collop, N.A. (2016). Commercial motor vehicle driver obstructive sleep apnea screening and treatment in the United States: an update and recommendation overview. *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine, 12*(1):113–125.

Governors Highway Safety Association. (2016). *Wake up call! Understanding drowsy driving and what States can do.* www.ghsa.org/sites/default/files/2017-02/Drowsy%202016-U.pdf

George, C. F. P. (2001). Reduction in motor vehicle collisions following treatment of sleep apnea with nasal CPAP. *Thorax*, *56*, 508-512.

Huffmyer, J. L., Moncrief, M., Tashjian, J. A., Kleiman, A. M., Scalzo, D. C., Cox, D. J., & Nemergut, E. C. (2016). Driving performance of residents after six consecutive overnight work shifts. *Anesthesiology: The Journal of the American Society of Anesthesiologists*, *124*(6), 1396-1403.

Martin-Gill, C., Barger, L. K., Moore, C. G., Higgins, J. S., Teasley, E. M., Weiss, P. M., Condle, J. P., Flickinger, K. L., Coppler, P. J., Sequeira, D. J. Divecha, A. A., Matthews, M. E., Lang, E. S., & Patterson, D. P. (2018). Effects of napping during shift work on sleepiness and performance in Emergency Medical Services personnel and similar shift workers: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Prehospital Emergency Care*, *22*(sup1), 47-57.

Martin-Gill, C., Higgins, J. S., Van Dongen, H. P., Buysse, D. J., Thackery, R. W., Kupas, D. F., Becker, D. S., Dean, B. E., Lindbeck, G. H., Guyette, F. X., Penner, J. H., Violanti, J. M., Lang, E. S., & Patterson, D. P. (2018, January). Proposed performance measures and

strategies for implementation of the Fatigue Risk Management Guidelines for Emergency Medical Services. *Prehospital Emergency Care*, *22*(sup1), 102-109.

National Conference of State Legislatures. (2018). *Summaries of current drowsy driving laws.* www.ncsl.org/research/transportation/summaries-of-current-drowsy-driving-laws.aspx

Nelson, T. F., Isaac, N. E., & Graham, J. D. (2001). *Development and testing of countermeasures for fatigue related highway crashes: Focus group discussions with young males, shift workers, and shift work supervisors.* National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. https://one.nhtsa.gov/people/injury/drowsy_driving1/listening/toc.htm#top

Nguen, L. T., Jauregui, B., & Dinges, D. F. (1998). *Changing behaviors to prevent drowsy driving and promote traffic safety: Review of proven, promising, and unproven techniques.* AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/38857

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. (1998, April). *Drowsy driving and automobile crashes* (Report No. DOT HS 808 707). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/808707.pdf

NHTSA. (1999, March 15). *The NHTSA and NCSDR program to combat drowsy driving*. www.nhtsa.dot.gov/people/injury/drowsy_driving1/drowsy2/drws-cov.htm

NHTSA. (2001). *Drowsy driving and automobile crashes.* www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/808707.pdf

National Sleep Foundation (NSF). (2004). *Drive Alert – Arrive Alive national campaign.*

NSF. (2008). *2008 "Sleep in America" poll.* www.sleepfoundation.org/sites/default/files/2008%20POLL%20SOF.PDF

NSF. (2009a). *Obstructive sleep apnea and sleep.* www.sleepfoundation.org/article/sleep-related-problems/obstructive-sleep-apnea-and-sleep

NSF. (2009b). *Narcolepsy and sleep*. www.sleepfoundation.org/article/sleep-related-problems/narcolepsy-and-sleep

NSF. (n.d.). *National Sleep Foundation drowsy driving advocacy kit*. www.sleepfoundation.org/about-us/advocacy/national-sleep-foundation-drowsy-driving-advocacy-kit

Patterson, P. D., Higgins, J. S., Van Dongen, H. P., Buysse, D. J., Thackery, R. W., Kupas, D. F., Kupas, D. F., Becker, D. S., Dean, B. E., Lindbeck, G. H., Guyette, F. X., Penner, J. H. Violanti, J. M. Lang, E. S., & Martin-Gill, C. (2018, January 11). Evidence-based guidelines for fatigue risk management in Emergency Medical Services. *Prehospital Emergency Care*, *22*(sup1), 89-101. https://rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/35483

Patterson, P. D., Weaver, M. D., Fabio, A., Teasley, E. M., Renn, M. L., Curtis, B. R., Matthews, M. E., Kroemer, A. J., Xun, X., Bizhanova, Z., Weiss, P. M., Sequeira, D. J., Coppler, P. J., Lang, E. S., & Higgins, J. S. Weiss, P. M. (2018). Reliability and validity of survey instruments to measure work-related fatigue in the Emergency Medical Services setting: A systematic review. *Prehospital Emergency Care*, *22*(sup1), 17-27. DOI: 10.1080/10903127.2017.1376134

Pollini, R. A., Waehrer, G., & Kelley-Baker, T. (2017). Receipt of warnings regarding potentially impairing prescription medications and associated risk perceptions in a national sample of US drivers. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs*, *78*(6), 805-813.

Royal, D. (2003, April). *National survey of distracted and drowsy driving attitudes and behavior: 2002 volume I: Findings* (Report No. DOT HS 809 566). National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. www.nhtsa.gov/sites/nhtsa.dot.gov/files/hs809566v1.pdf

Sassani, A., Findley, L. J., Kryger, M., Goldlust, E., George, C., & Davidson, T. M. (2004). Reducing motor-vehicle collisions, costs, and fatalities by treating obstructive sleep apnea syndrome. *Sleep*, *27*, 453-458.

Smith, R. C., Turturici, M., & Camden, M. C. (2018). *Countermeasures against prescription and over-the-counter drug-impaired driving*. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. https://aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/10/VTTI_Rx_OTC_FinalReport_VTTI-FINAL-complete-9.20.pdf

Smolensky, M. H., Di Milia, L., Ohayon, M. M., & Philip, P. (2011). Sleep disorders, medical conditions, and road accident risk. *Accident Analysis & Prevention*, *43*, 533-548.

Stutts, J., Knipling, R. R., Pfefer, R., Neuman, T. R., Slack, K. L., & Hardy, K. K. (2005). *A guide for addressing collisions involving distracted or fatigued drivers* (Report 500, Vol. 14). Transportation Research Board. https://download.nap.edu/cart/download.cgi?record_id=23420

Stutts, J. C., Wilkins, J. W., & Vaughn, B. V. (1999). *Why do people have drowsy driving crashes? Input from drivers who just did.* AAA Foundation. www.aafoundation.org/pdf/Sleep.pdf

Swanson, L. M., Drake, C., & Arnedt, J. T. (2012). Employment and drowsy driving: A survey of American workers. *Behavioral Sleep Medicine*, *10*, 250-257.

Teran-Santos, J., Jiminez-Gomez, A., & Cordero-Guevara, J. (1999). The association between sleep apnea and the risk of traffic accidents. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *340*, 847-851.

Tefft, B. C. (2016). *Acute sleep deprivation and risk of motor vehicle crash involvement*. AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety. www.aaafoundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/12/AcuteSleepDeprivationCrashRisk.pdf

Watling, C. N. (2018). Drivers' perceived legitimacy of enforcement practices for sleep-related crashes: What are the associated factors? *Journal of Forensic and Legal Medicine*, *54*, 34-38.

Watson N.F., Morgenthaler T., Chervin R., Carden K., Kirsch D., Kristo D., Malhotra R., Martin J., Ramar K., Rosen I., Weaver T., & Wise M. (2015). Confronting drowsy driving: The American academy of sleep medicine perspective. *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine, 11*(11):1335 –1336.

Williams, A. F. (2007). *Public information and education in the promotion of highway safety* (Research Results Digest 322). Transportation Research Board. http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rrd_322.pdf

DOT HS 813 097
July 2021

U.S. Department
of Transportation

**National Highway
Traffic Safety
Administration**

NHTSA

15100-080521-v5